Halmac Services (Qld) Pły Lłd
ACN 098852923 ABN 40741712113 ECl 53064
30 Palmer Place Murarrie, Qld 4172
Telephone (07) 32499500 Fax (07) 32499599
A QUALITY COMPANY TO AS/LS09001

## SP055 STANLEY ROAD SEWAGE <br> PUMP STATION SWITCHBOARD

## OPERATION \& MAINTENANCE MANUAL

## JOB No A4230

HALMAC SERVICES IS A QUALITY COMPANY SERVING QUEENSLAND SINCE 1960
 Email infoghalmac.netau

Web She www.halmac.net.au


## MOULDED CASE CIRCUIT BREAKER

## 1. S400NE MCCB TECHNICAL DETAILS

2. S125GJ \& E125NJ MCCB TECHNICAL DETAILS

## 3. MCCB ACCESSORIES

 TemBreakMCCB's

## NHP

## Electronic type S400NE

## 50kA

Current rating: $\quad 100$-400A
Approvals and Tests:
Standards: AS/NZS 3947-2, and IEC60947-2
Interrupting capacity:

AC use | Voltage | Icu | Ics |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $380 / 415$ | 50 | 50 |

## Over Current Relay:

- Electronic, for general \& selectivity applications
- 7 dial selectable characteristic curves suited for a variety of applications

- Base current $I r$ is adjustable from $40 \%-100 \%$ of the nominal rated current $\ln$.
- STD setting 2.5-10 (x/R) 2)
- INST setting 13-14 (x $\left.I_{R}\right)$ 2)


## OCR Options:

- Ground Fault Trip
- Neutral Pole protection for 4 pole ONLY MCCBs
- Pre-Trip Alarm

Dimensions (mm)

| Poles |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $H$ | 260 | 4 | 260 |
| $W$ | 140 | 185 |  |
| $D$ (less togale) | 103 | 103 |  |


| Ampere <br> Rating | $\boldsymbol{I}_{R}$ Adjustment |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| NRC | Min. | Max. |  |  |

Price Adder - if OCR options are required, add the selected OCR option price below to the above MCCB price to calculate the total MCCB cost.

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 3P OCR options: } \text { PTA 3) } \\ & \text { GF 3) } \\ &\text { PTA } \left.+ \text { GF }_{3}\right) \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | S400 NE 3 AP \# S400 NE 3 AG \# S400 NE 3 APG \# |
| :---: | :---: |
| 4P OCR options: PTA ${ }_{3}$ | S400 NE 4 AP\# |
| $A P_{3)}$ | S400 NE 4 AN \# |
| PTA + NP ${ }_{3}{ }^{\text {) }}$ | S400 NE 4 APN \# |
| $\mathrm{GF}+\mathrm{NP}{ }_{3}$ ) | S400 NE 4 AGN \# |
| $\mathrm{PTA}+\mathrm{GF}+\mathrm{NP}_{3}{ }^{\text {) }}$ | S400 NE 4 APGN \# |

1) Add poles to complete MCCB catalogue number. Eg: 3 pole 250A: S400NE 3 250. "\#" add OCR trip unit rating where shown.
2) The STD and Instantaneous pickup currents ( $I_{\mathrm{sd}} \& I_{1}$ ) settings are not individually adjustable, however by selecting different curve types and different $I_{R}$ settings the values will vary. Curve $1 \& 2 I_{s d}=2.5 \times I_{R}$, curve $3 I_{s d}=5 \times I_{R}$, curve $4-7 I_{s d}=10 \times I_{R}$. $I_{R}$ dial setting $0.4-0.9 I_{i}=14 \times I_{R}$ and $I_{R}$ dial setting $0.95-1.0 I_{i}=13 \times I_{R}$. Refer curve examples \& setting data on pages 18 to 30 .
$N R C=$ Nominal rated current, $\quad I_{R}=$ Current adjustment dial setting, $\quad S T D=$ Short Time Delay, $\quad I N S T=$ instantaneous
3) To order a MCCB with the above options insert the required option after the pole to make up the cat. number. Eg: S400NE 4 APGN 250 is a S400GE 4 Pole 250A MCCB CM Pre-trip Alarm, Neutral Protection and Ground Fault protection.
Replaces: XS400SE, Note: check exact ratings or dimenions to suit your application requirement OPERATMNG CMARACTERUSTUCS

## ELECTRONIC CHARACTERISTICS

S400-NE, S400-GE, H400-NE, L400-NE

$1 \mathrm{n}=400 \mathrm{~A} ; 250 \mathrm{~A}$

|  | $\ln (A)$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | LTD Pick-up current |  | /R | $\mathrm{x} / \mathrm{n}$ | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.63 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 0.95 | 1.0 |
|  | Chatacteristes |  |  | No. | 1 | div2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | n 6 6 | 7 |
| Standard | LTD | $t_{\text {A }}$ |  | (s) | 11 | 21 | 21 | 5 | 10 | 19 | 29 |
|  | LTD |  |  |  | at $200 \% \times /_{R}$ |  |  | at $600 \% \times l_{\text {R }}$ |  |  |  |
|  | STD | 1 sd |  | $\mathrm{x} / \mathrm{R}$ |  |  | 5 | 10 |  |  |  |
|  |  | $\mathrm{tsd}^{\text {d }}$ |  | (s) | 0.1 |  |  |  | 0.2 |  |  |
|  | INST | 1 |  | $x / \mathrm{R}$ | 14(Max: $13 \times 1$ ) Note (1) |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Oplion | PTA | $1 p$ |  | $\times$ /R | 0.8 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | $t_{p}$ |  | (s) | 40 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | GFT | 19 |  | $\times 1 \mathrm{n}$ | 0.2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | $t_{9}$ |  | (s) | 0.2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | $N$ | / |  | $x / \mathrm{n}$ | 1.0 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | in |  | (s) | $t_{N}=t_{\text {a }} \quad$ Note (2) |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Note
(1) $I_{1}$ max. $=13 \times \ln$. (2) Standard setting of $I_{N}$ is $100 \%$ of $\ln$. For any other setting please specify when ordering.


## OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS

## LET-THROUGH PEAK CURRENT CHARACTERISTICS

H160-NJ, L160-NJ, S250-PE, H250-NJ, H250-NE, L250-NJ. 440 V AC.


E400-NJ, S400-CJ, S400-NJ, S400-NE, S400-G], S400-GE, 415 V AC .


H160-NJ, L160-NJ, S250-PE, H250-NJ, H250-NE,
L250-NJ. 690 V AC.


S400-CJ, S400-NJ, S400-NE, S400-GJ, S400-GE, 690 V AC.


## Selectivity \＆Cascade Tables

＠ 400 ／ 415 V

[^0]| Upstream MCCBs |  | 欲 | 宸 N N | 宸 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 宮 } \end{aligned}$ | 宸 | 岩 | 苐 | 岂 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Downstream MCCBs | (RMMS) |  | $\begin{array}{r} \text { 조 } \\ 125 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{r} \text { ¢ } \\ 50 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 50 \\ & 70 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{r} \text { 고 } \\ 125 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | 200 | $\begin{array}{r} \text { 㞻 } \\ 36 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | \％ |
| ［E125NJ | 25 | 25／25， | 25／65 | 25／36 | 25； 50 | 25／65 | 25／85 | 25／36 | 25／25 |
| S125NJ | 36 | 36／36 | 36／85 | 36／50 | 36／65 | 36／85 | 36／125 | 36／36 | 36，36 |
| S125GJ | 65 | 65／65 | 65／125 | 50／50 | 65／70 | 65／125 | 65／150 | 36／36 | 50／50 |
| H125NJ | 125 | 70：70 | 125／125 | 50／50 | 70，70 | 125／125 | 125／200 | 36／36 | 50／50 |
| S160NJ | 36 |  |  | 36／50 | 36／65 | 36／85 | 36／125 | 36／36 | 36／50 |
| S160GJ | 65 |  |  | 50／50 | 65：70 | 65／125 | 65／150 | 36／36 | 50／50 |
| H160NJ | 125 |  |  |  |  | 125／125 | 125／200 | 36／36 | 50／50 |
| ［E250NJ | 25 |  |  |  | ． | 25／65 | 25／85 | 25／36 | 25／25 |
| S250NJ | 36 |  |  |  |  | 36／85 | 36／125 | 36／36 | 36／36 |
| ［S250G］ | 65 |  |  |  |  | 65／125 | 65／150 | 36／36 | 50／50 |
| S250PE | 70 |  |  |  | 1 | 40／125 | 70／450 | 36／36 | 50，50 |
| H250NJ | 125 |  |  |  |  | 125／125 | 125／200 | 36／36 | 50；50 |
| H250PE | 125 |  |  |  |  | 125／125 | 125／200 | 36／36 | 50／50 |
| ［E400NJ | 25 |  |  |  |  | 1 |  | 10，25 | 10／25 |
| S400cJ | 36 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10／36 | 10\％36 |
| S400NE | 50 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10／36 | 10；50 |
| S400NJ | 50 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10，36 | 10／36 |
| S400GN | 70 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10／36 | 10／50 |
| ［H400NJ | 125 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10，36 | 10／50 |
| H400NE | 125 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10／36 | 10／50 |
| E630NE | 36 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |  |
| E630CE | 50 |  |  |  |  |  | I |  |  |
| ［S630GE | 70 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XS630CJ | 45 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XS630NJ | 65 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XS630PJ | 85 |  |  |  |  | I |  |  |  |
| XS630SE | 50 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XH630SE | 65 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XH630PE | 65 | ， |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XS800NJ | 65 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |  |
| XS800SE | 50 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XJ800PJ | 85 | 1 |  |  | I |  |  |  |  |
| XH800SE | 65 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XH800PE | 65 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ｜XS1250SE | 65 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XS1600SE | 85 |  |  |  |  |  | I |  |  |

Sヨา9＊1 ᄉ1ㅅIJㅋㅋs
回PDLCATON DATA
TEMBREAK 2 MCCBs
（9）Tinsin


## APPLICATION DATA

## CASCADE TABLES

| CASCADE <br> © 380－415VAC＇） |  | m M M 己 | N $\stackrel{n}{N}$ N | $$ | I N 를 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { r } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { Z } \end{aligned}$ | $n$ <br> $\stackrel{0}{8}$ <br> 2 | $\begin{aligned} & \stackrel{\sim}{0} \\ & \stackrel{0}{\circ} \\ & \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { r } \\ & \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{0} \\ & \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { N } \\ & \text { 心 } \\ & \text { O } \\ & \mathbf{Z} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { N } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { K } \\ & \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { n } \\ & \text { un } \\ & 0 \\ & \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { u } \\ & \text { U } \\ & \text { on } \\ & \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { T } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { 을 } \end{aligned}$ | T <br> N <br> O <br> $\mathbf{Z}$ | N N O S |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Downstream MCCBs | $\begin{gathered} \text { KA } \\ \text { (RMS) } \end{gathered}$ | 25 | 36 | 65 | 125 | 200 | 36 | 65 | 125 | 200 | 25 | 36 | 65 | 70 | 125 | 125 | 200 |
| E125NJ | 25 | － | 36 | 36 | 65 | 85 | 36 | 36 | 65 | 85 | － | 38 | 38 | － | 65 | 65 | 85 |
| S125NJ | 38 | － | － | 50 | 85 | 125 | － | 50 | 85 | 125 | － | － | － | － | 85 | 85 | 125 |
| S125GJ | 65 | － | － | － | 125 | 150 | － | － | 125 | 150 | － | － | 65 | － | 125 | 125. | 150 |
| H125NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | － | － | － | 200 | － | － | 65 | － | － | － | 200 |
| S160NJ | 36 | － | － | 65 | － | － | － | 65 | 85 | 125 | － | － | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 125 |
| S160GJ | 85 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 125 | 150 | － | － | － | 70 | 125 | 125 | 150 |
| H160NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 200 | － | － | － | － | － | － | 200 |
| S250NJ | 36 | － | － | － | － | － | － | 65 | － | － | － | － | － | 65 | 85 | 85 | 125 |
| S250GJ | 65 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 70 | 125 | 125 | 150 |
| S250PE | 70 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 125 | 125 | 150 |
| H250NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 200 |
| E400NJ | 25 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 36 | 65 | 65 | － |
| S400CJ | 36 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 50 | 70 | 70 | － |
| S400NJ | 50 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 50 | 65 | 85 | 85 | － |
| S400GJ | 70 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 50 | － | 125 | 125 | － |
| H400NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | ＝ | － | － | － | － | $-$ |

Note：＇）Ratings have not been verified where a dash＂－＂is shown．
All pick－up and time delay settings are to be set at a maximum for upstream MCCB＇s

| Upstream MCCBs |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { CASCADE } \\ \text { © } 380-415 \vee A C \end{gathered}$ |  | $\infty$ $\stackrel{\circ}{\circ}$ $\stackrel{\circ}{C}$ |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { r } \\ & \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{0} \\ & \stackrel{0}{2} \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { M } \\ & \mathbf{N} \\ & \hline \mathbf{O} \\ & \mathbf{m} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { か } \\ & \dot{W} \\ & \underset{\sim}{n} \end{aligned}$ | $$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ক } \\ & \text { O } \\ & \text { O} \\ & \text { H } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \times \\ & \text { 区 } \\ & \text { O } \\ & \text { O } \\ & \hline \mathbf{C} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { x } \\ & \text { x } \\ & \hline 0 . \\ & 0 \\ & \hline 0 \end{aligned}$ | -1 <br> $\mathbf{O}$ <br> $\mathbf{O}$ <br> $\mathbf{~}$ <br> $\mathbf{m}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \times \\ & \text { o } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { H } \\ & 0 \\ & \text { n } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \times \\ & \text { ه } \\ & \text { ö } \\ & \stackrel{\circ}{0} \end{aligned}$ |
| Downstream MCCBs | $\begin{gathered} \text { KA } \\ \text { (RMS) } \end{gathered}$ | 36 | 50 | 70 | 125 | 200 | 200 | 36 | 50 | 70 | 125 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 200 | 65 | 85 |
| E125NJ | 25. | 36 | 36 | 50 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 36 | － | 50 | － | 36 | 38 | 36 | － | － | － |
| S125NJ | 36. | － | 50 | 65 | 85 | 125 | 125 | － | － | 65 | － | 50 | 50 | － | － | － | － |
| S125GJ | 65 | － | － | 70 | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | 50 | 70 | － | － | － | 65 | － | － | － |
| H125NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | 200 | － |  | － | － | － | － | 65 | － | 50 | － |
| S160NJ | 36 | － | 50 | 65 | 85 | 125 | 125 | － | 50 | 50 | － | － | 65 | 65 | － | － | － |
| S160GJ | 65 | － | － | 70 | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | － | 70 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |
| H160NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | 200. | － | － | － | － | － | － | 65 | － | 65 | － |
| E250NJ | 25 | 36 | 36 | 50 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 36 | － | 50 | － | － | 36 | 50 | － | － | － |
| S250NJ | 36 | － | 50 | 65 | 85 | 125 | 125 | － | － | 65 | － | － | 65 | － | － | － | － |
| S250GJ | 65 | － | － | 70 | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | － | 70 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |
| S250PE | 70 | － | － | － | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |
| H250NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | 200 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |
| E400NJ | 25 | 36 | 36 | 50 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 36 | － | 50 | 36 | － | － | － | 36 | － | 36 |
| S400CJ | 36 | － | 50 | 65 | 70 | 100 | 100 | － | － | 65 | 50 | － | － | － | 50 | － | 50 |
| S400NJ | 50 | － | － | 70 | 85 | 125 | 125 | － | 36 | 70 | 65 | － | － | 50 | 65 | － | 65 |
| S400GJ | 70 | － | － | － | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | 36 | － | － | － | － | 50 | － | 36 | 85 |
| H400NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | 200 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |

Note：＇）Ratings have not been verified where a dash＂－＂is shown．
All pick－up and time delay settings are to be set at a maximum for upstream MCCBs


## APPLICATION DATA

## SELECTIVITY AND CASCADE TEMBREAK 2 MCCBs AND DIN-T / SAFE-T MCBs

Upstream MCCB

| SELECTIVITY / CASCADE <br> © 415 V AC |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { m } \\ & \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\mathrm{M}} \\ & \mathrm{Z} \end{aligned}$ | N <br>  <br>  <br> Z |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { N } \\ & \text { © } \\ & \text { 欠i } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Downstream MCB |  | kA |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | rating | (RMS) | 25 | 36 | 65 | 36 | 65 | 36 | 70 | 125 |
| DTCB6 | 2-20 | 6 | 18/18. | 25/25 | 35/35 | 35/35 | 35/35 | - | - | - |
|  | 25-63 | 6 | 18/18 | 20/25 | 20/25 | 30/30 | 30/30 | - | - | - |
| DTCB10 | 0.5-32 | 10 | 18/18 | 30/30 | 30/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 40/50 |
|  | 40-63 | 10 | 18/18 | 20/25 | 25/25 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 |
| DSRCBH / | 0.5-32 | 10 | 18/18 | 30/30 | 30/50 | 35/3 | 10/50 | $5 / 35$ | 40/50 | 40/50= |
| DSRCD | 40 | 10 | 18/18 | 20/25 | 25/25 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 |
| Din-T10H | 80-125 | 10 | 4/18 | 4/25 | 4/25 | 15/15 | 15/15 | 10/10 | 10/10 | - |
| DTCH15 | 0.5-32 | 15 | 18/18 | 30 | 30/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 40/50 |
|  | 40-63 | 15 | 18/18 | 20 | 25/25 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30. | 30/30 | 30/30 |
| Săfe-T | 16-20 | 6 | 3/10 | 3/10 | 3/10 | - | - | - | - | - |
| SRCB: | 16.-20 | 6. | 3/10. | 3/10 | 3/10 | - | -. | - | - | - |

## Guide

$-\frac{\mathbf{X X} / \frac{\mathbf{Y}}{\text { Selectivity }}}{\text { Cascade }}$

Notes: All figures stated are al 400/415 V AC.


APPLCATMON DATA

## MOTOR STARTING TYPE 1 CO-ORDINATION TABLES

## Short-Circult Co-Ordinatlon Motor Starting Table

Type ' 1 '
Terasaki MCCB's \& Sprecher + Schuh KT7's
DOL starting 50/65 KA @ 400/415 V to AS/NZS 60947.4.1

|  |  | Terasakd Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor Size $(\mathrm{kW})$ | Approx. amps ${ }^{(-1)}$ $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ (A) | MCCE | Cantactor |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30PB/1.4 | CA7- ${ }^{\text {a }}$ |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PE/2 | CA7- - |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | хм30РВ/2. | CA7- - |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30PB/4.0 | CA7- ${ }^{\text {c }}$ |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XM30РВ/5 | CA7- - |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XM30PB/8 | CA7- 9 |
| 3 | 6.5 | XM30PB/10 | CA7- 9 |
| 4 | 8.2 | XM30PB/12 | CA7- ${ }^{\text {c }}$ |
| 5.5 | 11 | S125Gl/20 | CA7-12 |
| 7.5 | 14 | S125G/20 | CA7-18 |
| 11 | 21 | S125G/33 | CA7-23 |
| 15 | 28 | S125G//50 | CA7-30 |
| 18.5 | 34 | S125G//50 | CA7-37 |
| 22 | 40 | S125G//E3 | CA7-43 |
| 30 | 55 | S125GJ/400 | CA7-80 |
| 37 | 66 | S125GJ/400 | CA7-72 |
| 45 | 80 | S125Gd/25 | CA7-85 |
| 55 | 100 | S125G/125 | CAB-110 |
| 5 | 130 | S250PE/250 | CAB-140 |
| 0 | 155 | S250PE/250 | CAE-180 |
| 10 | 200 | S250PE/250 | CAB-210 |
| 32 | 225 | S400GE/400 | CAB-210 |
| 60 | 270 | S400GE/400 | CAB-300 |
| 00 | 361 | S400GE/400 | CAB-420 |


| Terasakd Combinations |  | Sprecher + Schuh Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Overioad Relay | Thenmal <br> Setting (A) | KT7 Circult Breaker | Contactor |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.0 | KTA7-25S-1.0A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7.24 | 1.0-1.6 | KTA 7 -25S-1.6A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.8-2.4 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25S-4.0A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7.24 | 4.0-8.0 | KTA7-25S-6.3A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25S-6.3A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25S-10A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA7-25H-16A | CA7-12 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-16 | KTA7-25H-16A | CA7-16 |
| CT 7-24 | 18-24 | KTA7-45-20A | CA7-23 |
| CT 7-45 | 18-30 | KTA7-45H-32A | CA7-30 |
| CT 7.45 | 30-45 | KTA 7 -45-45A | CA7-37 |
| CT 7-45 | 30-45 | KTA 7 -45H-45A | CA7-43 |
| CT 7-75 | 45-80 | KTA3-100-63A | CA7-60 |
| CT 7-75 | 80-75 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7.72 |
| CT 7-100 | 70-80 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-85 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-100A | CA6-110 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-160A | CA6-140 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-160A | CA6-180 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | KTA3-250S-200A | CA6-210 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | KTA3-250S-250A | CA6-250 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | KTA3-400S-320A | CA6-300 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | KTA3-400S-400A | CA6-420 |

Notes: - Thermal or electronic overload relays may be used.

- XM30PB MCCB's can be replaced with S $125 \mathrm{GJ} / 20$ it required.

Combinations based on the thermal overioad relay tripping before the circuin.
breaker at overload currents up to the motor locked rotor current.


APPLCATRON DATA

## MOTOR STARTING TYPE 2 CO-ORDINATION TABLES

## Short-CIrcul Co-Ordination DOL Motor Starting Table

Type '2'
Terasaki MCCB's \& Sprecher + Schuh KT7's
DOL starting 50/65 kA © 400/415 V to ASNZS 60947.4.1


|  |  | Terasak Comblnations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor Size (kW) | Approx. amps © 400/415 V (A) | MÇCB | Contactor |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XMSOPEM. 4 | CA7- |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PB/2 | CA7- |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | XMSOPB/2. ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | CA7* |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XMSOPE/4.0 | CA7-18 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XMSOPE/5 | CA7-18 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XM30РЕ/8. | CA7-18 |
| 3 | 6.5 | XMSOPBMO | CA7-30 |
| 4 | 8.2 | XM30PBM2 | CA7.30 |
| 5.5 | 11 | S125Gul/20 | CA7-30 |
| 7.5 | 14 | S125GJ/20 | CA7-30 |
| 11 | 21 | S125G./32 | CA7-30 |
| 15 | 28 | S125G. $/ 50^{\circ}$ | CA7-43 |
| 18.5 | 34 | S125G. $/ 50$ | CA7-43 |
| 22 | 40 | S125G./83 | CA7-43 |
| 30 | 55 | S125G./100 | CA7-72 |
| 37 | 66 | \$125G//100 | CA7-72 |
| 45 | 80 | \$125G./12.5 | CAB-105 |
| 55 | 100 | S250PE/180 | CAB-105 |
| 75 | 130 | S250PER20 | CAB-140 |
| 90 | 155 | 8250PER250 | CAS-170 |
| 110 | 200 | 8250PEP250 | CAS-210 |
| 132 | 225 | S400PE/400 | CAS-210 |
| 160 | 270 | S400PE/400 | CAE-800 |
| 200 | 361 | S400PE/400 | CAB-420 |


| Terasald Comblnations |  | Sprecher + Schuh Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Overload Relay | Thermal <br> Setting (A) | KT7 Clrcult Breaker | Contactor |
| \|CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.0 | KTA7-25S-1A | CA7-9 |
| \|CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.6 | KTA7-25S-1.6A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.8-2.4 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA7-9 |
| CT.7-24..... | 2.4-40 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25S-4A | CA7-9 |
| CTT 7-24 | 4.0-8.0 | KTA7-25S-6.3A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25S-6.3A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25S-10A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-10 | KTA7-25H-16A | CA7-12 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA7-25H-16A | CA7-16 |
| CT 7-24 | 18-24 | KTA7-45H-20A | CA7-23 |
| CT 7-45 | 18-30 | KTA $7-45 \mathrm{H}-32 \mathrm{~A}$ | CA7-30 |
| \|CT 7-45 | 30-46 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA7-37 |
| CT 7-46 | 30-45 | KTA 7 -45H-45A | CA7-43 |
| CT 7 -75 | 45-80 | KTA3-100-63A | CA7-60 |
| 1CT $7-75$ | 60-75 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-72 |
| CT 7-100 | 70-80 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-85 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-100A | CA6-110 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-160 | KTA3-160S-160A | CA6-140 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-160A | CA6-180 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | KTA3-250S-200A | CA6-210 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | KTA3-250S-250A | CA6-250 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | KTA3-400S-320A | CA6-300 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | KTA3-400S-400A | CA6-420 |

[^1]- XM30PB combinations can be replaced with S125GJ/20 and CA7-30 if required
- Combinations based on the thermal overload relay tripping before the circuit
breaker at overload currents up to the motor locked rotor current.


APPLICATION DATA

## MOTOR STARTING TYPE 2 CO-ORDINATION

Short-CIrcult Co-Ordination DOL Motor StartIng Table
Type ' 2 '
Terasaki MCCB's \& Sprecher + Schuh KT7's
DOL starting 85 kA 400/415 V to AS/NZS 60947.4.1

|  |  | Terasakd Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor Slze (kW) | Approx. amps © $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{~A})$ | месв | Cortactor |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30PB/1. 4 | CA 78 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PE/2 | CA 7 - |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | XM30PB/2.6 | CA 7-8 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30P18/4.0 | CA 7-18 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XM30PE/5 | CA 7-18 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XM30PE/8 | CA 7.30 |
| 3 | 6.5 | XM30PB/10 | CA 7 -30 |
| 4 | 8.2 | XM30PE/12 | CA 7.30 |
| 5.5 | 11 | H125N/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 7.5 | 14 | H125N1/220 | CA 7.30 |
| 11 | 21 | H125NJ/32 | CA 7-90 |
| 15 | 28 | H125N $/ 150$ | CA 7.43 |
| 18.5 | 34 | H125N1/50 | CA 7-43 |
| $\underline{22}$ | 40 | H125NJ/93 | CA 7-43 |
| 30 | 55 | H125NJ/100 | CA 7-72 |
| 37 | 66 | H125NJ/100 | CA 7-72 |
| 45 | 80 | H125NL/480 | CA 日-105 |
| 55 | 100 | H180NL/180 | GA B-105 |
| 75 | 130 | H250PE/250 | CA $8-210$ |
| 90 | 155 | H250PE/250 | CA 8-210 |
| 110 | 200 | H250PE/250 | CA $8-210$ |
| 132 | 225 | H400NE/400 | CA $8-210$ |
| 160 | 270 | H400NE/400 | CA 8300 |
| 200 | 361 | H400NE/400 | CA $6-420$ |


| Terasakd Combinations |  | Sprecher + Schuh Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Overload Relay | Thermal <br> Setting (A) | KT7 Circuit Breaker | Contactor |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.8 | KTA7-25S-1A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.8 | KTA7-25S-1.6A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7.24 | 1.6-2.4 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25H-2.5A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25H-4A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 4.0-6.0 | KTA7-25H-6.3A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25H-6.3A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25H-10A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-16 | KTA7-45H-16A | CA 7-12 |
| CT 7.24 | 10-18 | KTA7-45H-16A | CA 7 -16 |
| CT 7-24 | 18-24 | KTA7-45H-20A | CA 7-23 |
| CT 7-45 | 18-30 | KTA7-45H-32A | CA $7-30$ |
| CT 7-45 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA 7-37 |
| CT $7-45$ | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA $7-43$ |
| CT 7-75. | 45-80 | КТАЗ-100-63A | CA7-60 |
| CT 7-75 | 60-75 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-72 |
| CT 7-100 | 70-80 | КТАЗ-100-90A | CA7-85 |
| CEF 1-1/1/2 | 20-180 | - | - |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | $\bullet$ | $\cdot$ |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-160 | - | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | $\cdot$ | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | $\cdot$ | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | - | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | - | - |

[^2]

## \&PPLICATION DATA

## MOTOR STARTING TYPE 2 CO-ORDINATION

## Short-CIrcult Co-Ordination DOL Motor Starting Table

Type '2'
Terasaki MCCB's \& Sprecher + Schuh KT7's
DOL starting 100 kA © 400/415 V to AS/NZS 60947.4.1


|  |  | Terasakd Comblnations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor Size (kW) | Approx. amps © $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ (A) | MCCB | Contactor |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | H125N/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | H125NJ/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | H125NL/2O | CA 7-30 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | H125NL/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | H1250 ${ }^{\text {d/20 }}$ | CA 7-30 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | H125NL/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 3 | 6.5 | H125NL/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 4 | 8.2 | H125N $/ 20$ | CA 7-30 |
| 5.5 | 11 | H125N//20 | CA.7-30 |
| 7.5 | 14 | H125NL/2O | CA 7-30 |
| 11 | 21 | H125NL/32 | CA 7-30 |
| 15 | 28 | $\mathrm{H} 125 \mathrm{~N} / 5 \mathrm{So}$ | CA. $7-43$ |
| 18.5 | 34 | H125N/50 | CA' $7-43$ |
| 22 | 40 | H125N1/63 | CA $7-43$ |
| 30 | 55 | H12S-N//100 | CA 7-80 |
| 37 | 66 | H125-N/400 | CA'7-72 |
| 45 | 80 | H125-N/125 | CA 7-85 |
| 55 | 100 | H250-NEMio | CA B-85 |
| 75 | 130 | H250-NE2250 | CA 8-140 |
| 90 | 155 | H250-NE/250 | CA 8-140 |
| 110 | 200 | H250-NE/250 | CA E-180 |
| 132 | 225 | H400-NE/400 | CA $8-420$ |
| 160 | 270 | H400-NE/400 | CA $B-420$ |
| 200 | 361 | H400-NE/400 | CA 6-420 |


| Terasakd Comblnations |  | Sprecher + Schuh Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Overioad Relay | Thermal Setting (A) | KT7 Circult Breaker | Contactor |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.8 | KTA7-25S-1A | CA 7.9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.8 | KTA7-25S-1.6A | CA 7.9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.8-2.4 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA 7-9 |
| CT. 7.24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25H-2.5A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25H-4A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 4.0-8.0 | KTA7-25H-6.3A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 6.0-10 | KTA7-25H-6.3A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 6.0-10 | KTA7-25H-10A | CA 7 -9 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA7-45H-16A | CA 7-12 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA7-45H-16A | CA 7-16 |
| CT 7-24 | 18-24 | KTA7-45H-20A | CA 7-23 |
| CT 7-45 | 18-30 | KTA7-45H-32A | CA 7.30 |
| CT 7-46 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA 7-37 |
| CT 7-45 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA 7-43 |
| \|CT 7-75 | 46-60 | - | - |
| CT 7 -75 | 60-75 | $\cdot$ | $\cdot$ |
| CT $7-100$ | 70-80 | - | - |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | - | - |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | - | - |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | $\cdot$ | $\cdot$ |
| SEEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | $\cdot$ | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 100-400 | $\cdot$ | $\cdot$ |
| \|CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | $\cdot$ | $\bullet$ |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | - | - |

- Combinations based on the thermal overload relay tripping before the circuit
breaker at overload currents up to the motor locked rotor current.


## ONSTALLATPON

TEMPERATURE RATINGS \& DERATINGS
Calibration Temperature: $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$

| MCCETy | $\begin{gathered} \text { Cannection } \\ \text { Type } \end{gathered}$ | Ratingatrellibraitalemperature (50\%C) | Ratedicurrent ${ }^{\text {a }}$ ( $)$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { E125-NJ } \\ & \text { S125-NJ } \\ & \text { S125-GJ } \end{aligned}$ | Front Rear Plug-in | 20A | 19 | 18.5 | 18 | 17.5 |
|  |  | 32A | 31 | 30.5 | 30 | 29 |
|  |  | 50A | 48 | 45 | 43 | 41 |
|  |  | 63A | 60 | 57 | 55 | 52 |
|  |  | 100A | 97 | 94 | 90 | 87 |
|  |  | 125A | 121 | 117 | 113 | 109 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { H125-NJ } \\ & \text { L125-NJ } \end{aligned}$ | Front Rear Plug-in | 20A | 19 | 18.5 | 18 | 17.5 |
|  |  | 32A | 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 |
|  |  | 50A | 48 | 47 | 45 | 44 |
|  |  | 63A | 61 | 59 | 57 | 55 |
|  |  | 100A | 97 | 95 | 92 | 89 |
|  |  | 125A | 121 | 118 | 114 | 111 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { S160-NJ } \\ & \text { S } 160-\mathrm{GJ} \end{aligned}$ |  | 20A | 19 | 18.5 | 18 | 17.5 |
|  |  | 32A | 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 |
|  |  | 50A | 48 | 46 | 44 | 42 |
|  |  | 63A | 61 | 59 | 57 | 55 |
|  |  | 100A | 97 | 94 | 91 | 88 |
|  |  | 125A | 121 | 117 | 113 | 109 |
|  |  | 160A | 156 | 151 | 146 | 141 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { H160-NJ } \\ & \text { L160-NJ } \end{aligned}$ | Front Rear - Plug-in | 160A | 156 | 151 | 147 | 143 |
| E250-NJ | Front Rear <br> Plug-in | 20A | 19 | 18.5 | 18 | 17.5 |
|  |  | 32A | 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 |
|  |  | 50A | 48 | 46 | 44 | 42 |
|  |  | 63A | 61 | 59 | 57 | 55 |
|  |  | 100A | 97 | 94 | 91 | 88 |
|  |  | 125A | 121 | 117 | 113 | 109 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { E250-NJ } \\ & \text { S250-NJ } \\ & \text { S250-GJ } \end{aligned}$ | Front Rear. Plug-in | 160A | 156 | 151 | 146 | 141 |
|  |  | 250 A | 243 | 235 | 227 | 219 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{H} 250-\mathrm{NJ} \\ & \mathrm{~L} 250-\mathrm{NJ} \end{aligned}$ | Front Rear Plug-in | 160A | 156 | 151 | 147 | 143 |
|  | Front Rear | 250A | 244 | 237 | 230 | 223 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{E} 400-\mathrm{NJ} \\ & \mathrm{~S} 400 \mathrm{CJ} \\ & \mathrm{~S} 400-\mathrm{NJ} \\ & \mathrm{~S} 400-\mathrm{GJ} \end{aligned}$ | Front Rear Plug-in | 250 A | 244 | 237 | 230 | 223 |
|  |  | 400A | 390 | 380 | 369 | 358 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{H} 400 \mathrm{NJ} \\ & \mathrm{~L} 400-\mathrm{NJ} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { Front } \\ & \text { Rear } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | 250 A | 243 | 237 | 230 | 223 |
|  |  | 400A | 390 | 381 | 371 | 361 |
|  | Plug-in | 250A | 243 | 237 | 231 | 224 |
|  |  | 400 A | 392 | 384 | 376 | 368 |

Calibration Temperature: $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$

| MCCBTयP | Comection Type | Ratingatcealibration temperature,( $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) |  |  |  | $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{H} 250-\mathrm{NJ} \\ & \mathrm{~L} 250-\mathrm{NJ} \end{aligned}$ | Plug-in Conn. | 250A | 244 | 236 | 225 | 219 | 209 | 200 | 190 |


| MCCBTYP | Connection Iype: | Râting | Ratedilurrent (A) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { S250-PE } \\ & \text { H250-NE } \end{aligned}$ | Front Rear | 250 A | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 237.5 | 225 | 200 | 200 |
|  | Plug-in | 250 A | 250 | 237.5 | 225 | 225 | 200 | 200 | 157.5 | 157.5 |
| S400-NE | Front | 250A | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 225 | 200 |
| S400-GE | Rear Plug-in | 400A | 400 | 400 | 400 | 400 | 400 | 380 | 360 | 320 |
| H400-NE | Front | 250A | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 225 | 200 |
| L400-NE | Rear | 400A | 400 | 400 | 400 | 400 | 400 | 380 | 360 | 320 |
|  | Plug-in | 250A | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 225 | 200 |
|  |  | 400A | 400 | 400 | 400 | 400 | 400 | 380 | 360 | 320 |
| E630-NE S630-CE S630-GE | Fiont Rear* | 630 A | 630 | 630 | 630 | 630 | 598.5 | 598.5 | 567 | 504 |

TEMBREAK 2 MCCBs

## DLAENSOONS

E400-NJ, S400-CJ, S400-NJ, S400-NE, S400-GJ, S400-GE

## ASL: Arrangement Standard Line

$t \in:$ Handle Frame Centre Line


Front connected with Motor Operator




OPRRATING CHARACTERISTICS LET-THROUGH ENERGY CHARACTERISTICS

H160-NJ, L160-NJ, S250-PE, H250-NE, H250-NJ, L250-NJ. 440 V AC


Prospecive short circuit current in RMS sym. $(\mathrm{kA})$
E400-NJ, S $400-\mathrm{CJ}, \mathrm{S} 400-\mathrm{NJ}, \mathrm{S} 400-\mathrm{NE}, \mathrm{S} 400-\mathrm{GJ}$, S400-GE. 415 V AC .


H160-NJ, L160-NJ, S250-PE, H250-NE, H250-NJ, L250NJ. 690 V AC.


S400-CJ, S400-NJ, S400-NE, S400-GJ, S400-GE. 690 V AC.


## accessornes

## INSULATION ACCESSORIES

## Terminal Covers for Front Connection (CF)

Terminal covers for front connection are suitable for covering the exposed live parts of conductors terminated on the $M C C B$.


## Flush Terminal Covers (CS)

Flush rerminal covers are useful for increasing the ingress protection rating at the terminals without increasing the overall length. They can be used with busbar and for direct entry of stranded cable (with solderless cable clamp terminals (FW), refer to Section 6, Installation).
Flush terminal covers are identical to rear terminal covers for 400 A and 630 A frame models.
The user can remove a section of the rear terminal cover using a tool to allow entry of the conductor.

## Terminal covers for Rear Connection (CR)

Terminal covers for rear connecrion may be used on MCCBs fitted with rear connections (RP) or plug-in connections (PM). They prevent access to the terminals from the front and top.


Terminal Cavers for Rear Connection


## UNSTALLATION

## CONNECTION AND MOUNTING OPTIONS AND ACCESSORIES

Plug-in Mounting
The plug in mounting systen allows fast replacement of the MCCB body without the need to disturb the terminations. Solid conductors or cables terminated with compression terminals can be used.

Plug-In Safety Lock


The plug-in MCCB body is automatically locked to the base when the contacts are closed (toggle ON). It cannot be removed unless the contacts are in the isolated position (toggle OFF or TRIPPED). This system ensures safe removal of the MCCB from the base.


The connection bars for plug-in bases are optional and can be configured in the field either for front or rear access. The illustrations below show possible mounting and connection options for plug in bases.


1. Mounted on base plate with connection bars mounted for front access.
Insulation plates are supplied as standard and must be fitted.

2. Terminations in separate compartment. Connection bars are mounted for top access at the top and rear access at the bottom.

3. Mounted on angle bars. Connection bars are mounted for rear access.

## NHP

## Thermal magnetic type <br> S125GJ

## 65kA

Current rating:
$12.5-125 A$
Approvals and Tests:
Standards AS/NZS 3947-2, and IEC60947-2


Interrupting capacity:

|  | Voltage | lcu | 1cs |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| AC use | $380 / 400$ | 65 | 36 |
| DC use | 250 V | 40 | 40 |

Trip unit:
Adjustable thermal ( 0.63 Ir to $100 \% \mathrm{Ir}$ ) and adjustable magnetic ( 6 Im to 12 Im )

Dimensions (mm)

| Poles | 3 | 4 |
| :--- | :--- | ---: |
| $H$ | 155 | 155 |
| W | 90 | 120 |
| D less toggle) | 68 | 68 |
| Toggle cut-out |  | Standard DIN |


| Ampere Rating NRC |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj. } \operatorname{Ir}{ }^{11} \\ & \text { Min - Max. } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj. Im }{ }^{11} \\ & \text { Min-Max. } \end{aligned}$ | Cat. No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20 |  | 12.5-20 | 120-240 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { S125 GJ } 320 \\ & \text { S125 GJ } 420 \end{aligned}$ |
| 32 |  | 20-32 | 192-384 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { S125 GJ } 332 \\ & \text { S125 GJ } 432 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
| 50 |  | 32-50 | 300-600 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { S125 GJ } 350 \\ & \text { S125 GJ } 450 \end{aligned}$ |
| 63 |  | 40-63 | 378-756 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { S125 GJ } 363 \\ & \text { S125 GJ } 463 \end{aligned}$ |
| 100 |  | 63-100 | 600-1200 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { S125 GJ } 3100 \\ & \text { S125 GJ } 4100 \end{aligned}$ |
| 125 |  | 80-125 | 750-1500 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { S125 GJ } 3125 \\ & \text { S125 GJ } 4125 \end{aligned}$ |
| 1) | NRC Adj. Ir. Adj. Im | Ad | rated current e thermal setting magnetic setting |  |

Replaces: XH125NJ, TL100NJ, Note: check exact ratings or dimenions to suit your application requirement

## TemBreak MCCB's

## NHP

## Thermal magnetic type

E125NJ

## 25kA

Current rating:
12.5 - 125A

Approvals and Tests:
Standards AS/NZS 3947-2, and IEC60947-2
Interrupting capacity:

|  | Voltage | ICu | ICs |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| AC use | $380 / 415$ | 25 | 19 |
| DC use 250 V | 25 | 19 |  |



Trip unit:
Adjustable thermal ( 0.63 lr to $100 \% / r$ ) and adjustable magnetic ( 6 lm to 12 Im )

Dimensions (mm)

| Poles | 3 |
| :--- | :---: |
| H | 155 |
| W | 90 |
| D (less togqle) | 68 |
| Toggle cut-out | Standard DIN |


| Ampere Rating NRC |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj. Ir }{ }^{17} \\ & \text { Min - Max. } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj. Im }{ }^{11} \\ & \text { Min-Max. } \end{aligned}$ | Cat. No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20 |  | 12.5-20 | 120-240 | E125 NJ 320 |
| 32 |  | 20-32 | 192-384 | E125 NJ 332 |
| 50 |  | 32-50 | 300-600 | E125 NJ 350 |
| 63 |  | 40-63 | 378-756 | E125 NJ 363 |
| 100 |  | 63-100 | 600-1200 | E125 NJ 3100 |
| 125 |  | 80-125 | 750-1500 | E125 NJ 3125 |
| 1) | NRC: Adj. Ir. Adj. Im |  | rated current e thermal setting magnetic setting |  |

## DIMENSIONS

## E125-NJ, S125-NJ, S125-GJ

ASL: Arrangement Standard Line
比: Handle Frame Centre Line


Beyond the Standard ${ }^{\text {m }}$ TemBreak
page 85

TEMBREAK 2 MCCBs


INSTALLATION

## INSULATION DISTANCE IN mm (AT 440V AC MAXIMUM)

| Madel | Type | A | B1 | B2 | C | D | E |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| E125 | NJ | 50 | 10 | 10 | 0 | 25 | *(1) |
| S125 | NF | 50 | 10 | 10 | 0 | 25 | *(1) |
| S125 | NJ | 50 | 10 | 10 | 0 | 25 | *(1) |
| S125 | GJ | 75 | 45 | 25 | 0 | 25 | *(1) |
| H125 | NJ | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | $\cdot(1)$ |
| L. 125 | NJ | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | *(1) |
| S160 | NF | 50 | 40 | 30 | 0 | 25 | *(1) |
| S160, . | NJ | 50 | 40 | 30 | 0 | 25 | '(1) |
| S160 | GJ | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | *(1) |
| H160 | NJ | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | $\cdot(1)$ |
| L160 | NJ | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | $\cdot(1)$ |
| E250 | NJ | 50 | 40 | 30 | 0 | 25 | $\cdot(1)$ |
| S250 | NJ | 50 | 40 | 30 | 0 | 25 | *(1) |
| S250 | GJ | 100 | 80 | 30 | 0 | 25 | $\cdot(1)$ |
| \$250 | PE | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | -(1) |
| H250 | NJ | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | *(1) |
| H250 | NE | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | - 11 |
| 1250 | NJ | 100 | 80 | 60 | 0 | 50 | $\cdot(1)$ |
| E400 | NJ | 100 | 80 | 40 | 0 | 30 | *(1) |
| S400 | CJ | 100 | 80 | 40 | 0 | 30 | '(1) |
| S400 | NJ | 100 | 80 | 40 | 0 | 30 | $\cdot(1)$ |
| S400 | G.J | 100 | 80 | 40 | 0 | 30 | *(1) |
| S400 | GE | 100 | 80 | 40 | 0 | 30 | *(1) |
| H400 | NJ | 120 | 120 | 80 | 0 | 80 | *(1) |
| H400 | NE | 120 | 120 | 80 | 0 | 80 | $\cdot(1)$ |
| L400 | NJ | 120 | 120 | 80 | 0 | 80 | ${ }^{*}(1)$ |
| L400 | NE | 120 | 120 | 80 | 0 | 80 | ${ }^{-}(1)$ |
| E630 | NE | 120 | 100 | 80 | 0 | 80 | *(1) |
| S630 | CE | 120 | 100 | 80 | 0 | 80 | *(1) |
| S630 | GE | 120 | 100 | 80 | 0 | 80 | $\cdot(1)$ |

*Note: (1) Insulate the exposed conductor until it overlaps the moulded case at the terminal, or the terminal cover.


## APPLICATION DATA

## SELECTIVITY (DISCRIMINATION) AND CASCADE

## Selectivity

The principle of Selectivity (Discrimination) is based upon an analysis of several circuit breaker characteristics. These include time-current (tripping) curves, peak-let-through current ( $I_{\text {pak }}$ ) and energy let-through ( $\left.I^{2} t\right)$.

The figures stated give the maximum selectivity level with the two nominated breakers in series under short-circuit conditions. For an indication on selectivity under overloads refer to the circuit breaker tripping/characteristic curves, or use the NHP TemCurve selectivity analysis software package.
Selectivity can be enhanced beyond the breaking capacity of the downstream breaker provided it is backed up by an appropriately selected upstream breaker, which should not trip (unlatch) under the stated short circuit current.
Cascade
Cascading is achieved by using an upstream device to assist (back-up) a downstream device in clearing a fault current. This principal is necessary should the downstream device be required to clear a prospective short circuit current greater than the devices' breaking capacity.
In most cascading applications it is generally necessary for the upstream breaker to trip (unlatch), as well as the downstream breaker to give adequate back-up protection. As such, cascade is commonly used in feeding and protecting non-essential loads, such as basic lighting.
For more information on selectivity and cascading please refer to the latest NHP Part C catalogue.
＠ $400 / 415$ V

| Upstream MCCBs |  | 訔 |  | 쓰츰 | 岩 | 岩 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 㟶 } \end{aligned}$ | 唇 | 嵳 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Downstream MCCBs | $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{KA} \\ (\mathrm{RMS}) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathscr{\sim} \\ & 70 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{r} \text { N } \\ 125 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{r} \text { ज } \\ 50 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{r} 5 \\ 70 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $125$ | 200 | ＋ | 50 |
| ［E125NJ | 25 | 25／25 | 25\％65 | 25／36 | 25／50 | 25／65 | 25／85 | ：25／36 | 25／25 |
| S125NJ | 36 | 38／36 | 36／85 | 36／50 | 36／65 | 36／85 | ． $36 / 125$ | 36／36． | 36／3B |
| S125GJ | 65 | 65／65 | 65，125 | 50，50 | 65：70 | 65／125 | 65／150 | 36／36 | 50\％50 |
| H125NJ | 125 | 7070 | 125／125 | 50\％50 | 70：70 | 125／125 | 125／200 | 36／36 | 50\％50 |
| S160NJ | 36 |  |  | 38，50 | 36／65 | 36／85 | 36／125 | 36／36 | 36／50 |
| S160GN | 65 |  |  | 50\％50 | 65／70 | 65／125 | 65／150 | 36／36 | 50150 |
| H160NJ | 125 |  |  |  |  | 125／125 | 125／200 | 36／36 | 50150 |
| E250NJ | 25 |  |  |  | 1 | 25／65 | 25／85 | 25／36 | 25，25 |
| ［S250NJ | 36 |  |  |  |  | 36／85 | 36／25 | 36／36 | 36／36 |
| S250GN | 65 | I |  |  |  | $65 / 25$ | 65／150 | 36／36 | 50／50 |
| S250PE | 70 |  |  |  |  | 40／22 | 70／150 | 36／36 | 50，50 |
| ［H250NJ | 125 |  |  |  |  | 125／125 | 125／200 | 36／36 | 50／50 |
| H250PE | 125 |  |  |  |  | 125／125 | 125／200 | 36／36 | 50\％50 |
| E400NJ | 25 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10225 | 10，25 |
| S400CJ | 36 | ， |  |  |  |  |  | 10,38 | 10／36 |
| S400NE | 50 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10／36 | 10／50 |
| S400NJ | 50 |  | 1 |  |  |  |  | 10，36 | 10／36 |
| S4000． | 70 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10／38 | $10 / 50$ |
| H400NJ | 125 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10／36 | 10：50 |
| H400NE | 125 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 10，36 | $10 \% 50$ |
| E630NE | 36 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |  |
| E630CE | 50 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S630GE | 70 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |  |
| XS630Ca | 45 | ． |  |  |  | ！ |  |  |  |
| XS630NJ | 65 |  |  |  |  | 1 |  |  |  |
| XS630PJ | 85 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |  |
| XS630SE | 50 | ， |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XH630SE | 65 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XH630PE | 65 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XS800NJ | 65 |  | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XS800SE | 50 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XJ800PJ | 85 |  | 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XH800SE | 65 |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |  |  |
| XH800PE | 65 | 1 |  |  | $\cdot$ |  | ！ |  |  |
| XS1250SE | 65 |  |  |  |  |  | ！ |  |  |
| XS1600SE｜ | 85 |  |  |  |  |  | 1 |  |  |


| $\begin{gathered} X X / Y Y \\ \text { Solectivity } / \text { Coscade } \end{gathered}$ |  |  | w总ㅗㅗㅊ65 |  |  |  | $\begin{gathered} \text { 沾 } \\ \stackrel{0}{0} \\ \stackrel{0}{x} \\ 100 \end{gathered}$ |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 岂 } \\ & \text { 芯 } \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 山⿱山⿱口口口口口 } \\ & \text { مِx } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 25／50 | 25／25 | 25，36 | 25／96 | 25／65 | 25；25 | 25／25 | 25／25 | 25i／25 | 25／25 |
| ．36／65 | 38／36 | 36／50 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 |
| 65：70 | 65165 | 65／50 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／65 |
| 70\％70 | 70770 | 50\％50 | 65／65 | 65／85 | 85／50 | 85／50 | 100¢100 | 85／85 | 85／85 |
| 36，50 | 38／36 | 36／36 | 36／65 | 36／65 | 36／36 | 3636 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 |
| 65／70 | ．65／65 | 50゙50 | 5¢165 | 50， 65 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／ |
| 70／70 | 70，70 | 50／50 | 50／65 | 50¢85 | 85／65 | 85／65 | 100／100 | 85／85 | 85／ |
| 25／50 | 25／25 | 25；25 | 25／50 | 25／50 | 25／25 | 25／25 | 25／25 | 25／25 | 25／2 |
| 36／65 | 36／3日 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／38 | 36／36 | 36i／36 | 36／38 |
| 65／70 | 65／65 | 50；50 | 50／65 | 50／65 | 65／65 | 65／65 | 65／／65 | 65／65 | 65／ |
| 70，70 | 7070 | 50，50 | 50／65 | 50／65 | 7070 | 70，70 | 70／70 | 70／70 | 70\％ |
| 70／70 | 70，70 | 50，50 | 50／65 | 50／65 | 85／85 | 85／85 | 100／00 | 85／85 | 85／8 |
| 7070 | 70\％70 | 50\％50 | 50／65 | 50\％ 65 | 85／85 | 85／85 | 10¢100 | 85／85 | 85／85 |
| 10550 | 10／36 | 25／25 | 25／25 | 25／36 | 25／25 | 25：25 | 25／36 | 25，25 | 25／ |
| 10／65 | 10／50 | 25／36 | 25／36 | 25／50 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／50 | 38／36 | 38／ |
| 10，50 | 10／50 | 25／50 | 25／50 | 25.50 | 50，50 | 50，50 | 50／50 | 50／50 | 50／50 |
| 10.70 | $10 \cdot 6$ | 25／50 | 25／50 | 25\％ 6 | 50＇50 | 50，50 | 50／85 | 50／50 | 50\％50 |
| 10\％70 | 107D | 25／50 | 25／50 | 25／65 | 70／36 | 70／36 | 70／85 | 70，70 | 70 |
| 10,70 | 1070 | 25，50 | 25／65 | 25／65 | 125／85 | 125／85 | 125／100 | 125／85 | 125／8 |
| 10：70 | 10／70 | 25／50 | 25／65 | 25／65 | 125／85 | 125／85 | 125／100 | 125／85 | 125／8 |
|  |  | 25／36 | 25／36 | 2536 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／36 | 36／30 |
|  |  | 25i50 | 25／50 | 25／50 | 50／50 | 50／50 | 50／50 | 50／50 | 50／50 |
|  |  |  | 1 | 11 | 70\％70 | 70／70 | 70，70 | 70／0 | 70／70 |
|  |  |  |  | ： | $30 / 45$ | 30／45 | 30／45 | 35／45 | 35／45 |
|  |  |  |  | \％ | 30／65 | 30\％65 | 30／65 | 35／65 | 36／65 |
|  |  |  |  | ． | 30／85 | 30／65 | 30／85 | 35／85 | 35785 |
|  |  |  |  | 1. | 30；65 | $30 \cdot 65$ | 30／85 | 30／85 | 30／8 |
|  |  |  |  |  | 30／65 | 30／65 | 30／85 | 30\％85 | 30／85 |
|  |  |  |  | ： | 30／65 | ．30／65 | 301\％ 85 | 30／85 | 30／85 |
|  |  |  |  | $1{ }^{1 /}$ | 15／65 | 15／65 | 20\％65 | 35／65 | 35／65 |
|  |  |  |  | ii | 15；50 | 15／50 | 20／50 | 35／50 | 35／50 |
|  |  |  |  | ： | 15／85 | 15／85 | 20／85 | 35／85 | 35／B5 |
|  |  |  |  | ＂ | 15／65 | 15／65 | 20／65 | 35／65 | 35／65 |
|  |  |  |  | 11 | 15／65 | 15／65 | 20165 | 35／65 | 35／65 |
|  |  |  |  | i＇ |  |  | 20／65 | 35／65 | 35／65 |
|  |  |  |  | $1!$ |  |  |  | 35／85 | 35／85 |

4 NufleES

S $\exists 78 \forall 1 \wedge 11 \wedge 110 \exists 7 \exists S$


## APPLICATION DATJA

## CASCADE TABLES

| CASCADE <br> © 380－415 V AC ${ }^{1}$ ） |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { m } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { M } \\ & \text { 2 } \end{aligned}$ | $n$$N$$N$UZ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { O } \\ & \mathrm{N} \\ & \mathrm{M} \\ & \mathrm{c} \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { M } \\ & \text { Z } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { の } \\ & \text { a } \\ & \text { 2 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { の } \\ & \text { ò } \\ & \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{2} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { I } \\ & \text { 믈 } \\ & \stackrel{0}{2} \end{aligned}$ | $\stackrel{\Gamma}{\circ}$$\stackrel{\circ}{2}$$\mathbf{2}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { M } \\ & 0 \\ & \text { O} \\ & \mathbf{Z} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { N} \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \text { Z } \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { M } \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & m \end{aligned}$ | TNO른 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { N } \\ & \text { Hi } \\ & \text { 른 } \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| DownstreamMCCBs | $\begin{gathered} \text { KA } \\ \text { (RMS) } \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  | 25 | 36 | 65 | 125 | 200 | 36 | 65 | 125 | 200 | 25 | 36 | 65 | 70 | 125 | 125 | 200 |
| E125iNJ | 25 | － | 36 | 36 | 65 | 85 | 38 | 36 | 65 | 85 | － | 36 | ． 36 | － | 65 | 65 | $\overline{85}$ |
| S125NJ | 36 | － | － | 50 | 85 | 125 | － | 50 | 85 | 125 | － | － | － | － | 85 | 85 | 125 |
| S125GJ | 65 | － | － | － | 125 | 150 | － | － | 125 | 150 | － | － | ＇65 | T | 125 | 125 | 150 |
| H125NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | － | － | － | 200 | － | － | 65 | － | － | － | 200 |
| S160NJ | 36 | － | － | 65 | － | － | － | 65 | 85 | 125 | － | － | 65 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 125 |
| S160GJ | 65 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 125 | 150 | － | － | － | 70 | 125 | 125 | 150 |
| H160NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 200 | － | 1 － | － | － | － | － | 200 |
| S250NJ | 36 | － | － | － | － | － | － | 65 | － | － | － | － | － | 65 | 85 | 85 | 125 |
| S250GJ | 65 | － | － | － | － | 1 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 70 | 125 | 125 | 150 |
| S250PE | 70 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 125 | 125 | 150 |
| H250NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 200 |
| E400NJ | 25 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 36 | 65 | 65 | － |
| S400CJ | 36 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 50 | 70 | 70 | － |
| 5400 NJ | 50 | $\stackrel{-}{-}$ | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | 50 | 65 | 85 | 85 | － |
| S400G． | $70^{\circ}$ | － | － | － | － | $\stackrel{-}{-}$ | － | － | － | － | － | － | 50 | － | 125. | 125 | － |
| H400NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |

Note：＇）Ratings have not been verified where a dash＂－＂is shown．
All pick－up and time delay settings are to be set at a maximum for upstream MCCB＇s

| Upstream MCCBs |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CASCADE <br> （9）380－415 V AC ${ }^{\prime}$ ） |  | ® <br> $\stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{\circ}$ <br> $\stackrel{1}{2}$ |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { エ I } \\ & \text { 容 } \\ & \text { 은 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 「 } \\ & \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{O} \\ & \underset{Z}{2} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { F } \\ & \stackrel{\rightharpoonup}{0} \\ & \sum_{i n} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { M } \\ & \text { W } \\ & \text { O } \\ & \text { m } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  | $\times$ 0 0 0 0 0 m |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & -1 \\ & \mathbf{- 1} \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \mathbf{0} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 志 } \\ & \underset{N}{N} \\ & \text { H } \\ & \text { n } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| Downstream MCCBs | $\begin{aligned} & \text { KA } \\ & \text { (RMS) } \end{aligned}$ | 36 | 50 | 70 | 125 | 200 | 200 | 36 | 50 | 70 | 125 | 65 | 65 | 65 | 200 | 65 | 85 |
| E125NJ | 25 | 36 | 36. | 50 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 36 | － | 50 | － | ： 36 | 36 | 36 | － | － | － |
| S125NJ | 36 | － | 50 | 65 | 85 | 125 | 125 | － | － | 65 | － | 50 | 50 | － | － | － | － |
| S125GJ ： | 65 | － | － | 70 | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | $50^{\circ}$ | 70 | － | － | － | 65 | － | － | － |
| H125NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | 200 | － |  | － | － | － | － | 65 | － | 50 | － |
| S160NJ | 36 | － | 50 | 65 | 65 | 125 | 125 | － | 50 | 50 ： | － | － | 65 | 65 | － | － | － |
| S160GJ | 65 | － | － | 70. | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | － | 70 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |
| H160NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | 200 | － | － | － | － | － | － | 65 | － | 65 | $-$ |
| E250NJ | 25 | 36 | 36 | 50 | 65 | 85 | 85 | 36 | － | 50 | － | － | 36 | 50 | － | － | － |
| S250NJ | 36 | － | 50 | 65 | 85 | 125 | 125 | － | － | 65 | － | － | 65 | － | － | － | － |
| S250GJ | 65 | － | － | 70 | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | － | 70 | $-$ | － | － | － | － | － | － |
| S250PE | 70 | － | － | － | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | － | － | －． | － | － | － | － | － | － |
| H250NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | 200 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |
| E400NJ | 25 | 36 | 36 | $50^{\prime}$ | 65 | 85 | 85 | 36 | － | 50 | 36 | －－ | － | － | 36 | － | 36 |
| S400CJ | 36 | － | 50 | 65 | 70 | 100 | 100 | － | － | 65 | 50 | － | － | － | 50 | － | 50 |
| 5400 NJ | 50 | － | － | 70 | 85 | 125 | 125 | － | 36 | 70 | 65 | － | － | 50 | 65 | － | 65 |
| S400GJ | 70 | － | － | － | 125 | 150 | 150 | － | 36 | － | － | － | － | 50 | － | 36 | 85 |
| H400NJ | 125 | － | － | － | － | 200 | 200 | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － | － |

Note：＇）Ratings have not been verified where a dash＂＿＂is shown．
All pick－up and time delay settings are to be set at a maximum for upstream MCCBs


## SELECTIVITY AND CASCADE TEMBREAK 2 MCCBs AND DIN-T / SAFE-T MCBs

| Upstream MCCB |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SELECTIVITY / CASCADE <br> 셩 415 VAC |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { M } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { Z } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { N } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { N } \\ & \text { Z } \end{aligned}$ |  | N N O Z 2 | N H K 2 |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ne } \\ & \text { ti } \\ & 0.8 \\ & \text { ni } \end{aligned}$ | I + ¢ ¢ 2 |
| Downstream MCB | Amp rating | (RMS) | 25 | 36 | 65 | 36 | 65 | 36 | 70 | 125 |
| DTCB6 | 2-20 | 6 | 18/18 | 25/25 | 35/35 | 35/35 | 35/35 | - | - | - |
|  | 25-63 | 6 | 18/18 | 20/25 | 20/25 | 30/30 | 30/30 | - | - | - |
| DTCB10 | 0.5i-32 | 10 | 18/18 | 30/30 | 30/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 40/50 |
|  | 40-63 | 10 | 18/18 | 20/25 | 25/25 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 |
| DSRCBH / | 0.5-32 | 10 | 18/18 | 30/30 | 30/50. | 35/35 | 40/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 40/50 |
| DSACD ${ }^{\text {a }}$ | 40 | $10^{\circ}$ | $78 / 18$ | $20 / 25$ | 25/25 | $30 / 30^{\circ}$ | 30/30 | =30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 |
| Din-T10H | 80-125 | 10 | 4/18 | 4/25 | 4/25 | 15/15 | 15/15 | 10/10 | 10/10 | - |
| DTĊH15 | 0.5-32 | 15 | 18/18 | 30 | 30/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 35/35 | 40/50 | 40/50 |
|  | 40,-63 | 15 | 18/18 | $20^{\circ}$ | 25/25 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 | 30/30 |
| Safe-T | 16-20 | 6 | 3/10 | 3/10 | 3/10 | - | - | - | - | - |
| SRCB' | 16-20 | 6 | 3/10 | 3/10 | $3 / 10$ | - | - | - | - | - |

## Guide

$\frac{\mathrm{XX} / \mathrm{YY}}{\text { Selectivity }}$

Notes: All figures stated are at $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}$.


APPLICATDON DATA

## MOTOR STARTING TYPE 1 CO-ORDINATION TABLES

## Short-CIrcult Co-Ordination Motor Starting Table

Type '1'
Terasakj MCCB's \& Sprecher + Schuh KT7's
DOL starting 50/65 kA@400/415 V to AS/NZS 60947.4.1

|  |  | Terasakd Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor Size (kW) | Approx. amps © $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ (A) | мссв | Contactor |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30PE/1.4 | CAT- ${ }^{\text {a }}$ |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PB/2 | CA7- |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | XM30РВ 2.8 | CA7- ${ }^{\text {a }}$ |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30PB/4.0 | CAT- ${ }^{\text {ca }}$ |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XM30PB/5 | CA7- |
| 2.2 | 4.6 | ХМ30Р石 | CA7- |
| 3 | 6.5 | Хм330РВ/10 | CA7̇- |
| 4 | 6.2 | XM30PE/12 | CAT -8 |
| 5.5 | 11 | S125G./20 | CA7-12 |
| 7.5 | 14 | S125G.120 | CA7-18 |
| 11 | 21 | S125GJ/32 | CA7-23 |
| 15 | 28 | S125G./50 | CA7-80 |
| 18.5 | 34 | S125G1/50 | CA7-37 |
| 22 | 40 | S125GJ/as | CA7-43 |
| 30 | 55 | S125Gd/100 | CA7-60 |
| 37 | 66 | S125Gd/100 | CA7-72 |
| 45 | 80 | S125G/125 | CA7-85 |
| 55 | 100 | S125GJ125 | CAE-110 |
| 5 | 130 | S250PE 250 | CAB-140 |
| 0 | 155 | S250PER250 | CAB-180 |
| 10 | 200 | S250PE/250 | CA6-210 |
| 32 | 225 | S400GE/400 | CAB-210 |
| 60 | 270 | S400GE/400 | CAB-300 |
| 00 | 361 | S400GE/400 | CAB-420 |


| Terasakd Comblnations |  | Sprecher + Schuh Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Overload Relay | Thermal Sétung (A) | KT7 Circuh Breaker | Contactor |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.6 | KTA7-25S-1.0A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.6 | KTA7-25S-1.6A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.8-2.4 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25S-4.0A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 4.0-8.0 | KTA7-25S-6.3A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7.24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25S-6.3A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25S-10A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA7-25H-16A | CA7-12 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-.18 | KTA7-25H-16A | CA7-16 |
| CT 7-24 | 18-24 | KTA7-45H-20A | CA7-23 |
| CT 7-45 | 18-30 | KTA7-45H-32A | CA7-30 |
| CT 7-45 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA7-37 |
| CT 7-45 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA7-43 |
| CT 7-75 | 45-80 | KTA3-100-63A | CA7-60 |
| CT 7-75 | 80-75 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7.72 |
| CT 7-100 | 70-90 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-85 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-100A | CA6-110 |
| CEEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-160A | CA6-140 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-160A | CA6-180 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 100-400 | KTA3-250S-200A | CA6-210 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | KTA3-250S-250A | CA6-250 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | KTA 3 -400S-320A | CA6-300 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 100-400 | KTA3-400S-400A | CA6-420 |

Notes: - Thermal or electronic ovarload relays may be used

- XM30PB MCCB's can replaced whth S125GJ/20 甘 required

Combinations based on the thermal overload relay tripping betore the circuit breaker at overload currents up to the motor locked rotor current.


APPLICATION DATA

## MOTOR STARTING TYPE 2 CO-ORDINATION TABLES

Short-CIrcult Co-Ordination DOL Motor Starting Table
Type '2'
Terasaki MCCB's \& Sprecher + Schuh KT7's
DOL starting 50/65 kA © 400/415 V to AS/NZS 60947.4.1

|  |  | Terasakd Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor Size (kW) | Approx. amps © <br> $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ (A) | мссв | Contactar |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XMSOPBM. 4 | CA7- |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PB/2 | CA7- |
| 0.75 | 1.8 |  | CA7- |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XMSOPB/4.0 | CA7-18 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | хM30РВ/5 | CAZ-10 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XMSOPR/8 | CA7-18 |
| 3 | 6.5 | XMSOPB/ | CA7-30 |
| 4 | 8.2 |  | CA7-S0 |
| 5.5 | 11 | S125G/2/20 | CA7-30 |
| 7.5 | 14 | S125G/220 | CA7-30 |
| 11 | 21 | 5125G/32 | CA7-30 |
| 15 | 28 | S125G/5is | CA7-43 |
| 18.5 | 34 | S125c./50 | CAT-43 |
| 22 | 40 | 5125G/43 | CA7-43 |
| 30 | 55 | S125G//100 | CA7-72 |
| 37 | 66 | S125G//100 | CA7-72 |
| 45 | 80 | S125G./125 | CAB-105 |
| 55 | 100 | S250PE/180 | CAB-105 |
| 75 | 130 | S250PER250 | CAB-140 |
| 90 | 155 | 8250PE/250 | CAB-170 |
| 110 | 200 | S250PER250 | CAB-210 |
| 132 | 225 | 8400PE/400 | CAB-210 |
| 160 | 270 | S400PE/400 | CAB-300 |
| 200 | 361 | 3400PEI400 | CAB420 |


| Terasak Combinatione |  | Sprecher + Schuh Comblnations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Overioad Relay | Thermal <br> Setting (A) | K 17 Circult Breaker | Contactor |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.6 | KTA7-25S-1A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.0 | KTA7-25S-1.6A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-24 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA7-9 |
| CT $7-24$. | 22.4-4.0. $\ldots$ | KTA7-25S-4A | CA7-9 |
| GT 7-24 | 4.0-6.0 | KTA7-25S-6.3A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25S-6.3A | CA7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25S-10A | CA7-9 |
| CT' 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA7-25H-16A | CA7-12 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-10 | KTA7-25H-16A | CA7-16 |
| CT 7-24 | 16-24 | KTA 7 -45H-20A | CA7-23 |
| CT $7-45$ | 10-30 | KTA7-45H-32A | CA7-30 |
| CT 7.45 | 30-46 | KTA 7 -45-45A | CA7-37 |
| CT 7.45 | 30-45. | KTA 7 -45H-45A | CA7-43 |
| CTT 7-75 | 45-80 | KTA3-100-63A | CA7-60 |
| CT 7-75 | 60-75 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-72 |
| CT 7-100 | 70-80 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-85 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-100A | CA6-110 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-160 | KTA3-160S-160A | CA6-140 |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | KTA3-160S-160A | CA6-180 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | KTA3-250S-200A | CA6-210 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | KTA3-250S-250A | CA6-250 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | KTA 3 -400S-320A | CA6-300 |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | KTA3-400S-400A | CA6-420 |



- XM30PB combinations can be replaced with S125GJ/20 and CA7-30 if required
- XM30PB combinations can be replaced with S125GJ/20 and CA7-30 if required Combinations based on the thermal overload relay uipping betore
breaker at overload currents up to the motor locked rotor current.


APPLCATION DATA

## MOTOR STARTING TYPE 2 CO-ORDINATION

## Short-CIrcult Co-OrdInation DOL Motor StartIng Table

Type '2'
Terasaki MCCB's \& Sprecher + Schuh KT7's
DOL starting $85 \mathrm{kA} @ 400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ to $\mathrm{AS} / \mathrm{N} 2 \mathrm{~S}$ 60947.4.1


|  |  | Terasakd Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor Size (kW) | Approx. amps © $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ (A) | MCCÉ | Contactor |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30P日/1. 4 | CA 7-8 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PER2 | CA 7-9 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | XM30РВ22.8 | CA 7-9 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30PE/4.0 | CA 7-18 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XM30PE/5 | CA 7-18 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | ХM30РВ/8 | CA 730 |
| 3 | 6.5 | XM30PE/10 | CA 7-30 |
| 4 | 8.2 | XM30РE/12 | CA 7-30. |
| 5.5 | 11 | H125N $1 / 20$ | CA 7-30 |
| 7.5 | 14 | H125N//20 | CA 7 -30 |
| 11 | 21 | H125N//32 | CA 7 -30 |
| 15 | 28 | H125N//50 | CA 7-49 |
| 18.5 | 34 | $\mathrm{H} 125 \mathrm{NL} / 50$ | CA 7-43 |
| 22 | 40 | H125N//ES | CA 7-43 |
| 30 | 55 | H125NL/100 | CA 7-72 |
| 37 | 66 | H125N//100 | CA 7-72 |
| 45 | 80 | H125Nu/180 | CA 8-105 |
| 55 | 100 | H180NL/160 | CA E-105 |
| 75 | 130 | H250PE/250 | CA 0-210 |
| 90 | 155 | H250PE/250 | CA 8-2io |
| 110 | 200 | H250PE/250 | CA 8-210 |
| 132 | 225 | H400NE/400 | CA 8 -210 |
| 160 | 270 | H400NE/400 | CA 8 -300 |
| 200 | 361 | H400NE/400 | CA 8-420 |


| Terasak Combinations |  | Sprecher + Schuh Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Overload Relay | Thermal Setting (A) | KT7 Circuit Breaker | Contactor |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.6 | KTA7-25S-1A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7.24 | 1.0-1.8 | KTA7-25S-1.6A | CA $7-9$ |
| CT 7-24 | 1.8-2.4 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 24-4.0 | KTA7-25H-2.5A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25H-4A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7.24 | 4.0-8.0 | KTA 7 -25H-6.3A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7.24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25H-6.3A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 8.0-10 | KTA7-25H-10A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7 -24 | 10.18 | KTA7-45H-16A | CA 7-12 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA 7 -45H-16A | CA 7-16 |
| CT 7-24 | 18-24 | KTA7-45H-20A | CA 7-23 |
| CT 7.45 | 18-30 | KTA7-45H-32A | CA 7-30 |
| CT 7.45 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA 7-37 |
| CT 7.45 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA 7-43 |
| CT 7-75 | 45-80 | KTA3-100-63A | CA7-60 |
| CT 7-75 | A0-75 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-72 |
| CT 7-100 | 70-80 | KTA3-100-90A | CA7-85 |
| CEE 1-11/12 | 20-180 | - | - |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | - | - |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | - | $\cdot$ |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | - | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | $\bullet$ | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | $\cdot$ | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | - | - |

Notes: - Thermal or electronic overlead relays may be used.
XM30PB combinations can be replaced with H125GJ/20 and CA7-30 it required
Combinations based on the thermal overtoad relay tripping betore the circuit
breaker at overload currents up to the motor locked rotor current.


APPLICATION DATA

## MOTOR STARTING TYPE 2 CO-ORDINATION

## Short-Circult Co-Ordinatlon DOL Motor Starting Table

Type '2'
Terasaki MCCB's \& Sprecher + Schuh KT7's
DOL starting $100 \mathrm{KA} \oplus 400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ to ASNZS 60947.4.1


|  |  | Terasakd Comblnations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor Slze (kW) | Approx. amps © $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ (A) | MCCE | Contactar |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | H125N//20 | CA 7-30 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | H125N/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | H125NJP20 | CA 7-30 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | H125NJ/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | H125N/20. | - - CA $7-30$ |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | H125N/20 | CA 7 -30 |
| 3 | 6.5 | H125N//20 | CA 7 -30 |
| 4 | 8.2 | H125NL/20 | CA 730 |
| 5.5 | 11 | H125NJ/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 7.5 | 14 | H125NJ/20 | CA 7-30 |
| 11 | 21 | H125Nu/32 | CA 7.30 |
| 15 | 28 | H125N//50 | CA 7-43 |
| 18.5 | 34 | H125NJ/50 | CA 7-43 |
| 22 | 40 | H125NJ/63' | CA 7.43 |
| 30 | 55 | H125-N.//100 | CA $7-80$ |
| 37 | 66 | H125-N.//100 | CA 7-72 |
| 45 | 80 | H125-NL/M25 | CA 7-85 |
| 55 | 100 | H250-NE/160 | CA 6 -85 |
| 75 | 130 | H250-NER250 | CA 6-140 |
| 90 | 155 | H250-NER250 | CA 6-140 |
| 110 | 200 | H250-NE/250 | CA 6-180 |
| 132 | 225 | H400-NE/400 | CA $8-420$ |
| 160 | 270 | H400-NE/400 | CA $0-420$ |
| 200 | 361 | H400-NE/400 | CA 6-420 |


| Terasakd Combinations |  | Sprecher + Schuh Combinations |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Overlmad Relay | Thermal Setting (A) | $K T 7$ Circult Breaker | Contactor |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-1.0 | KTA7-25S-1A | CA 7.9 |
| CT, 7-24 | 1.0-1.8 | KTA7-25S-1.6A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 1.0-2.4 | KTA7-25S-2.5A | CA 7-9 |
| GT 7-24 | 2.4-4.0 | KTA7-25H-2.5A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7 24. | $=24-4.0 \cdot=$ | KTA7-25H-4A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 4.0-8.0 | KTA7-25H-6.3A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 6.0-10 | KTA7-25H-6.3A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 6.0-10 | KTA7-25H-10A | CA 7-9 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA7-45H-16A | CA 7-12 |
| CT 7-24 | 10-18 | KTA7-45H-16A | CA 7-16 |
| CT 7-24 | 18-24 | KTA7-45H-20A | CA 7-23 |
| CT 7.46 | 18-30 | KTA 7 -45 $\mathrm{H}-32 \mathrm{~A}$ | CA 7-30 |
| CT 7-45 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA 7-37 |
| CT 7.45 | 30-45 | KTA7-45H-45A | CA 7-43 |
| CT 7-75 | 45-80 | - | - |
| CT 7-75 | 80-75 | $\cdot$ | - |
| CT 7-100 | 70-80 | $\cdot$ | $\cdot$ |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | $\cdot$ | - |
| CEE 1-11/12 | 20-180 | - | $\cdot$ |
| CEF 1-11/12 | 20-180 | - | - |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | $\cdot$ | $\cdot$ |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | - | $\cdot$ |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 180-400 | $\cdot$ | $\cdot$ |
| CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 | $\bullet$ | - |

[^3]- Combinations based on the thermal overload relay tripping betore the circuit breaker at overload currents up to the motor locked rotor current.


OPRRATING CHARACTRRISTICS

## THERMAL MAGNETIC CHARACTERISTICS

125A Frame MCCBs

Time/current characteristic curves
E125-NJ, S125-NJ, S125-GJ


Time/current characteristic curves H125-NJ,L125-NJ



## OPERATMNG CMARACTERUSTES

## THERMAL MAGNETIC PROTECTION

Adjustment Dials


1. $I_{\mathrm{R}}$ is the thermal element adjustment dial and is used to set the rated current to match the conductor rating.
$I_{\mathrm{R}}$ can be set berween 0.63 and 1.0 times $I_{n}$.
2. $I_{\mathrm{i}}$ is the magnetic element adjustment dial and is used to set the short circuit tripping threshold to suit the application.
$I_{\mathrm{i}}$ can be set between 6 and 12 times $I_{\mathrm{n}}$ on 125A and 400A frame models.
$I_{i}$ can be set berween 6 and 13 times $I_{n}$ on 250A frame models with ratings of $160 \mathrm{~A}, 200 \mathrm{~A}$ and 250 A .
$I_{\mathrm{i}}$ can be ser berween 6 and 12 times $I_{\mathrm{n}}$ on 250A frame models with ratings of 125A and less.

Models, Types and Rated Currents of Thermal Elements

| Mode] | TVe | Currenfating ${ }^{\text {a }}$ (a) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| S125 | -NF | 16, 20, 25, 32, 40, 50, 63, 80, 100, 125 |
| E125. | - ${ }^{\text {NJ }}$ | 20, 32, 50, 63, 100, 125. |
| S125 | - NJ : | 20, 32, 50, 63, 100, 125 |
| S125 | -GJ | 20, 32, 50, 63, 100, 125 |
| H125. | -NJ | 20, 32, 50, 63, 100, 125 |
| L125 | -NS | 20, 32, 50, 63, 100, 125. |
| S160 | -NF | 16, 20, 25, 32, 40, 50, 63, 80, 100, 125, 160 |
| S160 | - NJ | 20, 32, 50, 63, 100; 125, 160 |
| S160 | -G.J | $50,63,100,125,160$ |
| H160 | -NJ | 160 |
| L160 | - NJ | 160. |
| E250 | -NJ | 20, 32, 50, 63, 100, 125, 160, 200, 250 |
| S250 | -NJ | 160,200, 250 |
| \$250 | -GJ | 160,200, 250 |
| H250 | -NJ | 160,250 |
| L250 | - NJ | 160,250 |
| E400 | -NJ | 250,400 |
| S400 | -C. | 250,400 |
| S400 | -NJ | 250,400 |
| S400 | -G.J | 250,400 |
| H400 | - NJ | 250,400 |
| L400 | -NJ | 250,400 |



OPERATING CMARACTERISTMCS

## LET-THROUGH PEAK CURRENT CHARACTERISTICS

S125-NF. 240V AC


E125-NJ, S125-NJ, S125-GJ. 440 V AC.


S160-NF. 240 V AC.


S125-NJ, S125-GJ. 690V AC.



OPERATING CHMRACTERISTICS

## LET-THROUGH ENERGY CHARACTERISTICS

S125-NF. 240 V AC



E125-NJ, S125-NJ, S125-GJ. 440V AC.


S160-NF. 240 V AC


S125-NJ, Sl25-GJ. 690 V AC.



TemBreak MCCB's

## N-P

Accessories to suit 125-630AF MCCBs $\square$
External accessories
Cat. No.
Door interlocking, variable depth Suits MCCB types

|  | E125, S125 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | IP54 rated |  |
|  | Grey/black | T2HP12R5BNA4 |
|  | Grey/black c/w key lock | T2HP12R5BKA4 |
| 80nt ${ }^{2}$ | Red/yellow | T2HP12R5RNA4 |
| $\underline{4}$ | Red/yellow c/w key lock | T2HP12R5RKA4 |
|  | IP65 rated |  |
| - $\mathrm{Sa}^{\text {a }}$, | Grey/black | T2HP12R6BNA4 |
|  | Grey/black c/w key lock | T2HP12R6BKA4 |
| 8 - 4 | Red/yellow | T2HP12R6RNA4 |
|  | Red/yellow c/w key lock | T2HP12R6RKA4 |



H125, L125, S160, H160, L160, E250, S250, H250, L250

IP54 rated
Grey/black T2HP25R5BNA4
Grey/black c/w key lock T2HP25R5BKA4
Red/yellow T2HP25R5RNA4
Red/yellow c/w key lock
T2HP25R5RKA4

IP65 rated
Grey/black
T2HP25R6BNA4
Grey/black c/w key lock
T2HP25R6BKA4
Red/yellow
T2HP25R6RNA4
Red/yellow c/w key lock
T2HP25R6RKA4

Note: Handles supplied with shaft


## ACCESSOROES

## OPERATING HANDLES \& LOCKING DEVICES

TemBreak 2 handles are extremely reliable, having been designed to endure the same switching duty as the host MCCB.
It is easy to fit the operating unit to the MCCB. Fitting involves three easy steps:

1. Align breaker toggle with operating mechanism
2. Push handle into position (the handle's round pegs locate securely in the breaker's round holes and the handle's* square pegs in the breaker's square holes).
3. Twist locking screws through 45 degrees.*

## Safety Features

- Door interlock mechanism with override facility included as standard
- IP54 (door mounted version), IP 54 as standard (breaker mounted version)
- IP65 (door mounted version), IP 65 optional (breaker mounted version)
- Locks OFF with up to 3 padlocks ( 8 mm hasps)
- Optional keylock in OFF position
- Available in black or red and yellow
- A trip test can be performed with the handle fitted to the MCCB


## Orientation

To switch the breaker from OFF to ON the handle is rotated through 90 degrees in a clockwise direction.

The ON (I) and OFF (O) indication of the handle can be re-oriented in steps of 90 degrees with respect to the operating mechanism. This allows the indication position to remain the same whether the breaker is mounted vertically (right side up or upside down) or horizontally (on its left side or on its right side). The hole cut-out dimensions for a panel or door will remain unchanged if the handle is re-oriented. The handle's axis of rotation


MCCB ON


MCCB ON is on the intersection of the centre lines of a 3 P MCCB. This means that the positioning of the door cutouts is symmetrical for breakers mounted horizontally on either side of a vertical busbar system.

Cubicle Door Cutouts


Using TonBreak 2 Operating Handles


Using orher MCCB Operating Handles


## ACCESSORDES

## OPERATING HANDLES \& LOCKING DEVICES

## Door Mounted Handle (HP)



Door Mounted Handle with Optional Keylock
Breaker Mounted Handle (HB)


This handle is used to operate a circuir breaker mounted just behind a compartment door with the door closed. The operating unit and the handle itself are mounted directly onco the circuit breaker. The handle protrudes through a cutout in the door. A moulded door flange is supplied with the handle which covers the cutout from the front.

Padlocking and keylocking is possible in the OFF position or both the ON and OFF position depending on the mounting direction.
Breaker Mownted Handle Padlocked in the OFF Position

## Locking Devices

Toggle locking devices allow MCCBs to be locked ON or OFF using up to three padlocks. Locking devices for 125A, 160A and 250A frame models accept padlocks with 5 mm hasp diameter. Locking devices for 400 A and 630 A frame models accept padlocks with 8 mm hasp diameter.


S250 Locked OFF


S400 Locked OFF

Fittings for Castell and Fortress locks are available. They are suitable for use on toggle-operated MCCBs, or on door mounted handles (HP) for MCCBs.


## DUNENSUONS

Door Mounted Handle

| Applicablé MCCB |  | A ${ }^{1}$ | B | C | Shat support |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { E125 } \\ & \text { S125 } \end{aligned}$ |  | 540 max. | 370 | 421 | With + |

* 1: Max. means the maximum length for $A$ without curting the shaft.
+ The shaft can be cut to the required length. If it is necessary to cut the shaft so short that it does not protrude beyond the shaft support, the shaft suppor may be removed.


ASL: Arrangement Standard Line
Padiock dimensions (mm) t : Handle Frame Centre Line
$\mathbb{E}$ : Handle Centre Line



## DUMENSIONS

## Door Mounted Handle

| Applicablo MCCE | A*1 | 0 | C | D | Shaft support |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| E250 |  |  |  |  |  |
| S250 (except S250-PE) | 540 max. | 370 | 421 | 186 | With + |
| S250-PE |  |  |  |  |  |
| H125 L125 |  |  |  |  |  |
| H160 L160 | 575 max. | 370 | 421 | 221 | With + |
| H250 L250 |  |  |  |  |  |

* 1: Max. means the maximum length for $A$ without cutting the shaft.
+ The shaft can be cut to the required length. If it is necessary to cut the shaft so short that it does not protrude beyond the shaft support, the shaft support may be removed.



DRMENSIONS
Door Mounted Handle

| Applicable MCCB | A *1 | B | C | D | Shaft 8upport |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| E400 E630 | 270 min . | 12 | 107.5 | - | Without |
| S400 S630 | 610 max. | 280 | 447.5 | 261 | With + |
| H400 | 307 min . | 12 | 107.5 | - | Without |
| L400 | 647 max. | 280 | 447.5 | 298 | With + |

* 1: Min. means the minimum length for $A$ by cutting the shaft.

Max. means the maximum length for $A$ without cutting the shaft.

+ The shaft can be cut to the required length. If it is necessary to cut the shaft so short that it does not protrude beyond the shaft support, the shaft support may be removed.


ASL: Arrangement Standard Line ti:Handle Frame Centre Line $\mathbb{q}$ : Handle Centre Line

## Padlock dimensions (mm)



MCCB's

## NHP

## Accessories to suit 125-630AF MCCBs

| External accessories | Cat. No. |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Door interlocking, variable depth Suits MCCB types |  |  |
| E400, S400, H400, L400, E630, S630 |  |  |
| Remprez | IP54 rated Grey/black |  |
|  | Grey/black c/w key lock | T2HP40R5BKA4 |
| -1 | Red/yellow | T2HP40R5RNA4 |
| Fal 0 | Red/yellow $\mathrm{c} / \mathrm{w}$ key lock | T2HP40R5RKA4 |
| +4 - | IP65 rated |  |
|  | Grey/black | T2HP40R6BNA4 |
|  | Grey/black c/w key lock | T2HP40R6BKA4 |
|  | Red/yellow | T2HP40R6RNA4 |
|  | Red/yellow c/w key lock | T2HP40R6RKA4 |

Note: Handles supplied with shaft

## Mechanical Interlocks

Link Interlock - suitable for manual or motorised operation. Will accept handles. Suitable for front or rear connection


E125, S125
With trip interlock function
3 or 4 pole right side section
T2ML12RA
3 pole left side section
T2ML12L3A
4 pole left side section
T2ML12L4A

H125, L125, S160, H160, L160, E250, S250, H250, L250
With trip interlock function
3 or 4 pole right side section
3 pole left side section
T2ML25RA
T2ML25L3A
4 pole left side section
T2ML25L4A

E400, S400, H400, L400, E630, S630
With trip interlock function
3 or 4 pole right side section
T2ML40RA
3 pole left side section
T2ML40L3A
4 pole leff side section
T2ML40L4A

Refer page 53 if MCCB labels are required or refer to NHP.


## ACCESSORDES

## OPERATING HANDLES \& LOCKING DEVICES

TemBreak 2 handles are extremely reliable, having been designed to endure the same switching dury as the host MCCB.

It is easy to fit the operating unit to the MCCB. Fitting involves three easy steps:

1. Align breaker toggle with operating mechanism
2. Push handle into position (the handle's round pegs locate securely in the breaker's round holes and the handle's* square pegs in the breaker's square holes).
3. Twist locking screws through 45 degrees.*

## Safety Features

- Door interlock mechanism with override facility included as standard
- IP54 (door mounted version), IP 54 as standard (breaker mounted version)
- IP65 (door mounted version), IP 65 optional (breaker mounted version)
- Locks OFF with up to 3 padlocks ( 8 mm hasps)
- Optional keylock in OFF position
- Available in black or red and yellow
- A trip test can be performed with the handle fitted to the MCCB


## Orientation

To switch the breaker from OFF to ON the handle is rotated through 90 degrees in a clockwise direction.
The ON (I) and OFF (O) indication of the handle can be re-oriented in steps of 90 degrees with respect to the operating mechanism. This allows the indication position to remain the same whether the breaker is mounted vertically (right side up or upside down) or horizontally (on its left side or on its right side). The hole cut-out dimensions for a panel or door will remain unchanged if the handle is re-oriented. The handle's axis of rotation


MCCB ON
 is on the intersection of the centre lines of a 3 P MCCB. This means that the positioning of the door cutouts is symmetrical for breakers mounted horizontally on either side of a vertical busbar system.

Cubicle Door Cutouts


Using TemBreak 2 Opriating Handles


Using other MCCB Oprating Handes


## accesssornes

## OPERATING HANDLES \& LOCKING DEVICES

Door Mounted Handle (HP)


Door Mounted Handle with Oprional Keylock
Breaker Mounted Handle (HB)


The door mounted operating handle is used to operate a circuit breaker mounted inside a cubicle from outside the door. It consists of an operating mechanism that is mounted on the breaker, an operating handle that is mounted on the door, and a shaft that transmits the turning force from the handle to the operating unit. The shaft can be cut to the required length.

This handle is used to operate a circuit breaker mounted just behind a compartment door with the door closed. The operating unit and the handle itself are mounted directly onto the circuit breaker. The handle protrudes through a cutout in the door. A moulded door flange is supplied with the handle which covers the cutout from the front.

Padlocking and keylocking is possible in the OFF position or both the ON and OFF position depending on the mounting direction.
Breaker Mounted Handle Padlocked in the OFF Position

## Locking Devices

Toggle locking devices allow MCCBs to be locked ON or OFF using up to three padlocks. Locking devices for 125A, 160A and 250 A frame models accept padlocks with 5 mm hasp diameter. Locking devices for 400 A and 630 A frame models accept padlocks with 8 mm hasp diameter.



S400 Locked OFF

Fittings for Castell and Fortress locks are available. They are suitable for use on toggle-operated MCCBs, or on door mounted handles (HP) for MCCBs.

|  |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| TEMBREAK 2 MCCBs | $\Delta$$\square$ $\square$ $\square$ <br> $\square$   |

## DUMENSIONS

## Door Mounted Handle



* 1: Max. means the maximum length for $A$ without cutting the shaft.
+ The shaft can be cut to the required length. If it is necessary to cut the shaft so short that it does not protrude beyond the shaft support, the shaft support may be removed.


ASL: Arrangement Standard Line比: Handle Frame Centre Line $\Phi$ : Handle Centre Line

Padlock dimensions (mm)



## DRMENSIONS

## Door Mounted Handle



* 1: Max. means the maximum length for $A$ without cutting the shaft.
+ The shaft can be cut to the required length. If it is necessary to cut the shaft so short that it does not protrude beyond the shaft support, the shaft support may be removed.



ASL: Arrangement Standard Line $\leftrightarrow$ :Handle Frame Centre Line $q$ :Handle Centre Line



Door Mounted Handle


* 1:Min, means the minimum length for $A$ by cutting the shaft

Max.means the maximum length for $A$ without cutting the shaft.

+ The shaft can be cut to the required length. If it is necessary to cut the shaft so short that it does not protrude beyond the shaft support, the shaft support may be removed.


keys with 3 mm width across fiat)


ASL: Arrangement Standard Line H: Handle Frame Centre Line $\mathcal{G}$ : Handle Centre Line


# MINIATURE CIRCUIT BREAKER 

## 1. MCB TECHNICAL DETAILS

## 2. MCB/RCD TECHNICAL DETAILS

## Miniature circuit breakers

## Din-T6 series 6 kA MCB

© Standards AS/NZS 4898
v. Approval No. N17481
[. Current range 2-63 Amps 1, 2 and 3 pole

- Seatable and lockable handle
- Available in curve type C and D
- Mounts on CD chassis ( 250 A and 355 A )

1 pole 1 module

| In (A) | C - Curve 5-10 In |
| :--- | :--- |
| 2 | DTCB6102C |
| 4 | DTCB6104C |
| 6 | DTCB6106C |
| 10 | DTCB6110C |
| 13 | DTCB6113C |
| 16 | DTCB6116C |
| 20 | DTCB6120C |
| 25 | DTCB6125C |
| 32 | DTCB6132C |
| 40 | DTCB6140C |
| 50 | DTCB6150C |
| 63 | DTCB6163C |

2 pole 2 modules

| 2 | DTCB6202C |
| :--- | :--- |
| 4 | DTCB6204C |
| 6 | DTCB6206C |
| 10 | DTCB6210C |
| 13 | DTCB6213C |
| 16 | DTCB6216C |
| 20 | DTCB6220C |
| 25 | DTCB6225C |
| 32 | DTCB6232C |
| 40 | DTCB6240C |
| 50 | DTCB6250C |
| 63 | DTCB6263C |

3 pole 3 modules

| 2 | DTCB6302C |
| :--- | :--- |
| 4 | DTCB6304C |
| 6 | OTCB6306C |
| 10 | DTB6310C |
| 13 | DTCB6313C |
| 16 | DTCB6316C |
| 20 | DTCB6320C |
| 25 | DTCB6325C |
| 32 | DTCB6332C |
| 40 | DTCB6340C |
| 50 | DTCB6350C |
| 63 | DTCB6363C |

Short circuit capacity 6 kA

| In (A) | $2-63$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| $1 P$ | 240 VAC |
| $2 P$ | $240 \cdot 415 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}$ |
| 3 P | $240-415 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}$ |
| DC use | 2 P |
| Short circuit | 20 KA |
| Max.voltage (DC) | 48 V |

Use at DC
When using Din-T6 in a DC application the magnetic tripping current is approximately $40 \%$ higher than in AC $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$.
Shock resistance (In X, Y, Z directions).
20 g with shock duration 10 ms (minimum 18 shocks). 40 g with shock duration 5 ms (minimum 18 shocks).

Vibration resistance (In X, Y, Z directions).
3 g in frequency range 10 to 55 Hz
(operating time at least 30 min ).
According to IEC 60068-2-6.
Storage temperature
From $-55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, according to IEC 88 part $2-1$ (duration 96 hours).
Operating temperature
From $-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, according to
VDE 0664 parts 1 and 2.
Use at 400 Hz
At 400 Hz the magnetic trip current is approximately $50 \%$ higher than in $A C 50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$.

Notes: ') 2 pole MCB connected in series. The line side is the "OFF" (bottom) side of the MCB, and connects to CD chassis tee-offs. (i) Available on indent only.

## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Characteristics according to BS EN 60898

Miniature Circuit Breakers are intended for the protection of wiring installations against both overloads and short-circuits in domestic or commercial wiring installations where operation is possible by uninstructed people

Tripping characteristic curves


## Magnetic release

An electromagnet with plunger ensures instantaneous tripping in the event of short-circuit. The NHP Din-T range has 3 different types, following the current for instantaneous release: types B, C and $D$ curve.

| ICn <br> (A) | Test current | Tripping time | Applications |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| B | $\begin{aligned} & 3 \times \ln \\ & 5 \times \operatorname{In} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.1<t<45 \mathrm{~s}(\operatorname{In} \leq 32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ 0.1<t<90 \mathrm{~s}(\operatorname{In}>32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ t<0.1 \mathrm{~s} \end{gathered}$ | Only for resistive loads eg: <br> - electrical heating <br> - water heater <br> - stoves. |
| C | $\begin{aligned} & 5 \times \mathrm{In} \\ & 10 \times \mathrm{In} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.1<t<15 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In} \leq 32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ 0.1<t<30 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In}>32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ \mathrm{t}<0.1 \mathrm{~s} \end{gathered}$ | Usual loads such as: <br> - lighting <br> - socket outlets <br> - small motors |
| D | $\begin{aligned} & 10 \times \operatorname{In} \\ & 20 \times \operatorname{In} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.1<t<4 s(* *)(\operatorname{In} \leq 32 A) \\ 0.1<t<8 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In}>32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ t<0.1 \mathrm{~s} \end{gathered}$ | Control and protection of circuits having important transient inrush currents (large motors) |

## Thermal release

The release is initiated by a bimetal strip in the event of overload. The standard defines the range of releases for specific overload values. Reference ambient temperature is $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.

| Test <br> current | Tripping <br> time |
| :---: | :---: |
| $1.13 \times \operatorname{In}$ | $\mathrm{t} \geq 1 \mathrm{~h}(\mathrm{In} \leq 63 \mathrm{~A})$ |
|  | $\mathrm{t} \geq 2 \mathrm{~h}(\mathrm{In}>63 \mathrm{~A})$ |
| $1.45 \times$ In | $\mathrm{t}<1 \mathrm{~h}(\mathrm{In} \leq 63 \mathrm{~A})$ |
|  | $\mathrm{t}<2 \mathrm{~h}($ In $>63 \mathrm{~A})$ |
| $2.55 \times \operatorname{In}$ | $1 \mathrm{~s}<\mathrm{t}<60 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In} \leq 32 \mathrm{~A})$ |
|  | $1 \mathrm{~s}<\mathrm{t}<120 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In}>32 \mathrm{~A})$ |

Rated short-circuit breaking capacity (Icn) Is the value of the short-circuit that the MCB is capable of withstanding in the following test of sequence of operations: 0-t-CO.

After the test the MCB is capable, without maintenance, to withstand a dielectric strength test at a test voltage of 900 V . Moreover, the MCB shall be capable of tripping when loaded with 2.8 In within the time corresponding to 2.55 In but greater than 0.1 s .
Service short-circuit breaking capacity (Ics) Is the value of the short-circuit that the MCB is capable of withstanding in the following test of sequence of operations: O-t-CO-t-CO.

After the test the MCB is capable, without maintenance, to withstand a dielectric strength test at a test voltage of 1500 V . Moreover, the MCB shall not trip at a current of 0.96 In. The MCB shall trip within 1 h when current is 1.6 In .

0 - Represents an opening operation
C - Represents a closing operation followed by an automatic opening.
t - Represents the time interval between two successive short-circuit operations: 3 minutes.

The relation between the rated short-circuit capacity (Icn) and the rated service short-circuit breaking capacity (Ics) shall be as follows:

| Icn (A) | Ics (A) |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\leq 6000$ | 6000 |
| $>6000$ | 0.75 Icn min. 6000 |
| $\leq 10000$ | 0.75 Icn min. 7500 |
| $>10000$ |  |

In both sequences all MCBs are tested for emission of ionized gases during short-circuit (grid distance), in a safety distance between two MCBs of 35 mm when devices are installed in two different rows in the enclosure. This performance allows the use of any NHP/Terasaki enclosure.


Min.
35 mm


## Din-T MCBs Technical data

Tripping curves according to EN 60898

The following tables show the average tripping curves of the Terasaki Din-T MCBs based on the thermal and magnetic characteristics.

## Curve C



## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Influence of ambient air temperature on the rated current

The maximum value of the current which can flow through an MCB depends on the nominal current of the MCB, the conductor cross-section and the ambient air temperature.
The values shown in the table below are for devices in free air. For devices installed with other modular devices in the same switchboard, a correction factor (K) shall be applied relative to the mounting situation of the MCB, the ambient temperature and the number of main circuits in the installation.

| No of devices | $K^{\prime}$ ' |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 or 3 | 0.9 |
| 4 or 5 | 0.8 |
| 6 or 9 | 0.7 |
| $>10$ | 0.6 |

## Calculation example

Within a distribution board consisting of eight 2 Pole, $16 \mathrm{~A}, ~ ' C$ ' curve type MCBs, with an operating ambient temperature of $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, which is the highest temperature the MCB can operate at without unwanted tripping?

## Calculation

The correction factor $K=0.7$, for use in an eight circuit installation: $16 \mathrm{~A} \times 0.7=11.2 \mathrm{~A}$

As the MCB is working at $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ it shall be given another factor ( $90 \%=0.9$ ):
In at $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}=\operatorname{In}$ at $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \times 0.9=11.2 \mathrm{~A} \times 0.9=10.1 \mathrm{~A}$.

Note: ${ }^{\text {') }}$ Applicable for MCBs working at maximum rated currents.

The thermal calibration of the MCBs was carried out at an ambient temperature of $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Ambient temperatures different from $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ influence the bimetal and this results in earlier or later thermal tripping.


## 10 A



16-40 A


## 50-63 A



## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Effects of frequency on the tripping characteristic

All the MCBs are designed to work at frequencies of $50-60 \mathrm{~Hz}$, therefore to work at different values, consideration must be given to the variation of the tripping characteristics. The thermal tripping does not change with variation of the frequency but the magnetic tripping values can be up to $50 \%$ higher than the ones at $50-60 \mathrm{~Hz}$.

Tripping current variation

| 60 Hz | 100 Hz | 200 Hz | 300 Hz | 400 Hz |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 1.4 | 1.5 |

## Power losses

The power losses are calculated by measuring the voltage drop between the incoming and the outgoing terminals of the device at rated current.

## Power loss per pole

| In <br> $(\mathrm{A})$ | Voltage drop <br> $(V)$ | Energy loss <br> $(W)$ | Resistance <br> $(\mathrm{mOhm})$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.5 | 2.230 | 1.115 | 4458.00 |
| 1 | 1.270 | 1.272 | 1272.00 |
| 2 | 0.620 | 1.240 | 310.00 |
| 3 | 0.520 | 1.557 | 173.00 |
| 4 | 0.370 | 1.488 | 93.00 |
| 6 | 0.260 | 1.570 | 43.60 |
| 8 | 0.160 | 1.242 | 19.40 |
| 10 | 0.160 | 1.560 | 15.60 |
| 13 | 0.155 | 2.011 | 11.90 |
| 16 | 0.162 | 2.586 | 10.10 |
| 20 | 0.138 | 2.760 | 6.90 |
| 25 | 0.128 | 3.188 | 5.10 |
| 32 | 0.096 | 3.072 | 3.00 |
| 40 | 0.100 | 4.000 | 2.50 |
| 50 | 0.090 | 4.500 | 1.80 |
| 63 | 0.082 | 5.160 | 1.30 |
| 80 | 0.075 | 6.000 | 0.90 |
| 100 | 0.075 | 7.500 | 0.75 |
| 125 | 0.076 | 9.500 | 0.60 |
|  |  |  |  |
| 1 |  |  |  |

## Limitation curves

Let-through energy $I^{2} t$
The limitation capacity of an MCB in short-circuit conditions, is its capacity to reduce the value of the let-through energy that the short-circuit would be generating.
Peak current Ip
Is the value of the maximum peak of the short-circuit current limited by the MCB.

See following pages


Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Din-T 6

6 kA
C curve


Id Limited peak current at $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$


## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Use of standard MCB for DC use

For MCBs designed to be used in alternating current but used in installations in direct current, the following should be taken into consideration:

For protection against overloads it is necessary to connect the two poles to the MCB. In these conditions the tripping characteristic of the MCB in direct current is similar to alternating current.

- For protection against short-circuits it is necessary to connect the two poles to the MCB. In these conditions the tripping characteristic of the MCB in direct current is $40 \%$ higher than the one in alternating current.

Use in DC selection table

| Series | Rated <br> current (A) | 48 V 1 pole <br> Icu (kA) | 110 V 2 poles in series <br> Icu (kA) | 250 V 1 pole <br> Icu (kA) | 440 V 2 poles in series <br> Icu (kA) |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Din-T 6 | $0.5 \ldots . .63 \mathrm{~A}$ | 20 | 25 | - | - |

## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Text for specifiers

## MCB Series Din-T 6

- According to EN 60898 standard
- For DIN rail mounting according to DIN EN 50022; EN 50022; future EN 60715 ; IEC 60715 (top hat rail 35 mm )
- Grid distance 35 mm
- Working ambient temperature from $-25^{\circ} \mathrm{Cup}$ to $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
- Approved by CEBEC, VDE, KEMA, IMQ.
- 1 pole is a module of 18 mm wide
- Nominal rated currents are: 0.5/1/2/3/4/6/10/13/16/20/25/32/40/50/63 A

■ Tripping characteristics: $B, C, D$ ( $B$ curve Din- $Y 10$ only).

- Number of poles: $1 \mathrm{P}, 1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}, 2 \mathrm{P}, 3 \mathrm{P}, 3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}, 4 \mathrm{P}$
- The short-circuit breaking capacity is: $6 / 10 \mathrm{k} A$, energy limiting class 3
- Terminal capacity from 1 up to $35 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ rigid wire or 1.5 up to $25 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ flexible wire.
- Screw head suitable for flat or Pozidrive screwdriver
- Can be connected by means of both pin or fork busbars
- The toggle can be sealed in the ON or OFF position
- Rapid closing
- Both incoming and outgoing terminals have a protection degree of IP 20 and they are sealable
- Isolator function thanks to Red/Green printing on the toggle.
- Maximum voltage between two phases; 440 V
- Maximum voltage for utilisation in DC current: 48 V 1 P and 110 V 2 P
- Two position rail clip
- Mechanical shock resistance 40 g (direction $\mathrm{x}, \mathrm{y}, \mathrm{z}$ ) minimum 18 shocks 5 ms half-sinusoidal acc. to IEC 60068-2-27
- Vibration resistance: 3 g (direction $\mathrm{x}, \mathrm{y}, \mathrm{z}$ ) minimum 30 min . according to IEC 60068-2-6
- Extensions can be added on both left or right hand side
- Auxiliary contact
* Shunt trip
- Undervoltage release
- Motor operator
- Panelboard switch

Add-on RCD can be coupled.

## Din-T MCBs Technical data

Din-T6


## Din-T MCBs Technical data

Miniature circuit breakers - Din-T 6

Dimensions in mm.


## Miniature circuit breakers

## Din-T10 series 10 kA MCB

© Standard AS/NZS $4898^{1}$ )

- Approval No. N17481
- Short circuit breaking capacity - 10000 Amps

D Current range 0.5-63 Amps 1, 2, 3 and 4 pole

- Sealable and lockable handle
- Modular design
- Available in curve type B, C and D
- Mounts on CD chassis (250 A and 355 A )


DTCB10
1 pole

1 pole 1 module

| In (A) | C - Curve 5-10 I |
| :--- | :--- |
| 0.5 | DTCB10105C |
| 1 | DTCB10101C |
| 2 | DTCB10102C |
| 3 | DTCB10103C |
| 4 | DTCB10104C |
| 6 | DTCB10106C |
| 10 | DTCB10110C |
| 13 | DTCB10113C |
| 16 | DTCB10116C |
| 20 | DTCB10120C |
| 25 | DTCB10125C |
| 32 | DtCB10132C |
| 40 | DTCB10140C |
| 50 | DTCB10150C |
| 63 | DTCB10163C |

2 pole 2 modules

| 0.5 | OTCB10205C |
| :--- | :--- |
| 1 | DTCB10201C |
| 2 | OTCB10202C |
| 4 | DTCB10204C |
| 6 | DTCB10206C |
| 10 | DTCB10210C |
| 13 | DTCB10213C |
| 16 | DTCB10216C |
| 20 | DTCB10220C |
| 25 | DTCB10225C |
| 32 | DTCB10232C |
| 40 | DTCB10240C |
| 50 | DTCB10250C |
| 63 | DTCB10263C |


| Short circuit capacity 10 kA |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| In (A) | $0.5-63$ |  |
| 1 P | 240 VAC |  |
| 2 P | $240 / 415 \mathrm{VAC}$ |  |
| 3 P | $240 / 415 \mathrm{VAC}$ |  |
| 4 P | $240 / 415 \mathrm{VAC}$ |  |

Use at DC

|  | $\mathbf{1} \mathbf{P}$ | $\left.\mathbf{2} \mathbf{P}^{\mathbf{2}}\right)$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Short circuit | 25 kA | 30 kA |
| Max voltage | 48 V DC | 110 VDC |

Notes: ") A range of UL standard MCBs is available on indent. (ref DTCBUL10___C).
$\left.{ }^{\text {I }}\right) 2$ pole MCB connected in series.
The line side is the "OFF" (bottom) side of the MCB, and connects to CD chassis tee-offs.
i Available on indent only.

## Miniature circuit breakers

Din-T10 series 10 kA MCB (cont.)

3 pole 3 modules

| In (A) | C - Curve 5-10 In |
| :--- | :--- |
| 0.5 | DTCB10305C |
| 1 | DTCB10301C |
| 2 | DTCB10302C |
| 4 | DTCB10304C |
| 6 | DTCB10306C |
| 10 | DTCB10310C |
| 13 | DTCB10313C |
| 16 | DTCB10316C |
| 20 | DTCB10320C |
| 25 | DTCB10325C |
| 32 | DTCB10332C |
| 40 | DTCB10340C |
| 50 | DTCB10350C |
| 63 | DTCB10363C |

4 pole 4 modules ${ }^{1}$ )

| 6 | OTCB10406C |
| :--- | :--- |
| 10 | OTCB10410C |
| 13 | DTCB10413C |
| 16 | DTCB10416C |
| 20 | DTCB10420C |
| 25 | DTCB10425C |
| 32 | DTCB10432C |
| 40 | DTCB10440C |
| 50 | DiCB10450C |
| 63 | DTCB10463C |

Notes: ${ }^{1}$ ) All poles include overcurrent and short circuit protection.
i) Available on indent only.

## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Characteristics according to BS EN 60898

Miniature Circuit Breakers are intended for the protection of wiring installations against both overloads and short-circuits in domestic or commercial wiring installations where operation is possible by uninstructed people

Tripping characteristic curves


## Magnetic release

An electromagnet with plunger ensures instantaneous tripping in the event of short-circuit. The NHP Din-T range has 3 different types, following the current for instantaneous release: types B, C and $D$ curve.

| Icn <br> (A) | Test current | Tripping time | Applications |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| B | $\begin{aligned} & 3 \times \operatorname{In} \\ & 5 \times \text { In } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.1<t<45 \mathrm{~s}(\operatorname{In} \leq 32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ 0.1<t<90 \mathrm{~s}(\operatorname{In}>32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ \mathrm{t}<0.1 \mathrm{~s} \end{gathered}$ | Only for resistive loads eg: <br> - electrical heating <br> - water heater <br> - stoves. |
| C | $\begin{aligned} & 5 \times \operatorname{In} \\ & 10 \times \operatorname{In} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 0.1<t<15 \mathrm{~s}(\operatorname{In} \leq 32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ 0.1<t<30 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In}>32 \mathrm{~A}) \\ \mathrm{t}<0.1 \mathrm{~s} \end{gathered}$ | Usual loads such as: <br> - lighting <br> - socket outlets <br> - small motors |

D $10 \times$ In $0.1<t<4 \mathrm{~s}\left(^{\star \star}\right)(\mathrm{In} \leq 32 \mathrm{~A})$ Control and protection of $20 \times$ In $\quad 0.1<t<8 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In}>32 \mathrm{~A})$
$\mathrm{t}<0.1 \mathrm{~s}$ circuits having important transient inrush currents (large motors)

## Thermal release

The release is initiated by a bimetal strip in the event of overload. The standard defines the range of releases for specific overload values. Reference ambient temperature is $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.

| Test <br> current | Tripping <br> time |
| :---: | :---: |
| $1.13 \times \operatorname{In}$ | $t \geq 1 \mathrm{~h}(\operatorname{In} \leq 63 \mathrm{~A})$ |
|  | $\mathrm{t} \geq 2 \mathrm{~h}(\mathrm{In}>63 \mathrm{~A})$ |
| $1.45 \times \operatorname{In}$ | $\mathrm{t}<1 \mathrm{~h}(\mathrm{In} \leq 63 \mathrm{~A})$ |
|  | $\mathrm{t}<2 \mathrm{~h}(\mathrm{In}>63 \mathrm{~A})$ |
| $2.55 \times$ In | $1 \mathrm{~s}<\mathrm{t}<60 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In} \leq 32 \mathrm{~A})$ |
|  | $1 \mathrm{~s}<\mathrm{t}<120 \mathrm{~s}(\mathrm{In}>32 \mathrm{~A})$ |

Rated short-circuit breaking capacity (Icn)
Is the value of the short-circuit that the MCB is capable of withstanding in the following test of sequence of operations: $0-\mathrm{t}$ - CO .

After the test the MCB is capable, without maintenance, to withstand a dielectric strength test at a test voltage of 900 V . Moreover, the MCB shall be capable of tripping when loaded with 2.8 In within the time corresponding to 2.55 In but greater than 0.1 s .

Service short-circuit breaking capacity (Ics)
Is the value of the short-circuit that the MCB is capable of withstanding in the following test of sequence of operations: $0-\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{CO}-\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{CO}$.
After the test the MCB is capable, without maintenance, to withstand a dielectric strength test at a test voltage of 1500 V . Moreover, the MCB shall not trip at a current of 0.96 In . The MCB shall trip within 1 h when current is 1.6 In.

0 - Represents an opening operation
C - Represents a closing operation followed by an automatic opening.
t - Represents the time interval between two successive short-circuit operations: 3 minutes.

The relation between the rated short-circuit capacity (Inn) and the rated service short-circuit breaking capacity (Ics) shall be as follows:

| Ien (A) | Ics (A) |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\leq 6000$ | 6000 |
| $>6000$ | 0.75 Icn min. 6000 |
| $\leq 10000$ | 0.75 Icn min. 7500 |
| $>10000$ |  |

In both sequences all MCBs are tested for emission of ionized gases during short-circuit (grid distance), in a safety distance between two MCBs of 35 mm when devices are installed in two different rows in the enclosure. This performance allows the use of any NHP/Terasaki enclosure.


Din-T MCBs Technical data
Tripping curves according to EN 60898

The following tables show the average tripping curves of the Terasaki Din-T MCBs based on the thermal and magnetic characteristics.

## Curve C



Din-T MCBs Technical data
Din-t 10
10 kA
C curve


Id Limited peak current at 230/400 V


## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Influence of ambient air temperature on the rated current

The maximum value of the current which can flow through an MCB depends on the nominal current of the MCB, the conductor cross-section and the ambient air temperature.
The values shown in the table below are for devices in free air. For devices installed with other modular devices in the same switchboard, a correction factor (K) shall be applied relative to the mounting situation of the MCB, the ambient temperature and the number of main circuits in the installation.

| No of devices | $K^{\prime}$ ) |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 or 3 | 0.9 |
| 4 or 5 | 0.8 |
| 6 or 9 | 0.7 |
| $>10$ | 0.6 |

## Calculation example

Within a distribution board consisting of eight 2 Pole, $16 \mathrm{~A}, ~ ' ~ C ' ~$ curve type MCBs, with an operating ambient temperature of $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, which is the highest temperature the MCB can operate at without unwanted tripping?

## Calculation

The correction factor $K=0.7$, for use in an eight circuit installation: $16 \mathrm{~A} \times 0.7=11.2 \mathrm{~A}$
As the MCB is working at $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ it shall be given another factor ( $90 \%=0.9$ ):
In at $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}=$ In at $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \times 0.9=11.2 \mathrm{~A} \times 0.9=10.1 \mathrm{~A}$.

Note: ') Applicable for MCBs working at maximum rated currents.

The thermal calibration of the MCBs was carried out at an ambient temperature of $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Ambient temperatures different from $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ influence the bimetal and this results in earlier or later thermal tripping.
0.5-6 A



16-40 A


50-63A


## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Effects of frequency on the tripping characteristic

All the MCBs are designed to work at frequencies of $50-60 \mathrm{~Hz}$, therefore to work at different values, consideration must be given to the variation of the tripping characteristics. The thermal tripping does not change with variation of the frequency but the magnetic tripping values can be up to $50 \%$ higher than the ones at $50-60 \mathrm{~Hz}$.

## Tripping current variation

| 60 Hz | 100 Hz | 200 Hz | 300 Hz | 400 Hz |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 1.4 | 1.5 |

## Power losses

The power losses are calculated by measuring the voltage drop between the incoming and the outgoing terminals of the device at rated current.

## Power loss per pole

| In <br> (A) | Voltage drop <br> (V) | Energy loss <br> (W) | Resistance (m0hm) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.5 | 2.230 | 1.115 | 4458.00 |
| 1 | 1.270 | 1.272 | 1272.00 |
| 2 | 0.620 | 1.240 | 310.00 |
| 3 | 0.520 | 1.557 | 173.00 |
| 4 | 0.370 | 1.488 | 93.00 |
| 6 | 0.260 | 1.570 | 43.60 |
| 8 | 0.160 | 1.242 | 19.40 |
| 10 | 0.160 | 1.560 | 15.60 |
| 13 | 0.155 | 2.011 | 11.90 |
| 16 | 0.162 | 2.586 | 10.10 |
| 20 | 0.138 | 2.760 | 6.90 |
| 25 | 0.128 | 3.188 | 5.10 |
| 32 | 0.096 | 3.072 | 3.00 |
| 40 | 0.100 | 4.000 | 2.50 |
| 50 | 0.090 | 4.500 | 1.80 |
| 63 | 0.082 | 5.160 | 1.30 |
| 80 | 0.075 | 6.000 | 0.90 |
| 100 | 0.075 | 7.500 | 0.75 |
| 125 | 0.076 | 9.500 | 0.60 |

## Limitation curves

Let-through energy $I^{2} t$
The limitation capacity of an MCB in short-circuit conditions, is its capacity to reduce the value of the let-through energy that the short-circuit would be generating.

Peak current Ip
Is the value of the maximum peak of the short-circuit current limited by the MCB.


See following pages

## Din-T MCBs Technical data

Use of standard MCB for DC use
For MCBs designed to be used in alternating current but used in installations in direct current, the following should be taken into consideration:

- For protection against overloads it is necessary to connect the two poles to the MCB. In these conditions the tripping characteristic of the MCB in direct current is similar to alternating current.

Use in DC selection table

| Series | Rated <br> current (A) | 48 V 1 pole <br> Icu (kA) | 110 V 2 poles in series <br> Icu (kA) | 250 V 1 pole <br> Icu (kA) | 440 V 2 poles in series <br> Icu (kA) |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Din-T 10 | $0.5 \ldots . .63 \mathrm{~A}$ | 25 | 30 | - | - |

Installation of Din-T DC MCBs in direct current

For protection against short-circuits it is necessary to connect the two poles to the MCB. In these conditions the tripping characteristic of the MCB in direct current is $40 \%$ higher than the one in alternating current.
Use of special MCB Din-T DC for DC use.
(UC = Universal current)
For MCBs designed to work in both alternating and direct current, it is necessary to respect the polarity of the terminals since the device is equipped with a permanent magnet.

## Din-T MCBs Technical data

## Text for specifiers

## MCB Series Din-T 10

- According to EN 60898 standard
- For DIN rail mounting according to DIN EN 50022; EN 50022; future EN 60715; IEC 60715 (top hat rail 35 mm )
- Grid distance 35 mm
- Working ambient temperature from $-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ up to $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
- Approved by CEBEC, VDE, KEMA, IMQ.
- 1 pole is a module of 18 mm wide
- Nominal rated currents are: 0.5/1/2/3/4/6/10/13/16/20/25/32/40/50/63 A

Tripping characteristics: B,C,D (B curve Din-T 10 only).

- Number of poles: $1 \mathrm{P}, 1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}, 2 \mathrm{P}, 3 \mathrm{P}, 3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}, 4 \mathrm{P}$
- The short-circuit breaking capacity is: $6 / 10 \mathrm{k} A$, energy limiting class 3
- Terminal capacity from 1 up to $35 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ rigid wire or 1.5 up to $25 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ flexible wire.
- Screw head suitable for flat or Pozidrive screwdriver
- Can be connected by means of both pin or fork busbars
- The toggle can be sealed in the ON or OFF position
- Rapid closing
- Both incoming and outgoing terminals have a protection degree of IP 20 and they are sealable
- Isolator function thanks to Red/Green printing on the toggle.
- Maximum voltage between two phases; 440 V
- Maximum voltage for utilisation in DC current: 48 V 1 P and 110 V 2 P
- Two position rail clip
- Mechanical shock resistance 40 g (direction $x, y, z$ ) minimum 18 shocks 5 ms half-sinusoidal acc. to IEC 60068-2-27
- Vibration resistance: 3 g (direction $\mathrm{x}, \mathrm{y}, \mathrm{z}$ ) minimum 30 min . according to IEC 60068-2-6
- Extensions can be added on both left or right hand side
* Auxiliary contact
- Shunt trip
- Undervoltage release
- Motor operator
- Panelboard switch

Add-on RCD can be coupled.

## Din-T MCBs Technical data



Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data
Miniature circuit breakers - Din-T 10

Dimensions in mm.


Miniature circuit breakers

## Din-Safe single pole width residual current circuit breaker (RCBO)

- Standards AS/NZS 61009
- Approval N17482
- One module wide ( 18 mm )
[ Short circuit, overcurrent and earth leakage protection
■ Short circuit protection 10 kA
- Sensitivity 10 and 30 mA
- Din rail mount
- Suits CD chassis
- Type " $A$ " residual current device ( $A C / D C$ )

| Amp rating <br> (A) | Modules (18mm) | Voltage $(\mathrm{AC})$ | Short circuit (kA) | Trip <br> Sensitivity <br> (mA) | Cat. $\mathrm{No}^{1}$ ) ${ }^{\text {² }}$ ) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 30 | DSRCBH0630A |
| 10 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 30 | DSRCBH1030A |
| 16 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 30 | DSRCBH1630A. |
| 20 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 30 | DSRCBH2030A |
| 25 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 30 | DSRCBH2530A |
| 32 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 30 | DSRCBH3230A |
| 40 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 30 | DSRCBH4030A |
| 6 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 10 | [i] DSRCBH0610A |
| 10 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 10 | DSRCBH1010A |
| 16 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 10 | DSRCBH1610A |
| 20 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 10 | DSRCBH2010A |
| 25 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 10 | - DSRCBH2510A: |
| 32 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 10 | [ DSRCBH3210A: |
| 40 | 1 | 240 | 10 | 10 | D DSRCBH4010A. |

Note: ${ }^{1}$ ) Neutral not switched.
${ }^{2}$ ) Will not accept side mounting accessories.
i) Available on indent only.

## Operation

This unit combines the overload and short circuit protection of an MCB with earth leakage protection of an RCD. The unit occupies one, sub-circuit (one pole) of the distribution board and provides single phase protection against overload, short circuit and earth leakage current.

- $\quad$ The MCB element provides thermal and magnetic tripping protection which is rated to 10 kA prospective fault current.
- The RCD element of the device provides core-balance detection of the difference between the active and neutral currents and amplification to provide high sensitivity. The rated residual operating current ( $\mathrm{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ ) is 10 mA or 30 mA .
- The green/yellow earth reference cable, in case of loss of supply neutral, ensures the device will continue to provide earth leakage protection and will operate normally upon detection of an earth leakage current.
Dimensions (mm)

Note: A 1.2 m long pigtail lead is included as standard.


## Application

The Din-Safe single pole width residual current circuit breaker will fit the standard Din-T chassis for use in NHP panelboards. The design makes it possible to provide an MCB complete with earth leakage protection in an 18 mm wide module, which allows a greater number of devices to be fitted into a distribution board.

Connection diagram



Note: Nuisance tripping may be experienced in VFD and motor starting applications refer NHP.

Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data

## Tripping curves according to EN 60898

The following tables show the average tripping curves of the Terasaki Din-T MCBs based on the thermal and magnetic characteristics.

## Curve $C$



# Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data What is an RCD? 

The RCD (Residual Current Device) is a device intended to protect people against indirect contact, the exposed conductive parts of the installation being connected to an appropriate earth electrode. It may be used to provide protection against fire hazards due to a persistent earth fault current, without operation of the overcurrent protective device.
RCDs having a rated residual operating current not exceeding 30 mA are also used as a means for additional protection in case of failure of the protective means against electric shock (direct contact).

## Working Principle

The main components of an RCD are the following:

- The core transformer: which detects the earth fault current.
- The relay: when an earth fault current is detected, the relay reacts by tripping and opening the contacts.
- The mechanism: element to open and close the contacts either manually or automatically.
- The contacts: to open or close the main circuit.

The RCD constantly monitors the vectorial sum of the current passing through all the conductors. In normal conditions the vectorial sum is zero ( $\mathrm{I} 1+\mathrm{I} 2=0$ ) but in case of an earth fault, the vectorial sum differs from zero ( $\mathrm{I} 1+\mathrm{I} 2=\mathrm{Id}$ ), this causes the actuation of the relay and therefore the release of the main contacts.


## Definitions related to RCDs

RCCB $=$ Residual Current Circuit Breaker without overcurrent protection.

RCBO = Residual Current Circuit Breaker with overcurrent protection.

## Breaking capacity

A value of $A C$ component of a prospective current that an $R C C B$ is capable of breaking at a stated voltage under prescribed conditions of use and behaviour.

## Residual making and breaking capacity ( $1 \Delta \mathrm{~m}$ )

$A$ value of the $A C$ component of a residual prospective current which an RCCB can make, carry for its opening time and break under specified conditions of use and behaviour.

## Conditional residual short-circuit current (I $\Delta \mathrm{C}$ )

$A$ value of the $A C$ component of a prospective current which an RCCB protected by a suitable SCPD (short-circuit protective device) in series, can withstand, under specific conditions of use and behaviour.

## Conditional short-circuit current (Inc)

$A$ value of the $A C$ component of a residual prospective current which an RCCB protected by a suitable SCPD in series, can withstand, under specific conditions of use and behaviour.

## Residual short-circuit withstand current

Maximum value of the residual current for which the operation of the RCCB is ensured under specified conditions, and above which the device can undergo irreversible alterations.

## Prospective current

The current that would flow in the circuit, if each main current path of the RCCB and the overcurrent protective device (if any) were replaced by a conductor of negligible impedance.

## Making capacity

$A$ value of $A C$ component of a prospective current that an RCCB is capable to make at a stated voltage under prescribed conditions of use and behaviour.

## Open position

The position in which the predetermined clearance between open contacts in the main circuit of the RCCB is secured.

## Closed position

The position in which the predetermined continuity of the main circuit of the RCCB is secured.

## Tripping time

The time which elapses between the instant when the residual operating current is suddenly attained and the instant of arc extinction in all poles.

## Residual current ( $\mathbf{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ )

Vector sum of the instantaneous values of the current flowing in the main circuit of the RCCB.

## Residual operating current

Value of residual current which causes the RCCB to operate under specified conditions.

## Rated short-circuit capacity (Icn)

Is the value of the ultimate short-circuit breaking capacity assigned to the circuit breaker. (Only applicable to RCBO)

## Conventional non-tripping current (Int)

A specified value of current which the circuit breaker is capable of carrying for a specified time without tripping. (Only applicable to RCBO)
Conventional tripping current (It)
A specified value of current which causes the circuit breaker to trip within a specified time.
(Only applicable to RCBO)

## Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data

## RCDs classification according to EN 61008/61009

RCDs may be classified according to:
The behaviour in the presence of $D C$ current
(types for general use).

- Type $A C$
- Type A

The time-delay (in the presence of residual current)

- RCDs without time delay: type for general use
- RCDs with time delay: type $S$ for selectivity

Type AC
 ' $^{2}$ )
The type $A C$ RCDs are designed to release with sinusoidal residual currents which occur suddenly or slowly rise in magnitude.


Residual current
Tripping time

| $0.5 \times \mathrm{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ | $\mathrm{t}=\propto$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| $1 \times \mathrm{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ | $\mathrm{t}=<300 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| $2 \times \mathrm{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ | $\mathrm{t}=<150 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| $5 \times \mathrm{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ | $\mathrm{t}=\leq 40 \mathrm{~ms}$ |



Tripping curve type AC
${ }^{2}$ ) Standard in Australia
${ }^{2}$ ) Type A acceptable in Australia

Tripping curve type A
${ }^{1}$ ) Standard in New Zealand
-) DSRCBH is type A.
$\begin{array}{lll}\text { Type } A & \left.\tilde{n}^{3}\right)^{4} \text { ) }\end{array}$
Certain devices during faults can be the source of nonsinusoidal earth leakage currents ( $D C$ components) due to the electronic components e.g. diodes, thyristors etc.
Type A RCDs are designed to ensure that under these conditions the residual current devices operate on sinusoidal residual current and also with pulsating direct current(*) which occur suddenly or slowly rise in magnitude.
(*) Pulsating direct current: current of pulsating wave form which assumes, in each period of the rated power frequency, the value 0 or a value not exceeding $0.006 \mathrm{~A} D C$ during one single interval of time, expressed in angular measure of at least $150^{\circ}$.
Residual current Tripping time

1. For sinusoidal residual current

| $0.5 \times I \Delta n$ $t$$=\infty$ |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| $1 \times I \Delta n$ | $t=<300 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| $2 \times I \Delta n$ | $t=<150 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| $5 \times I \Delta n$ | $t=\leq 40 \mathrm{~ms}$ |

2. For residual pulsating direct current

|  | At point of wave $0^{\circ}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $0.35 \times I \Delta n$ | $t=\infty$ |
|  | $1.4 \times I \Delta n$ | $\mathrm{t}=<300 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
|  | $2.8 \times I \Delta n$ | $\mathrm{t}=<150 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
|  | $7 \times \mathrm{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ | $\mathrm{t}=\leq 40 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
|  | At point of wave $90^{\circ}$ |  |
|  | $0.25 \times I \Delta n$ | $t=\infty$ |
|  | $1.4 \times I \Delta n$ | $\mathrm{t}=<300 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
|  | $2.8 \times 1 \Delta n$ | $\mathrm{t}=<150 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
|  | $7 \times 1 \Delta n$ | $\mathrm{t}=\leq 40 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
| At point of wave $135^{\circ}$ |  |  |
|  | $0.11 \times I \Delta n$ | $t=\infty$ |
| $\underline{\square}$ | $1.4 \times \mathrm{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ | $\mathrm{t}=<300 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
|  | $2.8 \times \mathrm{I} \Delta \mathrm{n}$ | $\mathrm{t}=<150 \mathrm{~ms}$ |
|  | $7 \times I \Delta n$ | $\mathrm{t}=\leq 40 \mathrm{~ms}$ |

(ms)

## Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data

## Nuisance tripping

All DinSafe RCOs have a high level of immunity to transient currents, against current impulses of $8 / 20 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ according to EN 61008/61009 and VDE 0664.T1.
Type A, AC.
.250 A $8 / 20 \mu \mathrm{~s}$
Type S.
3000 A $8 / 20 \mu \mathrm{~s}$


RCDs have a high level of immunity against alternating currents of high frequency according to EN 61008/61009.


## Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data

## Use of an RCBO (DSRCBH)



## TEST-BUTTON

To ensure the correct functioning of the RCBO, the test-button T shall be pressed frequently. The device must trip when the test-button is pressed.


## CONTACT POSITION INDICATOR

Printing on the toggle to provide information of the real contact position.


O-OFF
Contacts in open position. Ensure a distance between contacts $>4 \mathrm{~mm}$.


I-ON
Contacts in closed position. Ensure continuity in the main circuit.

## CABLECONNECTION

The power supply ( $L$ ) must be done at the bottom terminal, and the supply neutral flying cable (black) shall be connected to the neutral bar.
Load connection shall be done in both terminals at the top side (L out / N out).
The earth reference cable (FE white) ensures protection against earth leakage in case of loss of supply neutral.


TOGGLE
To manually switch the RCBO ON or OFF

## Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data

## Product related information

## Influence of temperature on RCBOs (DinSafe DSRCB)

The thermal calibration of the RCBO was carried out at an ambient temperature of $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. Ambient temperatures different from $30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ influence the bimetal and this results in earlier or later thermal tripping.


10 A



## Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data

## Tripping current as a function of the frequency

All RCDs are designed to work at frequencies of $50-60 \mathrm{~Hz}$, therefore to work at different values, we must consider the variation of the tripping sensitivity according to the tables below. It should be taken into consideration that there is a no tripping risk when pushing the test-button, due to the fact that such action is made by means of an internal resistor with a fixed value.

RCBO DSRCBH ${ }^{3}$ )

| Type AC ${ }^{\text { }}$ ) | 10 Hz | 30, Hz . | 50 Hz | 100 Hz | 200 Hz | 300 Hz | 400 Hz |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 30 mA | 0.62 | 0.65 | 0.80 | 0.91 | 1.24 | 1.55 | 1.88 |
| 100 mA | 0.74 | 0.71 | 0.80 | 0.95 | 1.16 | 1.38 | 1.59 |
| 300 mA | 0.80 | 0.74 | 0.80 | 0.97 | 1.19 | 1.44 | 1.64 |
| 500 mA | 1.10 | 0.81 | 0.80 | 0.89 | 1.18 | 1.38 | 1.68 |
| Type A' |  |  |  | ' . |  |  |  |
| 30 mA | 8.17 | 3.13 | 0.75 | 1.70 | 3.10 | 3.52 | 3.67 |
| 100 mA | 6.81 | 2.71 | 0.75 | 1.43 | 2.35 | 2.58 | 2.71 |
| 300 mA | 6.20 | 2.16 | 0.75 | 0.49 | 0.87 | 0.74 | 0.95 |
| 500 mA | 4.34 | 1.53 | 0.75 | 0.39 | 0.59 | 0.62 | 0.64 |

Notes: ') The standard NHP/Terasaki type is the "type AC" in Australia, Type " $A$ " in New Zealand.
${ }^{2}$ ) The standard NHP/Terasaki DSRCBH single pole RCBO is "type A" in Australia and New Zealand.
${ }^{3}$ ) The numbers in the table above are multipliers, e.g. A "DSRCD" at 50 hz has an 0.8 multiplier. Therefore a 30 mA , "type $A C$ " RCD witl trip at $(0.8 \times 30 \mathrm{~mA}) 24 \mathrm{~mA}$.

## Power losses

The power losses are calculated by means of measuring the voltage drop between the incoming and the outgoing terminal of the device at rated current. Power loss per pole:
RCBO-Single pole DSRCBH

| In (A) | $\mathbf{6}$ | $\mathbf{1 0}$ | $\mathbf{1 3}$ | $\mathbf{1 6}$ | $\mathbf{2 0}$ | $\mathbf{2 5}$ | $\mathbf{3 2}$ | $\mathbf{4 0}$ | $\mathbf{5 0}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{Z}$ (m0hm) | 45.8 | 16.4 | 12.5 | 10.6 | 7.3 | 5.4 | 3.2 | 2.6 | 1.9 |
| $\mathbf{P W}$ (W) | 1.65 | 1.7 | 2.1 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 3.3 | 3.4 | 4.2 | 4.8 |

## Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data <br> RCBO (DSRCB) let-through energy I ${ }^{2}$ t

The benefit of an RCBO in short-circuit conditions, is its ability to reduce the value of the let-through energy that the short-circuit would be generating.

Din-T single pole width RCD (DSRCBH)
Curve C

Let-through energy at 230 V


RCCB - Din-Safe safety switch (DSRCD)

RCBO - Din-Safe (DSRCBH)


Dimensions in mm

## Din-T MCBs + RCDs Technical data



## CONTACTOR

## 1. CA7 CONTACTOR TECHNICAL DETAILS



Contactor CA 7-9


Contactor CA 7-72


Contactor CA 6-105-EI


Contactor CA 6-170-EI


Contactor CA 6-250-EI


Contactor CA 6-420-EI

Ratings to IEC 947 and AS $3497400 / 415$ V
O For CA 7 contactors with coil terminals on line side, add ...V AC to Catalogue No. Eg - CA 7-9-10-240 V AC ${ }^{3}$ )

- For CA 7 contactors with coil terminals on load side, add ...V AC-U to Catalogue No. Eg-CA 7-9-10-240 V AC-U


| AC 3 400/415 V kW ${ }^{\text {' }}$ ) | AC 3 <br> $400 / 415$ V <br> Amps ${ }^{1}$ ) | AC $1^{\circ}$ ) <br> Amps $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | $A C 1^{\circ}$ ) <br> Amps $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | Auxiliary contacts standard |  |  | Cat. No. ${ }^{2}$ ) |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4 | 9 | 32 | 32 | 1 | 0 | 9 | CA 7-9-10...V AC |  |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 9 | CA 7-9-01...V AC |  |
| 5.5 | 12 | 32 | 32 | 1 | 0 | 9 | CA 7-12-10..V AC |  |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 9 | CA 7-12-01...V AC |  |
| 7.5 | 16 | 32 | 32 | 1 | 0 | 9 | CA 7-16-10... ${ }^{\text {V }}$ AC |  |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 9 | CA 7-16-01...V AC |  |
| 11 | 23 | 32 | 32 | 1 | 0 | 9 | CA 7-23-10...V AC |  |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 9 | CA 7-23-01...V AC |  |
| 15 | 30 | 50 | 45 | 0 | 0 | 8 | CA 7-30-00...V AC |  |
| 18.5 | 37 | 50 | 45 | 0 | 0 | 8 | CA 7-37-00...V AC |  |
| 22 | 43 | 85 | 63 | 0 | 0 | 8 | CA 7-43-00...V AC |  |
| 30 | 60 | 100 | 100 | 0 | 0 | 8 | CA 7-60-00...V AC |  |
| 37 | 72 | 100 | 100 | 0 | 0 | 8 | CA 7-72-00...V AC |  |
| 45 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 0 | 0 | 8 | CA 7-85-00...V AC |  |
| 55 (45) | 95 (33) | 160 | 135 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-85-11... V AC |  |
| 75 (55) | 130 (40) | 160 | 135 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-105-11...V AC |  |
| 90 (75) | 155 (55) | 250 | 210 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-140-11..V AC |  |
| 75 (55) | 130 (40) | 160 | 135 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-105-El-11...V AC) |  |
| 90 (75) | 155 (55) | 250 | 210 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-140-E!-11...V AC ${ }^{\text {a }}$ ) |  |
| 100 (90) | 170 (65) | 250 | 210 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-170-El-11:..V AC ${ }^{\text {( }}$ \| |  |
| 132 (111) | 225 (80) | 350 | 300 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-210-El-11'.. V AC $^{\text {( }}$ \| |  |
| 150 (133) | 258 (95) | 350 | 300 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-250-EI-11...V AC') |  |
| 185 (163) | 320 (115) | 450 | 380 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-300-El-11...V AC) |  |
| 250 (225) | 425 (160) | 500 | 425 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 6-420-El-11...V AC') |  |
| 220 (220) | 370 (155) | 500 | 420 | 2 | 2 | 8 | CA 5-370:..V AC) |  |
| 265 (280) | 450 (200) | 600 | 510 | 2 | 2 | 8 | CA 5-450...V AC) |  |
| 325 (355) | 550 (250) | 780 | 645 | 2 | 2 | 8 | CA 5-550...V AC') |  |
| 430 (500) | 700 (340) | 1000 | 850 | 2 | 2 | 8 | CA 5-700...V AC') |  |
| 520 (550) | 860 (380) | 1100 | 930 | 2 | 2 | 8 | CA 5-860...V AC') |  |
| 600 | 1000 | 1200 | 1020 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 5-1000...V AC) |  |
| 700 | 1150 | 1350 | 1150 | 1 | 1 | 8 | CA 5-1200...V AC) |  |

Notes: ') 1000 volt ratings ( ).
${ }^{2}$ ) Add control voltage to Cat. No. when ordering: 24, 32, 110, 240, 415, 440V 50 Hz . Standard voltages for CA 6-105-EI...250-El are $24,48,110,240$ and 415 V AC. Standard voltages for CA 6-300-EI...420-El 48, 110, 240 and 415 V AC. Standard voltages for CA 5-370...1200, 110, 240 and $415 \vee$ AC.
${ }^{3}$ ) All CA 7 coils can be reversed for line or load side coil terminals as required. Both versions are held in NHP stock for convenience.
${ }^{4}$ ) Electronically controlled mechanism (ECM) with interface suffix (EI).
$\left.{ }^{5}\right) 55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ enclosed.
${ }^{9}$ ) Contact NHP for recommended cable size.
240/415 V rated coils are suitable for use on $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ in accordance with AS 60038:2000.


## The highest switching capacity in the smallest space



## Compact without compromise

Compact without compromise is the best way to describe the CA 7 range of contactors and motor protection relays from Sprecher + Schuh. In spite of the new compact dimensions, the CA 7 range features high breaking capacity and extraordinary flexibility. Up to 18.5 kW the contactors are only 45 mm wide and even the largest 45 kW frame is only 72 mm wide. The CA 7 contactors are the main component in the new Advanced Control System (ACS).

With CA 7 you have flexibility with auxiliary contacts
Common auxiliaries from 9 to 85 amps
Three fitting positions
O Front mounting

- Side mounting left

O Side mounting right
Alternatively you can choose to combine left, right and front mounting auxiliary contacts to fulfil your requirements.
Instead of the top mounted auxiliary contacts, on or off delay timing modules or mechanical latches can be fitted.



Motor switching rating AC 3 @ 400/415 V


## With CA 7 you have more clip on

 accessoriesCommon accessories from 9 to 85 amps
O On and off delay pneumatic timers

- Coil mounted electronic timers on delay, off delay, star delta
O Coil mounted 24 V DC interface
O Coil mounted RC and varistor suppressor modules
O Mechanical latch
O Mechanical interlock
O Mechanical interlock with integrated $N / C$ interlock contacts
O Moulded wire link sets for DOL, reversing and star delta starters
O Large choice of front and side mounting auxiliary contacts


## Innovation and ease of use provide solutions for your control systems

## Coil terminals are always in the correct position

The coil terminations on the CA 7 contactors can be supplied optionaliy at the top or the bottom of the contactor. It is also a simple task to change this on site should the requirements change.
When CA 7 contactors are used in combination with KTA 7 circuit motor circuit breakers the bottom coil terminations are used. For use with standard CT 7 thermal or CEP 7 electronic overloads the top coil termination should be selected.


Mechanical interlocks save space
Only 9 mm wide, the CM 7 mechanical interlock snaps into place between any of the CA 7 contactors. It is allowed also to interlock different sizes of the CA 7 range with the same interlock.
The basic mechanical interlock is supplemented by a variation with built in N/C auxiliary contacts for electrical interlocking. This version is also only 9 mm wide and further minimises space requirements.


## With Sprecher + Schuh you can choose the best protection for your motors.

## Refer Catalogue C-CO

## Automatic Type '2' co-ordination ') with no-oversizing of contactors <br> DOL starting <br> 50/65 kA @ 400/415 V



| Motor <br> size <br> kW | Approx. amps @ 4001415 V | Sprecher + Schuh circuit breaker | Setting range amps | Magnetic amps | Sprecher + Schuh contactor | AC-3 amps |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.18 | 0.60 | KT 7-25S | 0.40-0.63 | 8.2 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 0.25 | 0.80 | KT 7-25S | 0.63-1.00 | 13 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 0.37 | 1.10 | KT 7-25S | 1.00-1.60 | 21 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 0.55 | 1.50 | KT 7-25S | 1.00-1.60 | 21 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 0.75 | 1.80 | KT 7-25S | 1.60-2.50 | 33 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 1.10 | 2.60 | KT 7-25S | 2.50-4.00 | 52 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 1.15 | 3.40 | KT 7-25S | 2.50-4.00 | 52 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 2.20 | 4.80 | KT 7-25S | 4.00-6.30 | 80 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 3.00 | 6.50 | KT 7-25S | $6.30-10.0$ | 130 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 4.00 | 8.20 | KT 7-25S | 6.30-10.0 | 130 | CA 7-9 | 9 |
| 5.50 | 11.00 | KT 7-25S | 10.0-16.0 | 208 | CA 7-12 | 12 |
| 7.50 | 14.00 | KT 7-25S | 10.0-16.0 | 208 | CA 7-16 | 16 |
| 9.00 | 17.00 | KT 7-25H | 14.5-20.0 | 260 | CA 7-23 | 23 |
| 11.00 | 21.00 | KT 7-25H | 18.0-25.0 | 325 | CA 7-23 | 23 |
| 15.00 | 28.00 | KT 7-45H | 23.0-32.0 | 416 | CA 7-30 | 30 |
| 18.50 | 34.00 | KT 7-45H | 32.0-45.0 | 585 | CA 7-37 | 37 |
| 22.00 | 40.00 | KT 7-45H | 32.0-45.0 | 585 | CA 7-43 | 43 |
| 30.00 | 55.00 | KT 3-100 | 40.0-63.0 | 882 | CA 7-60 | 60 |
| 37.00 | 66.00 | KT 3-100 | 63.0-90.0 | 1260 | CA 7-72 | 72 |
| 45.00 | 80.00 | KT 3-100 | 63.0-90.0 | 1260 | CA 7-85 | 85 |

Definition Type '2' co-ordination according to IEC 947-4-1:

- The contactor or the starter must not endanger persons or systems in the event of a short circuit
- The contactor or the starter must be suitable for further use
- No damage to the overload relay or other parts may occur with the exception of welding of the contactor or starter contacts provided that these can be easily separated without significant deformation (such as with a screwdriver)
- In the event of a short circuit, fast opening current limiting circuit breakers KT 7 make it possible to build economical, fully short circuit co-ordinated starter combinations in accordance with IEC 947-4-1, Type '2' co-ordination
- Type ' 2 ' co-ordination without oversizing of contactors means: Type ' 1 ' = Type ' 2 '

Note: ') What is meant by Automatic Type ' 2 ' co-ordination?
The high speed operation of the new KT 7 motor protection circuit breakers means that contactors need not be oversized to achieve type ' 2 ' co-ordination. Simply select the normal AC 3 rated contactor and the corresponding KT 7 circuit breaker and type ' 2 co-ordination is assured.
240/415 V rating suitable for use on 230/400 V in accordance with AS 60038: 2000



TemBreak Moulded Case Circuit Breaker or fuse

Terasaki

| Motor size kW | Approx. amps | circuit or breaker | NHP HRC fuse to BS88 | Sprecher + Schuh contactor type | Sprecher + Schuh thermal $\mathrm{O} / \mathrm{L}$ relay type | Setting range amps |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30PB/1.4 | NTIA-6 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PB/2 | NTIA-6 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | XM30PB/2.6 | NTIA-10 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1.6-2.4 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30PB/4.0 | NTIA-10 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XM30PB/5 | NTIA-10 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XM30PB/8 | NTIA-16 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 4-6 |
| 3.0 | 6.5 | XM30PB/10 | NTIA-16 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 4.0 | 8.2 | XM30PB/12 | NTIA-25 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 5.5 | 11 | XH125NJ/20 | NTIA-32 | CA 7-12 | CT 7-24 | 10-16 |
| 7.5 | 14 | XH125NJ/20 | NTIS-40 | CA 7-16 | CT 7-24 | 10-16 |
| 11 | 21 | XH125NJ/32 | NTIS-50 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 16-24 |
| 15 | 28 | XH125NJ/50 | NTIS-63 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-45 | 18-30 |
| 18.5 | 34 | XH125NJ/50 | NTCP-80 | CA 7-37 | CT 7-45 | 30-45 |
| 22 | 40 | XH125NJ/63 | NTCP-80 | CA 7-43 | CT 7-45 | 30-45 |
| 30 | 55 | XH125NJ/100 | NTCP-100 | CA 7-60 | CT 7-75 | 45-60 |
| 37 | 66 | XH125NJ/100 | NTF-160 | CA 7-72 | CT 7.75 | 60-75 |
| 45 | 80 | XH125NJ/125 ') | NTF-160 | CA 6-85 | CT 7-100 | 70-90 |
| 55 | 100 | XH125NJ/125 ${ }^{\text {') }}$ | NTF-200 | CA 6-105-E1 | CT 6-110 | 85-110 |
| 75 | 130 | XH250NJ/250 | NTKF-250 | CA 6-140-EI | CT 6-150 | 105-150 |
| 90 | 155 | XH250NJ/250 ') | NTKF-250 | CA 6-170-EI | CT 6-200 | 140-200 |
| 110 | 200 | XH250NJ/250 ${ }^{\text {') }}$ | NTKF-315 | CA 6-210-E1 | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 132 | 225 | XH400NE/400 | NTMF-355 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 150 | 250 | XH400NE/400 | NTMF-355 | CA 6-250-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 160 | 270 | XH400NE/400 | NTMF-400 | CA 6-300-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 185 | 310 | XH400NE/400 | NTTF-450 | CA 6-300-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 200 | 361 | XH400NE/400 | NTTM-500 | CA 6-420-EI/CA 5-450 | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 250 | 425 | XH630NE/630 | NTTM-630 | CA 6-420-EI/CA 5-450 | CEF 1-52 | 160-630 |
| 315 | 530 | XH630NE/630 | NTLM-710 | CA 5-550 | CEF 1-52 | 160-630 |

Notes: Fuses 65 kA . XH125NJ circuit breaker combinations limited to 50 kA , others 65 kA .
Overloads may be changed to different types eg. thermal style to electronic.
Some combinations also gives Type ' 2 ' performance.
${ }^{\text {I }}$ ) Use 'magnetic only' breaker - Refer NHP.
$240 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ rating suitable for use on $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ in accordance with AS 60038 : 2000


Refer Catalogue C-CO
TemBreak circuit breakers DOL starting 50 kA @ 400/415 V to AS 3947.4.1

## TemBreak MCCBs

| Motor size kW | Approx. amps | Terasaki circuit breaker | Sprecher + Schuh contactor | Sprecher + Schuh overload relay | Setting range amps |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30PB/1.4 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24-1.6 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PB/2 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24-1.6 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | XM30PB/2.6 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24-2.4 | 1.6-2.4 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30PB/4.0 | CA 7-16 | CT 7-24-4 | 2.4-4 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XM30PB/5 | CA 7-16 | CT 7-24-4 | 2.4-4 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XM30PB/8 | CA 7-16 | CT 7-24-6 | 4-6 |
| 3 | 6.5 | XM30PB/10 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-24-10 | 6-10 |
| 4 | 8.2 | XM30PB/12 | CA $7-30$ | CT 7-24-10 | 6-10 |
| 5.5 | 11 | XH125NJ/20 | CA $7-30$ | CT 7-24-16 | 10-16 |
| 7.5 | 14 | XH125NJ/20 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-24-16 | 10-16 |
| 11 | 21 | XH125NJ/32 | CA $7-30$ | CT 7-24-24 | 16-24 |
| 15 | 28 | XH125NJ/50 | CA $7-43$ | CT 7-45-30 | 18-30 |
| 18.5 | 34 | XH125NJ/50 | CA $7-43$ | CT 7-45-45 | 30-45 |
| 22 | 40 | XH125NJ/63 | CA 7-43 | CT 7-45-45 | 30-45 |
| 30 | 55 | XH125NJ/100 | CA 6-85 | CT 7-75 ${ }^{2}$ ) | 45-60 |
| 37 | 66 | XH125NJ/100 | CA 6-85 | CT 7-75 ${ }^{2}$ ) | 60-75 |
| 45 | 80 | XH125NJ/125 | CA 6-105-EI | CT 6-90 | 70-90 |
| 55 | 100 | XH125NJ/125 ${ }^{1}$ ) | CA 6-105-EI | CT 6-110 | 85-110 |
| 75 | 130 | XH250NJ/250 | CA 6-140-EI | CT 6-150 | 105-150 |
| 90 | 155 | XH250NJ/250 | C A6-170-E1 | CT 6-200 | 140-200 |
| 110 | 200 | XH250NJ/250 ') | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 132 | 225 | XS400SE/400 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 150 | 250 | XS400SE/400 | CA 6-250-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 160 | 270 | XS400SE/400 | CA 6-300-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 200 | 361 | XS400SE/400 | CA 6-420-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 200 | 361 | XS400SE/400 | CA 5-450 | CEF 1-22 ${ }^{2}$ ) | 160-400 |
| 250 | 425 | XS630SE/630 | CA 5-700 | CEF 1-52 ${ }^{2}$ ) | 160-630 |
| 320 | 538 | XS630SE/630 | CA 5-700 | CEF 1-52 ${ }^{2}$ ) | $160 \cdot 630$ |

Notes: Overloads may be thermal or electronic.
Combinalions based on the overload tripping before the circuit breaker at overload currents up to the motor locked rotor current.
') Use 'magnetic only' breaker or next higher circuit breaker / contactor combination.
${ }^{2}$ ) Use with separate mounling bracket.
Data for 65 kA co-ordination available refer Cat. C-CO
240/415 V rating suitable for use on 230/400 V in accordance with AS 60038: 2000

## Refer Catalogue C:CO

TemBreak circuit breakers DOL starting. 85 kA @ $400 / 415$ V to AS 3947.4.1

| Motor size kW | Approx. FLC @ 400/415 V (A) | Terasaki circuit breaker | Sprecher + Schuh contactor | Sprecher + Schuh thermal $O / L$ type | Setting <br> range ( A ) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30PB/1.4 | CA 7-9 | CEP 7-M32-2.9-10 | 1.0-2.9 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PB/2.0 | CA 7-9 | CEP 7-M32-2.9-10 | 1.0-2.9 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | XM30PB/2.6 | CA 7-9 | CEP 7-M32-2.9-10 | 1.0-2.9 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30PB/4 | CA 7-16 | CEP 7-M32-2.9-10 | 1.0-2.9 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XM30PB/5 | CA 7-16 | CEP 7-M32-5-10 | 1.6-5 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XM30PB/8 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-12-10 | 3.7-12 |
| 3 | 6.5 | XM30PB/8 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-12-10 | 3.7-12 |
| 4 | 8.2 | XM30PB/10 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-12-10 | 3.7-12 |
| 5.5 | 11 | TL100NJ/20 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-12-10 | 3.7-12 |
| 7.5 | 14 | TL100NJ/20 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 9 | 17 | TL100NJ/32 | CA 7 -30 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 10 | 19 | TL100NJ/32 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 11 | 21 | TL100NJ/32 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 15 | 28 | TL100NJ/50 | CA 7-43 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 18.5 | 34 | TL100NJ/50 | CA 7-43 | CEP 7-M37-37-10 | 12-37 |
| 22 | 40 | TL100NJ/63 | CA 7-43 | CEP 7-M45-45-10 | 14-45 |
| 30 | 55 | TL100NJ/100 | CA 7-72 | CEP 7-M85-85-10 | 26-85 |
| 37 | 66 | TL100NJ/100 | CA 7-72 | CEP 7-M85-85-10 | 26-85 |
| 45 | 80 | TL250NJ/160 | CA 6-105 | CEP 7-M85-85-10 | 26-85 |
| 55 | 100 | TL250NJ/160 | CA 6-105 | CEF 1-11/12 | 0.5-180 |
| 75 | 135 | TL250NJ/250 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-11/12 | 0.5-180 |
| 90 | 160 | TL250NJ/250 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-1/12 | 0.5-180 |
| 110 | 200 | TL250NJ/250 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-41/42/52 | 160-630 |
| 132 | 230 | TL400NE/400 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-4 1/42/52 | 160-630 |
| 160 | 270 | TL400NE/400 | CA 6-300-EI | CEF 1-41/42/52 | 160-630 |
| 200 | 361 | TL400NE/400 | CA 6-420-EI | CEF 1-41/42/52 | 160-630 |

Din-T circuit breakers with rotary isolator. DOL starting.

## Din-T MCBs

50 kA @ 400/415 V to AS 3947.4.1

| Motor size kW | Approx. amps @ 400/415 V | Sprecher + Schuh isolator | Terasaki circuit breaker | Sprecher + Schuh current limiter | Sprecher + Schuh contactor | Sprecher Schuh thermal O/L relay | Thermal overioad range |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/4 | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 0.6-1.6 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 4$ | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/4 | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1.6-2.4 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/6 | - | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/6 | $\cdot$ | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 10$ | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 4-6 |
| 3 | 6.5 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/16 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 4 | 8.2 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 16$ | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7.24 | 6-10 |
| 5.5 | 11 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/20 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 10-16 |
| 7.5 | 14 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 32$ | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-45 | 10-16 |
| 11 | 21 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/40 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-24 | 16-24 |
| 15 | 28 | LA 7-100 | Din-T $10 / 63$ | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-37 | CT 7-45 | 18-30 |
| 18.5 | 34 | LA 7-100 | Din-T 10/63 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-37 | CT 7-45 | 30-45 |

Note: $\quad 240 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ rating suitable for use on $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ in accordance with AS 60038:2000

Refer Catalogúe C-CO
TemBreak circuit breakers DOL starting. 85 kA @ 400/415 V to AS 3947.4.1
MCCBs

| Motor size kW | Approx. FLC @ 400/415 V (A) | Terasaki circuit breaker | Sprecher + Schuh contactor | Sprecher + Schuh thermal O/L type | Setting range (A) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30PB/1.4 | CA 7-9 | CEP 7-M32-2.9-10 | 1.0-2.9 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PB/2.0 | CA 7-9 | CEP 7-M32-2.9-10 | 1.0-2.9 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | XM30PB/2.6 | CA 7-9 | CEP 7-M32-2.9-10 | 1.0-2.9 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30PB/4 | CA 7-16 | CEP 7-M32-2.9-10 | 1.0-2.9 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | XM30PB/5 | CA 7-16 | CEP 7-M32-5-10 | 1.6.5 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XM30PB/8 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-12-10 | 3.7-12 |
| 3 | 6.5 | XM30PB/8 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-12-10 | 3.7-12 |
| 4 | 8.2 | XM30PB/10 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-12-10 | 3.7-12 |
| 5.5 | 11 | TL100NJ/20 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-12-10 | 3.7-12 |
| 7.5 | 14 | TL100NJ/20 | CA 7 -30 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 9 | 17 | TL100NJ/32 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 10 | 19 | TL100NJ/32 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 11 | 21 | TL100NJ/32 | CA 7-30 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 15 | 28 | TL100NJ/50 | CA 7-43 | CEP 7-M32-32-10 | 12-32 |
| 18.5 | 34 | TL100NJ/50 | CA 7-43 | CEP 7-M37-37-10 | 12-37 |
| 22 | 40 | TL100NJ/63 | CA 7-43 | CEP 7-M45-45-10 | 14-45 |
| 30 | 55 | TL100NJ/100 | CA 7-72 | CEP 7-M85-85-10 | 26-85 |
| 37 | 66 | TL100NJ/100. | CA 7-72 | CEP 7-M85-85-10 | 26-85 |
| 45 | 80 | TL250NJ/160 | CA 6-105 | CEP 7-M85-85-10 | 26-85 |
| 55 | 100 | TL250NJ/160 | CA 6-105 | CEF 1-11/12 | 0.5-180 |
| 75 | 135 | TL250NJ/250 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-11/12 | 0.5-180 |
| 90 | 160 | TL250NJ/250 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-11/12 | 0.5-180 |
| 110 | 200 | TL250NJ/250 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-4 1/42/52 | 160-630 |
| 132 | 230 | TL400NE/400 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-4 1/42/52 | 160-630 |
| 160 | 270 | TL400NE/400 | CA 6-300-EI | CEF 1-41/42/52 | 160-630 |
| 200 | 361 | TL400NE/400 | CA 6-420-EI | CEF 1-41/42/52 | 160-630 |

Din-T circuit breakers with rotary isolator. DOL starting.
50 kA@400/415 V to AS 3947.4.1

| Motor size kW | Approx. amps @ $400 / 415$ V | Sprecher ${ }^{+}$ Schuh isolator | Terasaki circuit breaker | Sprecher + Schuh current limiter | Sprecher + Schuh contactor | Schuh thermal O/L relay | Thermal overload range |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/4 | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 0.6-1.6 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 4$ | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 4$ | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1.6-2.4 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 6$ | - | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 6$ | - | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10 / 10 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 4-6 |
| 3 | 6.5 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/16 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 4 | 8.2 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 16$ | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 5.5 | 11 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 20$ | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 10-16 |
| 7.5 | 14 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/32 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-45 | 10-16 |
| 11 | 21 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/40 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-24 | 16-24 |
| 15 | 28 | LA 7-100 | Din-T 10 / 63 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-37 | CT 7-45 | 18-30 |
| 18.5 | 34 | LA 7-100 | Din-T 10/63 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-37 | CT 7-45 | 30-45 |

Note: $\quad 240 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ rating suitable for use on $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ in accordance with $A S 60038: 2000$

## Din-T MCBs

## Sprecher +




## Acscontarrecat

## Additional rating data - contactors to IEC 947

Contactor
CA 7-9 CA 7-12 CA 7-16 CA $7-23$ CA 7-30 CA 7-37 CA 7-43 CA 7-60 CA 7-72 CA 7-85
AC 1 resistive load
switching 3~
Ambient temperature $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\left.l_{a}\right)$ | $[\mathrm{A}]$ | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 50 | 50 | 85 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| $230 / 240 \mathrm{~V}$ | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 10 | 10 | 13 | 13 | 18 | 20 | 25 | 36 | 36 | 40 |
| $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 18 | 18 | 23 | 23 | 32 | 36 | 45 | 64 | 64 | 71 |
| 690 V | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 30 | 30 | 38 | 38 | 54 | 60 | 75 | 108 | 108 | 120 |

Ambient temperature $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$

| $\left.I_{\theta}{ }^{\prime}\right)$ | $[\mathrm{A}]$ | 32 | 32 | 32 | 32 | 45 | 45 | 63 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $230 / 240 \mathrm{~V}$ | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 8 | 8 | 10 | 10 | 14 | 16 | 20 | 29 | 29 | 34 |
| $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 14 | 14 | 17 | 17 | 26 | 28 | 36 | 51 | 51 | 61 |
| 690 V | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 24 | 24 | 29 | 29 | 44 | 48 | 60 | 86 | 86 | 102 |

AC motor switching
AC 2, AC 3, AC 4

| $230 / 240 \mathrm{~V}$ | $[\mathrm{~A}]$ | 11.5 | 14.5 | 20 | 26.5 | 34 | 37 | 42 | 62 | 70 | 85 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ | $[\mathrm{~A}]$ | 9 | 12 | 16 | 23 | 30 | 37 | 43 | 60 | 72 | 85 |
| 690 V | $[\mathrm{~A}]$ | 5 | 7 | 9.3 | 12 | 17 | 20 | 25 | 34 | 42 | 49 |
| $230 / 240 \mathrm{~V}$ | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 3 | 4 | 5.5 | 7.5 | 10 | 11 | 13 | 18.5 | 22 | 25 |
| $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 4 | 5.5 | 7.5 | 11 | 15 | 18.5 | 22 | 30 | 37 | 45 |
| 690 V | $[\mathrm{~kW}]$ | 4 | 5.5 | 7.5 | 10 | 15 | 18.5 | 22 | 30 | 37 | 45 |

Rated making capacity


Rated breaking capacity

| $I_{\theta} \mathrm{AC} 4$ | max. $460 \mathrm{~V}[\mathrm{~A}]$ | 135 | 180 | 240 | 345 | 450 | 555 | 645 | 900 | 1080 | 1275 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | max. $690 \mathrm{~V}[\mathrm{~A}]$ | 75 | 105 | 140 | 140 | 255 | 300 | 375 | 510 | 630 | 735 |

Short circuit protection
without protection relay
fuse gG to IEC 947-4-1

| co-ordination type ' 1 ' [A] | 50 | 50 | 50 | 63 | 100 | 125 | 160 | 200 | 250 | 250 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| co-ordination type '2' [A] | 20 | 25 | 25 | 35 | 50 | 80 | 100 | 100 | 125 | 160 |
| Main current circuit resistance [ $\mathrm{m} \Omega$ ] | 2.7 | 2.7 | 2.7 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1.5 | 0.9 | 0.9 | 0.9 |
| Power dissipated by all circuits at le AC 3 | 0.7 | 1.2 | 2.1 | 3.2 | 5.4 | 8.2 | 8.3 | 9.7 | 14 | 19.5 |
| Total power dissipation at le AC 3 AC control [w] | 3.3 | 3.8 | 4.7 | 6.2 | 8.4 | 11.2 | 11.5 | 14.2 | 18.5 | - |
| DC control [w] | 6.7 | 7.2 | 8.1 | 12.4 | 14.6 | 17.4 | 18.4 | 14.6 | 18.9 | - |
| Life span in millions of operations |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Mechanical AC control | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 12 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| DC control | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| Operating times (DC) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Make (mS) | 40... 70 | 40... 70 | 40.. 70 | 40...70 | 50.. 80 | 50... 80 | 50.. 80 | 20...40 | $20 . . .40$ | 20... 40 |
| Break (mS) | 7.. 15 | 7... 15 | 7.. 15 | 7... 15 | $7 \ldots 15$ | 7... 15 | - | - | - | - |

Note: ') Contact NHP for recommended cable size.


## Contactor (AC control)

| Type | a | $b$ | c | c1 | c2 | ad | d1 | d2') |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CA 7-9...CA 7-23 ${ }^{2}$ ) | 45 | 81 | 80.5 | 75.5 | 6 | 4.5 | 60 | 35 |
| CA 7-30...CA 7-37 | 45 | 81 | 97.5 | 92.6 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 60 | 35 |
| CA 7-43 | 54 | 81 | 100.5 | 95.6 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 60 | 45 |
| CA 7-60...CA 7-85 | 72 | 122 | 117 | 111.5 | 8.5 | 5.4 | 100 | 55 |

(DC control)

| Type | $\mathbf{a}$ | $\mathbf{b}$ | $\mathbf{c}$ | $\mathbf{c 1}$ | $\mathbf{c 2}$ | od | $\mathbf{d 1}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CA 7-9C..CA 7-16C | 45 | 81 | 106.5 | 101.5 | 6 | 4.5 | 60 |
| CA 7-23C | 45 | 81 | 123.5 | 119 | 6 | 4.5 | 60 |
| CA 7-30C $\ldots$ CA 7-37C | 45 | 81 | 141.5 | 136.5 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 60 |
| CA 7-43C | 54 | 81 | 144.5 | 140 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 60 |
| CA 7-60C...CA 7-85C | 72 | 122 | 117 | 111.5 | 8.5 | 5.4 | 100 |

## Accessories

| Contactor with |  | (AC control) <br> $(\mathbf{m m})$ | (DC control) <br> ( $\mathbf{m m}$ ) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Front mounting auxiliary contact | 2 or 4 pole | $\mathrm{c} / \mathrm{c} 1+39$ | $\mathrm{c} / \mathrm{c} 1+39$ |
| Side mounting auxiliary contact | 1 or 2 pole | $\mathrm{a}+9$ | $\mathrm{a}+9$ |
| Pneumatic timing module |  | $\mathrm{c} / \mathrm{c} 1+58$ | - |
| Electronic timing module | coil mounting | $\mathrm{b}+24$ | $\mathrm{~b}+24$ |
| Mechanical interlock | mounts between contactors | $\mathrm{a}+9$ | $\mathrm{a}+9$ |
| Mechanical latch |  | $\mathrm{c} / \mathrm{c} 1+61$ | - |
| Interface | coil mounting | $\mathrm{b}+9$ | - |
| Suppressor | coil mounting | $\mathrm{b}+3$ | $\mathrm{~b}+3$ |
| With inscriptions ${ }^{3}$ ) | labels | +0 | +0 |
|  | label support system $\mathrm{V} 4 / \mathrm{N} 5$ | +5.5 | +5.5 |

Notes: ${ }^{1}$ ) DIN Rail mounting 35 mm to EN 50022.
${ }^{2}$ ) Dimensions for 4 pole contactors same as 3 pole with auxiliary.
${ }^{3}$ ) Dimensions with inscriptions.

Dimensions in (mm)
CEP 7, CEP 7s and CEP 7-B mounted on CA 7 contactors


| Cat. No. | a | b | b1 | c | e1 | e2 | d1 | d2 | h | j | dd |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CA 7-9/12/16/23 with CEP 7 or CEP 7S | 45 | 131 | 86 | 88.5 | 16.5 | 69 | 60 | 35 | 86.5 | 2 | 4.2 |
| CA 7-9/12/16/23 with CEP 7-B | 54 | 137 | 97 | 90.7 | 5.1 | 59 | 60 | 35 | 85.1 | 2 | 4.2 |
| CA 7-30/37 with CEP 7 or CEP 7S | 45 | 136.5 | 91.5 | 92 | 16.5 | 69 | 60 | 35 | 104 | 2 | 4.2 |
| CA 7-30/37 with CEP 7-B | 54 | 137 | 97 | 92.1 | 5.2 | 59 | 60 | 35 | 104.7 | 2 | 4.2 |
| CA 7-43 with CEP 7. CEP 7S or CEP 7-B | 54 | 136.5 | 91.5 | 93 | 22 | 69 | 60 | 45 | 107 | 2 | 4.2 |
| CA 7-60/72/85 with CEP 7, CEP 7S or CEP 7-B | 72 | 188.5 | 120 | 120 | 18 | 84.5 | 100 | 55 | 125.5 | 2 | 5.5 |

CEP 7 with separate mounting bracket




Contactor, timer and overload selection chart for auto transformer starters

| ATS kW | Line <br> contactor | Trans <br> contactor | Star <br> contactor | Timer | Overload |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\mathbf{1 1}$ | CA 7-23-10 | CA 7-16-10 | CA 7-9-10 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| $\mathbf{1 5}$ | CA 7-30-00 | CA 723-10 | CA 7-12-10 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M37-37-10 |
| 18.5 | CA 7-37-00 | CA 7-30-00 | CA 7-16-10 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M37-37-10 |
| 22 | CA 7-43-00 | CA 7-30-00 | CA 7-23-10 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M45-45-10 |
| 30 | CA 7-60-00 | CA 7-37-00 | CA 7-30-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 37 | CA 7-72-00 | CA 7-43-00 | CA 7-30-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 45 | CA 7-85-00 | CA 7-60-00 | CA 7-37-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 55 | CA 6-85-11 | CA 7-60-00 | CA 7-43-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-110 |
| 75 | CA 6-105-11 | CA 7-85-00 | CA 7-60-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-150 |
| 90 | CA 6-140EI-11 | CA 6-85-11 | CA 7-72-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-200 |
| 110 | CA 6-170EI-11 | CA 6-105-11 | CA 7-85-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |
| 132 | CA 6-210EI-11 | CA 6-140EI-11 | CA 6-105-11 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |
| 150 | CA 6-250EI-11 | CA 6-140EI-11 | CA 6-105-11 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |
| 185 | CA 6-300EI-11 | CA 6-210EI-11 | CA 6-140EI-11 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |
| 220 | CA 6-420EI-11 | CA 6-210EI-11 | CA 6-140-EI-11 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |

Contactor, timer and overload selection chart for star delta starters

| SDS kW | Line contactor | Delta contactor | Star contactor | Timer | Overload |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7.5 | CA 7-9-10 | CA 7-9-01 | CA 7-9-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-12-10 |
| 11 | CA 7-12-10 | CA 7-12-01 | CA 7-9-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| 15 | CA 7-16-10 | CA 7-16-01 | CA 7-9-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| 18.5 | CA 7-23-10 | CA 7-23-01 | CA 7-12-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| 22 | CA 7-23-10 | CA 7-23-01 | CA 7-16-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| 30-37 | CA 7-37-00 | CA 7-37-00 | CA 7-23-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M45-45-10 |
| 45 | CA 7-60-11 | CA 7-60-11 | CA 7-30-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 55 | CA 7-60-11 | CA 7-60-11 | CA 7-37-00 | R27 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 75 | CA 7-85-00 | CA 7-85-00 | CA 7-43-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 90 | CA 6-85-11 | CA 6-85-11 | CA 7-60-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-90 |
| 110 | CA 6-105-11 | CA 6-105-11 | CA 7-72-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-110 |
| 132 | CA 6-140EI-11 | CA 6-140EI-11 | CA 7-85-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-150 |
| 150 | CA 6-170EI-11 | CA 6-170EI-11 | CA 6-85-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CTA 6-200 |
| 185 | CA 6-210El-11 | CA 6-210EI-11 | CA 6-105-11 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |
| 220 | CA 6-210-EI-11 | CA 6-210-El-11 | CA 6-140-El-11 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |



CT 7-24, CT 7-45, CT 7.75

| Type | For contactor | a | b | b1 | c | c1 | c2 | c3 | c4 | c5 | od | d1 | d2 | e1 | e2 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CT 7-24 | CA 7-9... 23 | 45 | 127 | 83 | 96 | 91 | 15 | 51 | 39 | 5 | 4.5 | 60 | $35^{1}$ ) | 16.5 | 51 |
|  | CA 7-30... 37 | 45 | 127 | 83 | 105 | 99 | 6.5 | 51 | 39 | 9.5 | 4.5 | 60 | $35^{\prime}$ ) | 16.5 | 51 |
| CT 7-45 | CA 7-30... 37 | 60 | 140 | 97 | 105 | 99 | 6.5 | 51 | 39 | 6.5 | 4.5 | 60 | $35^{\prime}$ ) | 16.5 | 57 |
|  | CA 7-43 | 60 | 140 | 97 | 107 | 103 | 6.5 | 51 | 39 | 8.5 | 4.5 | 60 | $45^{\prime}$ ) | 16.5 | 57 |
| CT 7-75 | CA 7-60... 85 | 72 | 185 | 120 | 125 | 120 | 8.5 | 51 | 39 | 28.5 | 5.4 | 100 | $55^{1}$ ) | 16.5 | 82 |

Separate mounting with bracket


Separate mounting


| Type | $\mathbf{a}$ | $\mathbf{b}$ | $\mathbf{b 1}$ | $\mathbf{c}$ | $\mathbf{c 1}$ | $\mathbf{c 2}$ | $\mathbf{c 3}$ | od | d1 | d2 | e1 | e2 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CT 7-24 | 45 | 85 | 44 | 95 | 70.5 | 5 | 51 | 4.5 | $60 \ldots 74$ | $\left.35^{\prime}\right)$ | 16 | 3 |
| CT 7-75 | 60 | 90 | 44 | 117 | 112 | 15 | 51 | 5.4 | 74 | $\left.50^{\prime}\right)$ | 16 | 0 |
| CT 7-90 | 100 | 120 | - | 135 | - | 5 | 51 | 6.2 | 74 | $\left.80^{\prime}\right)$ | 16 | 7 |

Notes: ') Standard DIN rail to EN 50 022-35.
${ }^{2}$ ) With reset rod, maintain 9 mm maximum operating radius from centre of reset button.
c3 Reset magnet.
c4 Auxiliary contact block.

## CONTROL RELAY \& PHASE FAILURE RELAY

## 1. IDEC CONTROL RELAY TECHNICAL DETAILS <br> 2. PHASE FAILURE RELAY TECHNICAL DETAILS



Sockets (for Blade Terminal Models)


Hold Down Springs \& Clips

| Appearance | Description | Retay | For DIN Mount Sockbt | For Through Panel \& PCB Hount Socket | Min Order Oty | 2. Must use horseshoe clip when meunting in DIN mount socket. Replacement horseshoe clip parn number is Y778-011. <br> 3. Two required per relay. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Pullover Wire Spring | RH1B | SY2S-22F1 ${ }^{2}$ | SY4S-51F1 | 10 |  |
|  |  | ${ }^{\text {RH2B }}$ | SY4S-02F12 |  |  |  |
|  |  | RH3B | SH3B-05F1 ${ }^{2}$ |  |  |  |
|  |  | RH4B | SH48-02F12.2. ${ }^{2}$ |  |  |  |
|  | Leaf Spring (side latch) | RH1B, RH2B. RH3B, RH4B | SFA-202 ${ }^{\text { }}$ | SFA-302 ${ }^{3}$ |  |  |
|  | Leat Spring (top latch) | RH18, RH28, RH38, RH4B | SFA. $101{ }^{\text {J }}$ | SFA-301 ${ }^{3}$ |  |  |

AC Coil Ratings

| Voltage (V) | Ratad Current $(\mathrm{mA}) \times 75 \%$ at 20, C |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Coil Rexistance ( A ) $\mathbf{~} \mathbf{1 0 \%}$ at $20{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  | Operation Characteristics (against rated values at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | AC. 50 Hz |  |  |  | AC 60Hz |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | SPDT | DPDT | 3PDT | 4PDT | SPDT | DPDT | 3PDT | 4PDT | SPDT | DPDT | 3PDT | 4PDṪ | Max Continuoūs Applied Voltage | Pickup Voltage | Drapout Voltage |
| 6 | 170 | 240 | 330 | 387 | 150 | 200 | 280 | 330 | 330 | 9.4 | 6.4 | 5.4 |  |  |  |
| 12 | B6 | 121 | 165 | 196 | 75 | 100 | 140 | 165 | 165 | 39.3 | 25.3 | 21.2 |  |  |  |
| 24 | 42 | 60.5 | 81 | 98 | 37 | 50 | 70 | 83 | 83 | 153 | 103 | 84.5 |  |  |  |
| 110 | 9.6 | - | 18.1 | 21.6 | 8.4 | - | 15.5 | 18.2 | 18.2 | - | 2.200 | 1.800 |  |  |  |
| 110-120 | - | $\begin{aligned} & 9.4- \\ & 10.8 \end{aligned}$ | - | - | - | 8.0-9.2 | - | - | - | - | - | - | 110\% | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 80\% } \\ & \text { maximum } \end{aligned}$ | 30\% minimum |
| 120 | 8.6 | - | 16.4 | 19.5 | 7.5 | - | 14.2 | 16.5 | 16.5 | - | 10,800 | 7.360 |  |  |  |
| 220 | 4.7 | - | 8.8 | 10.7 | 4.1 | - | 7.7 | 9.1 | 9.1 | - | 10,800 | 7,360 |  |  |  |
| 220-240 | - | 4.7-5.4 | - | - | - | 4.0-4.6 | - |  | - | 18.820 | - | - |  |  |  |
| 240 | 4.9 | - | 8.2 | 9.8 | 4.3 | - | 7.1 | B. 3 | 8.3 | - | 12.100 | 9.120 |  |  |  |

## DC Coii Ratings

| Voltage (v) | Rated Current (mA) $\pm 15 \%$ et $\mathbf{2 0} 0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  | Cöl Ressistaince ( Q ) 210\% at $20{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  | Dparation Characteristics (against rated vailuas at $20{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) |  |  | Standard coil voltages are in 80 L 0 . |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | SPAT | DPDT: | 3PDT | 4PDT | SPDT | DPDT | 3PDT | a ${ }^{\text {a P }}$ | Max. Continuous Appliod Vothage | Pickup Yoltage | Dropout Voltage |  |
| 6 | 128 | 150 | 240 | 250 | 47 | 40 | 25 | 24 | 110\% | $\begin{aligned} & 80 \% \\ & \text { maximum } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 10 \% \\ & \text { minimum } \end{aligned}$ |  |
| 12 | 64 | 75 | 120 | 125 | 188 | 160 | 100 | 96 |  |  |  |  |
| 24 | 32 | 36.9 | 60 | 62 | 750 | 650 |  | 388 |  |  |  |  |
| 48 | 18 | 18.5 | 30 | 31 | 2,660 | 2,600 | 1,600 | 1.550 |  |  |  |  |
| 100-110 | - | 8.2-9.0 | - | 二 | - | 12,250 | - | - |  |  |  |  |
| 110 | B | - | 12.8 | 15 | 13,800 | - | B,600 | 7,340 |  |  |  |  |

Contact Ratings

|  | Maximum Contrat Capacity |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Continuous Current | Allowable Contaćct Power |  | Rated Load |  |  |
|  |  |  | Aesistive Load. | Inductive Load | , Voltage (V) | , Res. Load | Ind. Load |
|  | SPDT | 10A | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1540VA } \\ & 300 \mathrm{~W} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 990 \mathrm{VA} \\ & 210 \mathrm{~W} \end{aligned}$ | 110 AL | 10A | 7A |
|  |  |  |  |  | 220 AC | 7 A | 4.5 A |
|  |  |  |  |  | 30 CC | 10A | 7A |
|  | DPDT3PDT4PDT | 10A | 1650VA <br> 300W | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 1100VA } \\ & 225 \mathrm{~W} \end{aligned}$ | 110 AC | 10A | 7.5 A |
|  |  |  |  |  | 220 AC | 7.5A | 5A |
|  |  |  |  |  | 30 OC | 10A | 7.5A |
| $\begin{aligned} & \frac{y}{y} \\ & \frac{\pi}{y} \\ & \frac{\pi}{3} \\ & \frac{\pi}{c} \\ & \frac{\pi}{0} \end{aligned}$ | $A$ <br> Note: Inductive load for the rated load - $\cos \theta=0.3, \mathrm{U} / \mathrm{A}=7 \mathrm{~ms}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | TÜV Ratings |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Voltage |  | BH1 | R3H2 | RH3 |  | RH4 |
|  | 240 VAC |  | 10A | 10A | 7.5A |  | 7.5A |
|  | 30 DOC |  | 10A | 10A | 10A |  | 10 A |

## UL. Ratings

| Voltàga | Registive |  |  | General Use |  |  | Horse Power Rating |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{AH1} \\ & \mathrm{RH} 2 \end{aligned}$ | RH3 | RH4 | $\begin{array}{r} \mathrm{RH1} \\ \mathrm{RH} 2 \end{array}$ | RH3 | RH4 | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{RH} 1 \\ & \mathrm{RH} 2 \end{aligned}$ | RH3 | RH4 |
| 2400 AC | 10A | 7.5A | 7.5A | 7 A | 6.5A | 5A | $1 / 3 \mathrm{HP}$ | 1/3 HP | - |
| 120 VAC | - | 10A | 10A | - | 7.5A. | 7.5A | 1/6 HP | 1/6 HP |  |
| 30V DC | 10A | 10A | - | 7A | - | - | - | - | - |
| 2BV DC | - | - | 104 | - | - | - | - | - | - |

## CSA Ratings

| Voltage | Resiǵtive |  |  |  | Ganaral Use |  |  |  | Horise <br> Power <br> Rating <br> RH1, 2, 3 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | RH1 | RH2 | RH3 | RH4 | RH1 | HH2 | RH3 | RH4 |  |
| 240 V AC | 10A | 10A | - | 7.5A | 7A | 7A | 7A | 5A | 1/3 HP |
| 120 VAC | 104 | 10A | 10A | 104 | 7.5A | 7.5A | - | 7.5A | 1/6 HP |
| 30 V DC | 10A | 10A | 10A | 10A | 7 A | 7.5A | - | - | - |

A
$A C: \cos \theta=1.0 . D C: \quad \mathrm{L} R=0 \mathrm{~ms}$

Socket Specifications

|  | Sockets | Teminat | Elactrical Rating | Wire Size | Torique |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| DIN Rail <br> Mourat <br> Sockets | SH1B-05 | (Coil) M3 screws <br> (contact) M3. 5 screws with captive wire clamp | 250V, 1DA | Maximum up to 2-812AWG | $\begin{aligned} & 5.5-9 \mathrm{in} \bullet \mathrm{lbs} \\ & 9-11.5 \mathrm{in} \bullet \mathrm{lbs} \end{aligned}$ |
|  | SH2B-05 <br> SH3B-05 <br> SH48-05 | M3.5 screws with captive wire clamp | 300V. 10A | Maximum up to 2-112AWG | 9-11.5 in 0 lbs |
| Finger-safe DIN Risil Mount. | SH1B-05C | (Doil) M3 screws <br> (contact) M3.5 screws with captive wire clamp, fingersafe | $250 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~A}$ | Maximum up to 2-112AWG | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 5.5-9 \mathrm{in} \cdot \mathrm{bs} \\ 9 .-11: 5 \mathrm{in} \bullet \mathrm{lbs} \\ \hline \end{array}$ |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SH2B-05C } \\ & \text { SH3B-05C } \\ & \text { SH4B-05C } \end{aligned}$ | M3.5 screws with captive wire clamp. fingersafe | 300V. 10A | Maximum up to 2-\#12AWG | g-11.5 in - bs |
| Through Panei Mount Socket | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SH18-51 } \\ & \text { SH2B-51 } \\ & \text { SH3B-51 } \\ & \text { SH4B-51 } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Soldet | 300\%, 10A | - | - |
| PCB R Mount Soacket | SH18-62 | PCB mount | 250V, 10A | -- | - |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SH2 } 2 \mathrm{E}-62 \\ & \text { SH3E-62 } \\ & \text { SH4B-62 } \end{aligned}$ | PCB mount | $300 \sim 10 \mathrm{~A}, 10$ | - | $\because \quad-$ |

## Accessories

| degscription | Appararace | Use with | Part'No. | Remarks. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Aluminum DIN Hail \{1 meter length\} |  | All DIN rail sockets | BNDN1000 | IDEC ofters a low-profile OIN rail (BNDN1000). The BNDN1000 is designed to accommodate DIN mount sockets. Made of durgble extruded aluminum, the BNON1000 measures $0.413(10,5 \mathrm{~mm})$ in height and 1.37 ( 35 mm ) in width (DIN standard). Standand length is $39^{*}(1,000 \mathrm{~mm})$. |
| DIN Rail End Stop |  | DIN rail .. | BNL5 | 9.1 mm wide. |
| Replacement Hold-Down Spring Anchos | $8$ | DIN mount sockets and hold down springs. | Y77B-011 | For use on DiN rail mount socket when using pullover wire hold down spring. 2 pieces included with each socket |

Specifications

| Contact Material |  | Silver cadmium oxide |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Contact Resistance ${ }^{1}$ |  | $50 \mathrm{~m} \Omega$ maximum |
| Minimum Applicable Load |  | 24 V DC, $30 \mathrm{~mA} ; 5 \mathrm{~V}$ DC. 100 mA (reference value) |
| Operate Time ${ }^{2}$ | SPDT <br> DPDT | 20ms maximum |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & 3 P D T \\ & \text { 4PDT } \end{aligned}$ | 25ms maximum |
| Release Time ${ }^{2}$ | SPDT <br> DPDT | 20ms maximum |
|  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 3 P D T \\ \text { 4PDT } \end{array}$ | 25ms maximum |
| Power Consumption (approx.) | SPDT | AC: $1.1 \mathrm{VA}(50 \mathrm{~Hz}) .1 \mathrm{VA}(60 \mathrm{~Hz}) \quad \mathrm{DC}: 0.8 \mathrm{~W}$ |
|  | DPDT | $\mathrm{AC}: 1.4 \mathrm{VA}(50 \mathrm{~Hz}), 1.2 \mathrm{VA}(60 \mathrm{~Hz}) \quad \mathrm{DC}: 0.9 \mathrm{~W}$ |
|  | 3PDT | AC: $2 \mathrm{VA}(50 \mathrm{~Hz}), 1.7 \mathrm{VA}(60 \mathrm{~Hz}) \quad$ DC: 1.5 W |
|  | 4PDT | AC: $2.5 \mathrm{VA}(50 \mathrm{~Hz}) .2 \mathrm{VA}(60 \mathrm{~Hz}) \quad \mathrm{DC}: 1.5 \mathrm{~W}$ |
| Insulation Resistance |  | 100M0 minimum (500V DC megger) |
| Dielectric Strength ${ }^{3}$ | SPDT | Between live and dead parts: $2,000 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}, 1$ minute <br> Between contact and coil: $2,000 \mathrm{~V}$ AC. 1 minute <br> Between contacts of the same pole: $1,000 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}, 1$ minute |
|  | DPDT <br> 3PDT <br> 4PDT | Between live and dead parts: $2,000 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}, 1$ minute <br> Between contact and coil: $2,000 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}, 1$ minute <br> Between contacts of different poles:  <br>  $2,000 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}, 1$ minute <br> Between contacts of the same pole: $1,000 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{AC}, 1$ minute |
| Operating Frequeñy |  | Electrical: 1,800 operations/hour maximum <br> Mechanical: 18,000 operations/hour maximum |
| Vibration Resistance |  | Damage limits: 10 to 55 Hz , amplitude 0.5 mm <br> Operating extremes: 10 to 55 Hz , amplitude 0.5 mm |
| Stiock Resistance |  | Damage limits: $1,000 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}^{2}(100 \mathrm{G})$ <br> Operating extremes: $200 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}^{2}(20 \mathrm{G}-\mathrm{SPDT}, \mathrm{DPDT})$ <br>  $100 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}^{2}(10 \mathrm{~B}-3 P D T, 4 P D T)$ |
| Mechanical Life |  | 50,000,000 operations minimum |
| Electrical Life | DPDT | 500,000 operations minimum (120V AC. 10A) |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { SPDT } \\ & \text { 3PDT } \\ & \text { 4PDT } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | 200;000 operations minimum (120V AC, 10A) |
| Operating Temperature * | SPDT | -25 to $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (no freezing) |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { DPDT } \\ & \text { 3PDT } \\ & \text { 4PDT } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | -25 to $+40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (no freezing) |
| Operating Humidity |  | 45 to 85\% RH (no condensation) |
| Weight (approx.) |  | SPDT: 24g; DPDT: 37g; 3PDT: 50g, 4PDT: 74g |

Note: Above values are initial values.

1. Measured using $5 \mathrm{VC}, 1 \mathrm{~A}$ voltage drop method
2. Measured at the rated voltage (at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ), excluding contact bouncing Release time of relays with diode: 40 ms maximum
3. Relays with indicator or diode: 1000 V AC. 1 minute
4. For use under different temperature conditions, refer to Continuous Load Current vs. Operating Temperature Curve. The operating temperature range of relays with indicator or diode is $-2510 \div 40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.

Characteristics (Reference Data)


## Maximum Switching Capacity



Continuous Load Current vs. Operating Temperature Curve (Basic Type, With Check Button, and Top Bracket Mounting Type)
(RH1)

(RH2)

(RH3/RH4)


Basic Type


Contacts can be operated by pressing the check button.

With Indicator (-L type)

| SPDT |  | 3PDT | 4PDT | DPOT |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Below <br> 100V <br> AC/DC |  |  |  | Below <br> 24 V <br> AC/DC |  | When the relay is energized. the indicator goes on. <br> - Relay coils less than 100V DC do not contain a protec- |
| 100 V <br> AC/DC <br> and over |  |  |  | 24V <br> AC/DC <br> and over |  | - Relay coils below 100 V use LED indicator, coils above IODV use neon lamp indicator. |

With Diode (-D type)
$\xrightarrow{\text { SPDT }}$

With Indicator LED \& Diode (-LD type)


RH1B-U/RH1B-UL/RH1B-UD/RH1B-ULD


咟
RH4B-U/RH4B-UL/RH4B-UD/RH4B-LD


Terminal Blocks


RH1B-UT


RH2B-UT


RH3B-UT


Relays \& Sockets

Dimensions con't (mm)

RH1V2-U/RH1V2-UD


RH3V2-U/RH3V2-UL/RH3V2-D


Standard DIN Rail Mount Sockets
SH1B-05
SH2B-05


SH3B-05


RH2V2-U/RH2V2-UL/RH2V2-UD


RH4V2-U/RH4V2-UL/RH4V2-UD


## Dimensions con't (mm)



## Dimensions con't (mm)

PCB Mount Sockets

## SH1B-62



SH3B-62


SH4B-62


## Operating Instructions


3. Leakage current while relay is off:

When driving an element at the same time as the relay operation, special consideration is needed for the circuit design. As shown in the incorrect circuit below, leakage current (lo) flows through the relay coil while the relay is off. Leakage current causes coil release failure or adversely affects the vibration resistance and shock resistance. Design a circuit as shown in the correct example.

4. Surge suppression for transistor driving circuits:

When the relay coil is turned off, a high-voltage pulse is generated, causing a transistor to deteriorate and sometimes to break. Be sure to connect a diode to suppress the back electromotive force. Then, the coil release time becomes slightly longer. To shorten the coil release time, connect a Zener diode between the collector and emitter of the transistor. Select a Zener diode with a Zener voltage slightly higher than the power voltage.


## Protection for Relay Contacts

1. The contact ratings show maximum values. Make sure that these values are not exceeded. When an inrush current flows through the load, the contact may become welded. If this is the case, connect a contact protection circuit, such as a current limiting resistor.
2. Contact protection circuit:

When switching an inductive load, arcing causes carbides to form on the contacts, resulting in increased contact resistance. In consideration of contact reliability, contact life, and noise suppression, use of a surge absorbing circuit is recommended. Note that the release time of the load becomes slightly longer. Check the operation using the actual load. Incorrect use of a contact protection circuit will adversely affect switching characteristics. Four typical examples of contact protection circuits are shown in the following table:

| 4 |  | This protection circuit can be used when the load impedance is smaller than the RC impedance in an AC load power circuit. <br> - R: Resistor of approximately the same resistance value as the load <br> - C:0.1 to $1 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | This protection circuit can be used for both AC and OC load power circuits. <br> R: Resistor of approximately the same resistance value as the load <br> C. 0.1 to $1 \mu \mathrm{~F}$ |
| 最 |  | This protection circuit can be used for DC load power circuits. Use a diode with the following ratings. Reverse withstand voltage: Power voltage of the load circuit $\times 10$ Forward current: More than the load current |
| 突 |  | This protection circuit can be used for both AC and DC load power circuits. <br> For a best result, when using a power voltage of 24 to 48 V AC/DC, connect a varistor across the load. <br> When using a power voltage of 100 to 240 V AC/DC, connect a varistor across the contacts. |

3. Do not use a contact protection circuit as shown below:

| This protection circuit is very effective in arc suppression when |
| :--- | :--- |
| opening the contacts. But, the capacitor is charged while the |
| contacts are opened. When the contacts are closed, the capacitor |
| is discharged through the contacts, increasing the possibility of |
| contact welding. |

Generally, switching a DC inductive load is more difficult than switching a DC resistive load. Using an appropriate arc suppressor, however, will improve the switching characteristics of a DC inductive load.

## Soldering

1. When soidering the relay terminals, use a soldering iron of 30 to 60 W , and quickly complete soldering (within approximately 3 seconds).
2. Use a non-corrosive rosin flux.

Operating Instructions con't

## Other Precautions

1. General notice

To maintain the initial characteristics, do not drop or shock the relay.
The relay cover cannot be removed from the base during normal operation. To maintain the initial characteristics, do not remove the relay cover.

Use the relay in environments free from condensation, dust, sulfur diaxide ( $\mathrm{SO}_{2}$ ), and hydrogen sulfide $\left|\mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{~S}\right|$.
Make sure that the coil voltage does not exceed applicable coil voltage range.
2. UL and CSA ratings may differ from product rated values determined by IDEC.
3. Do not use relays in the vicinity of strong magnetic field, as this may aflect relay operation.

## Safety Precautions

- Turn off the power to the relay before starting installation, removal, wiring, maintenance, and inspection of the relays. Failure to turn power of may cause electrical shock or fire hazard
- Observe specifications and rated values, otherwise electrical shock or fire hazard may be caused
- Use wires of the proper size to meet voltage and current requirements. Tighten the terminal screws on the relay socket to the proper tightening torque.
- Surge absorbing elements on AC relays with RC or DC relays with diade are provided to absorb the back electromotive force generated by the coil. When the relay is subject to an excessive external surge voltage, the surge absorbing element may be damaged. Add another surge absorbing provision to the relay to prevent damage

Precautions for the RU Relays

- Before operating the latching lever of the RU relay, turn off the power to the RU relay. After checking the circuit, return the latching lever to the original position.
- Do not use the latching lever as a switch. The durability of the latching lever is a minimum of 100 operations.
- When using DC loads on 4PDT relays, apply a positive valtage to terminals of neighboring poles and a negative voltage to the other terminais of neighboring poles to prevent the possibility of short circuits
- DC relays with a diode have a polarity in the coil terminals. Apply the DC voltage to the correct terminals.



## Features

Three-phase, three or four-wire
Adjustable set point
Adjustable time delay
Internal differential
LED trip indication
Double-pole relay contacts
Automatic reset

## Benefits

Monitoring of correct phase rotation
Protects against phantom or regenerated phase voltage
Protection against phase loss, reversal or sequence

Under-voltage and unbalanced voltage monitoring
Prevents reverse rotation of motor driven equipment
Ensures correct engine rotation
Protects portable electrical equipment
Nuisance tripping avoidance

## Applications

Marine panels
Switchgear
Distribution systems
Generator sets
Control panels
Process control
Motor protection
Transformers
Overload protection

## 250 Series DIN-rail and Wall Mounted Relays

## Phase Balance

The 250 series phase balance protector module provides continuous surveillance of a three-phase, three- or four-wire system and monitors the correct phase rotation or sequence of three-phase supply systems. The module protects against phase loss, reversal or sequence, phase unbalance and system under-voltage.

## Operation

Rotating machines are particularly vulnerable to incorrect phase sequence. Threephase motors can rotate in the wrong direction, potentially leading to physical damage or the risk of injury to personnel, yet voltage and current readings may appear normal. If one phase is lost because of a blown fuse, electric motors can continue to operate (single-phasing) which can result in severe electrical or mechanical damage. This relay has the added advantage that it will detect the phantom or regenerated phase that can be caused by a single-phase failure on some equipment or when running motors at low load levels.

An unbalanced supply voltage can lead to temperature rises in motors. An unbalanced voltage as little as 10\% can increase operating temperature to $150 \%$ of normal. For permanent installations, this relay should be used to monitor the incoming supply, protecting all equipment against incorrect connection at initial installation or after maintenance work. Rotating machines that cannot tolerate reverse rotation or pose significant risk to personnel under this condition should be individually protected with this relay. The possibility of incorrect supply connection is much more likely in portable equipment or marine applications.

The protector continuously monitors the three-phase supply. With the correct phase sequence applied and all three voltages balanced within the required limits, the front panel LED will illuminate and the output relay will be energised. An incorrect sequence, missing phase, out of balance or under-voltage condition will de-energise the relay and the LED will be extinguished.

The set point control allows adjustment of the voltage matching between $5 \%$ and $15 \%$. The time delay function operates only for the voltage unbalance condition. The delay can be used to prevent nuisance tripping due to short term unbalance situations. Incorrect phase rotation, a missing phase or an under-voltage condition trip the relay immediately.

Product Codes

| Betay | Protection: | ATSSIno: | Calmo |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3-phase 3-or 4-wire | Phase loss and unbalance 5-15\% | 47 | 252-PSF |
| 3-phase 3- or 4-wire | Phase loss, unbalance and under-voltage 5-15\% | 47/27 | 252-PSG |

Please specify system voltage, frequency and required options at time of ordering.


## Connections



Note: Neutral connection not required

## CHASSIS

## 1. CD-2 CHASSIS TECHNICAL DETAILS

## NHP

## Panelboards, loadcentres and accessories

## 2

## CONCEPT• PLUS and Premier busbar chassis - Din-T <br> - Standards AS/NZS 3439 <br> - Current rating 250 A <br> - Withstand rating $250 \mathrm{~A} / 20 \mathrm{kA}$ for 0.2 sec <br> - Splayed busbar to suit $160 \mathrm{~A} \& 250 \mathrm{~A}$ switch <br> - Top and bottom feed - splayed top \& bottom <br> - Tee-offs stripped and $50 \%$ capped <br> - Top power feed stripped and capped <br> - Full 35 mm DIN rail, improved MCB mounting security <br> - Improved insulation coating

Concept Din-T - 250 to suit Din-T MCBs ( 18 mm pole pitch) ${ }^{3}$ )
250 A
Pole capacity
Cat. No. ${ }^{1}$ )

| 12 | CD-2-12/18-3U |
| :--- | :--- |
| 18 | CD-2-18/18-3U |
| 24 | CD-2-24/18-3U |
| 30 | CD-2-30/18-3U |
| 36 | CD-2-36/18-3U |
| 42 | CD-2-42/18-3U |
| 48 | CD-2-48/18-3U |
| 54 | CD-2-54/18-3U |
| 60 | CD-2-60/18-3U |
| 72 | CD-2-72/18-3U |
| 78 | CD-2-78/18-3U |
| 84 | CD-2-84/18-3U |
| 96 | CD-2-96/18-3U |

Notes: ${ }^{1}$ ) 4 pole and other special configurations available to special order refer NHP. 'OFF' (line) side of MCB connects to chassis tee-off. MCB DIN clips may be disengaged or removed when mounting onto "CD" chassis If applicable use insulated tool provided to disengage DIN clip when removing MCB from chassis.
${ }^{3}$ ) Not suitable for CONCEPT economy Panelboards. Contact NHP for availability. Available on indent only.
(i)

| Accessories <br> Description | Cat. No. |
| :--- | :--- |
| Split tariff kit 250/355 A (supplied loose) | STKCD |
| Split tariff kit (fitted) | REFER NHP |
| Plastic tee-off cap $250 / 355 \mathrm{~A}$ | CD250TOPC |


| Technical data <br> Description |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Busbar rating | (Amp) | 250 |
| Voltage rating | (V) | 415 |
| Short circuit rating | (kA) | 20 |
| Short circuit time | (sec) | 0.2 |
| Insulation material |  | Polyolefin |
|  |  | PPA-441 |

Catalogue number structure - CD/CT busbar chassis


Panelboards, loadcentres and accessories

## Dimensions (mm)

CD chassis 250 to suit Din-T6, 10 and 15


Escutcheon cut-out details


| Dimensions (mm) <br> Chassis size ${ }^{\text {I }}$ ) | A | B | C | D | R | S |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| CD-X-12/18-3U | 152 | 100 | - | 110 | - | 100 |
| CD-X-18/18-3U | 206 | 100 | - | 164 | - | 100 |
| CD-X-24/18-3U | 260 | 100 | - | 218 | - | 100 |
| CD-X-30/18-3U | 314 | 200 | - | 272 | - | 200 |
| CD-X-36/18-3U | 368 | 300 | - | 326 | - | 300 |
| CD-X-42/18-3U | 422 | 300 | - | 280 | - | 300 |
| CD-X-48/18-3U | 476 | 400 | - | 434 | - | 400 |
| CD-X-54/18-3U | 530 | 400 | - | 488 | - | 400 |
| CD-X-60/18-3U | 584 | 500 | - | 542 | - | 500 |
| CD-X-72/18-3U | 692 | 600 | - | 650 | - | 600 |
| CD-X-78/18-3U | 745 | 700 | 300 | 704 | 300 | 700 |
| CD-X-84/18-3U | 800 | 700 | 300 | 758 | 300 | 700 |
| CD-X-96/18-3U | 908 | 800 | 400 | 866 | 400 | 800 |

## FUSE \& FUSE HOLDER

## 1. FUSE LINKS \& FUSE HOLDER TECHNICAL DETAILS

Refer Catalogue $\mathrm{N} F$
Compact fuse holders (Bolt-in)

- New compact size
- Front (FW) or stud/front (SFW) versions
O Smaller dimensions
- Saves panel space

Dimensions (mm)

|  | $\mathbf{H}$ | $\mathbf{W}$ | $\mathbf{D}$ | cable size |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| NC32_ | 87 | 27 | 50 | $10 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| NC63__ | 109 | 31 | 62 | $25 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| NC100_ | 118 | 35 | 72 | $50 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| NC200_ | 154 | 54 | 108 | $95 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |


| 32 |  |  | NNIT | NC32SFW |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 63 |  | NTIA | NTIS | NC63SFW |  |
| 100 | NOS | NTIA | NTIS | NC100SFW |  |
| 200 |  | NTIA ' $\left.^{\prime}\right)$ | NTIS $\left.^{\prime}\right)$ | NC200SFW |  |
|  | NTFP | NOS $\left.^{\prime}\right)$ | NTCP |  |  |

Note: ') Fuses can be fitted using adaptor 100M FLK.

Standard fuse holders (Bolt-in)
O Ratings from 20 to 200 A
O Front (FW) or stud/front (SFW) versions
O Complies with BS88


N20FW
Dimensions (mm)

|  | $\mathbf{H}$ | $\mathbf{W}$ | D | cable size |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| N20_ | 87 | 27 | 50 | $10 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| N32_ | 109 | 31 | 62 | $10 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| N63_ | 118 | 35 | 72 | $50 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| $\mathbf{N 1 0 0}$ | 154 | 54 | 108 | $70 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| N200_ | 193 | 70 | 149 | $150 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |

Rating $(A) \quad$ Fuse link to suit Cat. No.
Front wired - bolt in

| 20 | NNIT | N20FW |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 32 | NTIA | N32FW: |  |
| 63 | NTIA NTIS | N63FW |  |
| 100 | NTIA ' $^{1}$ NTIS ' | N100FW |  |
|  | NOS ' ${ }^{\prime}$ NTCP |  |  |
| 200 | NTBC NTC | N200FW |  |
|  | NTF |  |  |

Back stud/front wired - bolt in

| 20 | NNIT | N20SFW |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| 32 | NTIA | N32SFW |  |
| 63 | NTIA NTIS | N63SFW |  |
| 100 | NTIA $^{\prime}$ ) NTIS ${ }^{1}$ ) | N100SFW |  |
|  | NOS $^{1}$ ) NTCP | . |  |
| 200 | NTBC NTC | N200SFW |  |
|  | NTF |  |  |

Clip-in fuse holders - DIN rail mount
Fast, reliable fitting and removal of fuse links


Rating (A) Fuse link to suit Cat. No.
Front wired - clip-in - Black

| 20 | NSS | NV20FW |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 32 | NSS | NV32FW |  |
| 63 | NES | NV63FW |  |
| Front wired - Clip-in - White |  |  |  |
| 32 | NNS | NV32FWW |  |
| 63 | NES | NV63FWW |  |



NTF 200


NTKM 250


NTM 400


NTLT 710


NTXU 1250

| Rating (A) | BS 88 Ref | ixing <br> centres (mm) | Cat. No. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |



| 35 | A3 | 73 | NTIS 35 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 40 |  |  | NTIS 40 |  |
| 50 |  |  | NTIS 50 |  |
| 63 |  |  | NTIS 63 |  |
| 63 M 80 |  |  | NTIS 63P480 |  |
| $63 \mathrm{M100}$ |  |  | NTIS 63M100 |  |
| 80 | HYBRID A3 | 73 | NOS 80 |  |
| 100 |  |  | NOS 100 |  |
| 100M125 |  |  | NOS 100M125 |  |
| 100 M 160 |  |  | NOS 100M160 |  |
| 80 | A4 | 94 | NTCP 80 |  |
| 100 |  |  | NTCP 100, |  |
| 100M125 |  |  | NTCP 100 ${ }^{\text {a }} 125$ |  |
| 100M160 |  |  | NTCP 100H160 |  |
| 125 | HYBRID A4 | 94 | NTFP 125 |  |
| 160 |  |  | NTFP 160 |  |
| 200 |  |  | NTFP 200 |  |
| 200M250 |  |  | NTFP 200@250 |  |

Note: ') Fuses can be fitted using adaptor 100MFLK.
Bolted pattern centre tags

| 2 | - | 97 | NTB 2 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4 |  |  | NTB4 |  |
| 6 |  |  | NTB 6 |  |
| 10 |  |  | NTB 10 |  |
| 16 |  |  | NTB 16 |  |
| 20 |  |  | NTB 20 |  |
| 25 |  |  | NTB 25. |  |
| 32 |  |  | NTB 32 |  |
| 40 |  |  | NȚE 40 |  |
| 50 |  |  | NTB 50 |  |
| 63 |  |  | NTB 63 |  |
| 63 M 80 |  |  | NTB 63喏0 |  |
| $63 \mathrm{M100}$ |  |  | NTB 63 6100 |  |
| 2 | B1 | 111 | NTBC 2 |  |
| 4 |  |  | NTBC 4 |  |
| 6 |  |  | NTBC 8 |  |
| 10 |  |  | NTBC 10 |  |
| 16 |  |  | NTBC 18 |  |
| 20 |  |  | NTBC 20. |  |
| 25 |  |  | NTBC 25 |  |
| 32 |  |  | NTBC 32 |  |
| 40 |  |  | NTBC 40 |  |
| 50 |  |  | NTBC 50 |  |
| 63 |  |  | NTBC 63 |  |
| 63 M 80 |  |  | NTBC 63 M 80 |  |
| 63 M 100 |  |  | NTBC 63M100 |  |



Note: ') This hybrid type fuse is actually an A4 size fuse, but as it is over 100 amps it cannot be called an A4 fuse to AS 2005.

## Motor rated fuse links

BS88 aligns with the international fuse specification IEC 269. Special motor rated fuse links are listed and are available in various barrel sizes, in each case fitted with special fuse elements. Their selection frequently permits the use of lower rated switch and/or fusegear than would be the case if using Class gG fuse links. This range of fuse-links has been ASTA certified for a breaking capacity of 80 kA at 415 VAC .
NHP Compact industrial bolted pattern fuse links conform with BS88: Part 2: 1998 and have been ASTA certified for a breaking capacity of 80 kA at 415 VAC or 550 VAC and have utilisation categories gG .
NHP Compact fuse-links are suitable for back-up protection in motor circuits, having excellent time delay characteristics with low fusing factor and high rupturing capacity.
Fuses for use in motor circuits should be selected in accordance with the requirements for the protection of motor control gear as specified by the control gear manufacturer.
As a guide, the following table shows the minimum fuse sizes that may be associated with motors based on the assumption that the starting conditions for typical 3 phase 4 pole 415 V motors are; $8 \times$ F.L.C. for 6 secs [D.O.L] and $4 \times$ F.L.C. for 12 secs [Star Delta].

## Fuse link selection for motor circuit protection

| kW | ating | Approx. F.L.C. (A) | D.O.L. starting fuse link ( A ) | Motor rated fuse-link (A) | Start assisted Standard fuse link (A) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.19 | 0.25 | 0.7 | 4 |  | 2 |
| 0.37 | 0.5 | 1.3 | 6 |  | 4 |
| 0.55 | 0.75 | 1.6 | 6 |  | 4 |
| 0.75 | 1.0 | 1.8 | 10 |  | 4 |
| 1.1 | 1.5 | 2.6 | 10 |  | 6 |
| 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.4 | 10 |  | 10 |
| 2.2 | 3.0 | 5.0 | 16 |  | 10 |
| 3.0 | 4.0 | 6.5 | 16 |  | 10 |
| 4.0 | 5.5 | 8.0 | 20 | 20M25 | 16 |
| 5.5 | 7.5 | 11.0 | 25 | 20M32 | 16 |
| 7.5 | 10 | 15 | 40 | 32M40 | 25 |
| 11.0 | 15 | 22 | 50 | 32M50 | 32 |
| 15.0 | 20 | 28 | 63 | 32M63 | 40 |
| 18.5 | 25 | 36 | 80 | 63 M 80 | 50 |
| 22 | 30 | 39 | 80 | 63 M 80 | 63 |
| 30 | 40 | 52 | 100 | 63 M 100 | 63 |
| 37 | 50 | 69 | 160 | 100 M 160 | 80 |
| 45 | 60 | 79 | 160 | 100 M 160 | 100 |
| 55 | 75 | 96 | 200 |  | 160 |
| 75 | 100 | 125 | 200 | 200M250 | 160 |
| 90 | 125 | 156 | 250 | 200M250 | 160 |
| 110 | 150 | 189 | 315 |  | 200 |
| 132 | 175 | 224 | 355 |  | 250 |
| 150 | 200 | 255 | 355 |  | 250 |
| 160 | 220 | 275 | 400 |  | 315 |
| 185 | 250 | 318 | 450 |  | 315 |
| 200 | 270 | 339 | 500 |  | 355 |
| 220 | 300 | 374 | 560 |  | 400 |
| 257 | 350 | 450 | 630 |  | 450 |
| 295 | 400 | 500 | 710 |  | 500 |
| 315 | 430 | 535 | 710 |  | 560 |
| 355 | 483 | 580 | 800 |  | 630 |
| 400 | 545 | 646 | 800 |  | 710 |
| 450 | 612 | 725 | 1000 |  | 800 |

NuTa BStues liviselecton then


| SlimLine cassettes |  |  | Strömberg PowerLine switch fuses |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Fuse type <br> Cat. No. <br> Prefix |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SFM_BS |  |  | OESA |  |  |  |  |  | $08$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| 400 | 250 | 100 | 800 | 630 | 400 | 315 | 250 | 200 | 160 | 100 | 63 | 32 | 32 mini |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | NNS_ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NES_ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | NNIT |
|  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  | NTIA |
|  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  | NTIS_ |
|  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NOS |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | NTCP_ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | NTFP |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTB |
| $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  | NTBC |
| $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | $\because$ | NTC_ |
| $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  | NTF |
| $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  | ¢ 5 .axe | NTKF |
|  | $=:=$ |  | $=\cdots$ |  | $=$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTKM |
| $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTMF |
|  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTM |
|  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTTM |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTT_ |
|  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTLM |


| NHP HRC fuse holders |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Fuse type <br> Cat. No. <br> Prefix |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| NC (Compact - Bolt-in) |  |  |  | N (Bolt-in) |  |  |  |  | NV (Clip-in) |  |  |  |
| 200 | 100. | 63 | 32 | 200 | 100 | 63 | 32 | 20 | 63 | 32 | 20 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ | NNS_ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  | NES |
|  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  | NNIT_ |
| $\checkmark$ A | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  | $\checkmark$ A | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | NTIA |
| $\checkmark$ A | $\checkmark$ | $\checkmark$ |  |  | $\checkmark$ A | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  | NTIS |
| $\checkmark$ A | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ A |  |  |  |  |  |  | NOS |
| $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTCP_ |
| $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTFP_ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTB |
|  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTBC |
|  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTC |
|  |  |  |  | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | NTF_ |

Legend: $\quad \checkmark$ Fuse links fit direct.
$\checkmark^{\text {A }}$ Fuses require 100MFLK adaptor.

$\mathbf{N}$ - series
(Standard fuse holders)


N20FW


NV32FW (Clip-in)


NC100FW
(New compact fuse holders)

Halmac Services (Qld) Pty. Lotd.

## GSM MODEM

## 1. FASTRACK SUPREME GSM MODEM TECHNICAL DETAILS

2. FASTRACK SUPREME GSM MODEM USER GUIDE


Fastrack Supreme is a versatile Plug \& Play Wireless CPU* that will carry your applications well into the future. It has
been designed to accommodate any additional features you can imagine, thanks to a revolutionary, open standard
Internal Expansion Socket which you can populate with an expansion card from Wavecom - or one of your own.

## SECURE CELLULAR INTERNET

Prevent hacker attacks by using our Security software Plug-In to connect your sales terminal, meter, vehicle, asset tracking or monitoring product via GSM, GPRS or high speed EDGE to the cellular Internet highway.

POWERFUL CORE APPLICATION PROCESSING
Every Fastrack Supreme features a Wavecom Q26-family Wireless CPU*: a powerful central processing unit with an ARM9 32 bit, $26-104 \mathrm{MHz}$ core. programmable via any combination of AT commands, C and Lua.

## FASTRACK = YOUR PRODUCT

By designing your product value as an expansion card you save time and money in cellular learning curve, certification, mechanical design and time to market. Fastrack can now become your product.

## UNHEARD-OF EXPANDABILITY

Add additional 10 connectivity or features like GPS, WiFi, Bluetooth, Zigbee and more. The open interface means you can develop your own expansion modules for your specific needs.

## INTELLIGENT DEVICE SERVICES

Our Intelligent Device Services enable you to remotely monitor and securely upgrade the software of your product, in order to reduce post-deployment field maintenance costs.

## PROFESSIONAL SERVICES

Accelerate your product design and ensure you capitalize on market opportunities!
wovecom ${ }^{\circledR}$
Smart wireless. Smart business.

Fastrack Supreme

## Plug and play with unlimited expandability

Evolve to the latest cellular technology and add functionality without sacrificing the form factor you have come to rely on. The Fastrack Supreme is the same size, has the same interfaces and is completely backward compatible with previous Fastrack products, and is packed with a host of new features.

Wavecom has developed an exciting new, open-standard Internal Expansion Socket (IES) interface for you to add additional IO connectivity or features like GPS, WiFi, Bluetooth, Zigbee and more. The open interface means you can develop your own expansion modules and customize the product for your specific requirements, or you can look to Wavecom for new expansion modules designed to address your most-pressing needs.

Features



# Open AT ${ }^{\text {® }}$ Software Suite 2.0 <br> Industrial software for industrial design demands 

The Open AT" Software Suite allows you to develop, compile, test, debug, download and natively execute your applications written in standard ANSI C directly on the Fastrack Supreme, or indeed any other Wavecom Wireless CPU^. It is royalty free and comprises operating system, compiler and integrated development environments. There are no hidden costs - maintenance and qualification are provided for free by Wavecom.


- Multitasked Pre-Emptive Event-Based Real-Time Operating System
- Integrated Development Environment built on Eclipse ${ }^{\text {TM }}$
- Extensive Set of Plug-Ins (Internet Suite, C-GPS and more)
- GSM Release 99 compliant modem firmware
- Secure Intelligent Device Services (IDS) compatible


## REAL TIME OPERATING SYSTEM

## Real-Time

Guarantied response time to interruption
(even during GSM/GPRS/EDGE activities, calis and transfer).
Wireless CPU• Resources Direct Access and IT Management
$\rightarrow$ Hardware and Software Timers
$\rightarrow$ DSP
$\rightarrow$ SPI
$\rightarrow \mathrm{ADC}$
$\rightarrow$ External Interrupt Pins
$\rightarrow$ GPIOs
$\rightarrow$ UARTS (coming in 2008)

## Multitasking

Auto shut-down feature
Feature improving the overall consumption of the application by deactivating the RS232 interface.

Application dedicated Hardware Watchdog
$\rightarrow$ application dedicated for close monitoring
$\rightarrow$ tunable depending on the complexity of the processing (ex: Pulse count Vs RSA signature calculation...)

## CROSS-PLATFORM INTEGRATED <br> DEVELOPMENT ENVIRONMENT

For eased application debug it can be performed on PC: for very fast and convenient application debugging through Remote Task Environment.

On target for final Integration and time-critical behavior management:

$$
\rightarrow \text { Live through Traces }
$$

$\rightarrow$ Post mortem through BackTraces
On field:
$\rightarrow$ for difficult error causing operating scenarios through IDS device monitoring services and BackTraces over the air retrieval.

## SEAMLESSLY PLUG-IN ADDITIONAL FEATURES

Plug-Ins are an optional range of software feature packages that are selected when your order your Wireless CPU®. The standard range provides access to Internet clients \& protocols, controlierless companion wireless peripherals such as Bluetooth \& GPS. Of course, the powerful flexibility of Open AT Software Suite means that you can also develop your own Plug-Ins and own custom AT commands.


Lua Easy Scripting


Internet
Clients \& Protocols


C-GPS
Companion


C-Bluetooth ${ }^{\text {m }}$ Companion

aqLink* n-band modem

WAVECOM BSP-BASED EMBEDDED SOFTWARE ARCHITECTURE


## Wavecom Services

The wireless products you are developing are most probably very complex, and they will stay in the field for many years. With this in mind, Wavecom has created a range of professional and operated services to make the development process easier and to help you protect your investment, enrich your products and services, and reduce the lifetime cost of your device network.

## Professional services: Less pain, more gain

Wavecom Professional Services help you be faster, sleeker and more adaptable to the ever changing needs of your market, all along the typical product lifecycle timeline:


## Intelligent Device Services: Investment protection

Wavecom has created the world's first cellular operated service portfolio to benefit from easy to use end-to-end Intelligent Device Services that enable to remotely monitor and securely upgrade the application software of your product in addition to the entire Wavecom embedded Open AT* Software:

```
WIRELLESS DEVICE MANAGEMENT
    Simplify:your deviceinstallation and protect your wireless investment
        while reducing, your field service costs
COMMUNICATION MANAGEMENT
    Analyze your traffic load and roaming usage, and adjust your tariff plans to your real usage
APPLICATION MANAGENENT
    Benefit from proactive maintenance services to diagñose issues and take action
        before a significant problem occurs
```

See the Fastrack Supreme online: www.wavecom.com/fastracksupreme

Join the Wavecom Developer community: www.wavecom.com/forum


Meneconno
Smart wireless. Smart business.

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_001
Plug and Play Wireless CPU®

## FASTRACK Supreme User Guide

Reference: WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_001
Revision: 001e
Date: 5 june, 2007


Document History

| Revision | Oate | Ust of revisions |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 001 | 9 February, 07 | First Issue |  |
| 001 a | 23 February, 2007 | Update DC cable GPIO mapping, add AutoShutDown |  |
| 001 b | 21 May, 07 | Add detail of IES, RTC and serial port autoshutdown |  |
| 001 c | 1 Jun, 07 | Change to Quad Band |  |
| 001 d | 4 Jun, 07 | Update label/packaging photo |  |
| 001 e | 5 Jun, 07 | Comment |  |

## wovecom ${ }^{\text {s }}$

## Ovenview

The FASTRACK Supreme 10 and FASTRACK Supreme 20 are discrete, rugged cellular Plug \& Play Wireless CPU ${ }^{\circledR}$ offering state-of-the-art GSM/GPRS (and EGPRS for FASTRACK Supreme 20) connectivity for machine to machine applications.
Proven for reliable, stable performance on wireless networks worldwide, Wavecom's latest generation of FASTRACK Supreme continues to deliver rapid time to market and painless integration.
Having comparable size with the previous M1306B generation, and updated with new features, the FASTRACK Supreme offers an Internal Expansion Socket (IES) interface accessible for customer use. Expanding application features is easy without voiding the warrantee of the FASTRACK Supreme by simply plugging in of an Internal Expansion Socket Module (IESM) board.
Fully certified, the quad band $850 / 900 / 1800 / 1900 \mathrm{MHz}$ FASTRACK Supreme 10 offers GPRS Class 10 capability and FASTRACK Supreme 20 offers GPRS/EGPRS Class 10 capability. Both support a powerful open software platform (Open $A T^{8}$ ). Open $A T^{\circledR}$ is the worid's most comprehensive cellular development environment, which allows embedded standard ANSI C applications to be natively executed directly on the Wireless CPU ${ }^{\otimes}$.

FASTRACK Supreme is controlled by firmware through a set of AT commands.
This document describes the FASTRACK Supreme and gives information on the following topics:

- general presentation,
- functional description,
- basic services available,
- technical characteristics,
- installing and using the FASTRACK Supreme,
- user-level troubleshooting.
- recommended accessories to be used with the product.


## Note:

This document covers the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play alone and does not include

- The programmable capabilities provided via the use of Open AT ${ }^{\infty}$ Software Suites.
- The development guide for IESM for expanding the application feature through the IES interface.

For detailed, please refer to the documents shown in the "Reference documents" section.
wevecom ${ }^{\text {B }}$
make It wireless

# Fastrack Supreme User Guide <br> WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_001 

## RoHS Directive

The FASTRACK Supreme is now compliant with RoHS Directive 2002/95/EC, which sets timits for the use of certain restricted hazardous substances. This directive states that "from 1st July 2006, new electrical and electronic equipment put on the market does not contain lead, mercury, cadmium, hexavalent chromium, polybrominated biphenyls (PBB), and polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE)".
Plug \& Plays which are compliant with this directive are identified by the

RoHS logo on their label.

RoHS
COMPLIANT
2003/95/EC

## Disposing of the product

This electronic product is subject to the EU Directive 2002/96/EC for Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE). As such, this product must not be disposed off at a municipal waste collection point. Please refer to local regulations for directions on how to dispose off this product in an environmental friendly manner.


## Waveco $\mathbf{M}^{\text {© }}$ confidental ©

wovecoms


## Cautions

Information furnished herein by WAVECOM is accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed for its use. Please read carefully the safety recommendations given in Section 9 for an application based on FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play.

## Trademarks

$\square_{(B)}$, WAVECOM ${ }^{\oplus}$, Wireless CPU $^{\oplus}$, Open $A T^{\oplus}$ and certain other trademarks and logos appearing on this document, are filed or registered trademarks of Wavecom S.A. in France or in other countries. All other company and/or product names mentioned may be filed or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## Copyright

This manual is copyrighted by WAVECOM with all rights reserved. No part of this manual may be reproduced in any form without the prior written permission of WAVECOM. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of their respective owners.


| General information about Wavecom and its range of <br> products: | www.wavecom.com |
| :--- | :--- |
| Specific support is available for the FASTRACK Supreme <br> Plug \& Play Wireless CPU | TBD |
| Open AT ${ }^{\otimes}$ Introduction: | www.wavecom.com/OpenAT |
| Developer community for software and hardware: | www.wavecom.com/forum |

## Contents

DOCUMENT HISTORY ..... 2
OVERVIEW .....  3
CAUTIONS .....  5
TRADEMARKS ..... 5
COPYRIGHT ..... 5
WEB SITE SUPPORT .....  6
CONTENTS .....  7
LIST OF FIGURES ..... 11
LIST OF TABLES ..... 12
1 REFERENCES ..... 13
1.1 Reference Documents ..... 13
1.1.1 Open AT ${ }^{\oplus}$ Software Documentation ..... 13
1.1.2 AT Software Documentation ..... 13
1.1.3 Firmware Upgrade Documents ..... 13
1.1.4 Delta between M1306B Documents ..... 13
1.1.5 IESM Related Documents ..... 13
1.2 Abbreviations ..... 14
2 PACKAGING ..... 17
2.1 Contents ..... 17
2.2 Packaging Box ..... 18
2.3 Production Labelling ..... 19
3 GENERAL PRESENTATION ..... 20
3.1 Description ..... 20
3.2 External Connections ..... 22
3.2.1 Connectors ..... 22
3.2.1.1 Antenna Connector ..... 22
3.2.1.2 Power Supply Connector ..... 22
3.2.1.3 Sub HD 15-pin Connector ..... 23
woveco $\boldsymbol{M}^{\text {G }}$ confidentale Page:7/7This document is the sole and exclushe pronerty of Whaccom. Hot to te distributed of dyualged without arior writuen agreement5 june, 2001
wavecoms
Make it wireless
Fastrack Supreme User Guide WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_001
3.2.1.4 IES Connector. ..... 25
3.2.2 Power supply cable ..... 29
4 FEATURES AND SERVICES ..... 31
4.1 Basic Features and Services ..... 31
4.2 Additional NEW Features ..... 34
4.2.1 Support Additional GSM850/PCS1900 Bands ..... 34
4.2.2 IES Interface for Easy Expansion of Application Features. ..... 34
4.2.3 Serial Port Auto Shut Down or Improving Power Consumption ..... 34
4.2.4 Real Time Clock (RTC) for Saving Date and Time ..... 34
4.2.5 SIM Card Lock Feature ..... 35
5 USING THE FASTRACK SUPREME PLUG \& PLAY ..... 36
5.1 Getting Started ..... 36
5.1.1 Mount the FASTRACK Supreme ..... 36
5.1.2 Set up the FASTRACK Supreme ..... 36
5.1.3 Check the communication with the FASTRACK Supreme ..... 37
5.1.4 Reset the FASTRACK Supreme ..... 37
5.2 Specific Recommendations when Using the FASTRACK Supreme on Trucks ..... 38
5.2.1 Recommended Power Supply Connection on Trucks ..... 38
5.2.2 Technical Constraints on Trucks ..... 38
5.3 FASTRACK Supreme Operational Status ..... 39
5.4 Echo Function Disabled ..... 40
5.5 Verify the Received Signal Strength ..... 41
5.6 Check the Pin Code Status ..... 41
5.7 Switch between EU/US Band(s) ..... 41
5.8 Check the Band(s) Selection ..... 42
5.9 Verify the FASTRACK Supreme Network Registration ..... 43
5.10 Main AT Commands for the Plug \& Play ..... 44
5.11 Firmware Upgrade Procedure ..... 45
6 TROUBLESHOOTING ..... 46
6.1 No Communication with the FASTRACK Supreme through the Serial Link ..... 46
6.2 Receiving "ERROR" Message ..... 46
6.3 Receiving "NO CARRIER" Message ..... 47
7 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION ..... 50
7.1 Architecture ..... 50
7.2 EU and US Bands. ..... 51
7.2.1 General Presentation ..... 51
7.2.2 AT COMMAND for Bands Switch ..... 51
7.3 Power Supply ..... 51
Wavecom ${ }^{\text {E }}$ confidental (©Page $8 / 7$This document is the sole and exclashe property of Wavicom. Mot to he distribated or dhuiged without prior witten agreement.Wh_bey_Festatern_01
wavecome
make it wireless
Fastrack Supreme User Guide WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_001
7.3.1 General Presentation ..... 51
7.3.2 Protections ..... 51
7.4 RS232 Serial Link ..... 51
7.4.1 General Presentation ..... 51
7.4.2 Autobauding Mode ..... 52
7.4.3 Pin Description ..... 53
7.4.4 Serial Port Auto shut down Feature ..... 53
7.5 General Purpose Input/Output (GPIO) ..... 54
7.6 BOOT ..... 54
7.7 RESET ..... 54
7.7.1 General presentation ..... 54
7.7.2 Reset Sequence ..... 55
7.8 Audio ..... 56
7.8.1 Microphone Inputs ..... 56
7.8.2 Speaker Outputs ..... 57
7.9 Real Time Clock (RTC) ..... 58
7.10 FLASH LED ..... 58
8 TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS ..... 59
8.1 Mechanical Characteristics ..... 59
8.2 Electrical Characteristics ..... 61
8.2.1 Power Supply ..... 61
8.2.2 Power Consumption ..... 62
8.2.3 Audio Interface ..... 65
8.2.4 General Purpose Input/Output ..... 66
8.2.5 SIM Interface ..... 66
8.2.6 RESET Signal ..... 66
8.2.7 RF Characteristics ..... 67
8.2.7.1 Frequency Ranges .....  67
8.2.7.2 RF Performances ..... 68
8.2.7.3 External Antenna ..... 69
8.3 Environmental Characteristics ..... 69
8.4 Conformity ..... 72
8.5 Protections ..... 72
8.5.1 Power Supply ..... 72
8.5.2 Overvoltage ..... 73
8.5.3 Electrostatic Discharge ..... 73
8.5.4 Miscellaneous ..... 73
9 SAFETY RECOMMENDATIONS ..... 74
9.1 General Safety ..... 74
9.2 Vehicle Safety ..... 74
9.3 Care and Maintenance ..... 75
9.4 Your Responsibility ..... 75
waveco $M^{\text {G }}$ confidential©

wovecoms
Make if wirciess
Fastrack Supreme User Guide
WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_001
List of Figures
Figure 1: Complete package contents ..... 17
Figure 2: Packaging box ..... 18
Figure 3: Production Label ..... 19
Figure 4: FASTRACK Supreme general description ..... 20
Figure 5: FASTRACK Supreme holding bridles ..... 21
Figure 6: SMA connector for antenna connection ..... 22
Figure 7: Power supply connector ..... 23
Figure 8: Sub HD 15 -pin connector ..... 24
Figure 9: IES connector for feature expansion ..... 26
Figure 10: Power supply cable ..... 29
Figure 11: SIM card lock feature ..... 35
Figure 12: FASTRACK Supreme mounting ..... 36
Figure 13: Recommended power suppiy connection on trucks ..... 38
Figure 14: Example of electrical connection which may dramatically damage the FASTRACK Supreme ..... 39
Figure 15: Functional architecture ..... 50
Figure 16: RS232 Serial Link signals ..... 52
Figure 17: Reset sequence diagram ..... 56
Figure 18: Dimensioning diagram. ..... 60
wavecom ${ }^{\text {S }}$ confidential ©

## List of Tables

Table 1: Power supply connector pin description ..... 23
Table 2: Sub HD 15-pin connector description ..... 24
Table 3: IES Connector Description ..... 27
Table 4: Basic features of the FASTRACK Supreme ..... 31
Table 5: FASTRACK Supreme operational status ..... 40
Table 6: Values of received signal strength ..... 41
Table 7: AT+CPIN Responses ..... 41
Table 8: AT+WMBS Band Selection ..... 42
Table 9: AT+WMBS Responses ..... 42
Table 10: Values of network registration ..... 43
Table 11: Main usual AT commands for the Plug \& Play ..... 44
Table 12: Solutions for no connection with FASTRACK Supreme through serial link ..... 46
Table 13: Solutions for "NO CARRIER" message ..... 48
Table 14: Interpretation of extended error code ..... 49
Table 15: Mechanical characteristics ..... 59
Table 16: Electrical characteristics ..... 61
Table 17: Effects of power supply defect ..... 61
Table 18: Power consumption (1*) ..... 62
Table 19: Audio parameters caracteristics ..... 65
Table 20: Microphone inputs internal audio filter characteristics ..... 65
Table 21: Recommended characteristics for the microphone: ..... 65
Table 22: Recommended characteristics for the speaker ..... 66
Table 23: Operating conditions ..... 66
Table 24: SIM card characteristics ..... 66
Table 25: Electrical characteristics ..... 66
Table 26: Operating conditions ..... 67
Table 27: Frequency ranges ..... 67
Table 28: Receiver and transmitter RF performances ..... 68
Table 29: External antenna characteristics ..... 69
Table 30: Ranges of temperature ..... 69
Table 31: Environmental standard constraints ..... 70
Table 32: List of recommended accessories ..... 76
wavecoms ${ }^{〔}$ canfidential ©Page: $12 / n$This docoment is the sole and exclusive property of Wavicom. Hot to be distrituted or divulated withont orior witten sgreement5 June, 2007
wovecom ${ }^{\text {T}}$

## 1 References

### 1.1 Reference Documents

For more details, several reference documents may be consulted. The Wavecom reference documents are provided in the Wavecom documents package contrary to the general reference documents, which are not Wavecom owned.

### 1.1.1 Open AT $^{\circledR}$ Software Documentation

[1] Getting started with Open AT ${ }^{\text {® }}$ (Ref.WM_ASW_OAT_CTI_001)
[2] Open $A T^{8}$ Tutorial (Ref.WM_ASW_OAT_UGD_001)
[3] Tools Manual (Ref. WM_ASW_OAT_UGD_003)
[4] Open $A T^{\circledR}$ Programming Guide (Ref. TBD)
[5] Open AT ${ }^{\text {® }}$ Customer Release Note (Ref. WM_ASW_OAT_DVD_00062)
Remark: The document above is for Open AT3.12 and FASTRACK Supreme will use new release of Open AT4.21. Reference document not yet available and TBC.

### 1.1.2 AT Software Documentation

[6] AT commands interface Guide for X51 (Ref. WM_ASW_OAT_UGD_00016)
[7] Customer Release Note X51 (Ref. WM_ASW_OAT_DVD_00120)
Remark: The document above is for X51 and FASTRACK Supreme will use new release of FW6.63.
Reference document not yet available and TBC.

### 1.1.3 Firmware Upgrade Documents

[8] Firmware upgrade procedure (Ref. WM_SW_GEN_UGD_001)

### 1.1.4 Delta between M1306B Documents

[9] Delta between M1306B and FASTRACK Supreme (Ref. WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_004)

### 1.1.5 IESM Related Documents

[10] IESM Product Technical Specification (Ref. WA_DEV_Fastrk_PTS_001)
[11] IESM-GPS+USB User Guide (Ref. WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_002)
[12] IESM-GPS+USB Installation Guide (Ref. WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_003)
[13] IESM-IO+USB Installation Guide (Ref. WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_005)
[14] IESM-IO+USB User Guide (Ref. WA_DEV_Fastrk_UGD_006)

## Note:

New versions of software may be available. Wavecom recommends customers to check the web site for the latest documentation.

### 1.2 Abbreviations

| Abbreviation | Definition |
| :---: | :---: |
| AC | Alternating Current |
| ACM | Accumulated Call Meter |
| AMR | Adaptive Multi-Rate |
| AT | ATtention (prefix for Wireless CPU ${ }^{\text {commands) }}$ |
| CLK | CLock |
| CMOS | Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor |
| CS | Coding Scheme |
| CTS | Clear To Send |
| dB | Decibel |
| dBc | Decibel relative to the Carrier power |
| dBi | Decibel relative to an Isotropic radiator |
| dBm | Decibel relative to one milliwatt |
| DC | Direct Current |
| DCD | Data Carrier Detect |
| DCE | Data Communication Equipment |
| DCS | Digital Cellular System |
| DSR | Data Set Ready |
| DTE | Data Terminal Equipment |
| DTMF | Dual Tone Multi-Frequency |
| DTR | Data Terminal Ready |
| EEPROM | Electrically Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory |
| EFR | Enhanced Full Rate |
| E-GSM | Extended GSM |
| EMC | ElectroMagnetic Compatibility |
| EMI | ElectroMagnetic Interference |
| ESD | ElectroStatic Discharges |
| ETSI | European Telecommunications Standards Institute |
| FIT | Series of connectors (micro-FIT) |
| FR | Full Rate |


| Abbreviation | Definition |
| :---: | :---: |
| FTA | Full Type Approval |
| GCF | Global Certification Forum |
| GND | GrouND |
| GPIO | General Purpose Input Output |
| GPRS | General Packet Radio Service |
| GSM | Global System for Mobile communications |
| HR | Half Rate |
| 1 | Input |
| IEC | International Electrotechnical Commission |
| IES | Internal Expansion Socket |
| IESM | Internal Expansion Socket Module |
| IMEI | International Mobile Equipment Identification |
| 1/0 | Input / Output |
| LED | Light Emitting Diode |
| MAX | MAXimum |
| ME | Mobile Equipment |
| MIC | MICrophone |
| Micro-Fit | Family of connectors from Molex |
| MIN | MINimum |
| MNP | Microcom Networking Protocol |
| MO | Mobile Originated |
| MS | Mobile Station |
| MT | Mobile Terminated |
| NOM | NOMinal |
| 0 | Output |
| Pa | Pascal (for speaker sound pressure measurements) |
| PBCCH | Packet Broadcast Control CHannel |
| PC | Personal Computer |
| PCL | Power Control Level |
| PDP | Packet Data Protocol |
| PIN | Personal Identity Number |
| PLMN | Public Land Mobile Network |
| PUK | Personal Unblocking Key |
| RF | Radio Frequency |

## wovecoms

Moke it wireless

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
References

| Abbreviation | Definition |
| :--- | :--- |
| RFI | Radio Frequency Interference |
| RI | Ring Indicator |
| RMS | Root Mean Square |
| RTS | Request To Send |
| RX | Receive |
| SIM | Subscriber Identification Module |
| SMA | SubMiniature version A RF connector |
| SMS | Short Message Service |
| SNR | Signal-to-Noise Ratio |
| SPL | Sound Pressure Level |
| SPK | SpeaKer |
| SRAM | Static RAM |
| TCPIIP | Transmission Control Protocol / Internet Protocol |
| TDMA | Time Division Multiple Access |
| TU | Typical Urban fading profile |
| TUHigh | Typical Urban, High speed fading profile |
| TX | Transmit |
| TYP | TYPical |
| VSWR | Voltage Stationary Wave Ratio |

## 2 Packaging

### 2.1 Contents

The complete package content of the FASTRACK Supreme consists of (see):

- one packaging box (A),
- one FASTRACK Supreme (B),
- two holding bridles (C),
- one power supply cable with fuse integrated (D)
- a mini notice (E) with:
- a summary of the main technical features,
- safety recommendations,
- EC declaration of conformity.


Figure 1: Complete package contents

## wavecom ${ }^{\text {ºn }}$ confidentale

Page: $11 / 7$
This docament is the sole and exclastve property of waviceom. Mot to be distributed or divulged without prior witten agreemedt

5 June, 2001


The packaging box is a carton box (see) with the following external dimensions

- width: 54.5 mm ,
- height: 68 mm ,
- length: 108 mm .

A packaging label is slicked on the packaging box cover and supports the:

- WAVECOM logo,
- Product reference (Supreme),
- CE marking
- 15-digit IMEI code
- Open $A T^{\text {© }}$ Logo
- RoHS logo
- WEEE logo


Figure 2: Packaging box
The packaging label dimensions are:

- height: 40 mm ,
- length: 65 mm .


### 2.3 Production Labelling

A production label (see Figure 3) located at the FASTRACK Supreme back side gives the following information:

- product reference (FASTRACK Supreme 10 or FASTRACK Supreme 20),
- part number (WM19183),
- CE marking,
- 15-digit IMEI code,
- OpenAT ${ }^{\oplus}$ logo


Figure 3: Production Label
wovecoms


绊納
Fastrack Supreme User Guide
General Presentation

## 3 General Presentation

### 3.1 Description

The FASTRACK Supreme description is given in the Figure 4 below.


Figure 4: FASTRACK Supreme general description

This document is the sole and exclushe property of Wavecom. Mot to be distributed or divalged without arior written agreement
wovecom

## General Presentation

CAUTION: Users are free to remove the back plate for IESM board plug in/unplug without voiding the warrantee of the FASTRACK Supreme. However, the warrantee will be voided if unscrewing any screw of the back cap.
In addition, two holding bridles are provided to tighten the FASTRACK Supreme on a support.


Figure 5: FASTRACK Supreme holding bridles

### 3.2 External Connections

### 3.2.1 Connectors

### 3.2.1.1 Antenna Connector

The antenna connector is a SMA type connector for a $50 \Omega$ RF connection.


Figure 6: SMA connector for antenna connection

### 3.2.1.2 Power Supply Connector

The power supply connector is a 4-pin Micro FIT connector for:

- external DC Power Supply connection,
- GPIOs connection (two General Purpose Input/Output signals available).


## wovecoms

Make it wireless

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
General Presentation


Figure 7: Power supply connector

Table 1: Power supply connector pin description

| Pin \# | Signal | 1/0 | I/O type | Description | Reset State | Comment |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $V+$ BATTERY | 1 | Power supply | Battery voltage input: <br> - 5.5 V Min. <br> - 13.2 V Typ. <br> - $32 \vee$ Max. |  | High current |
| 2 | GND |  | Power supply | Ground |  |  |
| 3 | GPIO21 | 1/0 | 2V8 | General Purpose Input/output | Undefined | Not mux |
| 4 | GPIO25 | 1/0 | 2V8 | General Purpose Input/output | Z | Multiplex with INT1 |

## Warning:

Both pin 3 and pin 4 are used by GPIO interface. It is strictly prohibited to connect them to any power supply at the risk of damage to the FASTRACK Supreme.

### 3.2.1.3 Sub HD 15-pin Connector

The Sub D high density 15 -pin connector is used for:

- RS232 serial link connection,
- Audio lines (microphone and speaker) connection,
- BOOT and RESET signal connection.

General Presentation


Figure 8: Sub HD 15-pin connector

Table 2: Sub HD 15-pin connector description

| Pin \# | Signal (CCITT / EIA) | I/O | I/O type | Description | Comment |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | CDCD/CT109 | 0 | STANDARD RS232 | $\begin{gathered} \text { RS232 } \\ \text { Data Carrier Detect } \end{gathered}$ |  |
| 2 | CTXD/CT103 | 1 | $\begin{gathered} \text { STANDARD } \\ \text { RS232 } \end{gathered}$ | RS232 <br> Transmit serial data |  |
| 3 | BOOT | 1 | CMOS | Boot | This signal must not be connected. Its use is strictly reserved to Wavecom or competent retailers. |
| 4 | CMIC2P | 1 | Analog | Microphone positive line |  |
| 5 | CMIC2N | 1 | Analog | Microphone negative line |  |
| 6 | CRXD/CT104 | 0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { STANDARD } \\ \text { RS232 } \end{gathered}$ | RS232 <br> Receive serial data |  |
| 7 | CDSR/CT107 | 0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { STANDARD } \\ \text { RS232 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { RS232 } \\ \text { Data Set Ready } \end{gathered}$ |  |
| 8 | CDTR/CT108-2 | 1 | STANDARD RS232 | RS232 Data Terminal Ready |  |
| 9 | GND | - | GND | Ground |  |

wavecomes confidental ©
Page: $24 / 7$
This document is the sole and exclashe property of Warcem. Mot to be distributed or divulged withon prior writuen agreement
Wh_DEAFextr_uen_oll

## wovecoms

Moke if wireless

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
General Presentation

| Pin \# | $\underset{(\mathrm{CCITT} / \mathrm{EIA})}{\text { Signal }}$ | 1/0 | I/O type | Description | Comment |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 10 | CSPK2P | 0 | Analog | Speaker positive line |  |
| 11 | CCTS/CT106 | 0 | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { STANDARD } \\ \text { RS232 } \end{gathered}$ | RS232 Clear To Send |  |
| 12 | CRTS/CT105 | 1 | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { STANDARD } \\ \text { RS232 } \end{gathered}$ | RS232 Request To Send |  |
| 13 | CRI/CT125 | 0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { STANDARD } \\ \text { RS232 } \end{gathered}$ | RS232 Ring Indicator |  |
| 14 | RESET | $1 / 0$ | Schmitt | Supreme Plug \& Play reset | Active low |
| 15 | CSPK2N | $\bigcirc$ | Analog | Speaker negative line |  |

### 3.2.1.4 IES Connector

The IES connector is a 50 pins board-to-board connector for expanding application features like GPS, USB, I/O expander... Currently there are already 3 IESM boards available for customer to expand the FASTRACK Supreme features immediately. They are:

- IESM-GPS+USB+I/O
- IESM-GPS+USB
- IESM-USB+I/O

For detail, please refer to Document in Section 1.1.5.


For sales and support, please contact Wavecom sales/FAE or your distributor.


Figure 9: IES connector for feature expansion

Table 3: IES Connector Description

| Pin Number | Signal Name |  | $\begin{aligned} & 1 / 0 \\ & \text { type } \end{aligned}$ | Voltage | I/O* | Reset State | Description | Dealing with unused pins |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Nominal | Mux |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | GND |  |  |  |  |  | Ground |  |
| 2 | GND |  |  |  |  |  | Ground |  |
| 3 | GPIO4 | COLO | C8 | GSM-1V8 | I/O | Pull-up | Keypad column 0 | NC |
| 4 | GPIO5 | COL1 | C8 | GSM-1V8 | 1/0 | Pull-up | Keypad column 1 | NC |
| 5 | GPIO6 | COL2 | C8 | GSM-1V8 | I/O | Pull-up | Keypad column 2 | NC |
| 6 | GPIO7 | COL3 | C8 | GSM-1V8 | 1/0 | Pull-up | Keypad column 3 | NC |
| 7 | VPAD-USB |  |  | VPAD-USB | 1 |  | USB Power supply input | NC |
| 8 | USB-DP |  |  | VPAD-USB | 1/0 |  | USB Data | NC |
| 9 | USB-DM |  |  | VPAD-USB | 1/0 |  | USB Data | NC |
| 10 | GSM-1V8* |  |  | GSM-1V8 | 0 |  | 1.8 V Supply Output (for GPIO pull-up only) | NC |
| 11 | GSM-2V8* |  |  | GSM-1V8 | 0 |  | 2.8V Supply Output (for GPIO pull-up only) | NC |
| 12 | BOOT |  |  | GSM-1V8 | 1 |  | Not Used | Add a test point / a jumper/ a switch to VCC_1V8 (Pin 10) in case Download Specific mode is used (See product specification for details) |
| 13 | $\sim$ RESET |  | C4 | GSM-1V8 | 1/0 |  | RESET Input | NC or add a test point |
| 14 | AUX-ADC |  | A2 | Analog | 1 |  | Analog to Digital Input | Pull to GND |
| 15 | ~SPI1-CS | GPIO31 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 0 | 2 | SPI1 Chip Select | NC |
| 16 | SPI1-CLK | GPIO32 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 0 | 2 | SPI1 Clock | NC |
| 17 | SPI1-1 | GPIO30 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 1 | Z | SPI1 Data Input | NC |
| 18 | SPIT-10 | GPIO29 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | $1 / 0$ | 2 | SPI1 Data Input / Output | NC |
| 19 | SPI2-CLK | GPIO32 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 0 | Z | SPI2 Clock | NC |
| 20 | SP12-IO | GPIO33 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 1/0 | 2 | SP12 Data Input / Output | NC |
| 21 | ~SP12-CS | GPIO35 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 0 | 2 | SPI2 Chip Select | NC |
| 22 | SPI2-1 | GPIO34 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 1 | Z | SPI2 Data Input | NC |
| 23 | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { CT104- } \\ & \text { RXD2 } \end{aligned}$ | GPIO15 | C1 | GSM-1V8 | 0 | 2 | Auxiliary RS232 Receive | Add a test point for firmware upgrade |
| 24 | CT 103-TXD2 | GPIO14 | C1 | GSM-1V8 | 1 | z | Auxiliary RS232 Transmit | (TXD2) Pulll-up to VCC_1V8 with $100 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ and add a test point for firmware update |
| 25 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { ~CT106- } \\ & \text { CTS2 } \end{aligned}$ | GPIO16 | C1 | GSM-1V8 | 0 | z | Auxiliary RS232 Clear To Send | (CTS2) Add a test point for firmware update |
| 26 | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { CT105- } \\ & \text { RTS2 } \end{aligned}$ | GPIO17 | C 1 | GSM-1V8 | 1 | Z | Auxiliary RS232 Request To Send | (RTS2) Pull-up to VCC_1V8 with $100 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ and add a test point for |

wavecom ${ }^{\ominus}$ confidential ©
Page: 27 I7
This document is the sole and exclashe aronerty of wavecom. Hot to be distributed or dhulged wothout arior writen agreement

5 June, 2007

General Presentation

| Pin Number | Signal Name |  | I/O type | Voltage | I/O* | Reset State | Description | Dealing with unused pins |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Nominal | Mux |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | firmware update |
| 27 | GPIO8 | COL4 | C8 | GSM-1V8 | I/O | Pull-up | Keypad column 4 | NC |
| 28 | GPIO26 | SCL | A1 | Open Drain | 0 | Z | $1^{2} \mathrm{C}$ Clock | NC |
| 29 | GPIO19 |  | C1 | GSM-2V8 | I/O | Z |  | NC |
| 30 | GPIO27 | SDA | A1 | Open Drain | 1/0 | Z | ${ }^{12} \mathrm{C}$ Data | NC |
| 31 | GP1O20 |  | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 1/0 | Undefined |  | NC |
| 32 | INTO | GPIO3 | C1 | GSM-1V8 | 1 | Z | Interruption 0 Input | If INTO is not used, it should be configured as GPIO |
| 33 | GPIO23 | ** | C1 | GSM-2V8 | I/O | Z |  | NC |
| 34 | GPIO22 | ** | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 110 | z |  | NC |
| 35 | $\begin{gathered} \sim \text { CT108-2- } \\ \text { DTR1 } \end{gathered}$ | GPIO41 | C1 | GSM-2V8 | 1 | Z | Main RS232 Data Terminal Ready | (DTR1) Pull-up to VCC_2V8 with $100 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| 36 | PCM-SYNC |  |  | GSM-1V8 | 0 | Pull-down | PCM Frame Synchro | NC |
| 37 | PCM-IN |  | C5 | GSM-1V8 | 1 | Pull-up | PCM Data Input | NC |
| 38 | PCM-CLK |  |  | GSM-1V8 | 0 | Pull-down | PCM Clock | NC |
| 39 | PCM-OUT |  |  | GSM-1V8 | 0 | Pull-up | PCM Data Output | NC |
| 40 | AUX-DAC |  |  | Analog | 0 |  | Digital to Analog Output | NC |
| 41 | vcc-2v8 |  |  | VCC_2V8 | 0 |  | LDO 2.8V Supply Output | NC |
| 42 | GND |  |  |  |  |  | Ground |  |
| 43 | DC-IN |  |  | DC-IN from $5.5 \mathrm{~V} \sim 32 \mathrm{VDC}$ | 0 |  | DC voltage input through Micro-Fit connector | NC |
| 44 | DC-IN |  |  | $\begin{gathered} \text { DC-IN from } \\ 5.5 \mathrm{~V} \sim 32 \mathrm{VDC} \end{gathered}$ | 0 |  | $\overline{D C}$ voltage input through Micro-Fit connector | NC |
| 45 | GND |  |  |  |  |  | Ground |  |
| 46 | 4 V |  |  | 4 V | 0 |  | 4V DC/DC converter Output | NC |
| 47 | 4 V |  |  | 4V | 0 |  | 4V DC/DC converter Output | NC |
| 48 | GND |  |  |  |  |  | Ground |  |
| 49 | GND |  |  |  |  |  | Ground |  |
| 50 | GND |  |  |  |  |  | Ground |  |

This document is the sole and exclashe aronervy of WaveCOM. Wot to be distribated or divalged withomi arior wittren agreement

3.2.2 Power supply cable


Figure 10: Power supply cable

| Component | Characteristics |
| :--- | :--- |
| Micro-Fit connector <br> 4 -pin | Part number: MOLEX 43025-0400 |
| Cable | Cable length: $\sim 1.5 \mathrm{~m}$ |
| Wire | Core: tinned copper $24 \times 0.2 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
|  | Section: $0.75 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |

## 4 Features and Services

### 4.1 Basic Features and Services

Basic features of the FASTRACK Supreme and available services are summarized in the table below.
Table 4: Basic features of the FASTRACK Supreme

| Geatmes | GSMB50 GSM 00 | DCsisomacsismo |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Open AT ${ }^{\text {P }}$ | Open AT ${ }^{8}$ programmable: <br> Native execution of embedded standard ANSI C applications, <br> Custom AT command creation, <br> Custom application library creation, <br> Standalone operation. |  |
| Standard | $850 \mathrm{MHz} / 900 \mathrm{MHz}$. <br> E-GSM compliant. <br> Output power: class 4 (2W). <br> Fully compliant with ETSI GSM phase $2+$ small MS. | $1800 \mathrm{MHz} / 1900 \mathrm{MHz}$ <br> Output power: class 1 (1W). <br> Fully compliant with ETSI GSM phase $2+$ small MS. |
| GRRS | Class 10. <br> PBCCH support. <br> Coding schemes: CS1 to CS4. <br> Compliant with SMG31bis. <br> Embedded TCP/IP stack. |  |
| EGPRS | Output power: 0.5 W | Output power: 0.4 W |
| (for FASTRACK Supreme 20 only) | Class 10. <br> PBCCH support. <br> Coding schemes: MCS1 to MCS9. <br> Compliant with SMG31bis. <br> Embedded TCPIIP stack. |  |

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
Features and Services

| Featurs | GSM850 Gsiniol |
| :---: | :---: |
| Interfaces | RS232 (V.24N.28) Serial interface supporting: <br> - Baud rate (bits/s): $300,600,1200,2400,4800,9600,19200,38400,57600$, 115200, 230400, 460800 and 921600. <br> - Autobauding (bits/s): from 1200 to 921600. <br> 2 General Purpose Input/Output gates (GPIOs) available. <br> $1.8 \mathrm{~V} / 3 \mathrm{~V}$ SIM interface. <br> AT command set based on V. 25 ter and GSM $07.05 \& 07.07$. <br> Open $A T^{\oplus}$ interface for embedded application. <br> Open $A T^{\circledR}$ Plug-In Compatible. |
| SMS | Text \& PDU. <br> Point to point (MT/MO) <br> Cell broadcast. |
| Ḋata | Data circuit asynchronous. <br> Transparent and Non Transparent modes. Up to $14.400 \mathrm{bits} / \mathrm{s}$. <br> MNP Class 2 error correction. <br> V42. bis data compression. |
| Fax | Automatic fax group 3 (class 1 and Class 2). |
| Audio | Echo cancellation <br> Noise reduction <br> Telephony. <br> Emergency calls. <br> Full Rate, Enhanced Full Rate, Half Rate operation and Adaptive Multi-Rate (FR/EFR/HR/AMR). <br> Dual Tone Multi Frequency function (DTMF). |

Features and Services

| 2. Featurs | $\therefore$ GSME5DOGSMSOO | DCS1800nPCST900 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| GSM supplement services | Call forwarding. <br> Call barring. <br> Multiparty. <br> Call waiting and call hold. <br> Calling line identity. <br> Advice of charge. <br> USSD |  |
| Other | DC power supply <br> Real Time Clock with calendar <br> Complete shielding |  |

For other detailed technical characteristics, refer to Section 8.


Features and Services

### 4.2 Additional NEW Features

### 4.2.1 Support Additional GSM850/PCS1900 Bands

Apart from GSM900/DCS1800, the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play now supports also the GSM850/PCS1900 bands. FASTRACK Supreme is fully compliant to PTCRB and FCC also.

### 4.2.2 IES Interface for Easy Expansion of Application Features

The FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play offers a 50 pin Internal Expansion Socket (IES) Interface accessible for customer use. It is the additional interface which is easy for customers to expand their application features without voiding the warrantee of the FASTRACK Supreme, by simply plugging in an Internal Expansion Socket Module (IESM) board through the matting connector of the IES interface.
Thanks to the flexible IES interface, customers are ready to expand the application features by plugging in the corresponding Internal Expansion Socket Module (IESM) of GPS, I/O expander.... etc.

For brief description of the interface, please refer to Section 3.2.1.4.
For technical detail, please refer to Document [11] or contact your Wavecom distributor or Wavecom FAE.

### 4.2.3 Serial Port Auto Shut Down or Improving Power Consumption

In order to save power consumption when there is no data communication between the Plug \& Play and the DTE, FASTRACK Supreme has now implement the Serial Port Auto Shut Down feature. User can activate or deactivate the Serial Port Auto Shut Down mode by simple AT-command.

For detail, please refer to Section 7.3.4.

### 4.2.4 Real Time Clock (RTC) for Saving Date and Time

The FASTRACK Supreme has now implemented the Real Time Clock for saving date and time when the Plug \& Play is unplugged from the DC power supply through the DC power cable.
For detail, please refer to Section 7.8.

## wavecom ${ }^{\circledR}$ confidential ©

Psge: $84 / 7$
This document is the sole and exclasive aroperty of Wavecom. Mot to be distributed or divalged whthout prior witten agreemeat

Features and Services

### 4.2.5 SIM Card Lock Feature

The FASTRACK Supreme has now implemented a SIM connector having a carrier with lock. This helps ensuring the user to have proper SIM card insertion and locked before proper use of GSM network.


SIM card is inserted but not locked. GSM network is not ready for use. Only emergency call 112 is possible.


SIM card is inserted and being locked properly. GSM network is ready for use.

Figure 11: SIM card lock feature

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
Using the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play

## 5 Using the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play

### 5.1 Getting Started

### 5.1.1 Mount the FASTRACK Supreme

To mount the FASTRACK Supreme on its support, bind it using the holding bridles as shown in the Figure 12 below.


Figure 12: FASTRACK Supreme mounting

For the drill template, refer to Figure 18.

### 5.1.2 Set up the FASTRACK Supreme

To set up the FASTRACK Supreme, perform the following operations:

- Insert the SIM card into the SIM card holder of the FASTRACK Supreme.
- Lock the SIM card by sliding the lever towards the SIM card.
- Connect the antenna to the SMA connector.
- Connect both sides of the serial and control cable (15-pin Sub HD connector on the FASTRACK Supreme side).
- Connect the power supply cable to the external power supply source.


## Note:

For automotive application, it is recommended to connect the $V+B A T T E R Y$ line of the FASTRACK Supreme directly to the battery positive terminal.

- Plug the power supply cable into the FASTRACK Supreme and switch on the external power supply source.
- The FASTRACK Supreme is ready to work. Refer to Section 5.10 for the description of AT commands used to configure the FASTRACK Supreme.


## wavecom ${ }^{\text {® }}$ confidental ©

P890: $86 / 7$
This document is the sole and exclusive pronerty of WaMECOM. Mot to be distributed or dhulged withont prifor writuen agreement

### 5.1.3 Check the communication with the FASTRACK Supreme

To check the communication with the FASTRACK Supreme, do the following operations:

- Connect the RS232 link between the DTE (port COM) and the FASTRACK Supreme (DCE).
- Configure the RS232 port of the DTE as follows:
- Bits per second: 115.200 bps,
- Data bits: 8 ,
- Parity: None,
- Stop bits: 1,
- Flow control: hardware.
- Using a communication software such as a HyperTerminal, enter the AT $ل$ command. The response of the FASTRACK Supreme must be OR displayed in the HyperTerminal window.
- If the communication cannot be established with the FASTRACK Supreme, do the following:
- Check the RS232 connection between the DTE and the FASTRACK Supreme (DCE),
- Check the configuration of the port COM used on the DTE.
- Example of AT commands which can be used after getting started the FASTRACK Supreme:
- AT+CGMI: FASTRACK Supreme answer is "WAVECOM MODEM" when serial link is OK .
- AT+CPIN=xxxx: to enter a PIN code $x x x x$ (if activated).
- AT+CSQ: to verify the received signal strength.
- AT+CREG?: to verify the registration of the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play on the network.
- ATD<phone number>; to initiate a voice call.
- ATH: to hang up (end of call).

For further information on these AT commands and their associated parameters, refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6].

### 5.1.4 Reset the FASTRACK Supreme

To reset the FASTRACK Supreme, a hardware reset signal is available on pin 14 of the Sub HD 15-pin connector (RESET).

The FASTRACK Supreme reset is carried out when this pin is low for at least $200 \mu \mathrm{~s}$.
Warning This signal has to be considered as an emergency reset only. For further details on the FASTRACK Supreme reset, refer to Section 7.7.
wovecom ${ }^{*}$

## Make It wireless <br> Fastrack Supreme User Guide <br> Using the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play

### 5.2 Specific Recommendations when Using the FASTRACK Supreme on Trucks

Warning: The power supply connection of the FASTRACK Supreme must NEVER be directly connected to the truck battery.

### 5.2.1 Recommended Power Supply Connection on Trucks

All trucks have a circuit breaker on the exterior of the cabin. The circuit breaker is used for safety reasons: if a fire blazes in the trucks, (for example, on the wiring trunk) the driver may cut the current source to avoid any damage (explosion). The circuit breaker is connected to the truck ground, most often associated with the fuse box.
Most of truck circuit breakers do not cut the Positive Supply line of the battery, but cut the ground line of the later.


Figure 13: Recommended power supply connection on trucks
Figure 13 gives the recommended power supply connection where the ground connection of the FASTRACK Supreme is not directly connected to the battery but is connected after the Circuit Breaker (on the truck ground or the fuse box).

### 5.2.2 Technical Constraints on Trucks

It is highly not recommended to connect directly the power supply on the battery rather than on the circuit breaker. The FASTRACK Supreme may be damaged when starting the truck if the circuit breaker is switched OFF (in this case, the truck ground and the battery ground will be connected through the FASTRACK Supreme as shown in the figure below).


Figure 14: Example of electrical connection which may dramatically damage the FASTRACK Supreme

Figure 14 gives an example of electrical connection which may dramatically damage the FASTRACK Supreme when its ground connection is directly connected to the battery ground
In this example, when the circuit breaker is switched OFF, the current flows through the FASTRACK Supreme and powers the electrical circuit of the truck (for example, dashboard)
Furthermore, when the Starter Engine command will be used, it will destroy the cables or the FASTRACK Supreme.
Since the internal tracks are not designed to support high current (up to 60 A when starting the truck), they will be destroyed

### 5.3 FASTRACK Supreme Operational Status

The FASTRACK Supreme operational status is given by the red LED status located next to the SIM connector on the FASTRACK Supreme panel.

The Table 5 below gives the meaining of the various statuses available

Table 5: FASTRACK Supreme operational status

| LED Status | LED light activity | FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play status |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ON | LED ON permanent | FASTRACK Supreme is switched ON but not registered on the network |
|  | LED Flashing slowly | FASTRACK Supreme is switched ON and registered on the network, but no communication is in progress (Idle mode) |
|  | LED Flashing rapidly | FASTRACK Supreme is switched ON and registered on the network, and a communication is in progress |
| OFF | LED OFF | FASTRACK Supreme is switched OFF, or Flash LED is disabled* by the user. |

*: Flash LED can be disabled by user when in Slow Standby mode in order to save power consumption. For detail, please refer to Section 7.9.

### 5.4 Echo Function Disabled

If no echo is displayed when entering an AT command, that means:

- The "local echo" parameter of your communication software (such as HyperTerminal) is disabled.
- The FASTRACK Supreme echo function is disabled.

To enable the FASTRACK Supreme echo function, enter the ATE1.
When sending AT commands to the FASTRACK Supreme by using a communication software, it is recommended:

- to disable the "local echo" parameter of your communication software (such as HyperTerminal),
- to enable the FASTRACK Supreme echo function (ATEl command).

In a Machine To Machine communication with the FASTRACK Supreme, it is recommended to disable the FASTRACK Supreme echo function (ATEO command) in order to avoid useless CPU processing.

For further information on ATE0 and ATE1 commands, refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6].
wavecom ${ }^{5}$
Make it wireless

## Fastrack Supreme User Guide <br> Using the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play

### 5.5 Verify the Received Signal Strength

The FASTRACK Supreme establishes a call only if the received signal is sufficiently strong.
To verify the received signal strength, do the following operations:

- Using a communication software such as HyperTerminal, enter the AT command AT+CSQ. The response returned has the following format:
+CSQ: <rssi>, <ber> with:
- <rssi> = received signal strength indication,
- <ber> = channel bit error rate.
- Verify the <rssi> value returned using the Table 6 below.

Table 6: Values of received signal strength

| Value of received signal <br> strength indication (<rssi>) | Interpretation of the <br> received signal strength |
| :---: | :---: |
| $0-10$ | Insufficient(*) |
| $11-31$ | Sufficient(*) |
| $32-98$ | Not defined |
| 99 | No measure available |

(*) Based on general observations.
For further information on AT commands, refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6].

### 5.6 Check the Pin Code Status

To check that the pin code has been entered, use a communication software such as a HyperTerminal, then enter AT+CPIN? command.

The table below gives the main responses returned:
Table 7: AT+CPIN Responses

| AT+CPIN response (*) | Interpretation |
| :---: | :--- |
| +CPIN : READY | Code PIN has been entered |
| +CPIN : SIM PIN | Code PIN has not been entered |

${ }^{*}$ ) For further information on the other possible responses and their meaning, refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6].

### 5.7 Switch between EU/US Band(s)

To switch between EU/US band(s) for the FASTRACK Supreme, use a communication software such as a HyperTerminal, then enter AT+WMBS=<band> [, <param>] command.

The table below gives the commands for various band(s) selection:

Table 8: AT+WMBS Band Selection

| AT+WMBS response (*) | Interpretation |
| :---: | :--- |
| AT + WMBS $=0, x$ | Select mono band mode 850 MHz. |
| AT+WMBS $=1, x$ | Select mono band mode extended 900 MHz |
| AT+WMBS $=2, x$ | Select mono band mode 1800 MHz |
| AT + WMBS $=3, x$ | Select mono band mode 1900 MHz |
| AT+WMBS $=4, x$ | Select dual band mode $850 / 1900 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| AT + WMBS $=5, x$ | Select dual band mode extended $900 \mathrm{MHz} / 1800 \mathrm{MHz}$ |
| AT + WMBS $=6, x$ | Select dual band mode extended $900 \mathrm{MHz} / 1900 \mathrm{MHz}$ |

(*) For further information on the other possible responses and their meaning, refer to "AT Commands $^{(1)}$ Interface Guide" [6].
Remark:
$\overline{\mathrm{x}}=0$ : The Plug \& Play will have to be reset to start on specified band(s).
$\mathbf{x}=1$ : The change is effective immediately. This mode is forbidden while in communication and during Plug \& Play initialization.
Refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6] for further information on AT commands.

### 5.8 Check the Band(s) Selection

To check the band selection for the FASTRACK Supreme, use a communication software such as a HyperTerminal, then enter AT+WMBS? command.
The table below gives the main responses returned:
Table 9: AT+WMBS Responses

| ATT+WMBS response ( ${ }^{*}$ ) | Interpretation |
| :---: | :--- |
| +WMBS : $0, x$ | Mono band mode 850 MHz is selected |
| +WMBS : $1, x$ | Mono band mode extended 900 MHz is selected |
| +WMBS : $2, x$ | Mono band mode 1800 MHz is selected |
| +WMBS : $3, x$ | Mono band mode 1900 MHz is selected |
| +WMBS : $4, x$ | Dual band mode $850 / 1900 \mathrm{MHz}$ are selected |
| +WMBS : $5, x$ | Dual band mode extended $900 \mathrm{MHz} / 1800 \mathrm{MHz}$ are selected |
| +WMBS : $6, x$ | Dual band mode extended $900 \mathrm{MHz} / 1900 \mathrm{MHz}$ are selected |

(*)For further information on the other possible responses and their meaning, refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6].
wavecom ${ }^{\text {s }}$
Moke it wireless

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
Using the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play
5.9 Verify the FASTRACK Supreme Network Registration

1. Make sure a valid SIM card has been previously inserted and locked in the FASTRACK Supreme SIM card holder.
2. Using a communication software such as a HyperTerminal, enter the following AT commands:
a. AT+CPIN $=x \times x \times x$ to enter PIN code $x x x x$.
b. AT+WMBS? To check the current band setting in the Plug \& Play
c. AT+WMBS $=<$ Band $>$ [, <param $>$ ] To switch band/mode when needed
d. AT+CREG? . To ascertain the registration status.

The format of the returned response is as follows:
+CREG: <mode>,<stat> with:

- <mode> = unsolicited registration message configuration,
- <star> = registration state.

3. Verify the state of registration according the returned value given in the table below.

Table 10: Values of network registration

| $\ldots$Returned Value ( ${ }^{*}$ ) <br> <mode>, <stat> | $\ddots \quad$ Network registration |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| +CREG: 0,0 | No (not registered) |
| +CREG: 0,1 | Yes (registered, home network) |
| +CREG: 0,5 | Yes (registered, roaming) |

$\left(^{*}\right)$ For further information on the other returned values and their meaning, refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6].

If the FASTRACK Supreme is not registered, perform the following procedure

- Check the connection between the FASTRACK Supreme and the antenna.
- Verify the signal strength to determine the received signal strength (refer to Section 5.5).

Note: For information on AT command relating to the network registration in GPRS mode, and in particular: CGREG, CGCLASS, CGATT, refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6]

### 5.10 Main AT Commands for the Plug \& Play

The table below lists the main AT commands required for starting the Plug \& Play.
For other AT commands available or further information on the AT commands, refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6].

Table 11: Main usual AT commands for the Plug \& Play

| Description | AT commands | FASTRACK Supreme Plug <br> \& Play response | Comment |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Check for selected band(s) | AT+WMBS? | +WMBS:<Band>,<ResetFlag> OK | Current selected band mode is return |
| Band(s) switch | AT+WMBS $=$ <Band> | OK | Band switch is accepted, Plug \& Play has to be reset for change to be effective |
|  | AT + WMBS $=<$ Band $>, 0$ | OK | Band switch is accepted, Plug \& Play has to be reset for change to be effective |
|  | AT + WMBS $=<$ Band $>, 1$ | OK | Band switch is accepted and GSMS stack restarted |
|  | AT+WMBS $=<$ Band $>$ | +CME ERROR: 3 | Band not allowed |
| Enter PIN Code | $\begin{aligned} & A T+C P I N=x x x x \\ & (x x x x=P I N \text { code }) \end{aligned}$ | OK | PIN Code accepted. |
|  |  | +CME ERROR: 16 | Incorrect PIN Code ( with +CMEE $=1$ mode) (1*) |
|  |  | +CME ERROR: 3 | PIN code already entered (with + CMEE $=1$ mode) ( $1^{*}$ ) |
| Network registration checking | AT+CREG? | +CREG: 0,1 | FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play registered on the network. |
|  |  | +CREG: 0,2 | FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play not registered on the network, registration attempt. |

## Wevecom ${ }^{\circledR}$ confidential ©

Page: $44 / \pi$
This docament is the sole and exclashe property of WavECOM. Mot to be distribated or divulged without prior wiften agreement.

| Description | AT commands | FASTRACK Supreme Plug <br> \& Play response | Comment |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | +CREG: 0,0 | FASTRACK Supreme Plug <br> \& Play not registered <br> on the network, no <br> registration attempt. |
| Receiving an <br> incoming call | ATA | OK | Answer the call. |
| Initiate a call | ATD<phone number»; <br> (Don't forget the «; » at the <br> end for «voice » call) | OK | +CME ERROR: 11 |

(1*) The command "AT+CMEE=1" switch to a mode enabling more complete error diagnostics.

### 5.11 Firmware Upgrade Procedure

The firmware upgrade procedure is used to update the firmware embedded into the FASTRACK Supreme.
That procedure consists in downloading the firmware into internal memories through the RS232 serial link available on the SUB-D 15-pin connector.

Refer to "Firmware upgrade procedure" [8] for a detailed description of this procedure.

Troubleshooting

## 6 Troubleshooting

This section of the document describes possible problems encountered when using the FASTRACK Supreme and their solutions.
To review other troubleshooting information, refer the 'FAQs' (Frequently Asked Questions) page at www.wavecom.com or use the following link:
http://www.wavecom.com/support/faqs.php

### 6.1 No Communication with the FASTRACK Supreme through the Serial Link

If the FASTRACK Supreme does not answer to AT commands through the serial link, refer to the table below for possible causes and solutions.

Table 12: Solutions for no connection with FASTRACK Supreme through serial link

| If the Supreme returns | then ask | Action |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nothing | Is the FASTRACK Supreme powered correctly? | Make sure the external power supply is connected to the FASTRACK Supreme and provides a voltage in the range of 5.5 V to 32 V. |
|  | Is the serial cable connected at both sides? | Check the serial cable connection |
|  | Does the serial cable follow correctly pin assignment shown in paragraph 3.2.1.2. | Connect the cable by following pin assignment given in paragraph 3.2.1.1. |
| Nothing or nonsignificant characters | Is the communication program properly configured on PC? | Ensure the setting of the communication program is fit to setting of FASTRACK Supreme. <br> FASTRACK Supreme factory setting is: <br> Data bits $=8$ <br> Parity = none <br> Stop bits = 1 <br> Baud $=115200 \mathrm{bps}$. <br> Flow control = hardware |
|  | is there another program interfering with the communication program (i.e. Conflict on communication port access) | Close the interfering program. |

### 6.2 Receiving "ERROR" Message

The FASTRACK Supreme returns an "ERROR" message (in reply to an AT command) in the following cases:

- AT command syntax is incorrect: check the command syntax (refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6]),
- AT command syntax is correct, but transmitted with wrong parameters:
- Enter the AT+CMEE=1 command in order to change the error report method to the verbose method, which includes the error codes.
- Enter again the AT command which previously caused the reception of "ERROR" message in order to get the Mobile Equipment error code.

When the verbose error report method is enabled, the response of the FASTRACK Supreme in case of error is as follows

- Either +CME ERROR: <error result code>,
- Or +CMS ERROR: <error result code>.

Refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6] for error result code description and further details on the AT +CMEE command.

Note: It is strongly recommended to always enable the verbose error report method to get the Mobile Equipment error code (enter AT +CMEE=1 command).

### 6.3 Receiving "NO CARRIER" Message

If the FASTRACK Supreme returns a "NO CARRIER" message upon an attempted call (voice or data), then refer to the table below for possible causes and solutions.

Troubleshooting
Table 13: Solutions for "NO CARRIER" message

| If the Supreme returns... | Then ask... | Action... |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| "NO CARRIER" | Is the received signal strong enough? | Refer to section 5.5 to verify the strength of the received signal. |
|  | Is the FASTRACK Supreme registered on the network? | Refer to section 5.9 to verify the registration. |
|  | Is the antenna properly connected? | Refer to section 8.2.7.3 for antenna requirements. |
|  | Is the band selection correction? | Refer to Section 7.2 for band switch |
| "NO CARRIER" (when trying to issue a voice communication) | Is the semicolon $(;)$ entered immediately after the phone number in the AT command? | Ensure that the semicolon (;) is entered immediately after the phone number in the AT command. e.g. ATD\#\#\#\#\#\#; |
| "NO CARRIER" (when trying to issue a data communication) | Is the SIM card configured for data / fax calls? | Configure the SIM card for data / fax calls (Ask your network provider if necessary). |
|  | Is the selected bearer type supported by the called party? | Ensure that the selected bearer type is supported by the called party. |
|  | Is the selected bearer type supported by the network? | Ensure that the selected bearer type is supported by the network. <br> If no success, try bearer selection type by AT command: $A T+C B S T=0,0,3$ |

If the FASTRACK Supreme returns a "NO CARRIER" message, you may have the extended error code by using AT command AT+CEER. Refer to the table below for interpretation of extended error code.

Troubleshooting
Table 14: Interpretation of extended error code

| Error Code | Diagnostic | Hint |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Unallocated phone number |  |
| 16 | Normal call clearing |  |
| 17 | User busy |  |
| 18 | No user responding |  |
| 19 | User alerting, no answer |  |
| 21 | Call rejected |  |
| 22 | Number changed |  |
| 31 | Normal, unspecified |  |
| 50 | Requested facility not subscribed | Check your subscription (data subscription available?). |
| 68 | ACM equal or greater than ACMmax | Credit of your pre-paid SIM card expired. |
| 252 | Call barring on outgoing calls |  |
| 253 | Call barring on incoming calls |  |
| $\begin{gathered} 3,6,8,29,34,38, \\ 41,42,43,44,47 \\ 49,57,58,63,65 \\ 69,70,79,254 \end{gathered}$ | Network causes | See "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6] for further details or call network provider. |

Note: For all other codes, and/or details, see AT commands documentation [6].

## 7 Functional Description

### 7.1 Architecture



Figure 15: Functional architecture

# Fastrack Supreme User Guide 

Functional Description

### 7.2 EU and US Bands

### 7.2.1 General Presentation

The FASTRACK Supreme is a quad band Plug \& Play. It supports either EU bands (EGSM900/DCS1800) or US bands (GSM850/ PCS1900), depending on the band setting within the Plug \& Play. Users are free to switch between EU bands and US bands by simple AT commands when the selected bands are supported.

### 7.2.2 AT COMMAND for Bands Switch

EU/US band is easily switched/checked by AT command AT+WMBS.
For detail, please refer to Section 5.7 and 5.8.

### 7.3 Power Supply

### 7.3.1 General Presentation

The FASTRACK Supreme is supplied by an external DC voltage ( $\mathrm{V}+$ BATTERY) from +5.5 V to +32 V at 2.2 A.

Main regulation is made with an internal $D C / D C$ converter in order to supply all the internal functions with a DC voltage.

Correct operation of the FASTRACK Supreme in communication mode is not guaranteed if input voltage ( $\mathrm{V}+\mathrm{BATTERY}$ ) falls below 5.5 V .

Note: The minimum input voltage specified here is at the FASTRACK Supreme input. Be careful of the input voltage decrease caused by the power cable. See paragraph 8.2.1 for more information.

### 7.3.2 Protections

The FASTRACK Supreme is protected by a $800 \mathrm{~mA} / 250 \mathrm{~V}$ fuse directly bonded on the power supply cable.
The FASTRACK Supreme is also protected against voltage over +32 V .
Filtering guarantees:

- EMI/RFI protection in input and output,
- Signal smoothing.


### 7.4 RS232 Serial Link

### 7.4.1 General Presentation

The RS232 interface performs the voltage level adaptation (V24/CMOS $\Leftrightarrow \mathrm{V} 24 N 28$ ) between the internal FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play (DCE) and the external world (DTE).

The RS232 interface is internally protected (by ESD protection) against electrostatic surges on the RS232 lines.

Filtering guarantees

- EMI/RFI protection in input and output,
- Signal smoothing

Signals available on the RS232 serial link are:

- TX data (CT103/TX),
- RX data (CT104/RX),
- Request To Send (CT105/RTS),
- Clear To Send (CT106/CTS),
- Data Terminal Ready (CT108-2/DTR),
- Data Set Ready (CT107/DSR),
- Data Carrier Detect (CT109/DCD),
- Ring Indicator (CT125/RI).


Figure 16: RS232 Serial Link signals

RS232 interface has been designed to allow flexibility in the use of the serial interface signals. However, the use of TX, RX, CTS and RTS signals is mandatory, which is not the case for DTR, DSR, DCD and RI signals which can be not used.

### 7.4.2 Autobauding Mode

The autobauding mode allows the FASTRACK Supreme to detect the baud rate used by the DTE connected to the RS232 serial link.

Autobauding mode is controlled by AT commands. See "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6] for details on this function.

## wovecomen ${ }^{\text {confidental © }}$

## wovecom ${ }^{6}$

Make It wireless

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
Functional Description
7.4.3 Pin Description

| Signal | Sub HD connector <br> Pin number | I/O | I/O type <br> RS232 <br> STANDARD | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| CTXD/CT103 | 2 | I | TX | Transmit serial data |
| CRXD/CT104 | 6 | O | RX | Receive serial data |
| CRTS/CT105 | 12 | I | RTS | Request To Send |
| CCTS/CT106 | 11 | O | CTS | Clear To Send |
| CDSR/CT107 | 7 | O | DSR | Data Set Ready |
| CDTR/CT108-2 | 8 | 1 | DTR | Data Terminal Ready |
| CDCD/CT109 | 1 | 0 | DCD | Data Carrier Detect |
| CRI/CT125 | 13 | 0 | RI | Ring Indicator |
| CT102/GND | 9 |  | GND | Ground |

### 7.4.4 Serlal Port Auto shut down Feature

The UART1 can be shut down when there is no activity between the DTE and the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play. This can help for improving power consumption performance.

Serial Port Auto shut down feature is easily controlled by AT command AT+WASR.

- AT+WASR=1 for entering the serial port auto shut down mode
- AT+WASR $=0$ for exiting the serial port auto shut down mode

Refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6] for further information on AT commands.
CAUTION: GPIO24 is reserved for serial port auto shut down feature. It is prohibited for customer use. Improper access to GPIO24 by customer may lead to unexpected behavior on UART1 performance.


Functional Description

### 7.5 General Purpose Input/Output (GPIO)

The FASTRACK Supreme provides two General Purpose Input / Output lines available for external use: GPIO21 and GPIO25.

These GPIOs may be controlled by AT commands:

- AT+WIOW for a write access to the GPIO value, when the GPIO is used as an output,
- AT+WIOR for a read access to the GPIO value, when the GPIO is used as an input.

Refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6] for further information on AT commands.
After reset, both GPIOs are configured as inputs. The AT+WIOM command has to be used to change this configuration (refer to "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6] for further details).

Pin description

| Signal | Power Supply <br> connector <br> (4-pin Micro-Fit). | VO | V/O <br> Voltage | Reset <br> state | Description | Mulitplex with |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| GPIO21 | 3 | I/O | 2 V8 | Undefined | General Purpose I/O | No mux |
| GPIO25 | 4 | I/O | 2 V8 | Z | General Purpose I/O | INT1 |

Notes:

- The power supply cable may need to be modified due to the GPIO signals (GPIO21 \& GPIO25) available on the 4-pin Micro-FIT connector of the FASTRACK Supreme.
- The previous generation M1306B have GPIO4 and GPIO5 being replaced by GPIO21 and GPIO25 respectively, for which both are of LOW level at reset state.


## $7.6 \quad$ BOOT

This signal must not be connected. Its use is strictly reserved to Wavecom or competent retailers.
Caution: Previous generation M1306B has BOOT signal of HIGH level at 2.8 V . But the FASTRACK Supreme now of 1.8 V BOOT instead.

## $\overline{\mathbf{7} . \overline{7}} \quad \overline{\mathbf{R}} \overline{\mathbf{E}} \overline{\mathbf{E T}}$

### 7.7.1 General presentation

This signal is used to force a reset procedure by providing low level during at least $200 \mu \mathrm{~s}$.
This signal must be considered as an emergency reset only. A reset procedure is automatically driven by an internal hardware during the power-up sequence.

## wavecomen confidentale

Page: 54 / 7
mils document is the sole and exclastive property of Wavecom. Wot to be distributed or dhulged without arior writuen agreement.

Functional Description
This signal may also be used to provide a reset to an external device. It then behaves as an output, If no external reset is necessary, this input may be left open, if used (emergency reset), it has to be driven either by an open collector or an open drain output:

- RESET pin $14=0$, for FASTRACK Supreme Reset,
- RESET pin $14=1$, for normal mode.

Pin description

| Signal | Sub HD 15-Pin connector <br> Pin number | I/O | VO type | Voltage | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| RESET | 14 | $1 / O$ | Open Drain | 1 V8 | FASTRACK Supreme <br> Reset |

Caution: Previous generation M1306B has RESET signal of HIGH level at 2.8 V . But the FASTRACK Supreme now of 1.8 V RESET instead.

## Additional comments on RESET:

The RESET process is activated either by the external RESET signal or by an internal signal (coming from a RESET generator). This automatic reset is activated at Power-up.

The FASTRACK Supreme remains in RESET mode as long as the RESET signal is held low.
Caution: This signal should be used only for "emergency" reset.
A software reset is always preferred to a hardware reset.
Note: See "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6] for further information on software reset.

### 7.7.2 Reset Sequence

To activate the "emergency" reset sequence, the RESET signal has to be set to low for $200 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ minimum.
As soon as the reset is done, the AT interface answers "OK" to the application. For this, the application must send AT.l.

If the application manages hardware flow control, the AT command may be sent during the initialization phase. Another solution is to use the AT+WIND command to get an unsolicited status from the FASTRACK Supreme.

For further details, refer to AT commands "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6].


Figure 17: Reset sequence diagram

## $\overline{7 . \overline{8}}$ Audio

Audio interface is a standard one for connecting a phone handset.
Echo cancellation and noise reduction features are also available to improve the audio quality in case of hand-free application.

### 7.8.1 Microphone Inputs

The microphone inputs are differential ones in order to reject common mode noise and TDMA noise.
They already include the convenient biasing for an electret microphone ( 0.5 mA and 2 Volts) and are ESD protected.

This electret microphone may be directly connected to these inputs allowing an easy connection to a handset.

The microphone impedance must be around $2 \mathrm{k} \Omega$.
AC coupling is already embedded in the Wireless CPU ${ }^{\circledR}$.
The gain of the microphone inputs is internally adjusted and may be tuned from 30 dB to 51 dB using an AT +VGT command (refer to AT commands documentation [6]).

Pin description

| Signal | Sub Dis-pin <br> Pin \# | I/O | IO type | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CMIC2P | 4 | 1 | Analog | Microphone positive input |
| CMIC2N | 5 | 1 | Analog | Microphone negative input |



### 7.8.2 Speaker Outputs

This connection is differential to reject common mode noise and TDMA noise.
Speaker outputs are connected to internal push-pull amplifiers and may be loaded down between 32 to 150 Ohms and up to 1 nF (see details in table Speaker gain vs Max output voltage, in "AT Commands Interface Guide" [6]). These outputs may be directly connected to a speaker.
The output power may be adjusted by step of 2 dB . The gain of the speaker outputs is internally adjusted and may be tuned using an AT +VGR command (refer to AT commands documentation [6]).

Pin description

| Signal | Sub D 15-pin Pin \# | I/O | I/O type | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CSPK2P | 10 | O | Analog | Speaker positive output |
| CSPK2N | 15 | O | Analog | Speaker negative output |

Functional Description

### 7.9 Real Time Clock (RTC)

The FASTRACK Supreme has now implemented the Real Time Clock for saving date and time when the Plug \& Play is unplugged from the DC power supply through the DC power cable.

| Item | Min | Typical | Max |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Charging Time start from fully discharged to fully charged |  | 940 min |  |  |
| RTC Time Period* | Guarantee |  | 2475 min |  |
|  | Non-guarantee |  | 5225 min |  |

Remark: The RTC time period is measured from the RTC battery is fully charged before being unplugged from the DC power source.

### 7.10 FLASH LED

The FASTRACK Supreme has a red LED indicator to show the status of the GSM network. For detail description of the various status, please refer to Section 5.3.

However, during operation mode of Slow Standby, there will be no network registration and so the red LED indicator will always be ON. It is possible for user to deactivate the LED indication during Slow Standby mode, in order to reduce power consumption.

The Flash LED can be deactivated by AT command at + whenf $=1,0$
The Flash LED can be activated by AT command at + whenf $=1,1$
However, the new setting will be taken into account only after a restart. For detail, please refer to Document[6]

## 8 Technical Characteristics

### 8.1 Mechanical Characteristics

Table 15: Mechanical characteristics

| Dimensions | $73 \times 54.5 \times 25.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ (excluding connectors) |
| :---: | :--- |
| Overall Dimeñsion | $88 \times 54.5 \times 25.5 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| Weight | $\approx 80$ grams (FASTRACK Supreme only) |
| Volume | 120 grams (FASTRACK Supreme + bridles + power supply cable) |
| Housing | $101.5 \mathrm{~cm}^{3}$ |

The next page gives the dimensioning diagram of the FASTRACK Supreme including the clearance areas to take into account for the FASTRACK Supreme installation.

Make it wireless

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
Technical Characteristics


Figure 18: Dimensioning diagram
wavecom ${ }^{\text {confidential © }}$
Page: $60 / \pi$
This document is the sole and exclushe property of Wavecom. Mot to be distributed or dhralged withont prior witten agreement


### 8.2 Electrical Characteristics

### 8.2.1 Power Supply

Table 16: Electrical characteristics

| Operating Voltage ränges | 5.5 V to $32 \mathrm{~V} \mathrm{DC}$. |
| :---: | :--- |
| Maximum current | 480 mA Average at 5.5 V. |
|  | 2.1 A Peak at $5.5 \mathrm{~V} .(\mathrm{TBC})$ |

## Note:

The FASTRACK Supreme is permanently powered once the power supply is connected. The following table describes the consequences of over-voltage and under-voltage with the FASTRACK Supreme.

## Warning:

All the input voltages specification described in this Section are at the FASTRACK Supreme input. While powering the FASTRACK Supreme, take into account the input drop caused by the power cable. With the delivered cable, this input drop is around 700 mV at 5.5 V and 220 mV at 32 V .

Table 17: Effects of power supply defect

| If the voltage | then |
| :--- | :--- |
| falls below 5.5 V, | the GSM communication is not guaranteed. |
| is over 32 V <br> (Transient peaks), | the FASTRACK Supreme guarantees its own protection. |
| Is over 32 V <br> (continuous overvoltage) | the protection of the FASTRACK Supreme is done by the <br> fuse (the supply voltage is disconnected). |

The fuse is a $800 \mathrm{~mA} / 250$ V FAST-ACTING $5^{*} 20 \mathrm{~mm}$. See Section 10 for recommended references.
The following table provides information on power consumption of the FASTRACK Supreme, assuming an operating temperature of $+25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and using a 3 V SIM card.

### 8.2.2 Power Consumption

The following table provides information on power consumption of the FASTRACK Supreme, assuming an operating temperature of $+25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and using a 3 V SIM card.

Table 18: Power consumption (1*)

| Power Consumption In E-GSM 900/DCS 1800 MHz'- GPRS class 10 |  |  |  | E-GSM 900 | DCS 1800 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 㤂 | $I_{\text {peak }}$ | GSM900: During TX bursts @ PCL5 DCS1800 : During TX bursts @ PCLO | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  | GSM900 : Áverage @ PCL5DCS1800 : Average @PCLL | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  | $I_{\text {peak }}$ | GSM900: During 1TX bursts @ PCL5 DCS1800 : During 1 TX bursts @ PCLO | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  | $\mathrm{I}_{\text {avg }}$ | GSM900 : Average iTX/1RX @PCL5 DCS1800: Average 1TX/1RX @PCLo | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  | $I_{\text {peak }}$ | GSM900: During 2TX bursts @ PCL5 (Gamma 3) DCS1800 : During 2TX bursts @ PCLO (Gamma 2) | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  | $I_{\text {avg }}$ | GSM900 : Average 2TX/3RX @ PCL5 (Gamma 3) DCS1800 : Average 2TX/3RX @ PCLO (Gamma 2) | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
| $N$N00000000$u$ | $\mathrm{I}_{\text {peak }}$ | GSiñ 9 ōō: During 1TX bursts @ PCL8 (Gamma 6) DCS1800 : During 1TX bursts @ PCL2 (Gamma 5) | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  | $I \text { avg }$ | GSM900: Averrage 1 TXX1RX @ PCL8 (Gāmmä 6) DCS1800 : Average 1TXU1RX@ PCL2 (Gamma 5) | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |

This docameat is the sole and exclashe property of Wayecom. Mot to he distribated or divalged whthout prior written agreement.


Fastrack Supreme User Guide
Technical Characteristics

| Power Consumption in E-GSM 900/DCS 1800 MHz - GPRS class 10 |  |  |  |  | E-GSM 900 | DCS 1800 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{array}{r} 0 \\ \therefore \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ u \end{array}$ | $I_{\text {prak }}$ | GSM900: During 2TX bursts @ PCL8 (Gamma 6) DCS1800 : During 2TX bursts @ PCL2 (Gamma 5) |  | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  | 1 IVO | GSM900: Average 2TXI3RX @ PCL8 (Gamma 6) <br> DCS18000 : Average 2TXI3RX @ PCL2 (Gamma 5) |  | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
| $I_{\text {avg }}$ in Fast Idle mode Page 9$\left(2^{*}\right)$ |  |  | Serial port auto shut down deactivated | @ 5.5V | 33 | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | Serial port auto shut down activated | @ 5.5V | 17 | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
| $I_{\text {avg }}$ in Slow Idle mode Page 9$\left(3^{*}\right)$ |  |  |  | Serial port auto shut down deactivated | @ 5.5V | 23 | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V |  | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V |  | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | Serial port auto shut down activated | @ 5.5V | 5 | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
| I avg in Fast Standby mode$\left(4^{*}\right)$ |  |  |  | Serial port auto shut down deactivated | @ 5.5V | 52 | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V |  | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V |  | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | Serial port auto shut down activated | @ 5.5V | 35 | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |

This dacument is the sole and exclasbe proaerty of WAVECOM. Hot to be distribated or dhatged without arior written agreement


Technical Characteristics

| Power Consumption in E-GSM 900/DCS 1800 MHz - GPRS class 10 |  |  | E-GSM 900 | DCS 1800 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $I_{\text {avg }}$ in Slow Standby mode (with FLASH LED activated) (4*) | Serial port auto shut down deactivated | @ 5.5V | 24 | TBC |
|  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  | Serial port auto shut down activated | @ 5.5V | 8 | TBC |
|  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
| $I_{\text {avg }}$ in Slow Standby mode (with FLASH LED deactivated) (4*) | Serial port auto shut down deactivated | @ 5.5V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |
|  | Serial port auto shut down activated | @ 5.5V | 4 | TBC |
|  |  | @ 13.2V | TBC | TBC |
|  |  | @ 32V | TBC | TBC |

( $1^{*}$ ):The power consumption might vary by $5 \%$ over the whole operating temperature range ( $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ).
$\left(2^{*}\right)$ : In this Mode, the RF function is active and the FASTRACK Supreme synchronized with the network, but there is no communication
(3*): In this Mode, the RF function is disabled, but regularly activated to keep the synchronization with the network. This Mode works only when the DTE send AT command to shut down the serial link by software approach (DTE turns DTR in inactive state).
$\left(4^{*}\right)$ : In this Mode, the RF function is disabled, and there is no synchronization with the network.

## wavecome

Make it wireless

## Fastrack Supreme User Guide <br> Technical Characteristics

### 8.2.3 Audio Interface

The audio interface is available through the Sub HD 15-pin connector.
Table 19: Audio parameters caracteristics

| Audio parameters | Min | Typ | Max | Unit | Comments |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Microphone input current @2 V/2 $\mathrm{k} \Omega$ |  | 0.5 |  | mA |  |
| Absolute microphone input vottage |  |  | 100 | mVpp | AC voltage |
| Speaker output current $150 \Omega / 11 \mathrm{nF}$ |  | 16 |  | mA |  |
| Absolute speaker impedance | 32 | 50 |  | $\Omega$ |  |
| lmpedance of the speaker amplifier output in <br> differential mode |  |  | 1 | $\Omega$ | $+/-10 \%$ |

Table 20: Microphone inputs internal audio filter characteristics

| Frequency | Gain |
| :--- | :--- |
| $0-150 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $<-22 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| $150-180 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $<-11 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| $180-200 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $<-3 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| $200-3700 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | 0 dB |
| $>4000 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $<-60 \mathrm{~dB}$ |

Table 21: Recommended characteristics for the microphone:

| Feature | Value |
| :--- | :--- |
| Type | Electret $2 \mathrm{~V} / 0.5 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| Impedance | $\mathrm{Z}=2 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| Sensitivity | -40 dB to -50 dB |
| SNR | $>50 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| Frequency response | compatible with the GSM specifications |

[^4]Page:65/n

5 lune, 2007

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
Technical Characteristics
Table 22: Recommended characteristics for the speaker:

| Feature | Value |
| :--- | :--- |
| Type | 10 mW, electro-magnetic |
| Impedance | $\mathrm{Z}=32$ to $50 \Omega$ |
| Sensitivity | 110 dB SPL min. $(0 \mathrm{~dB}=20 \mu \mathrm{~Pa})$ |
| Frequency response | compatible with the GSM specifications |

### 8.2.4 General Purpose Input/Output

Both GPIO21 and GPIO25 may be interfaced with a component that comply with 3 Volts CMOS levels.
Table 23: Operating conditions

| Parameter | I/O type | Min | Typ | Max | Condition |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{V}_{\mathrm{IL}}$ | CMOS |  |  | 0.84 V |  |
| $\mathbf{V}_{\mathrm{IH}}$ | CMOS | 1.96 V |  |  |  |
| $\mathbf{V}_{\mathrm{OL}}$ | CMOS |  |  | 0.4 V | $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{OL}}=-4 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| $\mathbf{V}_{\mathrm{OH}}$ | CMOS | 2.4 V |  |  | $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{OH}}=4 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{OH}}$ |  |  |  | 4 mA |  |
| $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{OL}}$ |  |  |  | -4 mA |  |

Clamping diodes are present on I/O pads.

### 8.2.5 SIM Interface

Table 24: SIM card characteristics

| SIM cärord | $1.8 \mathrm{~V} / 3 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| :---: | :--- |

8.2.6 RESET Signal

Table 25: Electrical characteristics

| Parameter | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Input Impedance (R) |  |  | 330 K |  |
| Input Impedance ( C ) |  | 10 n |  | nF |

*Internal pull-up

Table 26: Operating conditions

| Parameter | Minimum | Typ | Maximum | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\sim$ RESET time (Rt) ${ }^{1}$ | 200 |  |  | $\mu \mathrm{~s}$ |
| $\sim$ RESET time (Rt) ${ }^{2}$ at power up only | 20 | 40 | 100 | ms |
| Cancellation time (Ct) |  | 34 |  | ms |
| $\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{H}}$ | 0.57 |  |  | V |
| $\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{IL}}$ | 0 |  | 0.57 | V |
| $\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{IH}}$ | 1.33 |  |  | V |

* $V_{\mathrm{H}:}$ Hysterisis Voltage

1 This reset time is the minimum to be carried out on the $\sim$ RESET signal when the power supply is already stabilized.
2 This reset time is intemally carried out by the Wireless CPU power supply supervisor only when the Wireless CPU power supplies are powered ON.

### 8.2.7 RF Characteristics

8.2.7.1 Frequency Ranges

Table 27: Frequency ranges

| Characteristic | GSM 850 | E-GSM 900 | DCS 1800 | PCS 1900 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Frequency TX | 824 to 849 MHz | 880 to 915 MHz | 1710 to 1785 MHz | 1850 to 1910 MHz |
| Frequency RX | 869 to 894 MHz | 925 to 960 MHz | 1805 to 1880 MHz | 1930 to 1990 MHz |



### 8.2.7.2 RF Performances

RF performances are compliant with the ETSI recommendation GSM 05.05.
The RF performances for receiver and transmitter are given in the table below.
Table 28: Receiver and transmitter RF performances

| Receiver |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| E-GSM900/GSM850 Reference Sensitivity | -104 dBm Static \& TUHigh |
| DCS1800/PCS1900 Reference Sensitivity | -102 dBm Static \& TUHigh |
| Selectivity @ 200 kHz | $>+9 \mathrm{dBc}$ |
| Selectivity @ 400 kHz | $>+41 \mathrm{dBc}$ |
| Linear dynamic range | 63 dB |
| Co-channel rejection | $>=9 \mathrm{dBc}$ |
|  | Transmitter |
| Maximum output power (E-GSM 900/GSM850) <br> at ambient temperature | $33 \mathrm{dBm}+/-2 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| Maximum output power (DCS1800/PCS1900) <br> at ambient temperature | $30 \mathrm{dBm}+/-2 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| Minimum output power (E-GSM 900/GSM850) <br> at ambient temperature | $5 \mathrm{dBm}+/-5 \mathrm{~dB}$ |
| Minimum output power (DCS1800/PCS1900) <br> at ambient temperature | $0 \mathrm{dBm}+/-5 \mathrm{~dB}$ |

### 8.2.7.3 External Antenna

The external antenna is connected to the FASTRACK Supreme via the SMA connector.
The external antenna must fulfill the characteristics listed in the table below.
Table 29: External antenna characteristics

| Antenna frequency range | Quad-band GSM 850/GSM900/DCS1800/PCS1900 MHz |
| :--- | :--- |
| Impedance | 50 Ohms nominal |
| DC impedance | 0 Ohm |
| Gain (antenna + cable) | 0 dBi |
| VSWR (antenna + cable) | 2 |

Note: Refer to Section 10 for recommended antenna.

### 8.3 Environmental Characteristics

The FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play is compliant with the following operating class. To ensure the proper operation of the FASTRACK Supreme, the temperature of the environment must be within a specific range as described in the table below.

Table 30: Ranges of temperature

| $:$ Conditions | Temperäture range |
| :---: | :---: |
| Operating / Class A | $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| Operating $/$ Class B | $-30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| Storage | $-40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |

## Function Status Classification:

## Class A:

The FASTRACK Supreme remains fully functional, meeting GSM performance criteria in accordance with ETSI requirements, across the specified temperature range.
Class B:
The FASTRACK Supreme remains fully functional, across the specified temperature range. Some GSM parameters may occasionally deviate from the ETSI/PTCRB specified requirements and this deviation does not affect the ability of the FASTRACK Supreme to connect to the cellular network and function fully, as it does within the Class A range.

## wavecom ${ }^{6}$



Technical Characteristics
The detailed climatic and mechanics standard environmental constraints applicable to the FASTRACK Supreme are listed in the table below:

Table 31: Environmental standard constraints

| Environmental Tests (IEC TR 60721-4) |  | Environmental Classes (IEC 60721-3) |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Tests | Standards | Storage (IEC 60721-3-1) <br> Class IE13 | Transportation <br> (IEC 60721-3-2) <br> Class IE23 | Operation |  |
|  |  |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Stationary: } \\ & \text { (IEC } 60721 \text {-3-3) } \\ & \text { Class IE } 35 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Non-Stationary } \\ & \text { (IEC 60721-3-7) } \end{aligned}$ Class IE73 |
| Cold | $\begin{gathered} \text { IEC } 60068-2-1: \\ \mathrm{Ab} / \mathrm{Ad} \end{gathered}$ | $-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 16 \mathrm{~h}$ | $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 16 \mathrm{~h}$ | $-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 16 \mathrm{~h}$ | $-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 16 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| Dry heat | $\begin{gathered} \text { IEC } 60068-2-2: \\ \mathrm{Bb} / \mathrm{Bd} \end{gathered}$ | $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 16 \mathrm{~h}$ | $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 16 \mathrm{~h}$ | $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 16 \mathrm{~h}$ | $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 16 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| Change of temperature | $\begin{gathered} \text { IEC } 60068-2-14 \\ \mathrm{Na} / \mathrm{Nb} \end{gathered}$ | $-33^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to ambient 2 cycles, $\mathrm{t} 1=3 \mathrm{~h}$ $1^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \cdot \mathrm{min}^{-1}$ | $-40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to ambient 5 cycles, $11=3 \mathrm{~h}$ t2<3 min | $-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to ambient 2 cycles, $11=3 \mathrm{~h}$ $0,5^{\circ} \mathrm{C} . \mathrm{min}^{-1}$ | $-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to ambient 5 cycles, $11=3 \mathrm{~h}$ t2<3 min |
| Damp heat | IEC 60068-2-56 : Cb | $\begin{gathered} +30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 93 \% \mathrm{RH} \\ 96 \mathrm{~h} \end{gathered}$ | $+40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 93 \% \mathrm{RH}$ 96 h minimum | $+30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 93 \% \mathrm{RH}, 96$ | $+30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 93 \% \mathrm{RH}, 96 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| Damp heat, cyclic | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 60068-2-30: Db } \\ & \text { Variant } 1 \text { or } 2 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} +40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 90 \% \text { to } \\ 100 \% \text { RH } \\ \text { One cycle } \\ \text { Vaniant } 2 \end{gathered}$ | $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C} .90 \%$ to $100 \% \mathrm{RH}$ Two cycles Variant 2 | $+30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 90 \% \text { to } 100 \%$ <br> RH <br> Two cycles Vaniant 2 | $+40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 90 \%$ to $100 \% \mathrm{RH}$ Two cycles Variant 1 |
| Vibration (sinusoidal) | IEC 60068-2-6 : Fc | $\begin{gathered} 1-200 \mathrm{~Hz}^{2 \mathrm{~m} \cdot \mathrm{~s}^{-2}} \\ 0.75 \mathrm{~mm} \\ 3 \text { axes } \\ 10 \text { sweep cycles } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 1-500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ 10 \mathrm{~m} \cdot \mathrm{~s}^{-2} \\ 3.5 \mathrm{~mm} \\ 3 \text { axes } \\ 10 \text { sweep cycles } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 1-150 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ 2 \mathrm{~m} \cdot \mathrm{~s}^{-2} \\ 0,75 \mathrm{~mm} \\ 3 \mathrm{axes} \\ 5 \text { sweep cycles } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 1-500 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ 10 \mathrm{~m} \cdot \mathrm{~s}^{-2} \\ 3,5 \mathrm{~mm} \\ 3 \text { axes } \\ 10 \text { sweep cycles } \end{gathered}$ |
| Vibration (random) | IEC 60068-2-64 : Fh | - | $\begin{gathered} 10-100 \mathrm{~Hz} / 1,0 \mathrm{~m}^{2} \cdot \mathrm{~s}^{-3} \\ 100-200 \mathrm{~Hz} /-3 \mathrm{~dB} . \mathrm{octave}^{-1} \\ 200-2000 \mathrm{~Hz} / 0.5 \mathrm{~m}^{2} \cdot \mathrm{~s}^{-3} \\ 3 \text { axes } \\ 30 \mathrm{~min} \end{gathered}$ | - | - |
| Shock (half-sine) | IEC 60068-2-27 : Ea | - | $\bullet$ | $\begin{gathered} 50 \mathrm{~m}_{\mathrm{s}} \mathrm{~s}^{2} \\ 6 \mathrm{~ms} \\ 3 \text { shocks } \\ 6 \text { directions } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 150 \mathrm{~m} \cdot \mathrm{~s}^{-2} \\ 11 \mathrm{~ms} \\ 3 \text { shocks } \\ 6 \text { directions } \end{gathered}$ |
| Bump | IEC 60068-2-29 : Eb | - | $\begin{gathered} 250 \mathrm{m.s} \mathrm{~s}^{-2} \\ 6 \mathrm{~ms} \\ 50 \mathrm{bumps} \\ \text { vertical direction } \end{gathered}$ | - | - |
| Free fall | ISO 4180-2 | - | Two falls in each specified attitude | - | 2 falls in each specified attitude $0,025 \mathrm{~m}$ (<1kg) |
| Drop and topple | IEC 60068-2-31 : Ec | - | One drop on relevant comer One topple about each bottom edge | - | One drop on each relevant comer One topple on each of 4 bottom edges |

wovecom $^{\text {º }}$
Make $h$ wirctess

# Fastrack Supreme User Guide <br> Technical Characteristics 

## Notes:

Short description of Class IE13 (For more information see standard IEC 60721-3-1)
"Locations without controlled temperature and humidity, where heating may be used to raise low temperatures, locations in buildings providing minimal protection against daily variations of external climate, prone to receiving rainfall from carrying wind".
Short description of Class IE23 (For more information, see standard IEC 60721-3-2)
"Transportation in unventilated compartments and in conditions without protection against bad weather, in all sorts of trucks and trailers in areas of well developed road network, in trains equipped with buffers specially designed to reduce shocks and by boat".
Short description of Class IE35 (For more information see standard IEC 60721-3-3)
"Locations with no control on heat or humidity where heating may be used to raise low temperatures, to places inside a building to avoid extremely high temperatures, to places such as hallways, building staircases, cellars, certain workshops, equipment stations without surveillance".
Short description of Class IE73 (For more information see standard IEC 60721-3-7)
"Transfer to places where neither temperature nor humidity are controlled but where heating may be used to raise low temperatures, to places exposed to water droplets, products can be subjected to ice formation, these conditions are found in hallways and building staircases, garages, certain workshops, factory building and places for industrial processes and hardware stations without surveillance".

Warning: The specification in the above table applies to the FASTRACK Supreme product only. Customers are advised to verify that the environmental specification of the SIM Card used is compliant with the FASTRACK Supreme environmental specifications. Any application must be qualified by the customer with the SIM Card in storage, transportation and operation.

The use of standard SIM cards may drastically reduce the environmental conditions in which the Product can be used. These cards are particularly sensible to humidity and temperature changes. These conditions may produce oxidation of the SIM card metallic layers and cause, in the long term, electrical discontinuities. This is particularly true in left alone applications, where no frequent extraction/insertion of the SIM card is performed.

In case of mobility when the application is moved through different environments with temperature variations, some condensation may appear. These events have a negative impact on the SIM and may favor oxidation.
If the use of standard SIM card, with exposition to the environmental conditions described above, can not be avoided, special care must be taken in the integration of the final application in order to minimize the impact of these conditions. The solutions that may be proposed are:

- Lubrication of the SIM card to protect the SIM Contact from oxidation.
- Putting the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play in a waterproof enclosure with desiccant bags.

Lubrication of the SIM card had been tested by Wavecom (using Tutela Fluid 43EM from MOLYDUVAL) and gives very good results.
If waterproof enclosure with a desiccant solution is used, check with your desiccant retailer the quantity that must be used according to the enclosure dimensions. Ensure humidity has been removed before sealing the enclosure.

Any solution selected must be qualified by the customer on the final application.
To minimize oxidation problem on the SIM card, its manipulation must be done with the greatest precautions. In particular, the metallic contacts of the card must never be touched with bare fingers or any matter which

Page:71/7
This documeat is the sole and exelashe property of WayECOM. Wot to be distribated of dheulged withart prior wituen agreement.
5 |une, 2007
may contain polluted materials liable to produce oxidation (such as, e.g. substances including chlorine). In case a cleaning of the Card is necessary, a dry cloth must be used (never use any chemical substance).

### 8.4 Conformity

The complete product complies with the essential requirements of article 3 of R\&TTE 1999/5/EC Directive and satisfied the following standards:

| Domaiń | Applicable standard |
| :--- | :--- |
| Safety standard | EN 60950 (ed.1999) |
| Efficient use of the radio frequency <br> spectrum | EN 301 419-(v 4.1.1) |
| EMC | EN 301 511 (V 7.0.1) |
| Global Certification Forum - Certification <br> Criteria | GCF-CC V3.13.0 |
| PTCRB |  |
| FCC |  |
| IC |  |

### 8.5 Protections

### 8.5.1 Power Supply

The FASTRACK Supreme is protected by a $800 \mathrm{~mA} / 250 \mathrm{~V}$ fuse directly bonded on the power supply cable.
The model of fuse used is: FSD $800 \mathrm{~mA} / 250$ V FAST-ACTING

### 8.5.2 Overvoltage

The FASTRACK Supreme is protected against voltage over +32 V .
When input voltages exceed +32 V , the supply voltage is disconnected in order to protect the internal electronic components from an overvoltage.

### 8.5.3 Electrostatic Discharge

The FASTRACK Supreme withstands ESD according to IEC 1000-4-2 requirements for all accessible parts of the FASTRACK Supreme except the RF part:

- 8 kV of air discharge,
- 4 kV of contact discharge.


### 8.5.4 Miscellaneous

Filtering guarantees:

- EMI/RFI protection in input and output,
- Signal smoothing.


# Fastrack Supreme User Guide 

Safety recommendations

## 9 Safety recommendations

### 9.1 General Safety

It is important to follow any special regulations regarding the use of radio equipment due in particular to the possibility of radio frequency (RF) interference. Please follow the safety advice given below carefully.
Switch OFF your Wireless CPU ${ }^{\text {© }}$

- When in an aircraft. The use of cellular telephones in an aircraft may endanger the operation of the aircraft, disrupt the cellular network and is illegal. Failure to observe this instruction may lead to suspension or denial of cellular telephone services to the offender, or legal action or both,
- When at a refueling point,
- When in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere which could cause an explosion or fire,
- In hospitals and any other place where medical equipment may be in use.

Respect restrictions on the use of radio equipment in:

- Fuel depots,
- Chemical plants,
- Places where blasting operations are in progress,
- Any other area where signalization reminds that the use of cellular telephone is forbidden or dangerous.
- Any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine.

There may be a hazard associated with the operation of your FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play close to inadequately protected personal medical devices such as hearing aids and pacemakers. Consult the manufacturers of the medical device to determine if it is adequately protected.

Operation of your FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play close to other electronic equipment may also cause interference if the equipment is inadequately protected. Observe any warning signs and manufacturers' recommendations.

The FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play is designed for and intended to be used in "fixed" and "mobile" applications:

- "Fixed" means that the device is physically secured at one location and is not able to be easily moved to another location.
- "Mobile" means that the device is designed to be used in other than fixed locations and generally in such a way that a separation distance of at least 20 cm ( 8 inches) is normally maintained between the transmitter's antenna and the body of the user or nearby persons.

The FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play is not designed for and intended to be used in portable applications (within 20 cm or 8 inches of the body of the user) and such uses are strictly prohibited.

### 9.2 Vehicle Safety

Do not use your FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play while driving, unless equipped with a correctly installed vehicle kit allowing 'Hands-Free' Operation.
Respect national regulations on the use of cellular telephones in vehicles. Road safety always comes first.

Page: 74 / 7
This docament is the sole and exclashe aronerty of Whive0M. Mot to be distrilutted or dhulged withont arior written agreement.
wovecom ${ }^{\text {s }}$
Make it wireless

Fastrack Supreme User Guide
Safety recommendations
If incorrectly installed in a vehicle, the operation of FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play telephone could interfere with the correct functioning of vehicle electronics. To avoid such problems, make sure that the installation has been performed by a qualified personnel. Verification of the protection of vehicle electronics should form part of the installation.
The use of an alert device to operate a vehicle's lights or horn on public roads is not permitted.

### 9.3 Care and Maintenance

Your FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play is the product of advanced engineering, design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestion below will help you to enjoy this product for many years.
Do not expose the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play to any extreme environment where the temperature or humidity is high.
Do not use or store the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play in dusty or dirty areas. Its moving parts (SIM holder for example) can be damaged.
Do not attempt to disassemble the Wireless CPU ${ }^{\circledR}$. There are no user serviceable parts inside.
Do not expose the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play to water, rain or spilt beverages. It is not waterproof.
Do not abuse your FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play by dropping, knocking, or violently shaking it. Rough handling can damage it.
Do not place the FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play alongside computer discs, credit or travel cards or other magnetic media. The information contained on discs or cards may be affected by the Wireless CPU ${ }^{\oplus}$.
The use of third party equipment or accessories, not made or authorized by Wavecom may invalidate the warranty of the Wireless CPU ${ }^{\otimes}$.
Do contact an authorized Service Center in the unlikely event of a fault in the Wireless CPU ${ }^{\circledR}$.

### 9.4 Your Responsibility

This FASTRACK Supreme Plug \& Play is under your responsibility. Please treat it with care respecting all local regulations. It is not a toy. Therefore, keep it in a safe place at all times and out of the reach of children.
Try to remember your Unlock and PIN codes. Become familiar with and use the security features to block unauthorized use and theft.

Recommended Accessories

## 10 Recommended Accessories

Accessories recommended by Wavecom for the FASTRACK Supreme are given in the table below.
Table 32: List of recommended accessories

| Designation | Part number | Supplier |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Quad-band antenna | 1140.26 | ALLGON |
|  | MA112VX00 | MAT Equipement |
|  | MCA1890 MH/PB/SMA m | HIRSCHMANN |
| SMA/FME <br> adaptor |  | PROCOM |
| Power adaptor (Europe) | EGSTDW P2 EF9W3 24W <br> Out:12 $\mathrm{V}-2 \mathrm{~A}$ <br> In: 100 to $240 \mathrm{~V}-50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}-550 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> Mounted with micro-fit connector | EGSTDW (for power <br> adaptor) <br> MOLEX (for micro-fit <br> connector)* |
| Fuse | F800L250V | Shanghai Fullness |
| IESM GPS + USB | M13SUE01 | WAVECOM |
| IESM IO + USB | M13SUE02 | WAVECOM |
| IESM IO + USB + GPS | M13SUE03 | WAVECOM |

* Information not available for this preliminary version.


## 11 Online Support

Wavecom provides an extensive range on online support which includes the following areas of Wavecom's wireless expertise:

- the latest version of this document
- new versions of our Operating System user guides
- comprehensive support for Open $\mathrm{AT}^{\text {® }}$
- regulatory certifications
- carrier certifications
- application notes

To gain access to this support, simply visit our web site at www.wavecom.com or click on the desire link in Page. Privileged access via user login is provided to Wavecom authorized distributors.

Halmac Services (Qld) Pty Ltd. A.B.N. 40741712113

## HUMAN MACHINE INTERFACE

## 1. HUMAN MACHINE INTERFACE TECHNICAL DETAILS

MODEL G306A - GRAPHIC COLOR LCD OPERATOR INTERFACE TERMINAL WITH TFT QVGA DISPLAY AND TOUCHSCREEN


- CONFIGURED USING CRIMSON ${ }^{\text {® }}$ SOFTWARE (BUILD 424 OR NEWER)
- UP TO 5 RS-232/422/485 COMMUNICATIONS PORTS (2 RS-232 AND 1 RS-422/485 ON BOARD, 1 RS-232 AND 1 RS422/485 ON OPTIONAL COMMUNICATIONS CARD)
- 10 BASE T/100 BASE-TX ETHERNET PORT TO NETWORK UNITS AND HOST WEB PAGES
- USB PORT TO DOWNLOAD THE UNIT'S CONFIGURATION FROM A PC OR FOR DATA TRANSFERS TO A PC
- unit's Configuration is stored in non-volatile MEMORY (8 MBYTE FLASH)
- COMPACTFLASH* SOCKET TO INCREASE MEMORY CAPACITY
- 5.7-INCH TFT ACTIVE MATRIX 256 COLOR QVGA $320 \times 240$ PIXEL LCD
- 5-button keypad for on-screen menus
- three front panel led indicators
- POWER UNIT FROM 24 VDC $\pm 20 \%$ SUPPLY
- resistive analog touchscreen


## CONTENTS OF PACKAGE

- G306A Operator Interface.
- Panel gasket.
- Template for panel cutout.
- Hardware packet for mounting unit into panel.
- Terminal block for connecting power.

ORDERING INFORMATION

| MODEL NO. | DESCRIPTION | PART NUMBER |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| G306A | Operator Interface for indoor applications, textured finish with embossed keys | G306A000 |
| G3CF | 64 MB CompactFlash Card ${ }^{5}$ | G3CF064M |
|  | 256 MB CompactFlash Card ${ }^{5}$ | G3CF 256M |
|  | 512 MB CompactFlash Card ${ }^{5}$ | G3CF512M |
| G3RS | RS232/485 Optional Communication Card | G3RS0000 |
| G3CN | CANopen Optional Communication Card | G3CNOOOO |
| G3DN | DeviceNet option card for G3 operator interfaces lated high speed communications ports | G3DN0000 |
| G3PBDP | Profibus DP Optional Communication Card | G3PB0P00 |
| PSDR7 | DIN Rail Power Supply | PSDR7000 |
| SFCRM2 | Crimson $2.0{ }^{2}$ | SFCRM200 |
| CBL | RS-232 Programming Cable | CBLPROG0 |
|  | USB Cable | CBLUSB00 |
|  | Communications Cables ${ }^{1}$ | CBLxaxax |
| DR | DIN Rail Mountable Adapter Products ${ }^{3}$ | DRxxxxxx |
|  | Replacement Battery ${ }^{4}$ | BNL20000 |
| G3FILM | Protective Films | G3FILM06 |

1 Contact your Red Lion distributor or visit our website for complete selection.
${ }^{2}$ Use this part number to purchase the Crimson ${ }^{(8)}$ software on CD with a printed manual, USB cable, and RS-232 cable. Otherwise, download for free from www.redlion.net.
${ }^{3}$ Red Lion offers RJ modular jack adapters. Refer to the DR literature for complete details.
${ }^{4}$ Battery type is lithium coin type CR2025.
${ }^{5}$ Industrial grade two million write cycles.

## SPECIFICATIONS

## 1. POWER REQUIREMENTS:

Must use Class 2 or SELV rated power supply
Power connection via removable three position terminal block
Supply Voltage: $\quad+24 \mathrm{VDC} \pm 20 \%$
Typical Power!: 8 W
Maximum Power²: 14 W
Notes:

1. Typical power with +24 VDC, RS232/485 communications, Ethernet communications, CompactFlash card installed, and display al full brightness.
2. Maximum power indicates the most power that can be drawn from the G306A. Refer to "Power Supply Requirements" under "Installing and Powering the G306A."
3. The G306A's circuit common is not connected to the enclosure of the unit. See "Connecting to Earth Ground" in the section "Installing and Powering the G306A."
4. Read "Power Supply Requirements" in the section "Installing and Powering the G306A" for additional power supply informaion.
5. BATTERY: Lithium coin cell. Typical lifetime of 10 years.
6. LCD DISPLAY

| SIZE | 5.7 -inch |
| :--- | :---: |
| TYPE | TFT |
| COLORS | 256 |
| PIXELS | $320 \times 240$ |
| BRIGHTNESS | $500 \mathrm{~cd} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ |
| BACKLIGHT* | $40,000 \mathrm{HR}$ TYP. |

*Lifetime at room temperature. Refer to "Display" in "Software/Unit Operation"
4. 5-KEY KEYPAD: for on-screen menus.
5. TOUCHSCREEN: Resistive analog
6. MEMORY:

On Board User Memory: 8 Mbyte of non-volatile Flash memory.
Memory Card: CompactFlash Type II slot for Type I and Type II CompactFlash cards.
7. COMMUNICATIONS:

USB Port: Adheres to USB specification 1.1. Device only using Type B connection.


WARNING - DO NOT CONNECT OR DISCONNECT CABLES WHILE POWER IS APPLIED UNLESS AREA IS KNOWN TO BE NON-HAZARDOUS. USB PORT IS FOR SYSTEM SET-UP AND DIAGNOSTICS AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR PERMANENT CONNECTION.

Serial Ports: Format and Baud Rates for each port are individually software programmable up to 115,200 baud.
PGM Port: RS232 port via RJ12.
COMMS Ports: RS422/485 port via RJ45, and RS232 port via RJI2.
DH485 TXEN: Transmit enable; open collector, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{OH}}=15 \mathrm{VDC}$, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{OL}}=0.5 \mathrm{~V} @ 25 \mathrm{~mA}$ max.
Note: For additional information on the communications or signal common and connections 10 earth ground please see the "Connecting to Earth Ground" in the section "Installing and Powering the G306A."
Ethernet Port: 10 BASE-T/ 100 BASE-TX
RJ4S jack is wired as a NIC (Network Interface Card).
Isolation from Ethemet network to G3 operator interface: 1500 Vrms
8. ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS:

Operating Temperature Range: 0 to $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
Storage Temperature Range: - 20 to $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
Operating and Storage Humidity: $80 \%$ maximum relative humidity (noncondensing) from 0 to $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.
Vibration according to 1EC 68-2-6: Operational 5 to $8 \mathrm{~Hz}, 0.8^{\prime \prime}(\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{p}), 8$ to 500 Hz , in $\mathrm{X}, \mathrm{Y}, \mathrm{Z}$ direction, duration: 1 hour, 3 g .
Shock according to IEC 68-2-27: Operational $40 \mathrm{~g}, 9 \mathrm{msec}$ in 3 directions.
Altitude: Up to 2000 meters.
9. CERTIFICATIONS AND COMPLIANCES

SAFETY
UL Recognized Component, File \#E179259, UL61010-1, CSA 22.2 No.61010-1 Recognized to U.S. and Canadian requirements under the Component Recognition Program of Underwriters Laboratories, Inc
UL Listed, File \#E211967, UL61010-1, UL1604, CSA 22.2 No. 61010.1, CSA 22.2 No. 213-M1987
LISTED by Und. Lab. Inc. to U.S. and Canadian safety standards
Type 4X Indoor Enclosure rating (Face only), UL5O
IECEE CB Scheme Test Certificate \#US/12460/UL,
CB Scheme Test Report \#E179259-A1-CB-1
Issued by Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
IEC 61010-1, EN 61010-1: Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use, Part 1
IP66 Enclosure rating (Face only), IEC 529
ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY
Emissions and 1mmunity to EN 61326: Electrical Equipment for Measurement, Control and Laboratory use.

Immunity to Industrial Locations:

| Electrostatic discharge | EN 61000-4-2 | Criterion A <br> 4 kV contact discharge <br> 8 kV air discharge |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Electromagnetic RF fields | EN 61000-4-3 | Criterion A $10 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{m}$ |
| Fast transients (burst) | EN 61000-4-4 | Criterion A 2 kV power 1 kV signal |
| Surge | EN 61000-4-5 | Criterion A $1 \mathrm{kVL}-\mathrm{L}$, 2 kV L\&N-E power |
| RF conducted interference | EN 61000-4-6 | Criterion A $3 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{rms}$ |
| Emissions: |  |  |

Note:

1. Criterion A: Normal operation within specified limits.
2. CONNECTIONS: Compression cage-clamp terminal block.

Wire Gage: 12-30 AWG copper wire
Torque: 5-7 inch-pounds (56-79 N-cm)
11. CONSTRUCTION: Sieel rear metal enclosure with NEMA $4 X / I P 66$ aluminum front plate for indoor use only when correctly fitted with the gasket provided. Installation Category [I, Pollution Degree 2.
12. MOUNTING REQUIREMENTS: Maximum panel thickness is $0.25^{\prime \prime}$ ( 6.3 mm ). For NEMA 4X/IP66 sealing, a steel panel with a minimum thickness of $0.125^{\prime \prime}(3.17 \mathrm{~mm})$ is recommended.
Maximum Mounting Stud Torque: 17 inch-pounds ( $1.92 \mathrm{~N}-\mathrm{m}$ )
13. WEIGHT: 3.0 lbs ( 1.36 Kg )

## DİMENSIONS In inches (mm)



## Installing and Powering the G306A

## MOUNTING INSTRUCTIONS

This operator interface is designed for through-panel mounting. A panel cutout diagram and a template are provided. Care should be taken to remove any loose material from the mounting cut-out to prevent that material from falling into the operator interface during installation. A gasket is provided to enable sealing to NEMA 4X/IP66 specification. Install the ten kep nuts provided and tighten evenly for uniform gasket compression.

Note: Tightening the kep nuts beyond a maximum of 17 inch-pounds (1.92 Nm) may cause damage to the front panel.


All tolerances $\pm 0.010^{\prime \prime}( \pm 0.25 \mathrm{~mm})$.


## ALL NONINCENDIVE CIRCUITS MUST BE WRED USING

 DIVISION 2 WRING METHODS AS SPECIFIED IN ARTICLE 501 4 (b), 502-4 (b), AND 503-3 (b) OF THE NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE, NFPA 70 FOR INSTALLATION WTHIN THE UNITED STATES, OR AS SPECIFIED IN SECTION $19-152$ OF CANADIAN ELECTRICAL CODE FOR INSTALLATION IN CANADA.
## CONNECTING TO EARTH GROUND



The protective conductor terminal is bonded to conductive parts of the equipment for safery purposes and must be connected to an external protective earthing system.

Each G306A has a chassis ground terminal on the back of the unit. Your unit should be connected to earth ground (protective earth)

The chassis ground is not connected to signal common of the unit Maintaining isolation between earth ground and signal common is not required to operate your unit. But, other equipment connected to this unit may require isolation between signal common and earth ground. To maintain isolation berween signal common and earth ground care must be taken when connections are made to the unit. For example, a power supply with isolation between its signal common and earth ground must be used. Also, plugging in a USB cable may connect signal common and earth ground.
${ }^{\text {I }}$ USB's shield may be connected to earth ground at the host. USB's shield in turn may also be connected to signal common.

## POWER SUPPLY REQUIREMENTS

The G306A requires a 24 VDC power supply. Your unit may draw considerably less than the maximum rated power depending upon the options being used. As additional features are used your unit will draw increasing amounts of power. Items that could cause increases in current are additional communications, optional communications card, CompactFlash card, and other features programmed through Crimson.

In any case, it is very important that the power supply is mounted correctly if the unit is to operate reliably. Please take care to observe the following points:

- The power supply must be mounted close to the unit, with usually not more than 6 feet ( 1.8 m ) of cable between the supply and the operator interface. Ideally, the shortest length possible should be used.
- The wire used to connect the operator interface's power supply should be at least 22 -gage wire. If a longer cable run is used, a heavier gage wire should be used. The routing of the cable should be kept away from large contactors, inverters, and other devices which may generate significant electrical noise.
- A power supply with a Class 2 or SELV rating is to be used. A Class 2 or SELV power supply provides isolation to accessible circuits from hazardous voltage levels generated by a mains power supply due to single faults. SELV is an acronym for "safety extra-low voltage." Safety extra-low voltage circuits shall exhibit voltages safe to touch both under normal operating conditions and after a single fault, such as a breakdown of a layer of basic insulation or after the failure of a single component has occurred.


## Communicating With the G306A

## CONFIGURING A G306A

The G306A is configured using Crimson ${ }^{\otimes}$ software. Crimson is available as a free download from Red Lion's website, or it can be purchased on CD. Updates to Crimson for new features and drivers are posted on the website as they become available. By configuring the G306A using the latest version of Crimson, you are assured that your unit has the most up to date feature set. Crimson ${ }^{(8)}$ software can configure the G306A through the RS232 PGM port, USB port, or CompactFlash.
The USB port is connected using a standard USB cable with a Type B connector. The driver needed to use the USB port will be installed with Crimson.
The RS232 PGM port uses a programming cable made by Red Lion to connect to the DB9 COM port of your computer. If you choose to make your own cable, use the "G306A Port Pin Out Diagram" for wiring information.
The CompactFlash can be used to program a G 3 by placing a configuration file and firmware on the CompactFlash card. The card is then inserted into the target G3 and powered. Refer to the Crimson literature for more information on the proper names and locations of the files.

## USB, DATA TRANSFERS FROM THE COMPACTFLASH CARD

WARNING - DO NOT CONNECT OR DISCONNECT CABLES WHILE POWER IS APPLIED UNLESS AREA IS KNOWN TO BE NON-HAZARDOUS. USB PORT IS FOR SYSTEM SET-UP AND DIAGNOSTICS AND IS NOT INTENDED FOR PERMANENT CONNECTION.
In order to transfer data from the CompactFlash card via the USB port, a driver must be installed on your computer. This driver is installed with Crimson and is located in the folder C:IProgram FilestRed Lion ControlstCrimson 2.01Devicel after Crimson is installed. This may have already been accomplished if your G306A was configured using the USB port.
Once the driver is installed, connect the G306A to your PC with a USB cable, and follow "Mounting the CompactFlash" instructions in the Crimson 2 user manual.

## CABLES AND DRIVERS

Red Lion has a wide range of cables and drivers for use with many different communication types. A list of these drivers and cables along with pin outs is available from Red Lion's website. New cables and drivers are added on a regular basis. If making your own cable, refer to the "G306A Port Pin Outs" for wiring information.

## ETHERNET COMMUNICATIONS

Ethermet communications can be established at either 10 BASE-T or 100 BASE-TX. The G306A unit's RJ45 jack is wired as a NIC (Network Interface Card). For example, when wiring to a hub or switch use a straight-1brough cable, but when connecting to another NIC use a crossover cable.
The Ethernet connector contains two LEDs. A yellow LED in the upper right, and a bi-color green/amber LED in the upper left. The LEDs represent the following statuses:

| LED COLOR | DESCRIPTION |
| :--- | :--- |
| YELLOW solid | Link established. |
| YELLOW flashing | Data being Iransferred. |
| GREEN | 10 BASE-T Communications |
| AMBER | 100 BASE-TX Communications |

On the rear of each unit is a unique 12 -digit MAC address and a block for marking the unit with an IP address. Refer to the Crimson manual and Red Lion's website for additional information on Ethernet communications.

## RS232 PORTS

The G306A has two RS232 ports. There is the PGM por and the COMMS port. Although only one of these ports can be used for programming, both ports can be used for communications with a PLC.

The RS232 ports can be used for either master or slave protocols with any G306A configuration.
Examples of RS232 communications could involve another Red Lion product or a PC. By using a cable with RJ12 ends on it, and a twist in the cable, RS232 communications with another G3 product or the Modular Controller can be established. Red Lion part numbers for cables with a twist in them are CBLPROGO ${ }^{1}, \mathrm{CBLRLCO}{ }^{2}$, or CBLRCO2 ${ }^{3}$.

G3 RS232 to a PC

| Connections |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| G3: RJ12 | Name | PC: DB9 | Name |
| 4 | COMM | 1 | DCD |
| 5 | Tx | 2 | Rx |
| 2 | Rx | 3 | Tx |
|  | N/C | 4 | DTR |
| 3 | COM | 5 | GND |
|  | N/C | 6 | DSR |
| 1 | CTS | 7 | RTS |
| 6 | RTS | 8 | CTS |
|  | N/C | 9 | RI |


${ }^{1}$ CBLPROG0 can also be used to communicate with either a PC or an ICM5
${ }^{2}$ DB9 adapler not included, 1 foot long.
${ }^{3}$ DB9 adapter not included, 10 feet long.


## RS422/485 COMMS PORT

The G306A has one RS422/485 pon. This port can be configured to act as either RS422 or RS485.


Note: All Red Lion devices connect $A$ to $A$ and $B$ to $B$, except for Paradigm devices. Refer to www.redlion.net for additional information.

## Examples of RS485 2-Wire Connections

G3 to Red Lion RJ11 (CBLRLC00) DLC, IAMS, ITMS, PAXCDC4C

| Connections |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| G3: RJ45 | Name | RLC: RJ11 | Name |
| 5 | TXEN | 2 | TxEN |
| 6 | COM | 3 | COM |
| 1 | TxB | 5 | B- |
| 2 | TXA | 4 | A+ |

G3 to Modular Controller (CBLRLC05)

| Connections |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| G3 | Name | Modular Controller | Name |
| 1,4 | T×B | 1,4 | T×B |
| 4,1 | R×B | 4,1 | R×B |
| 2,3 | T×A | 2,3 | TxA |
| 3,2 | R×A | 3,2 | RxA |
| 5 | TxEN | 5 | TxEN |
| 6 | COM | 6 | COM |
| 7 | T×B | 7 | TxB |
| 8 | T×A | 8 | TXA |

## DH485 COMMUNICATIONS

The G306A's RS422/485 COMMS port can also be used for Allen Bradley DH485 communications.

WARNING: DO NOT use a standard DH485 cable to connect this port to Allen Bradley equipment. A cable and wiring diagram are available from Red Lion

G3 to AB SLC 500 (CBLAB003)

| Connections |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| RJ45: RLC | Name | RJ45: A-B | Name |
| 1 | T×B | 1 | A |
| 2 | T×A | 2 | B |
| 3,8 | R×A | - | 24 V |
| 4,7 | R×B | - | COMM |
| 5 | TxEN | 5 | TxEN |
| 6 | COMM | 4 | SHIELD |
| 4,7 | T×B | - | COMM |
| 3,8 | T×A | - | $24 V$ |

## Software/ Unit Operation

## CRIMSON ${ }^{\circledR}$ SOFTWARE

Crimson ${ }^{\infty}$ software is available as a free download from Red Lion's website or it can be purchased on a CD, see "Ordering Information" for part number. The latest version of the software is always available from the website, and updating your copy is free.

## DISPLAY

This operator interface uses a liquid crystal display (LCD) for displaying text and graphics. The display utilizes a cold cathode fluorescent tube (CCFL) for lighting the display. The CCFL tubes can be dimmed for low light conditions.
These CCFL tubes have a limited lifetime. Backlight lifetime is based upon the amount of time the display is turned on at full intensity. Turning the backlight off when the display is not in use can extend the lifetime of your backlight. This can be accomplished through the Crimson ${ }^{(2)}$ software when configuring your unit.

## FRONT PANEL LEDS

There are three front panel LEDs. Shown below is the default status of the LEDs.

| LED | INDICATION |
| :---: | :---: |
| RED (TOP, LABELED*PWR) |  |
| FLASHING | Unit is in the boot loader, no valid configuration is loaded. ${ }^{1}$ |
| STEADY | Unit is powered and running an application. |
| YELLOW (MIDDLE) |  |
| OFF | No CompactFlash card is present. |
| STEADY | Valid CompactFlash card present. |
| FLASHING RAPIDLY | CompactFlash card being checked. |
| FLICKERING | Unit is writing to the CompactFlash, either because it is storing data, or because the PC connected via the USB port has locked the drive. ${ }^{\text {? }}$ |
| FLASHING SLOWY | Incorrectly formatted CompactFlash card present. |
| GREEN (BOTTOM) |  |
| FLASHING | A tag is in an alarm state. |
| STEADY | Valid configuration is loaded and there are no alarms present. |

1 The operator interface is shipped without a configuration. After downloading a configuration, if the light remains in the flashing state continuously, try cycling power. If the LED still continues to flash, try downloading a configuration again
${ }^{2}$ Do not turn off power to the unit while this light is flickering. The unit writes data in two minute intervals. Later Microsoft operating systems will not lock the drive unless they need to write data; Windows 98 may lock the drive any time it is mounted, thereby interfering with logging. Refer to "Mounting the CompactFlash" in the Crimson 2 User Manual

## TOUCHSCREEN

This operator interface utilizes a resistive analog touchscreen for user input. The unit will only produce an audible tone (beep) when a touch on an active touchscreen cell is sensed. The touchscreen is fully functional as soon as the operator interface is initialized, and can be operated with gloved hands.

## KEYPAD

The G306A keypad consists of five keys that can be used for on-screen menus.

## TROUBLESHOOTING YOUR G306A

If for any reason you have trouble operating, connecting, or simply have questions concerning your new G306A, contact Red Lion's technical support. For contact information, refer to the back page of this bulletin for phone and fax numbers.

EMAIL: techsupporl@redtion.net Web Site: htip:/lwwwredtion.nes

## BATTERY \& TIME KEEPING



WARNING - EXPLOSION HAZARD - THE AREA MUST BE KNOWN TO BE NON-HAZARDOUS BEFORE SERVICING/ REPLACING THE UNIT AND BEFORE INSTALLING OR REMOVING I/O WRING AND BATTERY.


WARNING - EXPLOSION HAZARD - DO NOT DISCONNECT
EQUIPMENT UNLESS POWER HAS BEEN DISCONNECTED EQUIPMENT UNLESS POWER HAS BEEN DISCONNECTED
AND THE AREA IS KNOWN TO BE NON-HAZARDOUS.

A battery is used to keep time when the unit is without power. Typical accuracy of the G306A time keeping is less than one minute per month drift. The battery of a G306A unit does not affect the unit's memory, all configurations and data is stored in non-volatile memory.


CAUTION: RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK
The inverter board, attached to the mounting plate, supplies the high voltage to operate the backlight. Touching the inverter board may result in injury to personnel.


CAUTION: The circuit board contains static sensitive components. Before handling the operator interface without the rear cover atrached, discharge static charges from your body by touching a grounded bare metal object. Ideally, handle the operator interface at a static controlled clean workstation. Also, do not touch the surface areas of the circuit board. Dirt, oil, or other contaminants may adversely affect circuit operation.
To change the battery of a G306A, remove power, cabling, and then the rear cover of the unit. To remove the cover, remove the four screws designated by the arrows on the rear of the unit. Then, by lifting the top side, hinge the cover, thus providing clearance for the connectors on the bottom side of the PCB as shown in the illustration below. Install in the reverse manner.


Remove the old battery* from the holder and replace with the new battery. Replace the rear cover, cables, and re-apply power. Using Crimson or the unit's keypad, enter the correct time and date.

* Please note that the old battery must be disposed of in a manner that complies with your local waste regulations. Also, the battery must not be disposed of in fire, or in a manner whereby it may be damaged and its contents come into contact with human skin.

The battery used by the G306A is a lithium type CR2025.


## Optional Features and Accessories

## OPTIONAL COMMUNICATION CARD

Red Lion offers optional communication cards for fieldbus communications. These communication cards will allow your G306A to communicate with many of the popular fieldbus protocols.

Red Lion is also offering a communications card for additional RS232 and RS422/485 communications. Visit Red Lion's website for information and availability of these cards.

## CUSTOM LOGO

Each G3 operator interface has an embossed area containing the Red Lion logo. Red Lion can provide custom togos to apply 10 this area. Contact your distributor for additional information and pricing.


## COMPACTFLASH SOCKET

CompactFlash socket is a Type II socket that can accept either Type 1 or 11 cards. Use cards with a minimum of 4 Mbytes and a maximum of 2 Gbytes with the G306A's CompaciFlash socket. Cards are available at most computer and office supply retailers.
CompactFlash can be used for configuration transfers, larger configurations, data logging, and trending.

the Compaciflash card while
power is applied Refer to
"Front Panel LEDs:"
Information stored on a CompactFlash card by a G306A can be read by a card reader artached to a PC. This information is stored in IBM (Windows ${ }^{8}$ ) PC compatible FATI6 file format.

## NOTE

For reliable operation in all of our products, Red Lion recommends the use of SanDisk ${ }^{(1)}$ and SimpleTech brands of CompaciFlash cards.

Industrial grade versions that provide up to two million write/erase cycles minimum are available from Red Lion.

## LIMITED WARRANTY

The Company warrants the products it manufacnures against defects in materials and workmanship for a period limited to two years from the date of shipment, provided the products have been stored, handled, installed, and used under proper conditions. The Company's liability under this limited warranty shall extend only to the repair or replacement of a defective product, al The Company's option. The Company disclains all liability for any affimation, promise or representation with respect to the products.
The customer agrees to hold Red Lion Controls hannless from, defend, and indemnify RLC againsı damages, claims, and expenses arising out of subsequent sales of RLC products or products containing components manufactured by RLC and based upon personal injuries, deaths, properly damage, lost profits, and other matrers which Buyer, its eimployees, or sub-contatars are or may be to any extent liable, including withoul limitation penalties imposed by the Consumer Product Safery Act (P.L. 92-573) and liability imposed upon any person pursuant to the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act (P.L. 93-637), as now in effect or as amended hereafter.
No warranties expressed or implied are created with respect to The Company's products except those expressly contained herein. The Customer acknowledges the disclaimers and limiations contained herein and relies on no other warranties or a llirmations.

Red Lion Controls AP Unit 101, XinAn Plaza Building 13, No. 99 Tianzhou Road ShangHai, P.R. China 200223 Tel + 86 $216113-3688$ $\mathrm{Fax}+86216113-3683$

## LOAD BREAK SWITCH

1. SLB SERIES LOAD BREAK SWITCH TECHNICAL DETAILS

## SLB Standard load-break switches

## COMO M 20 to 100 A




SLB 20... 40

The COMO M range of load-break switches offer compact IP 20 finger safe solutions for switching up to and including 100 A . They are ideal for the arduous switching of motors.
Standard mounting is by DIN rail or base mount with screws.
The COMO M comes complete with direct mount handle, or pistol handles and shaft. Fourth pole and auxiliary switching can also be achieved with easy clip-on modules - refer accessories.

Front operated surface mount
(Supplied with direct or external handle)



SLB 63... 100

國』回回חn匠

## SLB Standard load－break switches

SIRCO 125 to 4000 A



SLB 125．．． 630

The SIRCO range of load－break switches offer compact solutions for switching from 125 A to 4000 A ． Base mounting is standard．

The SIRCO range are a proven，reliable design that more than suit harsh Australian conditions．
The switches come complete with extended shaft and door mountable pistol grip handle．
Available in three and four pole versions with a large range of accessories to choose from．
Front operated surface mount
（Supplied with external handle and shaft）


Notes：${ }^{1}$ ） 6 and 8 pole switches available on indent．Refer NHP．
（i）Available on indent only．


SLB 800．．． 3150

NHP

## SLB Standard load-break switches

SIRCO 125 to 4000 A (cont'd)


The SIRCO range of load-break switches offer compact solutions for switching from 125 A to 4000 A . Base mounting is standard.
The SIRCO switches come complete with extended shaft and door mountable pistol grip handle. Available in three and four pole versions with a large range of accessories to choose from.

## Front operated surface mount

SLB 800... 3150
(Supplied with external handle and shaft)

| 1000 A | AC 21400 V <br> (A) | AC 23400 V (A) | AC 23400 V (kW) | No. of poles ') | Cat. No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1000 | 1000 | 560 | 3 | SLB 1000 3P |
|  |  |  |  | 4 | i SLB 1000 4P |
| 1250 A | 1250 | 1000 | 560 | 3 | SLB 1250 3P |
|  |  |  |  | 4 | SSLB 1250 4P |
| 1600 A | 1600 | 1000 | 560 | 3 | SLB 1600 3P |
|  |  |  |  | 4 | i SLB 1600 4P |
| 1800 A | 1800 | 1000 | 560 | 3 | SLB 1800 3P |
|  |  |  |  | 4 | - SLE 1800 4P' |
| 2000 A | 2000 | 1250 | 710 | 3 | SLB 2000, 3P. |
|  |  |  |  | 4 | 1) SLB 2000 4P |
| $2500 \text { A }$ | 2500 | 1250 | 710 | 3 | SLB 25003 P |
|  |  |  |  | 4 | iSLB 2500 4P |
| 3150 A | 3150 | 1250 | 710 | 3 | SLB 3150 3P |
|  |  |  |  | 4 | ( SLLB $3150{ }^{\text {4P }}$ |
| $4000 \text { A }$ | 4000 | 1250 | 710 | 3 | SLB $40003 \mathrm{P}^{2}$ ) |
|  |  |  |  | 4 | i SLB 4000.4P ${ }^{2}$ ) |
|  | Notes: ') 6 and 8 pole switches available on indent. Refer NHP. <br> ${ }^{2}$ ) Supplied with $2 \mathrm{~N} / 0$ and $2 \mathrm{~N} / \mathrm{C}$ auxiliaries as standard. <br> (i) Available on indent only. |  |  |  |  |



SLB 4000

Technical data and dimensions (mm)
COMO M SLB 20 to 100 A

COMO M 20 to 40 A


COMO M 63 to 100 A


COMO M Selector handle door drilling


COMO M Pistol handle door drilling


Technical data and dimensions (mm)

## SIRCO SLB 125 to 2500 A

## SIRCO 125 to 2500 A



| Rating | Switch body |  | Switch mounting |  | T | Connection terminals |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | F 3p | F 4p | M 3p | M 4p |  | U | V | Y | X1 | X2 | 2 | AA |
| 800 | 280 | . 360 | 255 | 335 | 80 | 50 | 60.5 | 7 | 47.5 | 47.5 | 46.5 | 321 |
| 1000 | 280 | 360 | 255 | 335 | 80 | 50 | 60.5 | 7 | 47.5 | 47.5 | 46.5 | 321 |
| 1250 | 372 | 492 | 347 | 467. | 120 | 90 | 44 | 8 | 53.5 | 53.5 | 47.5 | 288 |
| 1600 | 372 | 492 | 347 | 467 | 120 | 90 | 44 | 8. | 53.5 | 53.5 | 47.5 | 288 |
| 1800 | 372 | 492 | 347 | 467 | 120 | 90 | 44 | 8 | 53.5 | 53.5 | 47.5 | 288 |


Rating
$\mathbf{A}$

Switch mounting

| A | A 3p | Mp | M 3p | Mp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2000 | 372 | 492 | 347 | 467 |
| 2500 | 372 | 492 | 347 | 467 |

图厅回回חn튿
Technical data and dimensions（mm）
SIRCO SLB 3150 to 4000 A

SIRCO 3150 A


Castell Drilling


SIRCO 4000 A


Castell Drilling


| Rating | Overall dimensions |  | Switch body |  | Switch mounting |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | A 3p | A 4p | F 3p | F 4p | M 3p | M 4p |
| 4000 | 684 | 804 | 470 | 590 | 347 | 467 |

## SIRCO Connection terminals－800 to 4000 A



800－1000 A


1250－1800 A


2000－2500 A


3150－4000 A

Technical data and ratings chart

## COMO M SLB 20 to 100 A

Ratings to AS 3947-3 and IEC 60947-3

|  |  |  | 20 A | 25 A | 32 A | 40 A | 63 A | 80 A | 100 A |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Rated insulation voltage and rated operation voltage AC 20/DC 20 |  | V | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 |
| Rated impulse withstand voltage |  | kV | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 8 |
| Rated operational current |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| AC 21A | 400 V | A | 20 | 25 | 32 | 40 | 63 | 80 | 100 |
|  | 500 V | A | 20 | 25 | 32 | 40 | 63 | 80 | 100 |
|  | 690 V | A | 20 | 25 | 32 | 40 | 63 | 80 | 100 |
| AC 22A | 400 V | A | 20 | 25 | 32 | 40 | 53 | 80 | 100 |
|  | 500 V | A | 20 | 25 | 32 | 40 | 53 | 80 | 100 |
|  | 690 V | A | 20 | 25 | 32 | 40 | 63 | 80 | 100 |
| AC23A | 400 V | A | 20 | 25 | 32 | 40 | 63 | 80 | 80 |
|  | 500 V | A | 16 | 20 | 25 | 32 | 50 | 63 | 63 |
|  | 690 V | A | 16 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 50 | 50 | 50 |
| Rated operational current |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| DC 21A | 400 V | A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 500 V | A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| DC 22A | 400 V | A | Refer NHP |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 500 V | A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| DC 23A | 400 V | A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | 500 V | A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Operational power |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| AC 23A | 400 V | kW | 9 | 11 | 15 | 18.5 | 30 | 40 | 40 |
|  | 500 V | kW | 9 | 11 | 15 | 18.5 | 33 | 40 | 40 |
|  | 690 V | kW | 11 | 15 | 15 | 15 | 45 | 45 | 45 |
| Overload capacity |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Short time withstand current Icw (RMS 1s) 690 V |  | kA | 1.26 | 1.26 | 1.26 | 1.26 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 |
| Breaking capacity AC 23A | 400 V | A | 160 | 200 | 256 | 320 | 504 | 640 | 640 |
| Fuse protected short circuit withstand. (kA RMS prospective) | 400 V AC | kA | 50 | 50 | 50 | 50 | 25 | 25 | 25 |
|  | Fuse | A | $20^{\circ}$ | 25 | 32 | 40 | 63 | 80 | 100 |
| Mechanical endurance |  | Ops | 100000 | 100000 | 100000 | 100000 | 30000 | 30000 | 30000 |
| Weight (3 pole) |  | Kg | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.13 | 0.25 | 0.25 | 0.25 |
| Min. tightening torque |  | Nm | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| Connection cable size |  | $\mathrm{mm}^{2}$ | 2.5/16 | 2.5/16 | 4/16 | 6/16 | 16/50 | 16/50 | 25/50 |

Note: $240 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ ratings suitable for use on $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ in accordance with AS 60038: 2000.

Technical data and ratings chart
SIRCO SLB 125 to 630 A

Ratings to AS 3947-3 and IEC 60947-3

|  |  |  | 125 A | 160 A | 200 A | 250 A | 315 A | 400 A | 500 A | 630 A |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Rated insulation voltage and rated operation voltage AC 20/DC 20 |  | V | 800 | 800 | 800 | 800 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 | 1000 |
| Rated impulse withstand voltage |  | kV | 8 | 8 | 8. | 8 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| Rated operational current |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| AC 21A | 400 V | A | 125 | 160 | 200 | 250 | 315 | 400 | 500 | 630 |
|  | 500 V | A | 125 | 160 | 200 | 250 | 315 | 400 | 500 | 630 |
|  | 690 V | A | 125 | 160 | 200 | 250 | 315 | 1400 | !500 | 500 |
| AC 22A | 400 V | A | 125 | 160 | 200 | 250 | 315 | 400 | 500 | 630 |
|  | 500 V | A | 125 | 125 | 200 | 250 | 315 | 400 | 500 | 500 |
|  | 690 V | A | - | - | - | 125 | 250 | 250 | 1250 | 315 |
| AC23A | 400 V | A | 125 | 160 | 200 | 250 | 315 | 400 | 500 | 500 |
|  | 500 V | A | 100 | 100 | 160 | 200 | 315 | 315 | 315 | 315 |
|  | 690 V | A | - | - | - | 100 | 160 | 160 | 160 | 160 |
| Rated operational current |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| DC 21A | 400 V | A | 125 | 160 | 160 | 250 | 315 | 400 | . 400 | 630 |
|  | 500 V | A | 125 | 125 | 160 | 200 | 315 | 400 | 400 | 500 |
| DC 22A | 400 V | A | 125 | 160 | 160 | 200 | 315 | 400 | 1400 | 500 |
|  | 500 V | A | 125 | 125 | 160 | 200 | 1315 | 315 | 315 | 500 |
| DC 23A | 400 V | A | 125 | 125 | 160 | 200 | 315. | 400 | 400 | 500 |
|  | 500 V | A | 125 | 125 | 160 | 200 | 315 | 400 | 400 | 500 |
| Operational power |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| AC 23A | 400 V | kW | 63 | 80 | 100 | 132 | 160 | 220 | 280 | 280 |
|  | 500 V | kW | 63 | 63 | 110 | 140 | 220 | 220 | 220 | 220 |
|  | 690 V | kW | 55 | 55 | 75 | 90 | 150 | 150 | 150 | 150 |
| Overload capacity |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Short time withstand current Icw (RMS 1s) 690 V |  | kA | 7 | 7 | 9 | 9 | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| Breaking capacity <br> AC 23A | 400 V | A | 1000 | 1280 | 16000 | 2000 | 2520 | 3200 | 14000 | 4000 |
| Fuse protected short circuit withstand. (kA RMS prospective) | 400 V AC | kA | 100 | 100 | 80 | 50 | 100 | 100 | $1^{100}$ | 70 |
|  | Fuse | A | 125. | 160 | 200. | 250 | 315 | 400 | 500 | 630 |
| Rated capacitor power |  | kVAr | 55 | 75 | 90 | 115 | 145 | 185 | 230 | 290 |
| Mechanical endurance |  | Ops | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 10000 | 5000 | 5000 | 5000 | 5000 |
| Weight (3 pole) |  | Kg | 1 | 1.5 | 2 | 2 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 |
| Min. tightening torque |  | Nm | 6.5 | 6.5 | 10 | 10 | 15.4 | 14.5 | 114.5 | 14.5 |
| Connection cable size |  | $\mathrm{mm}^{2}$ | 35/50 | 50/95 | 70/95 | 95/150 | 150/240 | 185/240 | !240/240 | 2 (150/300) |

Note: $240 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ ratings suitable for use on $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ in accordance with AS 60038: 2000 .

## Technical data and ratings chart <br> SIRCO SLB 800 to 4000 A

Ratings to AS 3947-3 and IEC 60947-3


Notes: ') 50 kA switch available in larger frame size. Refer NHP.
$240 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ ratings suitable for use on $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ in accordance with AS 60038: 2000.

## LEVEL TRANSMITTER

1. LEVEL TRANSMITTER TECHNICAL DETAILS

# $\square$ <br>  

## Technical Information

## Waterpilot FMX21

## Hydrostatic level measurement Reliable and robust level probe with ceramic measuring cell Compact device for level measurement in fresh water, wastewater and saltwater, communication via HART



## Application

The Waterpilot FMX21 is a pressure sensor for hydrostatic level measurement.
Endress+Hauser offers three different versions of the FMX21 sensor:

- FMX21 with a stainless steel housing, outer diameter of 22 mm ( 0.87 inch): Standard version suitable for drinking water applications and for use in bore holes and wells with small diameters.
- FMX21 with a stainless steel housing, outer diameter of 42 mm ( 1.66 inch): Heavy duty version, easy clean flush-mounted process diaphragm. Ideally suited for wastewater and sewage treatment plants.
- FMX21 with a coated housing, outer diameter of 29 mm ( 1.15 inch): Corrosion resistant version generally for use in saltwater, particularly for ship ballast water tanks.


## Your benefits

- High resistance to overload and aggressive media
- High-precision, robust ceramic measuring cell with long-term stability
- Climate proofed sensor thanks to completely potted electronics and 2-filter pressure compensation system
- 4 to 20 mA with superimposed HART 0.0 output signal
- Simultaneous measurement of level and cemperature with optionally integrated Pt 100 temperature sensor
- Accuracy
- Reference accuracy $\pm 0.2 \%$
- PLATINUM version $\pm 0.1 \%$
- Automatic density compensation to increase accuracy
- Usage in drinking water: KTW, NSF, ACS
- Approvals: ATEX, FM, CSA
- Extensive range of accessories provides complete measuring point solutions


## Table of contents

Function and system design ..... 3
Device selection ..... 3
Measuring principle ..... 4
Measuring system ..... 5
Level measurement with absolute pressure probe and externpressure signal7
Density compensation with Pt100 temperature sensor ..... 7
Communication protocol ..... 8
System integration ..... 8
Input ..... 9
Measured variable ..... 9
Measuring range ..... 9
Input signal ..... 9
Output ..... 10
Output signal ..... 10
Signal range ..... 10
Signal on atarm ..... 10
Load ..... 10
Resolution ..... 11
Damping ..... 11
Power supply ..... 11
Measuring unit electrical connection ..... 11
Supply voltage ..... 13
Cable specifications ..... 13
Power consumption ..... 13
Current consumption ..... 13
Residual ripple ..... 13
Performance characteristics ..... 14
Reference operating conditions ..... 14
Reference accuracy ..... 14
Long-term stability ..... 14
Influence of medium temperature ..... 14
Warm-up period ..... 14
Step response time ..... 14
Installation. ..... 15
Installation instructions ..... 15
Ambient conditions ..... 16
Ambient temperature range ..... 16
Storage temperature range ..... 10
Degree of protection ..... 10
Electromagnetic compatibiliry (EMC) ..... 16
Overvoltage protection ..... 16
Process conditions ..... 17
Medium temperature range ..... 17
Medium temperature limits ..... 17
Mechanical construction ..... 18
Dimensions of the level probe ..... 18
Dimensions of the mounting clamp ..... 18
Dimensions of the extension cable mounting screws ..... 19
Dimensions of the IP66/IP67 terminal boxes with filters ..... 19
Dimensions of the TMT 182 temperature head transmitter ..... 20
Terminal box with integrated TMT 182 temperature head transmitter ( 4 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ ) ..... 20
Weight ..... 20
Material ..... 21
Extension cable ..... 21
Terminals ..... 21
Human interface ..... 22
Field Xpert SFX100 ..... 22
Field Communicator 375, 475 ..... 22
FieldCare ..... 22
Certificates and approvals ..... 23
CE mark ..... 23
Approvals, types of protection ..... 23
Drinking water approval (for FMX2) with outer diameter $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ ) ..... 23
Standards and guidelines applied ..... 23
Ordering information ..... 24
FMX21 ..... 24
FMX21 (continued) ..... 25
Accessories ..... 26
Mounting clamp ..... 20
Terminal box ..... 26
Additional weight(for FMX21 with outer diameter of $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ or 29 mm(1.14 in)) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 20
TMT182 temperature head uansmitter ( 4 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ )26
Extension cable mounting screw ..... 20
Terminals ..... 20
Cable shortening kit ..... 26
Installation tool - indicating the customer-specific length on the cable ..... 27
Testing adapter (for FMX21 with outer diameter of 22 mm
$(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ and $29 \mathrm{~mm}(1.14 \mathrm{in}))$ ..... 27
Additional documentation ..... 28
Field of activities ..... 28
Technical Information ..... 28
Operating Instructions ..... 28
Safery instructions ..... 28
Installation/Control Drawings ..... 28
Drinking water approval ..... 28
Configuration data sheet ..... 29
Leve! ..... 29
Pressure ..... 30

Function and system design

## Device selection

| Waterpilot FMX21 |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Field of application | Hydrostatic level measurement in deep wells e.g. drinking water | Hydrostatic level measurement in wastewater | Hydrostatic level measurement in saltwater |
|  | O Caution! <br> The Waterpilot is not suitable for use in biogas plants since the gases can diffuse through the elastomers (seals, extension cable). For applications with biogas Endress+Hauser offers the level transmitter Deltapilot. |  |  |
| Process connection | - Mounting clamp <br> - Extension cable mounting screw with G1 $1 / 2$ A or $11 / 2$ NPT thread |  |  |
| Outer diameter | 22 mm (0.87 in) | 42 mm (1.05 in) | max. 29 mm (1.14 in) |
| Extension cable | - PE extension cable <br> - PUR extension cable <br> - FEP extension cable |  |  |
| Seals | - FKM Viton <br> - EPDM ${ }^{11}$ | - FKM Viton | - FKM Viton <br> - EPDM ${ }^{11}$ |
| Measuring ranges | - Gauge pressure: from 0 to 0.1 bar to 0 to 20 bar ( 0 to 1.5 psi to 0 to 300 psi ) <br> - Absolute pressure: from 0 to 2 bar to 0 to 20 bar ( 0 to 30 psi to 0 to 300 psi ) |  | - Gauge pressure: from 0 to 0.1 bar to 0 to 4 bar (0 to 1.5 psi bis 0 to60 psi) <br> - Absolute pressure: from 0 to 2 bar to 0 to 4 bar (0 to 1.5 psi bis 0 to 00 psi$)$ |
|  | - Customer-specific measuring ranges; factory-calibrated <br> - The following output units can be configured: \%, mbar, bar, $\mathrm{kPa}, \mathrm{MPa}, \mathrm{mmH}_{2} \mathrm{O}, \mathrm{mH}_{2} \mathrm{O}, \mathrm{inH}_{2} \mathrm{O}, \mathrm{ftH}_{2} \mathrm{O}$, psi and numerous level units. |  |  |
| Overload | Up to 40 bar ( 580 psi ) |  | Up to 25 bar (362 psi) |
| Process temperature range | -10 to $770^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14\right.$ to $\left.+158{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |  | 0 to $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+32\right.$ to $\left.+122^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| Reference accuracy | $- \pm 0.2 \%$ of the set span <br> - Optional: $\pm 0.1$ \% of set span (PLATINUM version) |  |  |
| Supply voltage | 10.5 to 35 V DC, Ex: 10.5 to 30 V DC |  |  |
| Output | 4 to 20 mA (invertible) with superimposed digital communication protocol HART 6.0, 2-wire (invertible) |  |  |
| Options | - Large selection of approvals, including ATEX, FM, CSA, Drinking water approval <br> - Broad range of accessories <br> - Integrated Pt100 temperature sensor and TMT182 temperature head transmitter (4 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ ) |  |  |
| Specialties | - High-precision, robust ceramic measuring cell with long-term stability <br> - Automatic density compensation <br> - Customer specific cable marking <br> - Absolute pressure cell |  |  |

[^5]
## Measuring principle

The ceramic measuring cell is a dry measuring cell, i.e. pressure acts directly on the robust ceramic process isolating diaphragm of the Waterpilot FMX21.
Any changes in the air pressure are routed through the extension cable, via a pressure compensation tube, to the rear of the ceramic process isolating diaphragm and compensated for. A pressure-dependent change in capacitance caused by the movement of the process isolating diaphragm is measured at the electrodes of the ceramic carrier. The electronics then convert this into a signal which is proportional to the pressure and is linear to the level of the medium.


Measuring principle
1 Ceramic measuring cell
2 Pressure compensation tube
$h \quad$ Level height
p Total pressure $=$ hydrostatic pressure + atmospheric pressure
p Density of the medium
$g$ Gravitational acceleration
$p_{\text {hydr. }}$ Hydrostatic pressure
$p_{\text {atm }}$ Atmospheric pressure

## Temperature measurement with optional Pt100 I)

Endress+Hauser also offers the Waterpilot FMX21 with an optional 4-wire Pt100 resistance thermometer to measure level and temperature simultaneously. The Pt 100 belongs to Accuracy Class B in accordance with DIN EN 60751, see also $\rightarrow$ 曾 20 "Accessories".

Temperature measurement with optional Pt 100 and TMT 182 temperature head transmitter ${ }^{1)}$
Endress+Hauser also offers the TMT 182 temperature head transmitter with the HART protocol to convert the temperature signal to an analog, scalable 4 to 20 mA output signal superimposed with HART 6.0 , see also
 Chap. "Accessories" and Technical Information T1078R.

[^6]
## Measuring system

As standard, the complete measuring system consists of a Waterpilot FMX21 and a transmitter power supply unit with a supply voltage of 10.5 to 30 V DC (hazardous areas) or 10.5 to 35 V DC (non-hazardous areas).

Possible measuring point solutions with a transmitter and evaluation units from Endress+Hauser:


Sample applications with FMX21
$O P=$ Overvoltage protection, e.g. HAW from Endress + Hauser (not for use in hazardous areas)

- OP on sensor side for field installation: HAW509/for top-hat/DIN rail: HAW562/intrinsically safe HAW502Z
- OP on power supply side for top-hat/DIN rail: HAWS01 (IIS/230 V) and HAW50IK (24/48 V ACIDC)

The overvoltage protection selected must be appropriate for the supply voltage.

1. Easy and cost-effective measuring point solution: power supplied to the Waterpilot in hazardous and nonhazardous areas via the RN221N active barrier.
Power supply and additional control of two appliances, such as pumps, by means of the RTA421 limit value switch with onsite display.
2. The RIA45 units (for panel mounting) offer power supply, an onsite display, two switch outputs and signal adjustment (turndown).
3. If several pumps are used, the pump service life can be prolonged by alternate switching. With alternating pump control, the pump which was out of service for the longest period of time is switched on. The evaluation unit RIA452 (for panel mounting) provide this option in additional to several other functions.
4. State-of-the-art recording technology with graphic display recorders from Endress+Hauser, such as Ecograph T, Memograph $M$ for documenting, monitoring, visualizing and archiving purposes.


Sample applications with FMX2I with Pt 100
$O P=$ Overvoltage protection e.g. HAW from Endress + Hauser (not for use in hazardous areas)

- OP on sensor side for field installation: HAW509/for top-hat/DIN rail: HAW502/intrinsically safe HAW502Z
- OP on power supply side for top-hat/DIN rail: HAW501 (115/230 V) and HAW50IK (24/48 V AC/DC)

The overvoltage protection selected must be appropriate for the supply voltage.
5. If you want to measure, display and evaluate the temperature as well as the level, e.g. to monitor temperature in fresh water to detect temperature limits for germ formation, you have the following options:
The optional TMT 182 temperature head transmitter can convert the Pt 100 signal to a 4 to 20 mA HART signal and transfer it to any common evaluation unit. The RMA421, RIA45 and RIA452 evaluation units also offer a direct input for the Pt 100 signal.
6. If you want to record and evaluate the level and temperature measured value with one device, use the RMA422, RIA45 and RIA46 evaluation unit with two inputs. It is even possible to mathematically link the input signals with this unit. These evaluation are not HART permeable.

Level measurement with absolute pressure probe and external pressure signal


It is advisable to use an absolute pressure probe for applications in which condensation can occur. In the case of level measurement with an absolute pressure probe, the measured value is affected by fluctuations in the ambient air pressure. To correct the resulting measured error, you can connect an external absolute pressure sensor (e.g. Cerabar) to the HART signal cable, switch the waterpilot to the burst mode and the Cerabar to operate in mode "Electr. Delta P".

The external absolute pressure sensor then calculates the difference between the two pressure signals and can thus determine the level precisely.
Only one level measured value can be corrected in this way.
Caution!
If using intrinsically safe devices, strict compliance with the rules for interconnecting intrinsically safe circuits as stipulated in IEC60079-14 (proof of intrinsic safety) is mandatory.

Density compensation with Pt 100 temperature sensor

The Waterpilot FMX21 can correct measured errors that result from fluctuations in the density of the water caused by temperature. Users can choose from the following options:

Use the internally measured sensor temperature of the FMX21
The internally measured sensor temperature is calculated in the Waterpilot FMX21 for density compensation. The level signal is thus corrected according to the density characteristic line of the water.

## Use the optional internal temperature sensor for density compensation in a suitable HART master

 (e.g. PLC)The Waterpilot FMX21 is available with an optional Ptl00 temperature sensor. Endress+Hauser additionally offers the TMT182 temperature head transmitter to convert the Ptl00 signal to a 4 to 20 mA HART signal. The temperature and pressure signal is transmitted to the HART master (e.g. PLC) where a corrected level value can be generated using a stored linearization table or the density function (of a chosen medium).


## Use an external temperature signal which is transmitted to the FMX21 via HART burst mode

The Waterpilot FMX21 is available with an optional Pt100 temperature sensor. In this case, the signal of the Pt 100 is analyzed using a HART-compliant lat least HART 5.0) temperature transmitter that supports BURST mode. The temperature signal can thus be transmitted to the FMX21. The FMX21 uses this signal for the density correction of the level signal.

Note!
The TMT 182 temperature head transmitter is not suitable for this configuration.


Without compensation additional errors of up to $4 \%$ can occur at a temperature of $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ for example. With density compensation, this error can be decreased to $0.5 \%$ in the entire temperature range from 0 to $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ( 32 to $158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ ).

| $\underset{\sim}{\infty}$ | Note! <br> For further information on the devices, please refer to the appropriate Technical Information: <br> - Tl078R: TMT 182 temperature head transmitter ( 4 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ ) <br> - Tl369F: FXA520 Fieldgate <br> - Tl400F: FXN520 multidrop connector |
| :---: | :---: |
| Communication protocol | 4 to 20 mA HART with communication protocol |
| System integration | The device can be fitted with a tag name, see $\rightarrow$ 首 24 ff "Ordering information", feature 895 " "Z1". |

## Input

| Measured variable | FMX21 + Pt 100 (optional) <br> - Hydrostatic pressure of a liquid <br> - Pt100: temperature |  | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) <br> - Temperature |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Measuring range | - Customer-specific measuring ranges; factory-calibrated <br> - Temperature measurement from -10 to $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14\right.$ to $\left.+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ with $\mathrm{Ptl00}$ (optional) <br> - A sensor measuring range turndown (TD) of up to 10:1 can be set at the factory or directly by the customer. |  |  |  |  |
|  | Sensor measuring range <br> [bar (psi)] | Smallest span that can be calibrated <br> [bar (psi)] | Maximum overload/ OPL ${ }^{1)}$ <br> [bar (psi)] | Vacuum resistance $\left[\text { bar }_{\text {abs }}\left(\mathrm{psi}_{\mathrm{abs}_{3}}\right)\right]$ | Version in the order code ${ }^{2)}$ |
|  | Gauge pressure |  |  |  |  |
|  | 0.1 (1.5) | 0.01 (0.15) | 5.0 (75.0) | 0.3 (4.5) | IC |
|  | 0.2 (3.0) | 0.02 (0.3) | 5.0 (75.0) | 0.3 (4.5) | 1D |
|  | 0.4 (6.0) | 0.04 (1.0) | 6.0 (90.0) | 0 | IF |
|  | 0.6 (9.0) | 0.06 (1.0) | 10.0 (150) | 0 | IG |
|  | 1.0 (15.0) | 0.1 (1.5) | 10.0 (150) | 0 | 1H |
|  | 2.0 (30.0) | 0.2 (3.0) | 15.0 (225) | 0 | 1 K |
|  | 4.0 (60.0) | 0.4 (0.0) | 25.0 (375) | 0 | 1 M |
|  | 10.0(150) ${ }^{3}$ | 1.0 (15) | 40.0 (600) | 0 | 1P |
|  | 20.0 (300) ${ }^{3)}$ | $2.0(30)$ | 40.0 (600) | 0 | 10 |
|  | Absolute pressure |  |  |  |  |
|  | 2.0 (30.0) | 0.2 (3.0) | 15.0 (225) | 0 | 2K |
|  | 4.0 (60.0) | 0.4 (0.0) | 25.0 (375) | 0 | 2M |
|  | $10.0(150)^{31}$ | 1.0 (15) | 40.0 (600) | 0 | 2P |
|  | 20.0 (300) ${ }^{3)}$ | 2.0 (30) | 40.0 (600) | 0 | 20 |

1) OPL: overpressure limit, depending on the weakest element, in terms of pressure, of the selected components
2) See $\rightarrow$ 首 24 "Ordering information"
3) These measuring ranges are not offered for the probe version with a coated housing outer diameter 29 mm (1.14 in).

FMX21 + Pt1 00 (optional)

- Change in capacitance
- Pt100: change in resistance

TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional)

- Pt100 resistance signal, 4-wire


## Output

| Output signal | FMX21 + P4100 (optional) |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | - 4 to 20 mA with overlying digital HART 6.0 <br> communication protocol, 2 -wire for hydrostatic <br> pressure measured value |
| - Pt100: Temperature-dependent resistance values |  |

TMT 182 temperature head transmitter (optional)

- 4 to 20 mA with overlying digital HART 5.0 communication protocol for temperature measured value, 2 -wire

| Signal range | - 3.8 to 20.5 mA |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Signal on alarm | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> 4 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ <br> Options: <br> - Max. alarm (factory setting 22mA): can be set from 21 to 23 mA <br> - Hold measured value: last measured value is heid <br> - Min. alarm: 3.6 mA | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) <br> Options: <br> - Max. alarm $\geq 21.0 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> - Min. alarm $\leq 3.6 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| Load | FMX21 | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) |

$$
R_{\mathrm{L} \max } \leq \frac{U-10.5 \mathrm{~V}}{23 \mathrm{~mA}}-2 \cdot 0.9 \frac{\Omega}{\mathrm{~m}} \cdot 1-\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{adid}}
$$

$$
R_{\text {tot }} \leq \frac{U-11.5 \mathrm{~V}}{0.023 \mathrm{~A}}-R_{\text {add }}
$$

$R_{\text {Lmax }}=$ Max. load resistance $\$ /$
$R_{\text {add }}=$ Addtional resistances such as resistance of evaluation unit and/or display unit, cable resistance $\Omega$ /
$U=$ Supply voltage $(V)$
$1=$ Simple length of extension cable $/ \mathrm{m} /$ (cable resistance per wire $\leq 0.00 \Omega / \mathrm{m}$ )
Note!
When using the measuring device in hazardous areas, installation must comply with the applicable national standards and regulations and the Safety Instructions or Installation or Control Drawings.


FMX21 load char for estimating the load resistance. Additional resistances, such as the resistance of the extension cable, have to be subtracted from the value calculated as shown in the equation.


Temperature head transmitter load chan for estimating the load resistance. Additional resistances have to be subtracted from the value calculated as shown in the equation.

Hinweis!
When operating using a HART handheld terminal or a PC with an operating program, a minimum communication resistance of $250 \Omega$ has to be taken into account.

| Resolution | Current output: $1 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | Read cycle |
|  | HART commands: 2 to 3 per second on average |
| Damping | - Continuously 0 to 999 s via HART handheld terminal or PC with operating program |
|  | - Factory setting: 2 s |

## Power supply

Measuring unit electrical connection

Note!

- When using the measuring device in hazardous areas, installation must comply with the applicable national standards and regulations and the Safety Instructions (XAs) and the Installation or Control Drawings (ZDs). $\rightarrow 28$ "Additional documentation", "Safety instructions" and "Installation/Control Drawings".
- Reverse polarity protection is integrated in the Waterpilot FMX21 and in the TMT1 82 temperature head transmitter. Changing the polarities will not damage the devices.
- The cable must end in a dry room or a suitable terminal box. The terminal box (IP66/IP67) with a GORETEX ${ }^{\circledR}$ filter from Endress+Hauser is suitable for outdoor installations. The terminal box can be ordered as an accessory using the order code for FMX21 $\rightarrow$ 自 24 version "PS" for feature 620.
The electrical connection is made with the corresponding wires of the probe cable and with the optional use of the terminal box (Commubox FXA) or an active barrier (e.g. RN221N).

FMX21


Electrical connection

FMX21 with Pt100 ${ }^{11}$

(1) Not for FMX21 with an outer diameter of 29 mm (1.14 in).
${ }^{1)}$ Not for use in hazardous areas.

Waterpilot FMX21 with Pt100 and TMT182 temperature head transmitter (4 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ ) ${ }^{1)}$


FMX21 with Pt100 and TMT182 temperature head transmitter versions "NB" and "PT" for the features 610 and 620 in the order code $\rightarrow$ 臥 24 ff .
(1) Not for FMX21 with an outer diameter of 29 mm (1.14 in).

Wire colors: $\mathrm{RD}=$ red, $\mathrm{BK}=$ black, $\mathrm{WH}=$ white, $\mathrm{YE}=$ yellow, $\mathrm{BU}=$ blue, $\mathrm{BR}=$ brown
${ }^{1)}$ Not for use in hazardous areas.
Connection classification as per IEC 61010-1:

- Overvoltage category 1
- Pollution degree 1

Connection data in the hazardous area

| 4 to 20 mA | Ex ia IIC T4 to To |
| :--- | :--- |
| Ui | $30 \vee \mathrm{DC}$ |
| Ii | 133 mA |
| Pi | 1.0 W |
| Ci | $10.3 \mathrm{nF}($ sensor $) / 180 \mathrm{pF} / \mathrm{m}($ cable $)$ |
| Li | $0 \mu \mathrm{H}($ sensor $) / 1 \mu \mathrm{H} / \mathrm{m}($ cable $)$ |
| Ta | $-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right) \leq \mathrm{Ta} \leq+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ for $\mathrm{T} 4 ;-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right) \leq \mathrm{Ta} \leq+40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+104^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ for To |


| Supply voltage | Note! <br> - When using the measuring device in hazardous areas, installation must comply with the applicable national standards and regulations and the Safety Instructions (XAS) and the Installation or Control Drawings (ZDs). All explosion-protection data are given in a separate documentation which is available upon request. This documentation is provided with the devices as standard, see also $\rightarrow 28$ "Additional documentation". |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - 10.5 to 35 V (non-hazardous area) <br> - 10.5 to 30 V (hazardous area) | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) <br> - 11.5 to 35 V DC |
| Cable specifications | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - Commercially available shielded instrument cable <br> - Terminal, terminal box: 0.08 to $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ( 28 to 14 AWG ) <br> - If the Pt 100 signal is directly connected to a display and/or evaluation unit, Endress+Hauser recommends using a shielded cable. | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) <br> - Commercially available shielded instrument cable <br> - Terminal, terminal box: <br> 0.08 to $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ( 28 to 14 AWG ) <br> - Transmitter connection: max. $1.75 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (15 AWG) |
| Power consumption | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - $\leq 0.805 \mathrm{~W}$ at 35 V DC (non-hazardous area) <br> - $\leq 0.090 \mathrm{~W}$ at 30 V DC (hazardous area) | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) $\text { - } \leq 0.805 \mathrm{~W} \text { at } 35 \mathrm{~V} \text { DC }$ |
| Current consumption | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - Max. current consumption: $\leq 23 \mathrm{~mA}$ Min. current consumption: $\geq 3.6 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> - Pt100: $\leq 0.6 \mathrm{~mA}$ | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) <br> - Max. current consumption: $\leq 23 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> Min. current consumption: $\geq 3.5 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> - Pt100 via temperature head transmitter: $\leq 0.6 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| Residual ripple | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - No impact on 4 to 20 mA signal to $\pm 5 \%$ residual ripple within the permitted voltage range (according to HART Hardware Specification HCF_SPEC-54 (DIN IEC 60381-1)). | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{ss}} \geq 3 \mathrm{~V} \text { at } \mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{b}} \geq 13 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{f}_{\text {max }}=1 \mathrm{kHz}$ |

## Performance characteristics

| Reference operating conditions | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - As per IEC 60770 <br> - Ambient temperature $T_{A}=$ constant, in range: +21 to $+33^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+70^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right.$ to $\left.+91^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ <br> - Humidity $\varphi=$ constant, in range: 20 to $80 \% \mathrm{RH}$ <br> - Ambient pressure $\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{A}}=$ constant, in range: 800 to 1000 mbar ( 12.47 to 15.37 psi ) <br> - Position of the measuring cell = constant, in range: vertical: $\pm 1^{\circ}$ <br> - Supply voltage constant21 VDC to 27 V DC <br> - Load with HART: $250 \Omega$ <br> - Ptl00: DIN EN $60770 \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{A}}=25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(77^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) Calibration temperature $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(77^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right) \pm 5 \mathrm{~K}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Reference accuracy | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> The reference accuracy comprises the non-linearity after limit point configuration, hysteresis and nonrepeatability in accordance with IEC 00770. <br> - Setting $\pm 0.2 \%$ <br> - to TD 5:1: $<0.2 \%$ of the set span <br> - from TD 5:1 to TD $10: 1 \pm(0.02 \times$ TD +0.1$)$ <br> PLATINUM version: <br> - Secting $\pm 0.1 \%$ (optional) <br> - to TD S:1: < $0.1 \%$ of the set span <br> - from TD 5:1 to TD 10:1 $\pm(0.02 \times$ TD) <br> - Class B to DIN EN 60751 <br> - Ptloo: max. $\pm 1 \mathrm{~K}$ | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) <br> - $\pm 0.2 \mathrm{~K}$ <br> - With Ptl00: max. $\pm 0.9 \mathrm{~K}$ |
| Long-term stability | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - $\leq 0.1 \%$ of URL/year <br> - $\leq 0.25 \%$ of URL/5 years | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) $\leq 0.1 \mathrm{~K}$ per year |
| Influence of medium temperature | - Thermal change in the zero output and the outpu 0 to $+30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+32\right.$ to $\left.+80^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right):<10.15+0.15 \times$ TD -10 to $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14\right.$ to $\left.+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right):<(0.4+0.4 \times \mathrm{T}$ <br> - Temperature coefficient ( $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{k}}$ ) of the zero output an -10 to $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14\right.$ to $\left.+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right): 0.1 \% / 10 \mathrm{~K} \mathrm{U}$ | ```span % D% output span L``` |
| Warm-up period | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) } \\ & \text { FMX21:<0s } \\ & \text { Pt } 100: 20 \mathrm{~ms} \end{aligned}$ | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) $4 \mathrm{~s}$ |
| Step response time | ```FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) - Pt100: 100 s (T90 time), 300 s (T99 time)``` | - |

## Installation

## Installation instructions



Installation examples，here illustrated with FMX21 with an outer diameter of 22 mm （ 0.87 in ）
1 Extension cable mounting screw can be ordered via order code or as an accessory $\rightarrow$ 曾 24 ff
2 Terminal box can be ordered via order code or as an accessory $\rightarrow$ 冒 24 ff
3 Extension cable bending radius＞ 120 mm （4．72 in）
4 Mounting clamp can be ordered via order code or as an accessory $\rightarrow$ 㐆 24 ff
5 Extension cable，length $\rightarrow$ 店 21
0 Guide pipe
7 Additional weight can be ordered as an accessory for FMXZ／with an outer diameter of $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ and 29 mm （ 1.14 in ）$\rightarrow$ 自 26
8 Protection cap

Note！
－Sideways movement of the level probe can result in measuring errors．For this reason，install the probe at a point free from flow and turbulence，or use a guide tube．The internal diameter of the guide tube should be at least $1 \mathrm{~mm}(0.04 \mathrm{in})$ bigger than the outer diameter of the selected FMX21．
－The cable must end in a dry room or a suitable terminal box．The terminal box from Endress＋Hauser provides optimum humidity and climatic protection and is suitable for outdoor installation．
－Protection cap：The device is provided with a protection cap to prevent mechanical damage to the measuring cell．This cap should not be removed during the transportation and installation process．
－If the cable is shortened，the filter at the pressure compensation tube has to be reattached． Endress＋Hauser offers a cable shortening kit for this purpose $\rightarrow$ 挡 24 ff（SD552P／00／A0）．
－Endress＋Hauser recommends using twisted，shielded cables．

## Ambient conditions

| Ambient temperature range | FMX21 + Pt1 00 (optional) <br> - FMX21 with outer diameter of $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ and $42 \mathrm{~mm}(1.05 \mathrm{in})$ : -10 to $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14\right.$ to $\left.+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ ( $=$ medium temperature) <br> - FMX21 with outer diameter of $29 \mathrm{~mm}(1.14 \mathrm{in})$ : 0 to $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+32\right.$ to $\left.+122^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ ( $=$ medium temperature) <br> Terminal box <br> - -40 to $+80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40\right.$ to $\left.+176^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) $-40 \text { to }+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \text { to }+185^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Storage temperature range | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) } \\ & \text { - }-40 \text { to }+80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \text { to }+170^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right) \\ & \text { Terminal box } \\ & \text { - }-40 \text { to }+80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \text { to }+170^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right) \end{aligned}$ | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) $-40 \text { to }+100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \text { to }+212^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| Degree of protection | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - IP68, permanently hermetically sealed at 40 bar ( 580 psi ) ( $-400 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{H}_{2} \mathrm{O}$ ) <br> Terminal box (optional) <br> - IP60/IP67 | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) <br> - IP00, condensation permitted |


| Electromagnetic <br> compatibility (EMC) | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | EMC in accordance with all the relevant |
| requirements of the EN 61326 series. Details are |  |
| provided in the Declaration of Conformity. |  |
| - Maximum deviation $<0.5 \%$ of the span. |  |$\quad$| TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) |
| :--- |$\quad$| EMC in accordance with all the relevant |
| :--- |
| requirements of the EN ol320 series. Details are |
| provided in the Declaration of Conformity. |


| Overvoltage protection | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | Integrated overvoltage protection to EN $61000-4-5$ |  |
|  | (500 V symmetrical/ 1000 asymmetrical) |  |
| Install overvoltage protection $\geq 1.0 \mathrm{kV}$, external if |  |  |
| necessary |  |  |$\quad$| Install overvoltage protection, external if necessary. |
| :--- |

## Process conditions

| Medium temperature range | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - FMX21 with outer diameter of $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ and 42 mm ( 1.65 in ): $-10 \text { to }+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14 \text { to }+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ <br> - FMX21 with outer diameter of 29 mm ( 1.14 in ): 0 to $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+32\right.$ to $\left.+122^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ | TMT182 temperature head transmitter (optional) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Medium temperature limits | FMX21 + Pt100 (optional) <br> - FMX21 with outer diameter of $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ and $42 \mathrm{~mm}(1.65 \mathrm{in})$ : $-20 \text { to }+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-4 \text { to }+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ <br> Note! <br> In hazardous areas incl. CSA GP, the medium temperature limit is at -10 to $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ $\left(+14\right.$ to $\left.+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$. <br> - FMX21 with outer diameter of $29 \mathrm{~mm}(1.14 \mathrm{in})$ : 0 to $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+32\right.$ to $\left.+122^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ <br> (The FMX21 can be operated in this temperature range. The specification can then be exceeded, e.g. measuring accuracy.) | - |

Mechanical construction

## Dimensions of the level probe



Versions of the FMXZI
$l$ Version＂I＂for feature 45 ＂Probe tube＂or＂Accessories＂in the order code $\rightarrow$ 是 24 ff
2 Version＂2＂for feature 45 ＂Probe tube＂in the order code $\rightarrow$ 皆 24 ff
3 Version＂5＂for feature 45 ＂Probe tube＂in the order code $\rightarrow$ 自 24 ff
4 Pressure compensation tube
5 Extension cable
o Protection cap

Dimensions of the mounting
clamp


Mounting clamp，version＂PO＂for feature 620 ＂Accessories＂in the order code $\rightarrow 24 \mathrm{ff}$

Dimensions of the extension cable mounting screws


Extension cable mounting screws
1 Extension cable mounting screw G $11 / 2$ A, version "PO" for feature 620 "Accessories" in the order code $\rightarrow$ 酉 24 ff
2 Extension cable mounting screw / 1/2 NPT, version "PR" for feature $620^{\text {"Accessories" in the order code } \rightarrow 24 \mathrm{JJ}}$

Note!
Application in unpressurized containers only.

## Dimensions of the IP66/IP67

 terminal boxes with filters

Terminal box / Version "PS" or "PT" for feature 020 "Accessories" in the order code $\rightarrow$ 自 24 ff
1 Dummy plug M20x1.5
2 CORE-TEX ${ }^{\circ}$ filter
3 Ground connection / terminals for 0.08 to $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (28 to 14 AWG)
44 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} /$ terminals for 0.08 to $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (28 to 14 AWC)

If ordered together with FMX21 but without the optional TMT182 temperatur transmitter, the terminal box is incl. a 4-terminal strip.

Note!
The 4-terminal strip is not intended for use in hazardous areas incl. CSA GP.


TMT182 temperature head transmitter ( 4 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} /$ HART), version "PT" for feature 620 "Accessories" in the order code $\rightarrow$ 医 24 ff .

Terminal box with integrated TMT 182 temperature head transmitter ( 4 to 20 mA / HART)


|  | $\$$ | Note! <br> A distance of $>7 \mathrm{~mm}(>0.28 \mathrm{in} \mathrm{mm})$ must be maintained between the terminal strip and the TMT 182 temperature head transmitter. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Weight |  | - Level probe, outer diameter $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in}): 344 \mathrm{~g}(12.133 \mathrm{oz})$ <br> - Level probe, outer diameter $29 \mathrm{~mm}(1.14 \mathrm{in}): 394 \mathrm{~g}(13.896 \mathrm{oz})$ <br> - Level probe, outer diameter 42 mm ( 1.65 in ): 1370 g ( 48.532 oz ) <br> - PE extension cable: $52 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}(0.33 \mathrm{lbs} / 1 \mathrm{ft})$ <br> - FEP extension cable: $108 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}(0.072 \mathrm{lbs} / 1 \mathrm{ft})$ <br> - PUR extension cable: $00 \mathrm{~g} / \mathrm{m}(0.039 \mathrm{lbs} / 1 \mathrm{ft})$ <br> - Mounting clamp: $170 \mathrm{~g}(5.996 \mathrm{oz})$ <br> - Extension cable mounting screw G1 $1 / 2 \mathrm{~A}: 770 \mathrm{~g}(27.158 \mathrm{oz})$ <br> - Extension cable mounting screw $11 / 2$ NPT: $724 \mathrm{~g}(25.535 \mathrm{oz})$ <br> - Terminal box: 235 g ( 8.288 oz ) <br> - Temperature head transmitter: 40 g ( 1.41 loz ) <br> - Additional weight: 300 g ( 1.376 oz ) <br> - Adapter weight: 39 g |


| Material | －Level probe，outer diameter $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in}): 1.4435$（AISI 316L） <br> －Level probe，outer diameter 29 mm （ 1.14 in ）： 1.4435 （AISI 316L） <br> －Sensor sleeve：PPS（polyphenylene sulfide）；heat－shrink tube／cover：polyolefin． <br> The materials used ensure that metal does not come in contact with the medium． <br> －Level probe，outer diameter 42 mm （ 1.65 in ）： 1.4435 （AISI 316L） <br> －Process ceramic： $\mathrm{Al}_{2} \mathrm{O}_{3}$ aluminum oxide ceramic <br> －Seal（internal）：EPDM or Viton <br> －Protection cap：－PPO（polyphenylene oxide）for FMX21 with outer diameter 22 mm and 29 mm ． <br> －PFA（perfluoroalkoxy）for FMX21 with outer diameter 42 mm ． <br> －Extension cable insulation：either PE－LD（low－density polyethylene），FEP（fluorinated ethylene propylene） or PUR（polyurethane），for further information，see $\rightarrow$ 目 21 ＂Extension cable＂． <br> －Mounting clamp： 1.4404 （AISI 316L）and fiberglass reinforced PA（polyamide） <br> －Extension cable mounting screw G112 A： 1.4301 （AISI 304） <br> －Extension cable mounting screw 1½ NPT： 1.4301 （AISI 304） <br> －Terminal box：PC（polycarbonate） <br> －Temperature head transmitter：PC housing（polycarbonate） |
| :---: | :---: |
| Extension cable | PE extension cable <br> －Abrasion－resistant extension cable with Dynema strain－relief members；shielded with aluminum－coated film；insulated with polyethylene（PE），black；copper wires，twisted <br> －Pressure compensation tube with Tefion filter |
|  | PUR extension cable <br> －Abrasion－resistant extension cable with Dynema strain－relief members；shielded with aluminum－coated film；insulated with polyurethane（PUR），black；copper wires，twisted <br> －Pressure compensation tube with Teflon filter |
|  | FEP extension cable <br> －Abrasion－resistant extension cable；shielded with galvanized steel wire netting；insulated with fluorinated ethylene propylene（FEP），black；copper wires，twisted <br> －Pressure compensation tube with Teflon filter |
|  | Cross－section of PE／PUR／FEP extension cable <br> －Total outer diameter： $8.0 \mathrm{~mm}(0.31 \mathrm{in}) \pm 0.25 \mathrm{~mm}$（ $\pm 0.01 \mathrm{in}$ ） <br> －FMX21： $3 \times 0.227 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}(3 \times 26 \mathrm{AWG})+$ pressure compensation tube with Teflon filter <br> －FMX21 with Pt100（optional）： $7 \times 0.227 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}(7 \times 26 \mathrm{AWG})+$ pressure compensation tube with Teflon filter <br> －Pressure compensation tube with Tefion filter：outer diameter $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.1 \mathrm{in})$ ，internal diameter 1.5 mm （0．06 in） |
|  | Cable resistance of PE／PUR／FEP extension cable <br> －Cable resistance per wire：$\leq 0.09 \Omega / \mathrm{m}$ |
|  | Cable length of PE／PUR／FEP extension cable <br> －Please refer also to $\rightarrow$ 国 10 ，Chap．＂Load＂． <br> －Cable length that can be ordered <br> －Customer－specific length in meters or feet（ $\rightarrow$ 皿 24 ，＂Ordering information＂） <br> －Limited cable length when performing installation with freely suspended device with extension cable mounting screw or mounting clamp，as well as for hazardous areas：max． 300 m （ 984 ft ）． <br> －When using the measuring device in hazardous areas，installation must comply with the applicable national standards and regulations and the Safety Instructions（XAs）or the Installation or Control Drawings（ZDs） ＂Additional documentation＂． |
|  | Further technical data for PE／PUR／FEP extension cable <br> －Minimum bending radius： 120 mm （ 4.72 in ） <br> －Tensile strength：max． $950 \mathrm{~N}(213.56 \mathrm{lbf})$ <br> －Cable extraction force：typical $\geq 400 \mathrm{~N}(89.92 \mathrm{lbf})$ PE，FEP／typical $\geq 150 \mathrm{~N}(33.72 \mathrm{lbf})$ PUR （The extension cable could be extracted from the level probe with a appropriate tensile force．） <br> －Resistance to UV light <br> －PE：Approved for use with drinking water |
| Terminals | －Three terminals as standard in the terminal box <br> －4－terminal strip can be ordered as an accessory，Order No： 52008938 Conductor cross－section 0.08 to $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$（ 28 to 14 AWG） |
|  | Note！ <br> The 4－terminal strip is not intended for use in hazardous areas incl．CSA GP． |

## Human interface

Field Xpert SFX100
Field Xpert is an industrial PDA with integrated 3.5" touchscreen from Endress + Hauser based on Windows Mobile. It communicates via wireless with the optional VIATOR ${ }^{\otimes}$ Bluetooth ${ }^{\text {® }}$ modem connected to a HART device point-to-point or wireless via WiFi and Endress+Hauser's Fieldgate FXA520. Field Xpert also works as a stand-alone device for asset management applications. For details refer to BAOCOS/O0/EN.

Field Communicator 375, 475 The Field Communicator 375 , 475 handheld terminal can be used $w$ set all the parameter via menu operation.
FieldCare FieldCare is Endress+Hauser's plant asset management tool based on FDT technology. You can use FieldCare to configure all Endress+Hauser devices as well as third-party devices which support the FDT standard.
FieldCare supports the following functions:

- Configuration of transmitters in offline and online mode
- Loading and saving device data (upload/download)
- Documentation of the measuring point

Connection options:

- Via Commubox FXA195 and the USB port of a computer
- Via Fieldgate FXA520

For further information and free download of FieldCare see $\rightarrow$ www.endress.com $\rightarrow$ Download $\rightarrow$ Search: FieldCare

## Certificates and approvals

CE mark The device meets the legal requirements of the applicable EC Directives. Endress+Hauser confirms successful testing of the device by affixing to it the CE mark.

| Approvals, types of protection | - ATEX II 2 C Ex ia IIC T4/T( $6^{1 / 2)}$ <br> - ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC TS/To ${ }^{1 / 3)}$ <br> - FM: IS Cl. I, Div. I Gp. A-D; AEx ia Cl. I Zone 1 IIC" <br> - CSA C/US: IS Cl. I, Div. 1 Gp. A-D; Ex ia CI. I Zone 1 IIC ${ }^{11}$ <br> - CSA: General Purpose <br> - IEC Ex ia IIC To Gb ${ }^{1)}$ <br> - NEPSI Ex la IIC To |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | ${ }^{17}$ Only for Waterpilot FMX21 without Pt100 and TMT182 <br> ${ }^{21}$ T4/TO: <br> Temperature class T 4 at $-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)<\mathrm{Ta}<+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ <br> Temperature class To at $-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)<\mathrm{Ta}<+40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+104^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ <br> 3) $\mathrm{T} 5 / \mathrm{TO}$ : <br> Temperature class T 5 at $-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)<\mathrm{Ta}<+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ <br> Temperature class T 6 at $-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)<\mathrm{Ta}<+60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+140^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| $\$$ | Note! <br> - Waterpilot FMX21 is only available for use in hazardous areas with the FKM Viton seal. <br> - All explosion-protection data are given in a separate documentation which is available upon request. The Ex documentation is provided with all Ex-systems as standards, see also $\rightarrow$ 官 28 "Additional documentation", "Safety instructions" and "Installation/Control Drawings". |

## Drinking water approval

 (for FMX21 with outer diameter $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ )- KTW certificate
- NSF 61 approval
- ACS approval (in preparation)

Standards and guidelines applied

The European standards and guidelines that have been applied are listed in the associated EC Declarations of Conformity. In addition, the following standards were also applied for the Waterpilot FMX21:

- DIN EN 60770 \{IEC 60770 ): Transmitters for use in industrial process control systems Part 1: Methods for performance evaluation
- DIN 16086: Electrical pressure measuring instruments, pressure sensors, pressure transmitters, pressure measuring instruments, concepts, specifications on data sheets
- EN 61326 :

Electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use - EMC requirements

- EN 61010-1 (JEC 61010-1):

Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement, control and laboratory use

- EN 00529:

Degrees of protection provided by enclosures

## Ordering information

## FMX21

You can enter the versions for the specific feature in the following table. The versions entered make up the complete order code. Options which are mutually exclusive are not marked.

| 10 | Approval: |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | AA | Non-hazardous area |
|  | BE | ATEXII 2 G Ex Ia IIC To |
|  | BD | ATEX II 3 G Ex nA IIC To |
|  | FE | FM IS, Cl. I Division I, Groups A - D, AEx ia, zone I |
|  | CE | CSA C/US IS CI. I Division I, Groups A - D, Ex ia, zone I |
|  | CD | CSA General Purpose |
|  | IC | IEC Ex ia IIC To Cb |
|  | NA | NEPSI Ex ia IIC To |


| 20 | Output: |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2 |  | mA HART |
| 45 |  | Probe tobe: |  |
|  |  | \|l| |  |



| 80 | - | - | Reference eccuracy: |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | D Platinum <br> C Standard |  |


$\rightarrow$ Ordering information for FMX21 continued on next page.


Additional ordering information (optional)


## Accessories

| Mounting clamp | －Endress＋Hauser offers a mounting clamp for easy <br> －Material： 1.4404 （AISI 316L）and fiberglass reinfo <br> －Order number 52000151，see also＂Ordering infor |
| :---: | :---: |
| Terminal box | －IP60／IP67 terminal boxes with GORE－TEX ${ }^{\circledR}$ filter The terminal box is also suitable for installing a TM terminals（Order No．52008938）$\rightarrow$ 監 19. <br> －＂Ordering information＂$\rightarrow$ 昌 24 |
| $\underset{\Delta}{\infty}$ | Note！ <br> The terminal box is not intended for the FMX21 with |
| Additional weight （for FMX21 with outer diameter of $22 \mathrm{~mm}(0.87 \mathrm{in})$ or 29 mm （ 1.14 in ）） |  |

－Endress＋Hauser offers additional weights to prevent sideways movement that results in measuring errors， or to make it easier to lower the device in a guide tube．
You can screw several weights together．The weights are then attached directly to the FMX21．For FMX21 with an outer diameter of 29 mm （ 1.14 in ）a maximum of 5 weights may be attached．In combination with the Ex nA approval，for FMX21 with an outer diameter of 29 mm （ 1.14 in ）a maximum of 1 additional weight may be attached．
－Material： 1.4435 （AISI 316L）
－Weight： 300 g （ 10.581 oz ）
－Order number 52006153 ，see also＂Ordering information＂$\rightarrow$ 道 24

TMT182 temperature head transmitter（ 4 to 20 mA ／ HART）
－2－wire temperature head transmitter，configured for a measuring range from -20 to $+80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-4\right.$ to $\left.+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ ． This setting offers a temperature range of 100 K which can be easily mapped．Please note that the Pt 100 resistance thermometer is designed for a temperature range from -10 to $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-14\right.$ to $\left.+170^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right) \rightarrow$ 息 20 ．
－＂Ordering information＂$\rightarrow$ 国24，
Note！
The TM182 temperature head transmitter is not intended for use in hazardous areas incl．CSA GP．

Extension cable mounting screw
－Endress＋Hauser offers extension cable mounting screws to ease FMX21 mounting and to seal the measuring aperture $\rightarrow$ 合 19 ．
－Material： 1.4301 （AISI 304）
－order number 52008204 （G11／2 A thread），order number 52009311 （NPT1 $1 / 2$ thread），see also＂Ordering information＂$\rightarrow$ E 24
Terminals Four terminals in strip for terminal box，suitable for wire cross－section： 0.08 to $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$（28 to 14 AWG）
－Order number： 52008938
Note！
The 4－terminal strip is not intended for use in hazardous areas incl．CSA GP．
－The cable shortening kit is used to easily and professionally shorten a cable．
－$\rightarrow$ 自 24 ，＂Ordering information＂and the documentation SDS52P／00／A0．
Note！
The cable shortening kit is not intended for the FMX21 with FM／CSA approval．

Installation tool－ indicating the customer－ specific length on the cable


I cable marking，distance to the lower end of the cable probe
－To make installation easier，Endress＋Hauser offers a mark on the extension cable for a customer－specific length，see also $\rightarrow$ 首 24 ＂Ordering information＂．
－Mark tolerance：up to $\pm 50 \mathrm{~mm}$（ 1.97 in ） （The mark tolerance corresponds to a measured error from up to $\pm 50 \mathrm{~mm}$（ 1.97 in ）．
－Material：PET
－Adhesive：acrylic
－Immunity to temperature change： -30 to $+100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-22\right.$ to $\left.+212^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$

Note！
The mark is for installation purposes only．
The mark must be thoroughly removed without trace in the case of devices with drinking water approval．The extension cable must not be damaged in the process．

## Testing adapter

 （for FMX21 with outer diameter of 22 mm （ 0.87 in ） and $29 \mathrm{~mm}(1.14 \mathrm{in})$ ）

Testing adapter
A FMX21 level probe connection
B Compressed air hose connection，internal diameter of quick coupling piece $4 \mathrm{~mm}(0.10 \mathrm{in})$
－Endress＋Hauser offers a testing adapter to ease function－testing of the level probes．
－Observe the maximum pressure for the compressed air hose and the maximum overload for the level probe $\rightarrow$ 首 24.
－Maximum pressure of the quick coupling piece supplied： 10 bar（ 145 psi ）
－Adapter material： 1.4301 （AISI 304）
－Quick coupling piece material： anodized aluminum
－Adapter weight： 39 g （ 1.376 oz ）
－Order number 52011868 ，see also $\rightarrow$ 監 24 ＂Ordering information＂．

## Additional documentation

| Field of activities | - Pressure measurement: FA004P/00/EN <br> - Recording technology: FA014R/09/EN <br> - System components: FA016K/09/EN |
| :---: | :---: |
| Technical Information | - Technical Information Waterpilot FMX167 with 4 to 20 mA analog output: TI351P/00/EN <br> - Technical Information Deltapilot M: TI437P/00/EN <br> - Temperature head transmitter iTEMP HART TMT182: TI078R/09/EN |
| Operating Instructions | - Waterpilot FMX21: BA380P/00/EN <br> - Cable shortening kit: SD552P/00/A6 <br> - Field Xpert: BA060S/04/EN |
| Safety instructions | - ATEX II 2 G: XA454P/00/A3 <br> - ATEX II 3 G: XA485P/00/A3 <br> - IECEx Ex ia IIC: XA455P/00/EN <br> - NEPSI Ex ia IIC: XA456P/00/B2 |
| Installation/ Control Drawings | - FM is CI. I, Div. 1, Gp. A - D / CI. I Zone I IIC: ZD231P/00/EN <br> - CSA C/US IS CI. I, Div. 1, Gp. A - D / Cl. I Zone 1, IIC: ZD232P/00/EN |
| Drinking water approval | - SD289P/00/A3 (NSF) <br> - SD319P/00/A3 (KTW) <br> - SD320P/00/A3 (ACS) (in preparation) |

## Configuration data sheet

Level The following configuration data sheet has to be filled in and included with the order if the option " K : customized level" has been selected in feature "090: Calibration; unit" in the product structure.

## Pressure engineering unit

| $\square \mathrm{mbar}$ | $\square \mathrm{mmH} 2 \mathrm{O}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\square \mathrm{bar}$ | $\square \mathrm{mH} 2 \mathrm{O}$ |
|  | $\square \mathrm{ftH2O}$ |
| $\square \mathrm{psi}$ | $\square \mathrm{inH} 2 \mathrm{O}$ |
|  | $\square \mathrm{Pa}$ |
| $\square \mathrm{mmHg}$ | $\square \mathrm{kPa}$ |
|  | $\square \mathrm{kgf} / \mathrm{cm} 2$ |

Empty calibration (a)
(Empty) low pressure value $\qquad$ (Empty) low level value $\qquad$

Full calibration (b)
(Full) high pressure value $\qquad$ (Full) high level value $\qquad$

## Damping

Damping: $\qquad$ sec

Pressure
The following configuration data sheet has to be filled in and included with the order if the option "J: customized pressure" has been selected in feature "090: Calibration; unit" in the product structure.

## Pressure Engineerung Unit (a)

| $\square \mathrm{mbar}$ | $\square \mathrm{mmH} 2 \mathrm{O}$ | $\square \mathrm{mmHg}$ | $\square \mathrm{Pa}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $\square$ bar | $\square \mathrm{mH} 2 \mathrm{O}$ |  | $\square \mathrm{kPa}$ |
|  | $\square \mathrm{ftH} 2 \mathrm{O}$ |  | $\square \mathrm{MPa}$ |
| $\square \mathrm{psi}$ | $\square \mathrm{inH} 2 \mathrm{O}$ | $\square \mathrm{kgf} / \mathrm{cm} 2$ |  |

## Calibration Range / Output

LRV: $\qquad$ (pressure engineering unit)
URV: $\qquad$ (pressure engineering unit)

Damping
Damping $\qquad$ sec

## Instruments: International

Endress+Hauser
Instruments International AG
Kaegenstrasse 2
4153 Reinach
Switzerland
Tel. +41617158100
Fax +41617152500
www.endress.com
info@ii.endress.com

Halmac Services (Qld) Pty. Ltd. ACN 098852923
ABN 40741712113

## MULTITRODE LEVEL RELAY

1. MTR LEVEL RELAY TECHNICAL DETAILS
2. MTR WIRING DETAILS
3. MTRA LEVEL RELAY TECHNICAL DETAILS
4. MTRA WIRING DETAILS
5. MTR/MTRA INSTALLATION \&

TROUBLESHOOTING DETAILS


Sample mTR Application


Sample MTR Application


Dip Switch Setfings


Wiring Diagram


Physical Dimensions


## Sample Application



## Product Specifications



All MultiTrode Products carry a two year warranty

MultiTrode Pty Ltd Head Office 130 Kingston Road, Underwood QId 4119 PO Box 2465, Logan City D.C. Qld 4114 $\mathrm{Ph}:+61738084011$ Fax:+61 738080011 sales@multitrode.com.au

## MOMTHBODE

Sydney - Australia
Tel:+61 297742433
Fax:+61 297742566

Melbourne - Australia
Tel:+61 359786900
Fax:+61 359786932

MultiTrode Inc. - USA 6560 East Rogers Circle,
Boca Raton FI 33487
Tel:+1 5619948090 Fax:+1 5619946282 E-mail: sales@multitrode.net

## MULTITRODE RELAY 240VAC MTR 2) INSTALLATION SHE 1. NO1

CONTROL OF THREE APPLIANCES IN A CHARGING SITUATION




## After many years of rigorous field use, reliability and simplicity of opperation of these units is unquestionable.

The MTRA relay offers many of the cost-effective features of the MTR relay, with the benefit of a built-in Hi level alarm.

## Mote: The MTRA is intended for harge applications ONLY

The MultiTrode MTRA Liquid Level Control Relay with alarm is a latching conductive liquid level control device. The pump is activated when the start point, "HI", is reached and deactivated when level falls below the stop point, "LO". The alarm activates once the level reaches the alarm point and deactivates once the level drops below the alarm point.

In 2 sensor mode the the pump start point "HI" will activate the alarm after after a preset time delay ( $0.5,15 \mathrm{sec}$ ). This alarm can be set to flash or remain steady, as required.

Any application where level control plus high level alarm, such as sumps, wells, bores, collection tanks, effluent pits, drainage ponds, sullage pits etc, can benefit from use of the MultiTrode MTRA.

- Controls One Pump and One Alarm: The MTRA was designed specifically to control a pump and an alarm at a low installed-cost.
- Safe, extra-low, sensing voltage : Ensures safety for operators and maintenance personnel.
- 4 Sensitivities: Enables the relay to operate effectively in a wide range of conductive liquids.
- 2 Activation Delays: Each output can have a different time delay to overcome wave action and turbulence.
- LED Indication : High intensity LED indicators : Power On (green), Alarm on (red) and Pump on (yellow) via high intensity LED indicators.
- Dip Switch Programmable: All settings are easily selected from the front panel.
- Unique Two Sensor Operation : Enables pump and alarm to be controlled using 2 or 3 sensors. Two sensor operation is ideal for budget applications or where space is limited
- Proven Reliability : The proven design of the relay ensures long-term reliability of the MultiTrode system.
- I.S. application: Perfect for I.S. application when used with MTISB.
- DIN rail or screw mounting
- Low installed cost


## Sample Application



Sample Application


Dip Switch Settings


- Sw 3 ... Pump activation delays: $0.5 \& 10 \mathrm{sec}$ - Sw 4 ... Alarm activation delays: $0.5 \& 15 \mathrm{sec}$ ——Sw 5 ... Alarm: Steady or Flashing output ——Sw $6 \ldots$ Input mode: 2 or 3 Sensor

Available Sensitivity settings
IK Concentrated Acids, Minerals, Alkalis.
20K Alkali's, Diluted brine,Acids, Sea water.
40K Sewerage effluentSullage, Town water.
80K Industrial effluent and Processes, Purified water.

## Wiring Diagram



Physical Dimensions


## Product Specifications

Mode of operation:
MTRA
Discharge ONLY

Probe Inputs:

| Sensor inputs | MTR : 2 / MTRA :3 |
| :--- | :--- |
| Sensor voltage | 10/I2VAC Nominal |
| Sensor current | 0.8 mA max. (per sensor) |
| Sensitivity | $1 \mathrm{k}, 4 \mathrm{k}, 20 \mathrm{k}, 80 \mathrm{k}$ |

Relay Outputs:
MTRA relay output $\quad 2$ relays : both N/0
MTRA Ourput delay Pump: 0.5, 10; Alarm: $0.5,15 \mathrm{sec}$
Relay contan rating
250 VAC
5 A Resistive, 2 A Inducive
Relay contact life
Terminal size
$10^{5}$ Operations
$2 \times 2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{1}, \# 13$

| Display LEDs: <br> MTRA | $\frac{\text { Power On }}{\text { Green }} \frac{\text { Pump }}{\text { Yellow }}$ | $\frac{\text { Alarm }}{\text { Red }}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

Physical Product:

| Dimensions (mm) | $72 \mathrm{H} \times 45 \mathrm{~W} \times 1140$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Mounting | DIW Rail or $2 \times M 4$ Screws \#6 |
| Enclosure | Makrolon ( self extinguishing ) |


| Power Supply: |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Supply Voltage AC | 24, $110,240,415 \mathrm{VAC*}$ - $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |  |
| Power Consumption | 3.5 Watts max *(MTR only) |  |
| Supply Voltage DC | 12 or 24VDC, |  |
| Power Consumption | 3 watts max |  |
| Environmental Range: |  |  |
| Centigrade | - $10^{\prime}$ to +60 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |
| Fahrenheit | $+14^{\prime}$ to $+140^{\prime} \mathrm{F}$ | N1653 |



All MultiiTrode Products carry a full two year warranty

## The MTRA Relay is designed for discharge operation only.

This product can also be ordered as part of a "MTSSP" Sump pack, this pack includes an MTRA and two single sensor level sensing probes (model: 0.2/1-10m) with 10 m of cable.

## MMCLIRODE.

Sydney - Australia
Tel: 61297742433
Fax:+61 297742566

Melbourne - Australia Tel:+61 359786900
Fax:-61 359786932

MultiTrode Inc. - USA 6560 East Rogers Circle, Boca Raton FI 33487 Tel:+1 5619948090 Fax:+1 5619946282

E-mail: sales@multitrode.net


## 1 Introduction

The MultiTrode level control relay is a solid-state electronic module in a hi-impact plastic case with a DIN rail attachment on the back, making a snap-on-snap-off installation. Any number of relays can be easily added to the DIN metal rail then wired together to form a complex pumping system that other wise may have to be controlled and operated by a programmed PLC.

The relay is normally matched with the MultiTrode probe which works in conjunction with the relay and uses the conductivity of the liquid to complete an electrical circuit.

## 2 Electrical Overview



There are 10 screw terminals on the unit. Facing the relay as shown, we look at the bottom terminals (left to right):

- Lo - (Charge mode). This is the point when the probe is dry the relay will turn on.
- Lo-(Discharge mode). This is the point when the probe in the tank is dry the relay will turn off.
- Hi - (Charge mode). This is the point when the probe in the tank is wet a relay will turn off
- Hi - (Discharge mode). This is the point when the probe in the tank is wet a relay will turn on.
- C - is common earth. All earth bonding must be terminated here for correct operation.
- "L" is "live" (240V AC)
- " $N$ " is "neutral" (240V AC)

If the tank is plastic, or if you are conducting tests in a plastic bucket, or the vessel has no earth point inside, you must install an earth rod within the tank, vessel or bucket and make sure that it is bonded back to C on the relay unit.

## 3 DIP Switches

### 3.1 DIP Switches

(See Wiring Diagram for full program functions.)

### 3.1.1 DIP 182

DIP 1 and 2 control the Sensitivity, in other words the cleaner the liquid the higher the sensitivity setting must be. Concentrated acids, minerals are by their own chemical composition highly conductive, so a low level of sensitivity is required, purified water is almost an insulator against electrical current flow so a higher sensitivity inside the relay is required.

### 3.1.2 DIP 3, 4 \& 5

DIP switches 3,4 and 5, control delay on activation. For example, in discharge mode with DIP switches 3,4 and 5 set to 10 seconds, when the Hi point becomes wet it will activate the motor and it will take 10 seconds of continual coverage of the probe sensor to make the relay close and start the pump. This is invaluable when the probe is in a turbulent part of a well where fluid is splashing around touching the sensors momentarily, and false activation cannot be tolerated.

### 3.1.3 DIP 6

DIP switch 6 controls the charge/discharge function. Set "ON" for charge, and "OFF" for discharge

## MTR/MTRA Installation \& Troubleshooting

### 3.2 Relay Contacts \& their Applications

### 3.2.1 Contacts $15,16 \& 18$

Contacts 15,16 , and 18 are used for electronic or visual notification of a change in state at the pump itself. Contacts 15,16 , and 18 are used for more advanced applications because they are a changeover relay, their state may be the same as contacts 25,28 or the opposite. Both sets of contactors are triggered simultaneously. An example is when in discharge mode, (see Figure 1).
You have a gravity flow coming in so the fluid reaches the lower sensor PB1, contacts 15 and 18 are open ( 15 being common to both contact 16 and 18) contacts 25 and 28 are also normally open but contacts 1516 in this current situation are closed, whether PB1 is wet or dry is of no concern all will stay the same. The level now rises to PB2 and both relays change state, contacts 25 and 28 close to turn on the pump, contacts 15 and 16 are open, with 15 and 18 closed.
In advanced applications this state change may be fed into a logic device to indicate the pump is running or the pump has stopped and perhaps light an LED or incandescent light source for visual confirmation that a change has occurred in the relay.

### 3.2.2 Contacts 25 \& 28

Contacts 25 and 28 are used to control pump states. Contacts 25 and 28 are mostly used for turning on motors via a starting relay or solenoid, so, these sets of contacts react to the rising or falling levels of the fluid inside the tank, they will operate to turn on a pump in discharge mode when the top sensor is wet and in charge mode turn on the pump when the bottom sensor is dry.

## 4 Practical Overview

### 4.1 Discharge Mode - DIP switch 6 set to "OFF"



Figure 1 - Discharge Mode
Figure 1 shows two probes, (PB1 connected to Lo and PB2 connected to Hi). The pit is mostly underground and there is a gravity-fed inlet at the top left-hand side. The pit is empty with PB1 completely dry. Dipswitch 6 is set to "OFF."


The relay operation depends on the electrical conductivity of liquid in the pit, i.e. no liquid $=$ no current flow. The level starts to rise and covers PB1.

This is a discharge operation so we do not want the relay to close and start a pump until the well is full so as the water rises it reaches PB2, the relay closes and the pump starts. The level now drops below PB2 but the pump still continues to run, the level continues to drop below PB1 the relay opens the pump stops.

### 4.2 Charge Mode - DIP switch 6 set to "On"



Figure 2 - Charge Mode

NOTE:
" $C$ " is connected to common bonded earth. The unit will not operate correctly if not earthed.

Let's look at the same relay but in a tank that is charging (DIP 6 is now on). See Figure 3, where liquid is being pumped into a tank, and discharging through a gravity feed, the tank is on steel stands " $x$ " metres above the ground.


With the tank full, PB1 and PB2 will be wet, the relay is off, and the pump has stopped. Water is slowly fed out from the bottom, and now as PB2 (HI) becomes dry nothing happens; the water now drops to below PB1 (Lo), and the pumps restarts to fill the tank.
The pump will continue to fill the tank until PB2 (HI), becomes wet again.

### 4.3 MTRA Relay with Alarm (Discharge Applications Only)



Figure 3-MTRA Operation

The MTRA relay works in the same way as the MTR relay except the MTRA has a separate alarm output, and does not have a charge mode. The planned application is to close a contact to illuminate a warning alarm light. . Various other applications have included introducing a third probe to latch another relay.
In Figure 2 we see three probes in a pit that is plastic, note the steel rod in the tank. (In a plastic vessel a steel rod must be used to create an earth return in the liquid so probes can function.) PB1, PB2, and PB3 are dry, and the relay power LED is on. When water enters the pit and wets PB1, nothing happens, water now reaches PB2 causing contacts 13 and 14 to close, the pump LED to light, and the water to drop.
If, for example, the pump has its inlet partially blocked, the level continues to rise and wets PB3. This closes a separate relay that can activate a red flashing light, an audible fog horn or send a 5 volt pulse into another device with the common cause to warn human beings that a spill is due to occur. If the pumps become unclogged and PB3 becomes dry the alarm opens again and breaks the circuit that stops the light from flashing or the foghorn from sounding.

## 5 Most Common Installation Problems

The relay requires a path between the probes to earth through the liquid. If you are testing in a plastic bucket, have installed the probe in a plastic tank or have no good earthing in the vessel you will need to install a separate earth and make sure all earth bonding comes back to the $C$ terminal. Most problems like these are traced back to a lack of or poor earthing, or open circuits in the probe wiring.

Now is the time to check the relay by using "the bridge testing line technique" remember you must simulate a fluid flow to correctly ascertain a good relay or a bad one. (All DIPswitch settings from 1 to 6 should be off.)

Cut two pieces of insulated flexible copper wire one black one red 250 mm long, strip both ends back 10 mm on both cables, and join one black end and one red end. Insert the joined ends into C on the relay box, observing all safe electrical practises. You should have one black wire and one red wire free.
Set your relay for discharge mode (DIP switch 6 is off) with no sensors connected to the unit, connect the red wire to Lo - nothing should happen (if it does return the relay for replacement or repair*). Now connect the black wire to the Hi terminal the relay activated LED should light instantly (if it does not, the relay should be returned for repair*).

## MTR/MTRA Installation \& Troubleshooting

## 6 Troubleshooting

| I have checked all the DIPswitches and settings but in discharge mode as soon as the bottom sensor gets wet the pump turns on then turns off almost straight away. | - This is the most common problem encountered with relay set up and commissioning, the probe in the bottom of the tank is wired into the Hi terminal instead of the Lo terminal. |
| :---: | :---: |
| The installation went fine but now and again the pump will not turn on even though I am sure the probe is wet. | - Check the sensitivity level set on the relay, some times the level is set for foul water but due to changes in the flow the water becomes grey or clear, try changing the setting from $20 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ to $80 \mathrm{~K} \Omega$ and monitor the results carefully. |
| All wiring is complete and all DIPswitches have been checked but the pump will not turn on at all. | - If you have completed the test schedule for the relay and it passed then check the wiring to the sensors - for this is now where the problem lies or in the earthing arrangements. If possible check the resistance between the sensor cable and the steel sensor on the probe to prove a solid connection. |

* Please contact your distributor or agent before returning any product for repair or warranty claim.
multitrode
WATER - HASTEWATER - PLMP STATON • TECHMOLOGY

MultiTrode Pty Ltd-UK Operations
Ivybridge, Devon

Tel: +44 1752547355
Fax: +44 1752894615

E-mail:UKsales@multitrode.com

MultiTrode Pty Ltd-Head Office
Brisbane Technology Park 18 Brandl Street

PO Box 4633
Eight Mile Plains Qld 4113
Ph: +61 733407000
Fx: +61 733407077
E-mail: AUsales@multitrode.com

MultiTrode Inc-USA Unit 3, 990 South Rogers Circle Boca Raton Florida 33487

Tel: +1 5619948090
Fax: +15619946282
E-mail: USsales@multitrode.net

Visit www.multitrode.com for the latest information

# Halmac Services (Qld) Pty. Ltd. <br> <br> POWER SUPPLY \& BATTERY 

 <br> <br> POWER SUPPLY \& BATTERY}

## 1. $24 V D C$ POWER SUPPLY TECHNICAL DETAILS <br> 2. 24VDC/13VDC CONVERTER TECHNICAL DETAILS

3. BATTERY TECHNICAL DETAILS


## Selection Table

| MODEL NUMBER | OUTPUT |  |  | OUTPUT | Note: Non standard battery charging current available on request. ie PB251-12CM-H-10 for 10A. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | VDC | $1_{\text {LOAD }}$ | $\mathrm{I}_{\text {BATt }}$ | POWER |  |
| PB251-12CM | 13.8 V | 16A | 2A | 220W |  |
| PB251-12CM-H | 13.8 V | 20A | 2A | 275W |  |
| PB251-24CM | 27.6 V | 11A | 2A | 300W |  |
| PB251-24CM-H | 27.6 V | 12A | 2A | 330W |  |
| PB251-12RML | 13.8 V | 20A | 4 A | 275W |  |
| PB251-12B | 13.8 V | 20A | 4A | 275W |  |
| PB251-24RML | 27.6 V | 12A | 2A | 330w |  |

## Technical Illustrations



PB251-**R ML \& 12B ME CHANICAL OUTLINE


NOTES:

1. $2 \mathrm{RU} \times 19^{\prime}$ rack enclosure per IE (29)
2. Mounting slots are suilathe for M6 hardware.
3. Input connector is a 10A Class 1 IEC 60320 inle
4. 2 meter IEC mains cord with Auscralion plug is supplied with unit
5. PB251-128 alarm cerminal is $D E 25$ female.
6. PB251-128 oumput and batery connector is Hilose pn. HS 28R-4A.

Mating connector is Hirose pr. $\mathrm{HS} 28 \mathrm{P}-4 \mathrm{~A}$ (noi suppliec).
7. PB251-"RML alarm and ourpur terminals are $M 3.5$ screws suitable for ring or fork lugs up to $\varepsilon \mathrm{mm}$ wide.
pbziomal alakmandoutputierminals

front view


REAR VIEW (PB25I - RMLI)


## Features

- Wide selection of models
- 4 input voltage ranges
- High efficiency
- Low output ripple
- Proven reliability
- Good thermal margins


| Specifications |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Input voltage | 12VDC (9.2-16) |
|  | 24VDC (19-32) |
|  | 48VDC (38-63) |
|  | 110VDC (85-140) |
| Inrush current | 20A max. for 110V only |
| OUTPUT |  |
| Output voltage | See table |
| Voltage adjustment | $\pm 10 \%, \pm 5 \%$ for PBIH-F |
| Output current | See table |
| Ripple \& noise | Output Volts $\times 1 \%+50 \mathrm{mV}$ to -100 mV pk-pk |
| Line regulation | $0.8 \%$ over input range |
| Load regulation | 0.9\%, 0\%-100\% load |
| Temperature coefficient | $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 0.03 \%$ per ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| Overvoltage protection | O.V. clamp, PBIH-F <br> Output shutdown, PBIH-G, J, M, R - input must be switched off for at least $30 S$ to reactivate |
| Overcurrent protection | Fold back - PBIH-F <br> Current limiting, PBIH-G, J, M, R (PBIH-R series is adjustable); PBIH110xxR models are not adjustable |
| Dritt | Output $\mathrm{V} \times 0.5 \%+15(\mathrm{mV})$ per 8 hrs after 1 hr warm-up |
| Rise Time | $\begin{aligned} & 200 \mathrm{mS} \text { max. - PBIH-F, M, R } \\ & 100 \mathrm{mS} \text { max. }- \text { PBIH-G, J (at } 25^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \text { ) } \end{aligned}$ |
| Holdup time | 10 mS (only 110 V input) |
| Remote sense | PBIH-R Series only |


| OPERATING |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Efficiency | 70\%-89\% |
| Safety isolation (1 minute) | Type - 12, 24, 48V input <br> Input - Output: 1500VAC <br> Input- Case: 1500VAC <br> Output- Case: 500VAC <br> Type-110V input <br> Input- Output: 2000VAC <br> Input- Case: 2000VAC <br> Output- Case: 500VAC |
| Insulation resistance | 50M (500VDC) Input - Case |
| Parallel operation | Consult sales office for details |
| Remote control | PBIH-R Series: <br> Open link: output normal Short link: output off |
| ENVIRONMENTAL |  |
| Operating temperature | $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ full load |
| Cooling | Convection cooled |
| Storage temperature | $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| Humidity | 85\% |
| Shock | 30G, PBIH-F, G and J |
| Vibration | $\begin{aligned} & (5 \mathrm{~Hz}-10 \mathrm{~Hz}, 10 \mathrm{~mm}) \text {, } \\ & (10 \mathrm{~Hz}-50 \mathrm{~Hz}) 2 \mathrm{G}, \mathrm{PBIH}-\mathrm{F}, \mathrm{G} \text { and } \mathrm{J} \end{aligned}$ |
| STANDARDS AND APPROVALS |  |
| Safety | Designed to UL1950 |
| C-tick | AS/NZS CISPR11 Group 1, Class A |
| MECHANICAL |  |
| Weight | PBIH-F : 250g <br> PBIH-G : 380 g <br> PBIH-J : 410 g <br> PBIH-M : 800g <br> PBIH-R: 1.4kg |

## p(1) Mer mox

## PBIH Series

15-150 WATTS DC/DC SINGLE OUTPUT

Selection Table

| MODEL NUMBER <br> PBIH-1205F | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { INPUT } \\ & \hline 9.2-16 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | OUTPUT |  | OUTPUT <br> POWER <br> $15 W$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 5 V | 3A |  |
| PBIH-1212F | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 12V | 1.2A | 15W |
| PBIH-1215F | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 1 A | 15W |
| PBIH-1224F | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 24 V | 0.62A | 15W |
| PBIH-2405F | $19-32 \mathrm{~V}$ | 5 V | 3A | 15W |
| PBIH-2412F | 19-32V | 12 V | 1.2A | 15W |
| PBIH-2415F | 19-32V | 15 V | 1 A | 15W |
| PBIH-2424F | 19-32V | 24 V | 0.62A | 15W |
| PBIK-4805F | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 5 V | 3A | 15W |
| PBIH-4812F | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 12V | 1.2 A | 15W |
| PBIH-4815F | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 1A | 15W |
| PBIH-4824F | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 24 V | 0.62A | 15W |
| PBIH-11005F | 85.140 V | 5 V | 3A | 15W |
| PBIH-11012F | 85.140 V | 12 V | 1.2A | 15W |
| PBIH-11015F | $85-140 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 1A | 15W |
| PBIH-11024F | 85-140V | 24 V | 0.62A | 15W |
| PBIH-1205G | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 5 V | 5A | 25W |
| PBIH-1212G | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 12 V | 2.1 A | 25W |
| PBIH-1215G | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 1.7 A | 25W |
| PBIH-1224G | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 24 V | 1.1 A | 25W |
| PBIH-1248G | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 48 V | 0.5 A | 25W |
| PBIH-2405G | $19-32 \mathrm{~V}$ | 5 V | 5A | 25W |
| PBIH-2412G | 19-32V | 12 V | 2.1 A | 25W |
| PBIH-2415G | 19-32V | 15 V | 1.7 A | 25W |
| PBIH-2424G | 19-32V | 24 V | 1.1 A | 25W |
| PB1H-2448G | 19.32 V | 48 V | 0.5A | 25W |
| PBIH-4805G | 38.63 V | 5 V | 5A | 25W |
| PB1H-4812G | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 12 V | 2.1 A | 25W |
| PBIH-4815G | 38-63V | 15 V | 1.7 A | 25W |
| PBIH-4824G | 38-63V | 24 V | 1.1 A | 25W |
| PBIH-4848G | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 48 V | 0.5 A | 25W |
| PBIH-11005G | $85-140 \mathrm{~V}$ | 5 V | 5A | 25W |


| MODEL NUMBER | INPUT | OUTPUT |  | OUTPUT POWER |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PBIH-11012G | 85.140 V | 12 V | 2.1A | 25W |
| PBIH-11015G | $85-140 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 1.7A | 25W |
| PBIH-11024G | $85-140 \mathrm{~V}$ | 24 V | 1.1A | 25W |
| PBIH-11048G | 85.140 V | 48 V | 0.5A | 25W |
| PBIH-1205J | $9.2 \cdot 16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 5 V | 8A | 50W |
| PBIH-1212J | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 12 V | 3.3A | 50W |
| PBIH-1215J | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 2.7 A | 50W |
| PBIH-1224J | 9.2 -16V | 24 V | 1.7A | 50W |
| PBIH-1248J | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 48 V | 0.8A | 50W |
| PBIH-2405J | 19-32V | 5 V | 10A | 50W |
| PBIH-2412J | 19.32V | 12 V | 4.3A | 50W |
| PBIH-2415J | 19-32V | 15 V | 3.4A | 50W |
| PBIH-2424J | 19-32V | 24 V | 2.5 A | 50W |
| PBIH-2448J | $19-32 \mathrm{~V}$ | 48 V | 1 A | 50W |
| PBIH-4805J | 38-63V | 5 V | 10A | 50W |
| PBIH-4812J | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 12 V | 4.3 A | 50W |
| PBIH-4815J | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 3.4A | 50W |
| PBIH-4824J | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 24 V | 2.5 A | 50W |
| PBIH-4848J | $38-63 \mathrm{~V}$ | 48 V | 1 A | 50W |
| PBIH-11005J | 85.140 V | 5 V | 10A | 50W |
| PBIH-11012J | B5-140V | 12 V | 4.3A | 50W |
| PBIH-11015J | $85-140 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 3.4 A | 50W |
| P8IH-11024J | 85-140V | 24 V | 2.5 A | 50W |
| PBIH-11048J | B5-140V | 48 V | 1 A | 50W |
| PBIH-1205M | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 5 V | 18A | 100W |
| PBIH-1212M | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 12 V | 9 A | 100W |
| PB\|H-1215M | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 15 V | 7 A | 100W |
| PBIH-1224M | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 24 V | 4.5A | 100W |
| PBIH-1248M | $9.2-16 \mathrm{~V}$ | 48 V | 2A | 100W |
| PBIH-2405M | $19-32 \mathrm{~V}$ | 5 V | 20A | 100W |
| PBIH-2412M | 19.32 V | 12 V | 9A | 100W |
| PBIH-2415M | 19-32V | 15 V | 7 A | 100W |


| MODEL <br> NUMBER | INPUT | OUTPUT | OUTPUT |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| POWER |  |  |  |$:$

## PBIH-F



- Dimensions in mm

| terminal No. |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $0 \vee$ (DC in) |
| 2 | $+V(D C$ in $)$ |
| 3 | FG |
| 4 | NO Connection |
| 5 | $-V$ out |
| 6 | $+V$ out |



| Terminal | Connection |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0 | FG |
| 1 | $\mathrm{DC}+\mathrm{V}$ in |
| 2 | OV in |
| 3 | LFG |
| 4 | NO |
| 5 | NO |
| 6 | -V out |
| 7 | $+V$ out |


| Terminal | Connection |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 | FG |
| 2 | $D C+V$ in |
| 3 | OV in |
| 4 | LFG |
| 5 | $-V$ out |
| 6 | $+V$ out |
| 7 | NC |

PBIH-M


| rerminal | Connection |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 | $+V$ out |
| 2 | $+V$ out |
| 3 | $-V$ out |
| 4 | $-V$ out |
| 5 | $F G$ |
| 6 | $-V$ in |
| 7 | $+V$ in |

PBIH-R


| Torminal | Connection |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1,2 | $+V$ out |
| 3 | $+S$ |
| 4 | $-S$ |
| 5,6 | $-V$ out |
| 7 | Remote |
| 8 | Control |
| 9 | $\mathrm{DC}+\mathrm{V}$ in |
| 9 | DC OV in |
| 10 | FG |


（Amperes and Wotts per cell）
 now UXH series capable of ylelding even graetor caperity than compareble beitiones．
YUAEA WXH beftorios are dasignad whth unleque valve regulating davites and acid freo constructigns，ansuring serithty and suitability to tho confemperary business environment．

## Dosigned Life

10 yearm

## Features

Up to $15 \%$ more capacity
Mointenance－Free
Higher energy efficiency Negligible gor emistions Yove regulated
Systems computible
Fitted with explosion proof fither （Except UXH100－12N and UXH200－6N） No equolizing charge required
（Option）Flame reterdant version availdble No fres Acid（Non－spillable Battary）

Applications
UPS
Telecommunications
Alarm systems
Fire \＆security systems
Emargency lighting
Engine storting
Solar powered symems
Unilities
Recil
General Specifications

| Catmy Masel |  |  | $2$ |  |  |  |  |  | Nimbin |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | 4， | wht | 碞 | Omostitt |  |  |
| 20062 12 | 12 | $\pm$ | 70 | 275 | 171005 |  | 17780.018 |  | － |
| L50350－12 | 12 | s8 | 6.0 | 700（11） | 178 | 170 | 2178 | ${ }^{2} 14$ | $\bigcirc$ |
| cot 4 － 12 | 12 | $\omega$ | 80 | 20 （14） |  | 19080 |  |  | 0 |
| 108756 | 4 | 78 | 28 | 217 （1．5） | 188 | 10070 | 217 ［105］ | 16.8 | $\bigcirc$ |
| Lorncos | 4 | 500 | 1.8 | ［31（11．1） |  | 15078 | 217 （1） $5^{5}$ |  | 0 |
| 10m2s | ， | 12 | 1 | 20cha | 12650 | 16－103 | 217 | 24 5 | 0 |
| Womber－ize | 12 | 100 | 40 | 48816000 | 172，5（401） | 210 （a，${ }^{1}$ | 200 （9，$)^{\text {］}}$ | \％ | $\pi$ |
| L00000－N | 4 | 200 | 1.1 | 388（10．0） | 176 （a，${ }^{\text {a }}$ | 216 ［as］ | 280 （18） | 37 发 | $\pm$ |




Float charge vollage：2．275V per call Permisibla operating temperature：－ $15-45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ Container material：ABS Terminal：L terminal

| Nin in morn |  | ${ }_{\mathrm{min}}$ | ${ }_{\text {m }}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 10 \\ & \text { min } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{1 5} \\ & \mathbf{m i n} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{2 0} \\ & \min \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 23 \\ & \min \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{min} \\ & \mathrm{~min} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \sin \\ & \min \end{aligned}$ | $\stackrel{40}{\text { min }}$ | $\stackrel{4}{4}$ | ！ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| L0043817 | A | 14.10 | $17 \geqslant 0$ | $4{ }^{2}$ | 1.8 | 50.9 | 426 | 174 | 20,4 | 008 | 280 | 23 |
|  | w | 2x＋0 | 19.0 | 1540 | 11.0 | $\cdots 2$ | 798 | 7.1 | $\omega 1.5$ | sas | 5 | 43 |
| Loussoly | A | 1850 | 154.0 | 1148 | NS | 0.0 | 540 | 0.5 | 140 | 405 | 0.0 | 00 |
|  | w | 3020 | 2 zinO | 2090 | 108.0 | 1240 | 109.0 | ns | a，s | 7 T | 70.9 | 75 |
| 40 | ${ }^{1}$ | 28.0 | 1070 | 100 | $10 \times 0$ | 4 | 7at | 0.1 | SSA | 51.0 | 46.4 | 7.8 |
|  | w | 280， | \＄200 | 2580 | 12.0 | 150.0 | 1220 | 1110 | 1050 | 970 | Ear | 7 n |
| 400654 | A | 2ro | no | 0.0 | S0 | 1010 | 20 | 112 | 4.0 | cos | 585 | 15.0 |
|  | w | S200 | 120 | 190 | 2000 | 120 | 17.0 | 1200 | 1250 | 1140 | 1080 | 86.3 |
| Lenloce | A． | ग20 | －120 | $\underline{W 0}$ | 1770 | 120 | 1120 | 70 | 4.0 | 110 | 74.0 | 00 |
|  | w | 4030 | 000 | 408.0 | 200．0 | 128.0 | 209.0 | 180 | 160 | 1540 | 1410 | 115.0 |
| प्साzes | A | 4480 | 30．0 | 200 | 2090 | 1680 | 1200 | 1210 | 110.0 | 101.5 | $\underline{2}$ | 78．0 |
|  | w | 7810 | 6550 | 500．0 | 3210 | 110.0 | 241.0 | 240 | 20\％0 | 120 | 1760 | 140 |
| L08100－17N | W | 370 | 2120 | \％un | 100 | 120 | 1120 | T00 |  | 1.0 | 140 | 0.0 |
|  | w | －120． | S20 | 10090 | 2000 | 240 | 200．0 | IVD | 1470 | 1340 | 1410 | 1180 |
|  | A | 7400 | 420 | 4520 | 3 La | 240 | 220 | 190 | 1740 | 1620 | 1420 | 120.0 |
|  | w | 12040 | 100 | 00.0 | 6130 | 400．0 | 116.0 | 2700 | 3540 | 30 | 272 |  |

Amperes to F．V．1．70 Volts Per Cell

|  |  | $\frac{1}{m}$ | $5$ | $10$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 15 \\ & \mathrm{~min} \end{aligned}$ |  | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{sin} \\ & \hline \min \end{aligned}$ | min | $$ | $2$ | $\stackrel{25}{\omega N}$ | ！ | 2 | ？ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| UW0－13 | A | 17 | 1060 | 27 | 78 | 47. | 41.4 | 30. | 21 | \％ 1 | 2． | 230 | 12 | ， |
|  | w | 211.0 | 10 | 230 | 1050 | 8．${ }^{\text {a }}$ | 7. | H， | 614 | 51 | 517 | 0 | $\pm$ | 19.4 |
| so | A | 20 | mo | 0.0 | 756 | 1.0 | 48 | 420 | 12 | ${ }_{28}$ | 5. | 20 | 12.0 | 120 |
|  | w | 27.0 | 215 | 1740 | 1350 | 117 | 10 | 1.0 | 210 | $n$ | 4.0 | 56.0 | 250 | 25， 5 |
| 6004210 | $\stackrel{\text { A }}{ }$ | 2000 | 1730 | 1220 | 951 | \％A | $0{ }^{4} 7$ | cas | 51.4 | 45 | 4 | 28.8 | 2） | 14 |
|  | w | 10.0 | \＃ | 271.0 | 1780 | U | 즁 | 1150 | 0 | 20 | 0 | $\pi$ | 14 | 2.1 |
| 0008 | A | 0 | 207.0 | 140 | 1130 | ms | 12 | 20 | 0.1 | gr | 5. |  | 20 | 19.3 |
|  | w | 4140 | 30.0 | 443．0 | 2070 | 170 | 1540 | 170 | 120 | 1190 | 1020 | Mo | 52.5 | 123 |
| $\omega$ | $\stackrel{ }{ }$ | 3240 | 710 | 180 | 1818 | 120 | 1070 | ga | 25.0 | \％o | 210 | 용 | 30 | 240 |
|  | w | 554.0 | 4070 | 251.0 | 20.0 | 23 | 2050 | 12 | 1620 | 17.0 | 1230 | 1130 | 70 | 01.0 |
| U0H1256 | A | 409 | H2， | 2280 | 0 | 151.0 | 1240 | 120 | 100 | $\cdots$ |  | 72.5 | 130 | 12.5 |
|  |  | 6910 | 6il． 0 | 49．0 | 3.0 | 120 | 28.0 | 2210 | 2 m | 140 | 170.0 | 140 | W | 420 |
| 180－12 | A | $\underline{420}$ | 710 | 1240 | 1510 | 130 | 020 | 0 | 150 | 7． | 12 | 812 |  | 2 LO |
|  | w | 5540 | 48 A | $\underline{51.0}$ | 2710 | 240 | $2 \times 30$ | 12.0 | 1620 | 10.0 | 13 NO | 12 | 0.0 | 518 |
| Loreseor | A | cato | S4：0 | yexs | 200 | 1520 | 2180 | 1720 | 1700 | 1540 | 1280 | 11.0 | 72.0 | 52.0 |
|  |  |  | 7700 | mo | 3sa |  | 100 |  | 220 | 24 | 272 | 200 |  |  |

Amperes to F．V．1．80 Volls Per Call

| 成为 |  | min | m | $10$ | min |  | min |  | min | min | min |  | ？ |  | S |  | ${ }^{10}$ | ${ }^{20}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| W32 | A | \％12 | 4. | c） | 51 | 4. | 2.0 | 25.0 | 31.2 | 28. | 26 | 11 | 2. | － | 4. | 1 | 25 |  |
|  | W | 1700 | 19.0 | 1100 | m， | \％4， | 7 | 4 | 37. | St | sa |  | 25.1 | B | 122 |  | A） |  |
| L00 5 So | ， | 131.0 | 1140 | $\ldots$ | ＊ | 03.0 | 11.0 | 40 | 11.0 | 50 |  | 21 | 172 | 2 | 10 | s | 4 |  |
|  | w | 23 | 208.0 | 1560 | 1310 | 1120 | 7.0 | Ea， | ns． | 71. | 4.5 | 54.5 | 230 | 245 | 16.0 | 110 | ． 0 |  |
| Soths | A | 140 | 120 | 106.0 | ${ }^{274}$ | 74. | M， | sat | 51.7 | 46 | 13 | 31 | 21. | 15 |  | ， | ， |  |
|  | w | 27 | 2ab | 1 W | 1 cm | 1an | 22 | 11. | e： | 9. |  |  | 1 | 0． |  | 3. |  |  |
| \％ | A | 70 | 120， | 124，0 | 10.4 | E | 7as | 4.0 | 61.5 | 58 | 51 | 40 | 25. | 128 | 12. | 8 |  |  |
|  | w | 288 | 31.0 | 23.0 | 190 | 107. | 14.0 | 120 | 11： | 1070 |  | 111 | As | 24. | 210 | 145 | 115 |  |
| L001100 | A | 241. | 27．0 | cha | 17. | 12 | \％22 | \％ | 62 |  |  | SA |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | w | And | 412 | 110 | 241 | 230 | 194 | 1740 | 157.0 | 13 |  | 109］ | 65. | 4 y | $\underline{10}$ | 2 |  |  |
| （Wenl2 | A | mo | 2 |  | 174 | 14.0 |  | 115. | 181.0 | 2 | （a） | T2 |  | 117 | $x$ | 1 | 11.4 |  |
|  | W | s\％ | S140 | 2P1 | ma | mis | 212 | 兂 | 1 N | 1770 | 10.0 | 17 |  | G3 | 0.0 | 37 |  |  |
| $\infty$ | A | 241.0 | 22.0 | 48 | 39 | 10. | 102 | 2 | 2． | －nd | 40 |  |  |  | 16. |  |  |  |
|  | w | An， | 4120 | 3110 | 261．0 | zme |  | 176 | 15.0 | 1a | H | 104 |  | 40 | 12 | 20 |  |  |
| L00 200 | A | 5200 | 142 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 12 |  | 30.0 | 20 | 20 |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

# Halmac Services (Qld) Pty. Ltd. ACN 098852923 <br> AB.N. 40741712113 

## PROXIMITY SWITCH

## 1. NCB5-18GM40-ZO PROXIMITY SWITCH TECHNICAL DETAILS

2. NJ20+U1+E2 PROXIMITY SWITCH TECHNICAL DETAILS


## CE ©

| Aodel Number |
| :--- |
| NCB5-18GM40-Z0 |
| Features |

## Dimensions

- Comfort series
- 5 mm embeddable


## Connection

Z0


| Accessories |
| :--- |
| EXG-18 |
| Mounting aid |
| BF 18 |
| Mounting flange |



Inductive proximity switches
Comfort series
20 mm embeddable


C $\epsilon$

| Switching element function | PNP Make function |
| :---: | :---: |
| Rated operating distance $s_{n}$ | 20 mm |
| Installation | embeddable |
| Assured operating distance $\mathrm{s}_{\text {a }}$ | $0 . . .16,2 \mathrm{~mm}$ |
| Reduction factor $\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{Al}}$ | 0,35 |
| Reduction factor $\mathrm{r}_{\mathrm{Cu}}$ | 0,35 |
| Reduction factor r $\mathrm{V}_{2} \mathrm{~A}$ | 0,8 |
| Operating voltage $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{B}}$ | $10 \ldots 60 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| Switching frequency $\dagger$ | $0 \ldots 150 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |
| Hysteresis H | 1 ... 10 typ. 5 \% |
| Reverse polarity protection | Protected against reverse polarity |
| Short circuit protection | pulsing |
| Voltage drop $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{d}}$ | $\leq 2,8 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| Operating current $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{L}}$ | $0 \ldots 200 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| Off-state current $I_{\text {r }}$ | $0 \ldots 0.5 \mathrm{~mA}$ typ. $0,01 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| No-load supply current $\mathrm{I}_{0}$ | $\leq 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| Operating voltage display | LED, green |
| Indication of the switching state | LED, yellow |
| Standards | EN 60947-5-2 |
| Ambient temperature | $-25 \ldots 70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}(248 \ldots 343 \mathrm{~K})$ |
| Storage temperature | - $25 \ldots . .85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (248 ... 358 K ) |
| Connection type | terminal compartment |
| Core cross-section | up to $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| Housing material | PBT |
| Sensing face | PBT |
| Protection degree | IP68 |

## Connection_type:



## PUSHBUTTON \& INDICATORS

## 1. PUSH BUTTON TECHNICAL DETAILS <br> 2. HOUR RUN METER TECHNICAL DETAILS

## Series D7 Pillol Devices

22 mm Design<br>Saves Panel Space

Heavy Duły
Ratings

Modular Design Reduces Inventory

Order Assembled or by Component

## Features

## TWO OPERATOR TYPES

- Plastic operator with captive front bezel
- Metal operator with die-cast zinc housing and captive shiny metal bezel


## LESS INVENTORY, MORE CHOICES

- Wide range of style choices
- Modular design for mix and match flexibility
- Endless configurations from core components


## QUICK, EASY INSTALLATION

- Tool-less mounting latch for quick assembly
- Anti-rotation tab for one person installation
- Snap-on back panel components


## LONG ELECTRICAL \& MECHANICAL LIFE

- 10 million mechanical operations
- 10 million electrical cycles


## ENVIRONMENTAL RATINGS

- UL Type 4/4X/13, IP66 Sealing
- Chemical resistant industrial grade thermoplastic body
- Corrosion and UV resistant


Sprecher + Schuh's rugged D7 pilor devices offer maximum flexibility and a wide choice for all applications. This 22 mm line is aesthetically appealing and modularly designed to make assembly and interchangeability easy. The D7 operators are available in two different body styles to meet every industrial application need. Both operators exhibit a new lower profile stylish appearance while maintaining the rugged performance necessary for demanding environments.


Fask mounficg

Ficxubilitis


Gompleter ileossorics
Supertion Destin:
Blano ©ud





Selector Switch Safety


- Cosinstant Energy

- Dependent on lubrication

- Dual miping action - Lubrication rapping extends sealing life

- Seals both panel 8 mounting blades


## Push Buttons


Illuminated

| Momemart, Ertended |  | Marnentar, Fush* |  | Maintained, Rush |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Plastic | Metal | Plastic | Metas | Plastic | D7M-lifa |  |
| DTP-LE | D7M-LE0 | D7P-Lfo | 07M-lfo | d7P-lfan |  |  |
| D7P-LE3 | D7M-LE3 | D7P-LF3 | 07M-LF3 | D7P-Lfa3 | D7M-Lfa |  |
| D7P-LE4 | D7M-LE4 | D7P-LF4 | D7M-LF4 | 07P-Lfa4 | D7M-lfa |  |
| D7P-LE5 | D7M-LE5 | D7P-LF5 | D7M-Lf5 | D7P-LFAS | 07M-Lfa |  |
| D7P-LE6 | D7M-LE6 | D7P-Lf6 | 07M-Lf6 | D7P-LFAG | D7M-lfa6 |  |
| - D7P-LE7 | D7M-LE7 | D7P-LF7 | 07M-Lf7 | D7P-Lfat |  |  |
|  | D7M-LE9 | D7P-LE9 | 07M-LE9 | D7P-LEA9 |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Non-Illuminated |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Momentan, ExtendedPlasticMetalcole |  | Momeman, Fush* |  | Maintained, Fush |  |  |
|  |  | Plastic | Metal | Plastic | Metal |  |
| D7P-E0 | D7M-E0 | D7P-F0 | D7M-F0 | D7P-FA0 | D7M-FAD |  |
| D7P-E1 | D7M-E1 | D7P-F1 | D7M-F1 | D7P-FAI | 07M-FA1 |  |
| D7P-E2 | D7M-E2 | D7P-F2 | D7M-F2 | D7P-FA2 | 07M-FA2 |  |
| D7P-E3 | D7M-E3 | D7P.F3 | D7M-F3 | D7P-FA3 | D7M-FA3 |  |
| D7P-E4 | D7M-E4 | D7P-F4 | D7M-F4 | D7P-FA4 | D7M-FAA |  |
| - D7P-E5 | 07M-E5 | D7P.F5 | D7M-55 | d7p-fas | D7M-FA5 |  |
| - 07P-E6 | 07M-66 | 07P.f6 | 07M-F6 | D7P-FA6 | D7M-FA |  |
| - D7P-¢9 | 07M-E9 | 07P.f9 | D7M-F9 | D7P-FA9 | D7M-FA9 |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Illuminated 40 mm Mushroom, Momentan |  | Non-Illuminated 40mum Mushroom, Momentary |  |  |  |  |
| Plastic | Metas |  |  | Plas |  | Motal |
| D7P-LMM3 | 07M-LM |  |  | D7P. | MM42 | D7M-MM42 |
| D7P-LMm4 | 07M-LM |  |  |  | MM43 | D7M-Mm43 |
| D7P-LMM5 | 07M-LM |  |  | - D7P. | MM44 | D7M-MM44 |
| D7P-LMM6 | O7M-LM |  |  | - D7P- | MM45 | D7M-MM45 |
| D7P-LMM7 | 07M |  | so avallable mm Mushro | D7P | 4946 | D7M-MM46 |



Push-Pull Operators


2 Position Illuminated
Pushh fug, 40mm Mushroom
Plastic
Motal
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { - Plastic } & \text { Motal } \\ \text { D7P-LMP43 } & \text { D7M-LLP43 }\end{array}$
$\begin{array}{ll}- \text { OTP.LLNP43 } & \text { D7MM-LMP43 } \\ \text { - D7P-LMP44 } & \text { D7M-LMP44 } \\ \text { - }\end{array}$ Complete UnHt
D7P-LMP4AP01
D7M-LMP44PX01
1 Guardlan


2 Position Non-lliuminated Push-PuD, 40rum Mushroom
Plastic Matal

- $\begin{aligned} & \text { DTP-MP42 } \\ & \text { - } 07 P \text {-MP44 }\end{aligned} \quad$ D7M-MP42
D7M-MP44

Complete Untt
D7P-MP44PX01
O7M-MP44Px01

| inc |
| :---: |
| 1 Guardian | $\begin{array}{ll}\text { O7P-MP44PX01 } & \text { D7M-MP44PX01 } \\ \text { D7P-MP44P001S } & \text { D7M-MP44PX01 }\end{array}$ 3 Position llluminated

Push-Pull, 40 mm Mushroom | Momentary | $\begin{array}{l}\text { Malintainad } \\ \text { D7M-LMM40-E3 } \\ \text { D7M-LMP40-E3 }\end{array}$ |
| :---: | :--- | - D7M-LMM43-E3 $\quad$ D7M-MPP43-E3 - D7M-LMM44-E3 ${ }^{\text {D7M-LMP44-E3 }}$ $\begin{array}{ll}\text { - D7M-LMM46-E3 } & \text { D7M-LMP46-E3 } \\ \text { - D7M-LMM47-E3 } & \text { D7M-LMP47-E3 }\end{array}$ 3 Position Non-llluminated

Push-Pull, 40mm Mushroom Momentar
OTM-MM42-E3
Maintained
DTM-P42$\begin{array}{ll}\text { D7M-MM42-E3 } & \text { D7M-MP42-E3 } \\ \text { D7M-MM43-E3 } & \text { D7M-MP43-E3 }\end{array}$ - ס7M-MM44-E D7M-MP44-E

 Operators (D7x-LS \& D7x-S)


Illuminated and Non-liluminated
Momentary Mushroom Operators
40 mm and $60 \mathrm{~mm}(D 7 x-$ LMM \& $D 7 x-M M$ )


Illuminated and Non-Illuminated
Push-Pull Mushroom Operators $30 \mathrm{~mm}, 40 \mathrm{~mm}$, and 60 mm (D7x-MP)

illuminated and Non-Illuminated Extended Push Button Operators


Pilot Light Operators (D7x-P)


Key Selector Switch Operators (D7x-K)


Illuminated and Non-liluminated Twisl-to-Release Operators $30 \mathrm{~mm}, 40 \mathrm{~mm}$, and 60 mm (D7x-MT)


Mushroom Key Release Operator 40 mm ( $D 7 \mathrm{x}-\mathrm{MK}$ )


Non-Illuminated 3-Position Multi-Function Operators (D7x-U3)


Illuminated and Non-Illuminated 2-Position Multi-Function Operators (D7x-LU2 \& D7x-U2)


Toggle Switch Operators (D7M-JM)


Reset Operators ( $07 \mathrm{x}-\mathrm{R}$ )


Selector $\operatorname{Jog}$ Operators ( 07 x -SJ)


Potentiometer with Resistive Element (D7P. POT)

$$
=\quad 46 \quad-28.5-
$$



* For Monolithic Devices see the D7D Monolithic Flyer



# Sprocher + Schuh US Division Hoadquartors <br> 15910 Intermational Plaza Dr., Houston, TX 77032 <br> Te: (281) 442-9000; Fax: (800) 7397370 <br> www.sprecherschuh.com 

Sprecher + Schuh Cenartian Division
3610 Nashue Dr., Unit 10, Mississauga, Ontario L4V 112 Tel: (905) 677-7514; FBX: (905) 677-7663

## sprecher+ schuh

## Front-of-Panel (Operators) 0

Mechanical Ratings

| Description | Plastic (07P) |  | Metal (D7M) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Vibration (assembled to panel). | [G] | Tested at $10 \ldots .2000 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1.52 \mathrm{~mm}$ displacem | x/10G max. for 3hr duration, no damage |
| Shock | [G] | Tested at $1 / 2$ cycle sine wave for 11 ms ; no damage at 100 G |  |
| Degree of protection (0) |  | UL Type 3/3R/4/4X/12/13 (P65/66) UL Type 3/3R/4/12/13 (1P65/66) |  |
|   <br>  $10,000,000$ Cycles <br> Mechanical durablity per EN $1,000,000$ Cycles <br> $60947-5-1$ (Annex C) 500,000 Cycles <br>  300,000 Cycles <br>  100,000 Cycles |  | Momentary push buttons, momentary mushroom <br> Multi-function, Selector Switch, Key Selector Switch, Selector Jog <br> Non-illuminated Push-Pull E-Stop <br> st-to-Release E-Stop, Illuminated Push-Pull E-Stop, Maintained Push Buttons, selector switches Potentiometer, Toggle Switch |  |
| Operating forces (typical with one contact block) | (N) | $\begin{gathered} \text { Flush/extended }=5 \mathrm{~N} \\ \text { E-stop }=36 \mathrm{~N} \\ \text { Mushroom }=9 \mathrm{~N} \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ |  |
| Operating torque (typical application with one contact block) | [ $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ] | Selector switch $=0.25 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m}(2.2 \mathrm{lb}-\mathrm{in}$. |  |
| Mounting torque | [ $\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m}$ ] | $1.7 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m}(1510 \cdot \mathrm{in}$.$) ._.....__ 4.4 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m}(40 \mid 10-\mathrm{in}.$. |  |
| Environmental |  |  |  |
| Temperature range (operating) 3 | [P] | $-25 . . .+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-13 \ldots+158^{\circ} \mathrm{f}\right)$ |  |
| Temperature range (short-tern storage) | $\left[{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right]$ | $-40 . . .+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+185^{\circ} \mathrm{f}\right.$ |  |
| Humidity | [\%] | $50 . .95 \%$ RH from $25 \ldots . .60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(77 . .140^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right.$ ) per: Procedure V of MIL-SID-810C, Method 507.1 cycling test |  |

## Back-of-Panel Components 0

Electrical Ratings


0 Performance data given in this publication is provided only as a guide for the user in determining suitability and do not constitute a performance warranty of any kind. Such data may represent the results of accelerated testing at elevated stress levels, and the user is responsible for correlating the data to actual application requirements. ALL WARRANTIES AS TO ACTUAL PERFORMANCE, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, ARE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED.
(2) Momentary mushroom operators are IP65, multi-function operators have no Type 13 rating. Plastic operators with keys have no Type 4 X rating.
(3) Operating temperatures below $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(32^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ are based on the absence of freezing moisture and liquids, UL recognized to $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(131^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ - incandescent module, max $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(104^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$.
(4) Low voltage contacts are recommended for applications below $17 \mathrm{~V}, 5 \mathrm{~mA}$.
© Wires less than \#18 $\left(0,75 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}\right)$ may not hold in terminal securely.

Back-of-Panel Components ©, continued


Environmental Approval Note: Front elements UL Recognized; Complete assemblies UL Approved. See Table A2 for your application.

This table is extracted from Sprecher + Schuh's UL 508A file and can be used to determine which
D7 Pilot Device is approved for a particular enclosure type.

| TABLE A2 - Openings in Enclosure |  |
| :---: | :--- |
| Enclosure Type | Openings May Be Closed By Equipment Marked... |
| 2 | $2,3,3 \mathrm{R}, 3 \mathrm{~S}, 4,4 \mathrm{X}, 6,6 \mathrm{P}, 11,12,12 \mathrm{~K}, 13$ |
| 3 | $3,3 \mathrm{~B}, 3 \mathrm{~S}, 4,4 \mathrm{X}, 6,6 \mathrm{P}$ |
| 3 R | $3,3 \mathrm{~B}, 3 \mathrm{~S}, 4,4 \mathrm{X}, 6,6 \mathrm{P}$ |
| 3 S | $3,3 \mathrm{R}, 3 \mathrm{~S}, 4,4 \mathrm{X}, 6,6 \mathrm{P}$ |
| 4 | $4,4 \mathrm{X}, 6,6 \mathrm{P}$ |
| 4 X | 4 X |
| 6 | $6,6 \mathrm{P}$ |
| 6 P | 6 P |
| 11 | 11 |
| $12,12 \mathrm{~K}$ | $12,12 \mathrm{~K}, 13$ |
| 13 | 13 |

## Product Certifications

| Certifications | UL, UR, CSA, CCC, CE |
| :--- | :---: |
| Conformity of Standards - CE marked | NEMA ICS-5; UL 508, EN 418, EN 60947-1, EN 60947-5-1, EN 60947-5-5 |
| Terminal identification | IEC 60947-1 |
| Shipping approvals | RINA, LR, ABS |
| RoHS | $\checkmark$ |

(1) Performance data given in this publication is provided only as a guide for the user in determining suitability and do not constitute a performance warranty of any kind. Such data may represent the results of accelerated testing at elevated stress levels, and the user is responsible for correlating the data to actual application requirements. ALL WARRANTIES AS TO ACTUAL PERFORMANCE, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, ARE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED.

Technical Information Series D7 - Heavy Duty/Oil Tight

Material Listing

|  | Component | For Use with | Material Used |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Panel gasket | All operators | Nitrile, TPE |
|  | Diaphragm seal | Illuminated push button, non-illuminated push button | Automotive industry acceptable silicone |
|  | K-seal | Selector switch, key selector switch, push/twist-to-release E-stop, key E-stop, push/pull mushroom | Nitrile |
|  | Diaphragm retainer, return spring I | Illuminated push button, non-illuminated push button, momentary mushroom | Stainless steel |
|  | Return spring II | Reset, selector switch, key selector switch, maintained action, push/twist-to-release E-stop, key E-stop, push/pull mushroom | Zinc coated music wire |
| $\left[\begin{array}{ll} 1 \\ \vdots \end{array}\right]$ | Button cap/mushroom head | Non-illuminated push button, momentary mushroom, reset, push/twist-torelease E-stop, key E-stop, push/pull mushroom, multi-function | PBT/polycartonate blend |
|  | 2-color molded button cap | Non-illuminated push button | PBT/polycarbonate blend |
| 宽 | Lens | Multi-function | Acetal |
| 宮 | Lens, knob | Illuminated push button, illuminated momentary mushroom, illuminated selector switch | Polyamide |
|  | Knob | Non-illuminated selector switch | Glass-filled polyamide |
|  | Plastic bezelbushing I | Non-illuminated push button, illuminated push button, momentary mushroom, selector switch, key selector switch, push/twist-to-release E-stop, key E-stop, push/pull mushroom, multi-function, reset | Glass-filled polyamide |
|  | Plastic bezeVbushing II, jam nut | Pilot light, reset jam nut, reset pusher | Glass-filled PBT |
|  | Metal bezellbushing | All metal operators | Zinc |
|  | Diffuser | Illuminated push button, pilot light | Polycarbonate |
|  | Legend frames | - | Glass-filled polyamide |
|  | Plastic mounting ring | All plastic operators | Glass-filled polyamide |
|  | Metal mounting ring | All metal operators | Chromated zinc |
|  | Plastic latch | - | Glass-filled polyamide |
|  | Metal latch | - | Chromated zinc + stainless steel |
|  | Plastic enclosure | - | PBT/polycarbonate blend |
|  | Metal enclosure | - | Aluminum |
|  | Terminal screws | LED module, incandescent module, contact blocks | Zinc-plated steel with chromate |
|  | Terminals | LED module, incandescent module, contact blocks | Brass with silver-nickel contacts |
|  | Screwless | LED module, incandescent module, contact blocks | Stainless steel |
|  | Lamp socket | Incandescent module | Brass |
|  | Housing | Incandescent module, LED module | Glass-filled polyamide |
|  | Low voltage terminals | Contact blocks | Gold plated silver-nickel contacts |
|  | Low voltage spanner | Contact blocks | Gold-plated silver-nickel contacts |
|  | Spanner | Contact blocks | Brass with silver-nickel contacts |
|  | Boot | Toggle Switch, illuminated push button, non-illuminated push button, multi-function illuminated an non-illuminated | Automotive industry acceptable silicone |

# |l sprecher + 

Pilot Devices
Series D7D Monolithic

## Specifications

| Mechanical Ratings |  |  | Environmental |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Vibration (assembled to panel) | Tested at $10 \ldots 2000 \mathrm{~Hz}, 1.52 \mathrm{~mm}$ displacement (peak-to-peak) max. 10 G max. for 3 hr duration, no damage |  | Temperature range (operating) | $-25 \ldots+60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-13 \ldots 140^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| Shock | Tested at $1 / 2$ cycle sine wave for 11 ms ; no damage at 100 G |  | Temperature range (short term storage) | $-40 \ldots+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 . .185^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| Degree of protection | IP 66 (Type 3/3R/4/4X/12/13) |  |  |  |
| mechanical durability per EN 60947-5-1 (Annex C) | 2,000,000 Cycles | Momentary Push Button | Humidity | $\begin{aligned} & 50 . . .95 \% \text { RH from } \\ & 25 \ldots . .60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(77 \ldots . .140^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right) \end{aligned}$ |
|  | 300,000 Cycles | Selector Switch and E-Stop |  |  |
| Operating forces | Flush/Extended $=9 \mathrm{~N}, \mathrm{E}$-stop $=36 \mathrm{~N}$ |  |  |  |
| Operating torque (typical application with one contact block) | Selector Switch $=0.25 \mathrm{~N} \bullet \mathrm{~m}$ |  |  |  |
| Contact operation | N. 0. | Slow double make and break |  |  |
|  | N.C. | Slow double make and break - posit |  |  |
| Push button travel to change electrical state | N. 0. | 2.5 mm (0.1 in.) |  |  |
|  | N.C. | $1.5 \mathrm{~mm}(0.060 \mathrm{in}$. |  |  |

## Electrical Ratings

| Standard contact block ratings | B300, R300; AC 15, DC 13; 300 VAC; EN/IEC 60947-5-1 and UL 508, 17V, 5 mA min. |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nominal Voltage | Range | Nominal Current Draw | Frequency |
| 24 VAC | 20...26V AC | 32 mA | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |
| LED Module Ratings $\quad 24 \mathrm{~V}$ DC | 18...30V DC | 24 mA | DC |
| 120V AC | 102...132V AC | 22 mA | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |
| 240 VAC | 204...264V AC | 22 mA | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |
| Thermal current | 5 A max. enclosed (40'C ambient) to UL508, EN/IEC 60947-5-1 |  |  |
| Insulation voltage ( U ( $)$ | 300 V |  |  |
| Wire capacity (screw terminal) | \#18... 14 AWG ( $0.75 . . .2 .5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ), Max. (2) \#14 AWG, uses same size wire only |  |  |
| Recommendations for Ring Lug termination option 2 | 6.35 mm ( 0.250 in .) Max. outer diameter with 3.8 mm ( 0.148 in .) hole diameter |  |  |
| Recommened tightening torque on screw terminals | $0.7 \ldots 0.9 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m}(6 . . .8 \mathrm{lb}-\mathrm{in} .)$ |  |  |
| Dielectric strength (minimum) | 2500V for one minute |  |  |
| Extemal short circuit protection | 5 A type gLig cartidge fuse to EN 60269-2-1 or gN (Class J to UL 248-8 or Class CC to UL 248-4) |  |  |
| Electrical shock protection | Finger-safe conforming to IP2X |  |  |


| Illumination |
| :--- |
| LED Dominant Wavelength |

## Materials

| Materials | Stainless steel and zinc coated music wire |
| :--- | :--- |
| Springs | Brass with silver-nickel contacts |
| Electrical contacts | Brass and phosphor bronze |
| Terminals | nitrile and polyester-based TPE |
| Panel gasket | Nitrile |
| Seal | Polyester/polycarbonate blend |
| Button cap/mushroom head | Acrylic |
| Lens (pilot light) | Glass-filled polyamide |
| Knob (selector switch) | Glass filled polyester |
| Bezel/bushing, housing | Glass filled polyamide |
| Legend frames | Glass filled polyamide |
| Mounting ring | Zinc-plated steel with chromate |
| Terminal screws | Brass and Phosphor bronze |
| Lamp Socket |  |
| Product Certifications | Ul, CSA, CCC, CE |
| Certifications | UL 508, EN 60947-1, EN 60947-5-1, EN 60947-5-5 |
| Conformity to standards - CE marked | EN/EC 60947-1 |
| Terminal identification |  |
| O Operating temperatures below $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(32^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ are based on the absence of freezing moisture and liquids. |  |
| 3M MV018-R/S \#(22...18 AWG) or 3M MVU14-6R/S (\#16...14 AWG) |  |

Pilot Devices

Approximate Dimensions - millimeters ©
Panel Hole Spacing


(1) Dimensions are not intended to be used for manufacturing purposes.

## sprecher+ schuh

## Approximate Dimensions - millimeters ©





Illuminated and Non-illuminated Twist-to-Release Operators $30 \mathrm{~mm}, 40 \mathrm{~mm}$, and 60 mm ( $D 7 \mathrm{x}-\mathrm{MT}$ )


Key Selector Switch Operators (D7x-K)

$30 \times 40 \mathrm{~mm}$ Snap-in-Legend Plate (D7-11)

$30 \times 50 \mathrm{~mm}$ Snap-in-Legend Plate (D7-12)

(0) Dimensions are not intended to be used for manufacturing purposes.

Approximate Dimensions - millimeters 0 (2)

(0) Dimensions are not intended to be used for manufacturing purposes
(3) Panel thickness range is $1.0 \ldots . .6$. maximum. Panel thickness reduced to 4.5 when optional legend plates are used.

Approximate Dimensions - millimeters ©


- Dimensions are not intended to be used for manufacturing purposes.

Approximate Dimensions - millimeters $\mathbf{1}$


Pilot Devices

Approximate Dimensions - millimeters ©


(- Dimensions are not intended to be used for manufacturing purposes.


## RóHS Directive compatibility information http://www.nais-e.com/

## Features

1. Compact to save panel space

The $24 \times 48 \mathrm{~mm}$ hour meters are just half the DIN $48 \times 48$ standard size. They help save the panel space.

## UL File No.: E42876 CSA File No.: LR39291

## 2. Reset button

The hour meters can be reset to zero (TH64 series).
3. Wide-ranging measurement display

The measurement can be displayed from 0.1 hour up to 99999.9 hours (TH63 series). The dial size is the same as that of $48 \times 48$ DIN size hour meters (TH14 and TH24 series). 4. Easy to install

The flat terminals (\#187) are used for easier wiring. There is no need to undo the lock spring.
5. High-performance sync motor with $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ selector The noise-resistant, accurately turning motor is employed to provide for longer period of measurement. The power frequency can be selected for 50 or 60 Hz .

## 6. Rotary indicator

The rotary indicator makes one turn every 72 seconds for monitoring.
7. Compliant with UL, CSA and CE.

## Typical applications

Management of small generators and food processing machines; hour counting for leased equipment; maintenance management of various equipment, etc.

## Specifications

| Rated operating voltage |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Allowablêe operating voltage range . |  | 85 to $115 \%$ of rated operating voltage |
| Rated frequency |  | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ (selectable by switch) |
| Counting range $\quad \therefore \quad \therefore$ |  | 0 to 99999.9 hours (TH63 series) 0 to 9999.9 hours (TH64 series) |
| Minimum time display |  | 0.1 hours ( 6 min ) |
| Rated power consumption |  | Approx. 1.5 W |
| \|Insulation resistance (Initial value) |  | Min. $100 \mathrm{M} \Omega$, Between live and dead metal parts (At 500 V DC) |
| lkdown voltage (Initial value) |  | 2,000 Vrms, Between live and dead metal parts |
| temperature risé |  | $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C} 131{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ |
| FVIbration resistance. | Functional | 10 to $55 \mathrm{~Hz}: 1 \mathrm{cycle} / \mathrm{min}$ double amplitude of 0.5 mm ( 10 min on 3 axes ) |
| Shock résistance | Functional | Min $98 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}^{2}$ \{10 G\} (4 times on 3 axes) |
|  | Dëstructive | Min $980 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{s}^{2}\{100 \mathrm{G}\}$ ( 5 times on 3 axes) |
| Ambient temperature |  | -10 to $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}+1410+122^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ |
| Ambient humidity |  | Max. 85\% RH (non-condensing) |
| Weight |  | Approx. 80 g 2.82 oz |

## Product types

| Туре | Opërating voltage | Part number | Operating voltage | Part'number | Operating voltage | Part number |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| TH63 series (without reset button) | 100 V AC | TH631 | 24 VAC | TH634 | 115 to 120 V AC | TH637 |
|  | 200 V AC | TH632 | 48 V AC | TH635 | 220 V AC | TH638 |
|  | 12 VAC | TH633 | 110 V AC | TH636 | 240 V AC | TH639 |
| TH64 series (with reset buttön) | 100 V AC | TH641 | 24 VAC | TH644 | 115 to 120 V AC | TH647 |
|  | 200 V AC | TH642 | 48 V AC | TH645 | 220 V AC | TH648 |
|  | 12 VAC | TH643 | 110 VAC | TH646 | 240 V AC | TH649 |

[^7]Applicable standard

| Safety standard | EN61010-1 | Poilution Degree 2/Overvoltage Category II |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| EMC | (EMI)EN61000-6-4 <br> Radiation interference electric field strength <br> Noise terminal voltage <br> (EMS)EN61000-6-2 <br> Static discharge immunity <br> RF electromagnetic field immunity <br> EFT/B immunity <br> Surge immunity <br> Conductivity noise immunity <br> Power frequency magnetic field immunity <br> Voltage dip/Instantaneous stop/Noltage fluctuation immunity | EN55011 Group1 ClassA <br> EN55011 Group1 ClassA |

## Dimensions



## Wiring diagram

- Panel cutout dimensions



## Mounting

1. Cut a $22.2^{+0.3} \times 45^{+0.6} \mathrm{~mm}\left(.874^{1.012} \times\right.$ 1.772 .024 inch) opening in the panel.
2. Swing the mounting spring to the rear of the hour meter and fit the hour meter into the panel opening. (There is no need to detach the mounting spring from the hour meter.) If the panel is 5 to 9 mm .197 to .354 inch thick, move the mounting spring to the other hole toward the rear of the hour meter.
3. Swing the mounting spring to the front of the hour meter to secure the hour meter to the panel.
4. Wire the supplied quick connectors and connect to the hour meter. Be sure to use the supplied insulating sleeves to cover the connectors.


## PRECAUTIONS IN USING THE HOUR METERS

## 1. Frequency setting

Frequency is specified for AC motor-driven hour meters. Before installing, be sure to check your local power frequency.

## 2. Connections

- TH13,23,14,24,40,50,63,64


Note) Make the connection with the accompanying flat connector first and then with the hour meter's terminal ( $\$ 187$ ). In such case, be sure to cover the connection with the accompanying insulating sleeve.

- TH70, TH8


Note) Solder the lead wires in position.

## 3. Safety precautions

Do not use the hour meters in the following places.

- Where ambient temperature is below $-10^{\circ}$ or above $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
- In wet, dusty or gaseous environments
- Where exposed to vibrations and shocks
- Outdoors, or where exposed to rain or direct sunlight

4. Compliant with CE.

- LH 2 H

Ambient conditions:
Overvoltage category HI , contamination factor 2 , indoor use. Ambient temperature and humidity -10 and $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and $35 \%$ to $85 \% \mathrm{RH}$ respectively.

- TH13, 23, 14, 24, 40, 50, 63, 64

Ambient conditions:
Overvoltage category II, contamination factor 2, indoor use.
Ambient temperature and humidity -10 and $+50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ and below $85 \%$ RH respectively.

## 5. Reset-type hour meter

- Precautions for use

If the number indications are off before use, press the reset button and confirm that all zeroes ("0") are displayed.

- Reselting caution

Exercise due caution as an insufficient amount of pressure on the reset button may result in abnormal readings.

## 6. Acquisition of CE marking

Please abide by the conditions below when using in applications that comply with EN 61010-1/IEC 61010-1

1) Ambient conditions

- Overvoltage category 11 , poilution level 2
- Indoor use
- Acceptable temperature and humidity range: -10 to $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, 35 to $85 \% \mathrm{RH}$ (with no condensation at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ )
- Under 2000 m elevation

2) Use the main unit in a location that matches the following conditions.

- There is minimal dust and no corrosive gas.
- There is no combustible or explosive gas.
- There is no mechanical vibration or impacts.
- There is no exposure to direct sunlight.
- Located away from large-volume electromagnetic switches and power lines with large electrical currents.

3) Connect a breaker that conforms to EN60947-1 or EN609473 to the voltage input section.
4) Applied voltage should be protected with an overcurrent protection device (example: T1A, 250 V AC time lag fuse) that conforms to the EN/IEC standards. (Free voltage input type)

# PRESSURE TRANSMITTER \& ADJUSTMENT UNIT 

## 1. VEGABAR74 PRESSURE TRANSMITTER TECHNICAL DETAILS

2. VEGADIS PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT UNIT TECHNICAL DETAILS

## Process pressure/Hydrostatic



## Product Information



## Content

1 Description of the measuring principle ..... 3
2 Type overview ..... 4
3 Mounting instructions ..... 5
4 Electrical connection
4．1 General prerequisites ..... 6
4．2 Voltage supply ..... 6
4．3 Connection cable． ..... 6
4．4 Cable screening and grounding ..... 6
4．5 Wiring plan VEGABAR 74， 75 ..... 6
5 Operation
5．1 Overview ..... 7
5．2 Adjustment with VEGADIS 12. ..... 7
5．3 Adjustment with PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ ..... 7
5．4 Adjustment with other adjustment programs ..... 7
6 Technical data ..... 8
7 Dimenslons． ..... 12
8 Product code ..... 15

## Take note of safety instructions for Ex applications

Please note the Ex specific safety information which you can find on our homepage www．vega．comlservicesldownloads and which comes with every instrument．In hazardous areas you should take note of the appropriate regulations，conformity and type approval certificates of the sensors and power supply units．The sensors must only be operated on intrinsically safe circuits．The permissible electrical values are stated in the certificate．

## 1 Description of the measuring principle

## Measuring principle

VEGABAR 74 and 75 pressure transmitters are specially adapted to their respective application areas. That is why different sensor elements and measuring units are implemented.

## VEGABAR 74

The sensor element of VEGABAR 74 is the dry ceramic-capacitive CERTEC ${ }^{\oplus}$ measuring cell. Base element and diaphragm consist of high purity sapphire-ceramic ${ }^{\oplus}$.

The process pressure causes via the diaphragm a change in an electrical parameter of the measuring cell. This change is converted into an appropriate output signal.
The CERTEC ${ }^{\left({ }^{( }\right.}$measuring cell is also equipped with a temperature sensor. The temperature value can be displayed via the indicating and adjustment module or processed via the signal output.


Fig. 1: Configuration of the CERTEC measuring cell in VEGABAR 74
1 Diaphragm
2 Soldered glass bond
3 Base element
The advantages of the CERTEC ${ }^{\text {® }}$ measuring cell are:

- Very high overload resistance
- No hysteresis
- Excellent long-term stability
- Completely front flush installation
- Good corrosion resistance
- Very high abrasion resistance


## VEGABAR 75

The METEC ${ }^{\text {® }}$ measuring cell is the measuring unit of VEGABAR 75. This unit consists of a CERTEC ${ }^{\oplus}$ measuring cell and a special isolating system with metallic process diaphragm. A special feature of this isolating system is the direct mechanical compensation of temperature influence.
The process pressure causes via the diaphragm a change in an electrical parameter of the measuring cell. This change is converted into an appropriate output signal.


Fig. 2: Configuration of the METEC ${ }^{\circ}$ measuring cell in VEGABAR 75
1 Diaphragm Hastelloy C276
2 Isolating liquid (approx. $0.3 \mathrm{~cm}^{3}$, FDA-listed)
3 FoNi adapter
4 CERTEC ${ }^{3}$ measuring cell
The advantages of the METEC ${ }^{\text {® }}$ measuring cell are:

- Completely welded, elastomer-free
- Very high overload resistance
- Full vacuum resistance (also with 0.1 bar measuring range)
- Good thermo-shock reaction
- Excellent long-term stability
- High degree of flushness


## Wide application range

VEGABAR 74 and 75 transmitters are designed for front flush process pressure measurement of gases, vapours and liquids. Their application-optimised housings in IP 68 and high resistance materials ensure reliable use even in harsh environments and in extremely moist areas. Thanks to their compact configuration with completely integrated electronics, the instruments can be connected directly to the respective signal processing equipment.

VEGABAR 74 is best suited for use in abrasive media in the paper industry or in waste water treatment.

VEGABAR 75 with its hygienic fittings is particularly suitable for the food processing and pharmaceutical industries.

## Information:

Continuative documentation such as operating instructions manuals:

- 28432 - VEGABAR 74
- 28433 - VEGABAR 75


## 2 Type overview

VEGABAR 74


VEGABAR 75


| Measuring cell: | CERTEC ${ }^{\text {® }}$ | METEC ${ }^{\text {(1) }}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Diaphragm: | Ceramic | Metal |
| Media: | gas, vapours and liquids, also abrasive | gases, vapours and liquids also with higher temperatures |
| Process fitting: | Thread from $11 / 2^{2}$, flanges from DN 40, fittings for the food processing and paper industry | Thread from $11 / 2 "$, flanges from DN 40, fittings for the food processing industry |
| Material: | 316L | 316L |
| Measuring range: | -1... 60 bar ( $-14.5 \ldots 870 \mathrm{psi})$ | -1 ... 25 bar (-14.5 ... 363 psi ) |
| Smailest measuring range: | 0.1 bar (1.45 psi) | 0.1 bar (1.45 psi) |
| Process temperature: | $-40 \ldots+120^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+248{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ | $-12 \ldots+200^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+392{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| Deviation in characteristics: | < 0.075 \% | < $0.075 \%$ |
| Signal output: | $4 . .20 \mathrm{mA/HART}$ | $4 . .20 \mathrm{mA/HART}$ |
| Remote adjustment/ indication: | VEGADIS 12 | VEGADIS 12 |

## 3 Mounting instructions

## Installation position

VEGABAR functions in any installation position. Depending on the measuring system, the installation position can influence the measurement. This can be compensated by a position correction.

## Information:

We recommend using parts from the line of VEGA mounting accessories.
## 4 Electrical connection

### 4.1 General prerequisites

The supply voltage range can differ depending on the instrument version. You can find exact specifications in chapter "Technical data".
The national installation standards as well as the valid satery regulations and accident prevention rules must be observed.

In hazardous areas you should take note of the appropriate regulations, conformity and type approval certificates of the sensors and power supply units.

### 4.2 Voltage supply

Supply voltage and current signal are carried on the same twowire cable. The requirements on the power supply are specified in chapter "Technical data".

The VEGA power supply units VEGATRENN 149AEx, VEGASTAB 690, VEGADIS 371 as well as VEGAMET signal conditioning instruments are suitable for power supply. When one of these instruments is used, a reliable separation of the supply circuits from the mains circuits according to DIN VDE 0106 part 101 is ensured.

### 4.3 Connection cable

## Generally

The sensors are connected with standard cable without screen. An outer cable diameter of $5 \ldots 9 \mathrm{~mm}$ ensures the seal effect of the cable entry.

## 4 .. $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ two-wire and four-wire

If electromagnetic interference is expected which is above the test values of EN 61326 for industrial areas, screened cable should be used. In HART multidrop mode the use of screened cable is generally recommended.

In Ex applications, the corresponding installation regulations must be noted for the connection cable.

### 4.4 Cable screening and grounding

If screened cable is necessary, the cable screen must be connected on both ends to ground potential. If potential equalisation currents are expected, the connection on the evaluation side must be made via a ceramic capacitor (e.g. $1 \mathrm{nF}, 1500 \mathrm{~V}$ ).

### 4.5 Wiring plan VEGABAR 74, 75

## Dlrect connection



Fig. 3: Wire assignment connection cable
1 brown ( + ): to power supphy or to the processing system
2 blue (-): to power supply or to the processing system
3 yellow: is only required with VEGADIS 12, othenwise connect to minus
4 Screen
5 Breather capillaries with fiter element

## Connection via VEGABOX 02



Fig. 4: Terminal assignment VEGABAR
1 To power supply or the processing system
2 Screen

Connection via VEGADIS 12


Fig. 5: Terminal assignment VEGADIS 12
1 To power supply or the processing system
2 Control instrument ( $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ measurement)
3 Screen
4 Breather capillanies
5 Suspension cable

## 5 Operation

### 5.1 Overview

VEGABAR 74 and 75 can be adjusted with the following adjustment media:

- Indicatior/Adjustment VEGADIS 12
- Adjustment software according to FDT/DTM standard, e.g. PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ and PC
- HART handheld


### 5.2 Adjustment with VEGADIS 12

## VEGADIS 12

VEGADIS 12 is connected directly to the connection or suspension cable of VEGABAR or VEGAWELL. It is looped into the supply and signal circuit and requires no separate external energy.


Fig. 6: Adjustment elements of VEGADIS 12
Rotary switch: choose the requested function
[+] key change value
I-Jkey change value

### 5.3 Adjustment with PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$

## PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM/DTM }}$

VEGABAR 74 and 75 sensors are adjusted via the signal cable by means of PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$.

An instrument driver for the respective VEGABAR is necessary for the adjustment with PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$.

All currently available VEGA DTMs are provided as DTM Collection with the current PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ version on CD. They are available from the responsible VEGA agency for a token fee. The basic version of this DTM Collection incl. PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ is available as a free-of charge download from the Internet.
To use the entire range of functions of a DTM, incl. project documentation, a DTM licence is required for that particular instrument family, e.g. VEGABAR. This licence can be bought from the VEGA agency serving you.

## Connection of the PC via VEGACONNECT 3



Fig. 7: Connecting the PC to the signal cable
1 RS232 connection (with VEGACONNECT 3) or USB connection (with VEGACONNECT 4)
2 VEGABAR
3 HART adapter cable
4 HART resistor $250 \Omega$

## Connection of the PC via VEGACONNECT 4



Fig. 8: Connecting the PC via HART to the signal cable
1 VEGABAR
2 HART resistor $250 \Omega$ (optional depending on processing)
3 Connection cable with 2 mm pins and terminals
4 Processing system/PLCNoltage supply

### 5.4 Adjustment with other adjustment programs

PDM
For VEGA PA sensors, instrument descriptions for the adjustment program PDM are available as EDD. The instrument descriptions are already implemented in the current version of PDM. For older versions of PDM, a free-of-charge download is available via Internet.

## AMS

For VEGA FF sensors, instrument descriptions for the adjustment program AMS ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ are available as DD. The instrument descriptions are already implemented in the current version of AMS ${ }^{\text {TM }}$. For older versions of AMS ${ }^{\text {TM }}$, a free-of-charge download is available via Internet.

## 6 Technical data

## General data

Material 316 L corresponds to 1.4404 or 1.4435

## VEGABAR 74

Materials, wetted parts

- Process fitting 316L
- Diaphragm sapphire ceramic ${ }^{\oplus}$ ( $99.9 \%$ oxide ceramic)
- Seal

FKM (Viton), Kalrez 6375, EPDM, Chemraz 535
Klingersil C-4400

## VEGABAR 75

Materials, wetted parts

- Process fitting

316L

- Process diaphragm

Hastelloy C276
Materials, non-wetted parts

- Isolating liquid
med. white oil, FDA listed (silicone-free)


## Common data

Materials, non-wetted parts

- Housing 316 L
- Ground terminal

316Ti/316L

- Connection cable

PUR, FEP, PE

- type label support on cable

PE-HART
Weight
$0.8 \ldots 8 \mathrm{~kg}(1.764 \ldots 17.64 \mathrm{lbs})$, depending on process fitting

Output variable

| Output signal | $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Failure signal | $22 \mathrm{~mA}(3.6 \mathrm{~mA})$, adjustable |
| Max. output current | 22.5 mA |
| Damping (63\% of the input variable) | $0 \ldots 10 \mathrm{~s}$, adjustable |
| Step response or adjustment time | $70 \mathrm{~ms}($ (ti: $0 \mathrm{~s}, 0 \ldots 63 \%)$ |
| Fulfilled NAMUR recommendations | NE 43 |

Additional output variable - temperature (with VEGABAR 74)
Processing is made via HART-Multidrop
Range $\quad-50 \ldots+150^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-58 \ldots+302^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$

Resolution $1^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(1.8^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
Accuracy

- in the range of $0 \ldots+100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+32 \ldots+212^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
$\pm 3 \mathrm{~K}$
- in the range of $-50 \ldots 0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-58 \ldots+32^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ and $+100 \ldots+150^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \quad$ typ. $\pm 4 \mathrm{~K}$ ( $+212 \ldots+302{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ )


## Input variable

| Parameter | Level |
| :--- | :--- |
| Measuring range | see product code |
| Turn down |  |
| - recommended | $1: 10$ |
| - Max. | $1: 30$ |

Reference conditions and actuating variables (similar to DIN EN 60770-1)
Reference conditions according to DIN EN 61298-1

- Temperature
- Relative humidity
- Air pressure

Determination of characteristics
Characteristics
Calibration position
$+18 \ldots+30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+64 \ldots+86^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
45 ... $75 \%$
860 ... $1060 \mathrm{mbar} / 86$... 106 kPa ( 12.5 ... 15.4 psi )
limit point adjustment according to DIN 16086
linear
upright, diaphragm points downward

Deviation determined according to the limit point method according to IEC 60770"
Applies to digital HART interface as well as to analogue current
output $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$. Specifications refer to the set span. Turn down (TD) = nominal measuring range/set span.
Deviation

- Turn down 1:1 up to 5:1 $1 \quad<0.075 \%$
- Turn down > 10:1 < $0.015 \% \times$ TD

Deviation with absolutely flush process fittings EV, FT

- Turn down 1:1 up to 5:1 < $0.05 \%$
- Turn down > 10:1 < $0.01 \% \times$ TD

Deviation with absolute pressure measuring range 0.1 bar

- Turn down $1: 1$ up to $5: 1$
$<0.25 \% \times$ TD
- Turn down > 10:1 < 0.05\% x TD


## Influence of the product or amblent temperature

Applies to digital HART interface as well as to analogue current output $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$. Specifications refer to the set span. Tum down (TD) = nominal measuring range/set span.
Average temperature coefficlent of the zero signal
In the compensated temperature range $0 \ldots+100^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(212^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$, reference temperature $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(68^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$.
Average temperature coefficient of the zero signal

- Turn down 1:1
$<0.05 \% / 10 \mathrm{~K}$
- Turn down 1 : 1 up to 5 : 1
$<0.1 \% / 10 \mathrm{~K}$
- Turn down up to $10: 1$
< $0.15 \% / 10 \mathrm{~K}$
Outside the compensated temperature range
Average temperature coefficient of the zero signal
- Turn down 1:1
typ. $<0.05 \% / 10 \mathrm{~K}$
Thermal change, current output
Applies also to the analogue $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ current output and refers to the set span.
Thermal change, current output $<0.15 \%$ at $-40 \ldots+80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+176{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$


## Long-term stability (similar to DIN 16086, DINV 19259-1 and IEC 60770-1)

Applies to digital interfaces (HART, Profibus PA, Foundation
Fieldbus) as well as for the analogue current output $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$.
Specifications refer to the set span. Tum down (TD) = nominal
measuring range/set span.
Long-term drift of the zero signal $<(0.1 \% \times$ TD $) / 1$ year

## Ambient conditions

Ambient, storage and transport temperature

- Connection cable PE

$$
-40 \ldots+60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+140^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)
$$

- Connection cable PUR, FEP $\quad-40 \ldots+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+185^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$


## Process conditions

## VEGABAR 74

Product temperature depending on the measuring cell seal

- FKM (e.g. Viton)
- EPDM
- Kairez 6375 (FFKM)
- Chemraz 535


## VEGABAR 75

Medium temperature (temperature: $\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{abs}}>1$ bar ( 14.5 psi )/ $\mathrm{p}_{\mathrm{abs}}<1$ bar ( 14.5 psi )

| - Standard | $-12 \ldots+150^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /-12 \ldots+130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+10 \ldots+302^{\circ} \mathrm{F} /+10 \ldots+266^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| - with cooling element | $-12 \ldots+180^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /-12 \ldots+130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+10 \ldots+3566^{\circ} \mathrm{F} /+10 \ldots+266^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
| - with cooling element and screening sheet | $-12 \ldots+200^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /-12 \ldots+130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+10 \ldots+392^{\circ} \mathrm{F} /+10 \ldots+266^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |

- with cooling element and screening sheet
$-12 \ldots+200^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /-12 \ldots+130^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+10 \ldots+392^{\circ} \mathrm{F} /+10 \ldots+266^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$

1) Incl. non-linearity, hysteresis and non-repeatability.

Common data
$\begin{array}{ll}\text { Vibration resistance } & \text { mechanical vibrations with } 4 \mathrm{~g} \text { and } 5 \ldots 100 \mathrm{~Hz}^{2)} \\ \text { Shock resistance } & \text { Acceleration } 100 \mathrm{~g} / 6 \mathrm{~ms}^{3)}\end{array}$

## Electromechanical data

Connection cable

- Configuration
- Wire cross-section
- wire resistance
- Standard length
- max. length with VEGADIS 12
- Min. bending radius at $25^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / 77^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$
- Diameter approx
- Colour - standard PE
- Colour - standard PUR
- Colour - Ex-version
four wires, one suspension cable, one breather capillary, screen braiding, metal foil, mantle
$0.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (AWG no. 20)
$<0.036 \Omega / \mathrm{m}(0.011 \Omega / t)$
6 m (19.69 tt)
$200 \mathrm{~m}(656.2 \mathrm{ft})$
25 mm ( 0.985 in )
8 mm ( 0.315 in )
Black
Blue
Blue


## Voltage supply

Supply voltage

- Non-Ex instrument 12 ... 36 V DC
- EEx-ia instrument 12 ... 29 V DC

Permissible residual ripple

| $-<100 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | $\mathrm{U}_{\text {ss }}<1 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| - $100 \mathrm{~Hz} \ldots 10 \mathrm{kHz}$ | $\mathrm{U}_{\text {ss }}<10 \mathrm{mV}$ |
| Load | see diagram |



Fig. 9: Vothage diagram

| 1 | HART load |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2 | Vohage limit Ex instrument |  |
| 3 | Vothage limit non-Ex instrument |  |
| 4 | Supply vohtage |  |
| Load in conjunction with VEGADIS 12 |  |  |

${ }^{2)}$ Tested according to the regulations of German Lloyd, GL directive 2.
${ }^{3}$ Tested according to EN 60068-2-27.


Fig. 10: VoHage diagram
1 HARTload
2 VoHage limit Ex instrument
3 Vollage limit non-Ex instrument
4 Supply voHage

## Electrical protective measures

| Protection | IP $68(25$ bar)/IP 69 K |
| :--- | :--- |
| Overvoltage category | III |
| Protection class | III |

## Approvals ${ }^{48)}$

ATEXia
ATEXD
ATEX ia+D
Ship approval
Other approvals

ATEX II 1G EEx ia IIC T6, ATEX II 2G EEx ia IIC T6 ATEX II 1/2D, 2D IP6X T
ATEX \| 1G EEx ia IIC T6, ATEX \| 1/2D, 2D IP6X T
GL, LRS, ABS, CCS, RINA, DNV
WHG

## CE conformity

EMC (89/336/EWG) Emission EN 61326: 1997 (class B), susceptibility EN 61326: 1997/A1:
LVD (73/23/EWG)

1998
EN 61010-1: 2001

## Environmental Instructions

VEGA environment management system
certified according to DIN EN ISO 14001

## 7 Dimensions

VEGABAR 74 －threaded fitting


Fig．11：VEGABAR 74 －threaded fitting：$G V=G 1 / 2$ A manometer connection EN 837 ， $G I=G 1 / 2 A$ inner $G 1 / 2, G G=G 11 / 2 A, G N=11 / 2 N P T, G M=G 11 / 2 A 70 \mathrm{~mm}$

VEGABAR 74 －hygienic fitting 1


Fig．12：VEGABAR 74 －hygienic fitting：$C C=$ Tin－Clamp 1 $1 z^{\prime \prime}, C A=$ Tri－Clamp 2＂，LA $=$ hygienic fitting with compression nut F4O，TA＝Tuchenhagen VariventDN 32，$T B=$

Tuchenhagen Varivent DN 25，RARB $=$ botting $D N$ 4ODN 50 according to DIN 11851，$K A=$ conus $D N 40$

VEGABAR 74 －hygienic fitting 2


Fig．13：VEGABAR $74 \mathrm{AA}=\mathrm{DRD}, \mathrm{KA}=$ conus $D N 40$
VEGABAR 74 －flange fitting


Fig．14：VEGABAR 74 －flange fitting
1 Flange connection according to DIN 2501
Flange fitting according to ANSI B16．5
Flange with extension
Oroer－specific

VEGABAR 74 - threaded fitting for paper industry


Fig. 15: VEGABAR - connection for paper industry: $B A / B B=M 44 \times 1.25$
VEGABAR 74 - extension fitting for paper Industry


Fig. 16: VEGABAR-extension fitting for paper industry: EV/FT = absolutely flush for pulper ( $E \vee 2$ 2-times flattened), $E G=$ extension for ballvalve fitting ( $L=$ order-specific)

VEGABAR 75 - threaded fitting


Fig. 17: VEGABAR - threaded fitting: $G G=G 11 / 2 A, G N=11 / 2 N P T, G L=G 11 / 2 A$ thread length $55 \mathrm{~mm}, B B=M 44 \times 1.25, B E=M 56 \times 1.25$

VEGABAR 75 - hyglenic fitting 1


Fig. 18: VEGABAR 75 - hygienic fiting: $C A C F=$ Tri-Clamp $2{ }^{*} /$ Tri-Clamp $22^{\prime \prime}, ~ L A=$ hygienic fitting with compression nut F40, TA = Tuchenhagen Varivent $D N 32, R \mathrm{~V} /$ $R W=$ bothing $D N 4 O D N 50$ according to $D I N$ I $1851, K A=$ conus $D N 40, A A=D R D$

VEGABAR 75 - hygienlc fitting 2


Fig. 19: VEGABAR 75-hygienic fitting: $S A=S M S D N 38, S B=S M S$ DN 51

## 8 Product code

VEGABAR 74


VEGABAR 75

"Only in conjundion with Approval 'XX' or 'AX'

Indicating and adjustment



## Product Information



## Content

1 Product description ..... 3
2 Type overview .....  5
3 Mounting Instructions. .....  6
4 Connecting to power supply
4.1 Preparing the connection .....  8
4.2 Wiring plan, VEGADIS 11 ..... 8
4.3 Wiring plan, VEGADIS 12 ..... 9
4.4 Wiring plan, VEGADIS 61 ..... 9
4.5 Wiring plan, VEGADIS 175. ..... 9
5 Operation
5.1 Adjustment on VEGADIS 11. ..... 11
5.2 Adjustment on VEGADIS 12. ..... 11
5.3 Adjustment on VEGADIS 61 and PLICSCOM ..... 11
5.4 Adjustment on VEGADIS 61 with PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ ..... 12
5.5 Adjustment on VEGADIS 175 ..... 12
6 Technical data ..... 13
7 Dimensions. ..... 16
8 Product code ..... 17

## Take note of safety instructions for Ex applications

Please note the Ex specific safety information which you will find on our homepage www.vega.comlservicesldownloads and which come with the appropriate instrument with Ex approval. In hazardous areas you should take note of the appropriate regulations, conformity and type approval centificates of the sensors and power supply units. Each VEGADIS with Ex approval is an associated, intrinsically safe instrument and must not be installed in hazardous areas.

## 1 Product description

In continuous measurement, the level in a vessel or the pressure in a pipeline, for example, is detected by a sensor. The measured value is converted into an analogue $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ output signal or a digital output signal, e.g. Profibus PA. The output signal is then further processed, e.g. in a PLCS or a control system.
On-site indication of the measured value or sensor adjustment is often desired. To fulfill this need, VEGA offers a wide range of indicating instruments. Indication, power supply and mounting differ depending on the model. This product information manual provides an overview and helps you select a suitable instrument.

## VEGADIS 11

VEGADIS 11 is a universal, digital indicating instrument that operates without additional power. It is used for remote (i.e. at some distance from the measuring site) measured value indication. VEGADIS 11 can be connected at any point to the $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ signal cable. It is suitable for any VEGA sensor as well as sensors from other manufacturers, i.e. for active (four-wire) as well as passive (two-wire) sensors.


Fig. 1: Configuration VEGADIS 11
1 To the sensor
2 To the processing system

## Advantages:

- Universal use for active or passive $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ sensors
- No separate external energy required
- mounting to the wall or on carrier rail


## VEGADIS 12

VEGADIS 12 is a digital indicating instrument that operates without additional power. It is used for remote (i.e. at some distance from the measuring site) measured value indication and adjustment of VEGABAR 74, 75 and VEGAWELL $72-4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ HART hydrostatic pressure transmitters. VEGADIS 12 can be connected at any point to the $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ signal cable. It is provided with a breather facility for sensor ventilation via the capillary line in the special cable.


Fig. 2: Configuration VEGADIS 12
1 To the sensor
2 To the processing system

## Advantages:

- No separate external energy required
- mounting to the wall or on carrier rail


## VEGADIS 61

VEGADIS 61 is an external indicating and adjustmentmodule that operates without additional power. It is used for remote (i.e. at some distance from the measuring site) measured value indication and adjustment of VEGA plics ${ }^{(\infty}$ sensors. The sensors can be $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$, Profibus PA or Foundation Fieldbus sensors. VEGADIS 61 is connected to the sensors with a standard four-wire screened cable up to 25 m long. Communication is carried out via this cable and, what is more, VEGADIS 61 is powered by the sensor. An additional power supply is not required.

## PLICSCOM

The indicating and adjustment module PLICSCOM is used for measured value indication, adjustment and diagnosis of VEGA plics ${ }^{(\mathbb{D}}$ sensors. It is mounted in the respective sensor housing or in the external indicating and adjustment module VEGADIS 61. After mounting, the sensor and PLICSCOM are splash-proof even without housing cover.

An integrated backlight enables reading even under unfavourable lighting conditions. As an option, the display can also be equipped with heating that ensures good readability at low temperatures down to $-40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$.


Fig. 3: Configuration VEGADIS 61 and PLICSCOM
1 Sensor
2 VEGADIS 61
3 PLICSCOM

## Advantages:

- Universal use for all plics ${ }^{\left({ }^{( }\right)}$sensors
- Splash-proof adjustment with open cover
- No separate external energy required
- mounting VEGADIS 61 to the wall, on carrier rail or tube


## VEGADIS 175

VEGADIS 175 is a digital indicating instrument for front panel mounting. It can be connected at any point to the $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ signal cable and is suitable for active (four-wire) as well as passive (two-wire) sensors.


Fig. 4: Configuration VEGADIS 175
1 To the sensor
2 VEGADIS 175
3 To the processing system

## Advantages:

- Universal use for passive or 4 ... 20 mA sensors
- No separate external energy required


### 1.1 Application examples

Pump shaft


Fig. 5: Leval measurement in a pump shaft with VEGAWELL 72, remote indication and adjustment with VEGADIS 12

For hydrostatic level measurement in a pump shaft, VEGADIS 12 together a VEGAWELL 72 is well suited for remote indication and adjustment. The min./max. adjustment is carried out on site and the actual measured value can be read out during operation.

## Chip silo



Fig. 6: Level measurement in a chip silo with VEGAPULS 68, remote indicationand adjustment with VEGADIS 61

In non-contact level measurement in a chip silo with VEGAPULS 68, the mounting location is not directly accessible. For that reason VEAGDIS 61 is an excellent solution for remote indication
and adjustment. The min./max. adjustment can be carried out locally with or without filling.

## 2 Type overview

|  | VEGADIS 11 | VEGADIS 12 | vEGADIS 61 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |
| Indication: | digital and quasi-analogue | digital and quasi-analogue | Dot-Matrix |
| Signal: | 4 ... $20 \mathrm{~mA}, 4$... $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ | 4 ... $20 \mathrm{~mA}, 4$... 20 mA/HART | $1^{2} \mathrm{C}$ bus |
| Sensors: | $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ passive or active | VEGABAR 74, 75; VEGAWELL 72-4... 20 mAHART | plics ${ }^{\text {® }}$ sensors |
| Mounting: | Wall, rail mounting | Wall, rail mounting | Wall, rail, tube mounting |
| Ambient temperature: | $-20 \ldots+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-4 \ldots+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ | $-20 \ldots+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-4 \ldots+158{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ | $-20 \ldots+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-4 \ldots+158{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |
|  |  | vegadis 175 |  |
| Indication: | Dot-Matrix | digital |  |
| Signal: | $\mathrm{I}^{2} \mathrm{C}$ bus | 4 ... $20 \mathrm{~mA}, 4$... $20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ |  |
| Sensors: | plics ${ }^{\text {® }}$ sensors | 4... 20 mA passive or active |  |
| Mounting: | in the sensor or in VEGADIS 61 | Front panel |  |
| Ambient temperature: | $-15 \ldots+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+5 \ldots+158{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ | $-10 \ldots+60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14 \ldots+140^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |  |

## 3 Mounting instructions

## VEGADIS 11 and VEGADIS 12

VEGADIS 11 and VEGADIS 12 are configured for the following installation and mounting options：
－Carrier rail $35 \times 7.5$ according to EN 50022
－Wall mounting

## Carrier rall mounting



Fig．7：VEGADIS 11 and VEGADIS 12 carrier rail mounting
1 Camier rail

Wall mounting


Fig．8：VEGADIS 11 and VEGADIS 12 wall mounting
1 Drill dimension

## VEGADIS 61

VEGADIS 61 can be mounted in the following ways：
－Carrier rail $35 \times 7.5$ according to EN 50022
－Wall mounting
－Tube mounting


Fig．9：VEGADIS 61 for wall mounting，bottom view of mounting plate．
1 Drill dimension

## Carrier rall mounting

VEGADIS61 for mounting on carrier rail is supplied with a mount－ ing adapter．


Fig．10：VEGADIS 61 for mounting on carrier rail
1 Adapter plate
2 Scraw M4 $\times 6$
3 Carrier rail

## Tube mounting

VEGADIS 61 for tube mounting is supplied with the measuring instrument holder BARMONT．C（comes with delivery as mount－ ing accessory）．


Fig．11：VEGADIS 61 for tube mounting
14 screws $M 5 \times 12$
2 Measuring instrument holder BARMONT．C
3 Tube

## Wall mounting

VEGADIS 61 for wall mounting is supplied with a mounting sock－ et．


Fig. 12: Measuring instrument holder BARMONT.C
$14 \times$ holes 5 mm for mounting screws M5 $\times 12$

## PLICSCOM

The indicating and adjustment module PLICSCOM can be inserted in the following housing versions and instruments:

- All sensors of the plics ${ }^{\text {© }}$ instrument family, in the single as well as in the double chamber housing (optionally in the electronics or connection compartment)
- External indicating and adjustment unit VEGADIS 61


## VEGADIS 175

VEGADIS 175 can be mounted in the following ways:

- Front panel mounting


## Front panel mounting



Fig. 13: VEGADIS 175 for panel mounting

## 1 Front panel

2 Fixing hook
3 Screw

## 4 Connecting to power supply

### 4.1 Preparing the connection

## Note safety instructions

Always keep in mind the following safety instructions:

- Connect only in the complete absence of line voltage
- If overvoltage surges are expected, overvoltage arresters should be installed

Tip:
We recommend VEGA overvoltage arresters B61-300 (power supply VEGADIS) and B62-36G (sensor supply).

## Take note of safety instructions for Ex applications



In hazardous areas you should take note of the appropriate regulations, conformity and type approval certificates of the sensors and power supply units.

## Selecting connection cable

Standard two-wire cable without screen is used for connection of the sensors.

## Cable screening and grounding

Connect the cable screen on bothends to ground potential. In the sensor, the screen must be connected directly to the internal ground terminal. The ground terminal outside on the housing must be connected to the potential equalisation.
If potential equalisation currents are expected, the screen connection on VEGADIS must be made via a ceramic capacitor (e.g. $1 \mathrm{nF}, 1500 \mathrm{~V}$ ). The low frequency potential equalisation currents are thus suppressed, but the protective eflect against high frequency interference signals remains.

## Select connection cable for Ex appilcations



Take note of the corresponding installation regulations for Ex applications. In particular, make sure that no potential equalisation currents flow over the cable screen. In case of grounding on both sides this can be achieved by the use of a capacitor or a separate potential equalisation.

### 4.2 Wiring plan, VEGADIS 11

Passive sensors


Fig. 14: Wiring plan, VEGADIS 11 for passive sensors
1 Sensor (passive)
2 Indicating module (assignment see chart)
3 Controlinstrument

## Note:

Passive sensors need a power supply. They represent current sinks and emboss a current of $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$ to the supply circuit. The supply voltage is loop through VEGADIS 11. On the output (terminals 1/2), VEGADIS 11 provides the power supply for the connected sensors. Power supply and measured value transmission are carried along the same two-wire cable.

## Active sensors



Fig. 15: Wiring plan, VEGADIS if for active sensors
1 Sensor (activa)
2 Indicating module
3 Controlinstrument
4 Vottege suppty/Signal output

## Note:

The input (terminals 10/11) is provided for connection of transmitters with own, separate power supply. The output (terminal $1 / 2$ ) is bridged.

## Sensors with signal conditioning instrument



Fig. 16: Wiring plan, VEGADIS 11 for signal conditioning instrument
1 Signal condtitioning instrument
2 Indicating module
3 Control instrument

## Note:

The input (terminals 10/11) is provided for connection of signal conditioning instruments. Connection and operation in Ex ia is not possible. The output (terminal 1/2) is bridged.

### 4.3 Wiring plan, VEGADIS 12



Fig. 17: Wiring plan, VEGADIS 12

```
brown (+)
    blue (-)
    Yellow
    Screen
Breather capillarles with filter element
Indicating module
Controlinstrument
8 Vohage supply/Signal output
```


### 4.4 Wiring plan, VEGADIS 61

## Wiring plan



Fig. 18: Wiring plan, single chamber housing
1 plics ${ }^{\text {® }}$ sensor
2 Grounding on both ends with nor-Ex. With Ex, grounding at one sensor end is recommended, see EN 60079-14.

### 4.5 Wiring plan, VEGADIS 175

## Passive sensors



Fig. 19: Wiring plan, VEGADIS 175 for passive sensors
1 Sensor (passive)
2 Bridged intemally
3 Vottage supply/Signal output
4 Exarea
5 Nor-Ex area

## Active sensors



Fig. 20: Wiring plan, VEGADIS 175 for active sensors

- Sensor (active)

Bridged internally

## 5 Operation

### 5.1 Adjustment on VEGADIS 11

The display is located in the housing cover, the adjustment elements are accessible after removing the cover.


Fig. 21: Indicating and adjustment elements
1 Digitalindication
2 Bar graph indication
3 Tendency indication
4 Rotary switch
5 Adjustment keys +/-

## Key functions

- [Rotary sw/tch] to select:
- Operate = Measured value indication
- ZERO = Adjustment of the min. value
- SPAN = Adjustment of the max. value
- Point $=$ Shifting of the decimal point
- [+/-] key:
- Change value of the digital indication


### 5.2 Adjustment on VEGADIS 12

The display is located in the housing cover, the adjustment elements are accessible after removing the cover.


Fig. 22: Indicating and adjustment elements
1 Digitalindication
2 Bar graph indication
3 Tendency indication
4 Rotary switch "Indication"
5 Adjustment keys + -dispiay
6 Rotary switch "Pressure transmitter'
7 Adjustment keys + - Pressure transmitter

## Key functions

- [Rotary switch] to select:
- Operate $=$ Measured value indication
- ZERO = Adjustment of the min. value
- SPAN = Adjustment of the max. value
- Point = Shifting of the decimal point
- [ $+/$ / $]$ key:
- Change value of the digital indication


### 5.3 Adjustment on VEGADIS 61 and PLICSCOM



Fig. 23: indicating and adjustment elements
1 LC display
2 Indication of the menu item number
3 Adjustment keys

## Key functions

－［OK］key：
－Move to the menu overview
－Confirm selected menu
－Edit parameter
－Save value
－［－＞］key to select：
－menu change
－list entry
－Select editing position
－［＋］key：
－Change value of the parameter
－［ESC］key：
－interrupt input
－jump to the next higher menu

## 5．4 Adjustment on VEGADIS 61 with PACTware ${ }^{\text {™ }}$

## PACTware ${ }^{\text {rm／DTM }}$

plics ${ }^{\circledR}$ sensors can be adjusted via PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ independent of the respective signal output $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$ ，Profibus PA or Foundation Fieldbus via VEGADIS 61．To adjust with PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ ，an instrument driver for the particular sensor is required．

All currently available VEGA DTMs are provided as DTM Collec－ tion with the current PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ version on CD．They are avail－ able from the responsible VEGA agency for a token fee．The basic version of this DTM Collection incl．PACTware ${ }^{T M}$ is available as a free－of charge download from Internet．
To use the entire range of functions of a DTM，incl．project doc－ umentation，a DTM licence is required for that particular instru－ ment family．This licence can be bought from the VEGA agency serving you

## Connection of the PC to VEGADIS 61



Fig．24：Connection 10 VEGADIS 61
1 RS232 connection
2 VEGADIS 61
$3 I^{2} \mathrm{C}$ adapter cable for VEGACONNECT 3
To adjust with PACTware ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ ，a VEGACONNECT 3 with $I^{2} \mathrm{C}$ adapt－ er cable（art．no．2．27323）as well as a power supply unit is nec－ essary in addition to the PC and the suitable VEGA－DTM．

## 5．5 Adjustment on VEGADIS 175

Indication and adjustment are carried out on the front via a clear LC display and three keys．


Fig．25：Indicating and adjustment elements
1 Digital indication
2 Key（OK）
3 Adjustment keys＋／－

## Key functions

－［OK］key：
－Move to the menu overview
－Confirm selected menu
－Edit parameter
－Save value
－$[+/ \pi-]$ keys：
－Change value of the parameter

## 6 Technical data

| General data |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| VEGADIS 11, 12 |  |
| Series | Instrument for panel or wall mounting or mounting on carrier rail $35 \times 7.5$ according to EN 50022 |
| Materials |  |
| - Housing | plastic PBT |
| - Inspection window of the indication | Lexan |
| - Breather facility | PTFE filter element |
| - Ground terminal | 316Ti/316L |
| Weight approx. | 400 g (0.882 lbs) |
| VEGADIS 61 |  |
| Series | Instrument for panel or wall mounting or mounting on carrier rail $35 \times 7.5$ according to EN 50022 |
| Materials |  |
| - Housing | Plastic PBT, Alu die-casting powder-coated, 316L |
| - Inspection window in housing cover | Polycarbonate (UL-746-C listed) |
| - Ground terminal | 316Ti/316L |
| Weight, depending on the housing material and mounting technology | $500 \ldots 1300 \mathrm{~g}(1.10 \ldots 2.87 \mathrm{lbs})$ |
| PLICSCOM |  |
| Series | Module for insertion in VEGADIS 61 |
| Materials |  |
| - Housing | ABS |
| - Inspection window | Polyester foil |
| Weight approx. | 100 g (0.22 lbs) |
| VEGADIS 175 |  |
| Series | Module unit for front panel mounting |
| Materials |  |
| - Housing front | Alu die-casting |
| - Housing | Sheet steel galvanized |
| - Rear of the housing | ABS |
| Weight approx. | $300 \mathrm{~g}(0.66 \mathrm{lbs})$ |

Input

VEGADIS 11
Connection to

Transmission
Max. input current
Connection cable to the sensor
Voltage loss
VEGADIS 12
Connection to

Transmission
Max. input current
Connection cable to the sensor
Max. cable length
Voltage loss

## VEGADIS 61

Connection to
Data transmission
Connection cable
Max. cable length
VEGADIS 175
Transmission
individual passive or active sensors $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA} / \mathrm{HART}$
analogue, 4 ... 20 mA
150 mA
2-wire
4.5 V at 20 mA

VEGAWELL 72-4... 20 mA/HART, VEGABAR 74, 75
analogue, $4 \ldots 20 \mathrm{~mA}$
150 mA
3-wire (VEGA special cable with breather capillaries or standard cable)
200 m
4.5 V at 20 mA

VEGA plics ${ }^{\oplus}$ sensors
digital ( ${ }^{2} \mathrm{C}$-Bus)
4-wire, screened
25 m
analogue, 4 ... 20 mA (reverse battery protection)

| HART protocol | The indicator is suitable for transmission of the HART protocol |
| :--- | :--- |
| Max. input current | 150 mA (shortcircuit current) |
| Voltage loss | $<2 \mathrm{~V}$ with 20 mA |

## Indications

VEGADIS 11, 12
LC multiple function display

- Bargraph (quasianalogue indication)

20 segments

- Digital value
-9999 ... 9999
- Tendency indicators

VEGADIS 61, PLICSCOM
LC display in dot matrix
Power supply display light
through the sensor, voltage range see sensor operating instructions manual
Power supply display heating

- Operating voltage

24 V DC +5 \%

- Power
1.7 W
- Switch on point
$-5^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+23^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
VEGADIS 175
LC display
- Height of figures

17 mm

- Indication range
-19999 ... 19999
- Offset
-19999 ... 32767


## Ambient conditions

VEGADIS 11, 12
Ambient temperature
$-20 \ldots+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-4 \ldots+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
Storage and transport temperature
$-40 \ldots+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+185^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
VEGADIS 61, PLICSCOM
Ambient temperature
Ambient temperature with heating
Storage and transport temperature
VEGADIS 175
Ambient temperature
Storage and transport temperature Climatic class
$-15 \ldots+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+5 \ldots+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
$-40 \ldots+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
$-40 \ldots+80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40 \ldots+176^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
$-10 \ldots+60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(+14 \ldots+140^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
$-25 \ldots+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-13 \ldots+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$
according to EN 60654-1, class B2

## Electrical protective measures

| VEGADIS 11, 12 |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Protection | IP 67 |
| Overvoltage category | III |
| Protection class | III |
| VEGADIS 61 |  |
| Protection | IP 66/IP 67 |
| Overvoltage category | III |
| Protection class | II |
| PLICSCOM |  |
| Protection |  |
| - unassembled | IP 20 |
| - mounted into VEGADIS 61 without cover | IP 40 |
| VEGADIS 175 |  |
| Protection |  |
| - between front frame and front panel | IP 65 |
| - Terminal | IP 20 |

ESD
Electromagnetic fields
Burst (power supply)
Surge
Electromagnetic fields

## $6 \mathrm{kV} / 8 \mathrm{kV}$

$10 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{m}$
2 kV
1 kV
$10 \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{m}$

## Approvals"

VEGADIS 11
ATEX ATEX II 2G EEx ia IIC T6
VEGADIS 12
ATEX
ATEX II 2G EEx ia IIC T6
UL
VEGADIS 61
ATEX ia
ATEX D
IEC
FM
CSA
VEGADIS 175
ATEX
CI. I.II,II; Div. 1; Gr. A-G

ATEX II 1G, 2G EExia IIC T6
ATEX II 1/2D IP6X T
IEC Ex ia IIC T6
FM CI.I-HI, Div1 (IS)
CSA CIII-III, Div1 (IS)

ATEX II 1G EExia IIC T6

## Environmental Instructions

VEGA environment management syslem certified according to DIN EN ISO 14001
You can find delailed information under www.vega.com.

## 7 Dimensions

VEGADIS 11， 12


Fig．26：VEGADIS 11， 12
VEGADIS 61


Fig．27：VEGADIS 61

## PLICSCOM



Fig．28：PLICSCOM
VEGADIS 175


Fig．29：VEGADIS 175

## 8 Product code

## VEGADIS 11



## VEGADIS 12



VEGADIS 61

|  | Approval <br> XX without <br> CX ATEX II 1G, 2G, EEx ia IIC T6 |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| DIS61. |  |  |  |  |

## PLICSCOM



VEGADIS 175


## RADIO MODEM

## 1. DR-900 DATA RADIO MODEM TECHNICAL DETAILS

## 2. TC-900DR USER MANUAL

## (D) Series

## Data Radio Modem

## DR900 - Digital Radios

## Trio DataCom's D Series are high performance cost effective data radio modems designed as an alternative to hard wired data transport. Transmit your data over radio with a fully integrated data radio modem designed for fixed point-to-point and point-to-multipoint applications.

The D Series is available as either a half duplex or a full duplex* $853-929 \mathrm{MHz}+/-5 \mathrm{MHz}$ radio, including a fully integrated $4800 / 9600 \mathrm{bps}$ data modem. These units operate equally well in either a stand-alone configuration, or as part of a large communication system.


This complete package forms an attractively priced product for the transmission of data over radio in fixed applications thus providing a viable alternative to costly networks of buried media.

## Features:

* Fully integrated half and full duplex* radio and modem
$\%$ Transparent and non-intrusive remote diagnostic facilities (Optional)
* Inbuiit data routing and multiplexing capabilties, multi-port operation
* Simùltaneous delivery of multiple protocols using Trio DataCom's unique MultiStream ${ }^{\text {m }}$ technology
\% Digital Signal Processsing (DSP) modem
- Sélectable 300-19,200 bps asynchronous RS232 user interface
* Built-in antenna diplexer.
* Integrated supervisory data channel
* Unique collision avoidance facility, for unsolicited report-byexception
* Software selectable configuration parameters
* Internal repeater operation
* Housed in an attractive yet robust metal enclosure

2. Ränge of ancillary equipment - full duplex base / repeater stations and hot-standby base station

## Radio

The $\mathbf{D}$ Series radio has been designed to meet worldwide regulatory guidelines, including FCC, and has adjustable power output up to 5 Watts. This fully synthesised radio is programmable in $6.25 / 7.5 \mathrm{kHz}$ increments to accommodate various worldwide channel spacings. The receiver section has a wide tuning range with an excellent signal-to-noise ratio. Exceptional frequency stability is achieved by intelligent microprocessor controlled temperature compensation. An extended operating temperature range of -30 to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ makes the unit ideal for commercial and industrial applications.

## Modem

The in-built modem includes a custom DSP developed for data communications over narrow band radio systems.

This system offers minimum occupied bandwidth and optimal data integrity (using the standard HDLC protocol with CCITT CRC error detection) inhibiting the transfer of any rogue unwanted data caused by interference or squelch headers / tails.
The Trio DataCom DSP provides:

- the interface between the asynchronous RS232 user communication and the synchronous radio link layer.
- an inbuilt multipexer / router which allows for simultaneous transportation of multiple protocols over the one radio network.


## Applications

The D Series is ideal for use in a variety of sophisticated and critical SCADA and Distributed Information Systems, where complex routing of multiple data protocols and remote diagnostics and wireless network management are important factors.
Remote units and a number of full duplex base station / repeater models, suitable for a variety of requirements, make up the D Series. At the top of the range, the DH model is a genuine, duplicated hot standby base for systems where nothing short of ultra reliability is acceptable.
Telemetry Systems - Utilities (Gas, Water, Electricity), Railways, Mining, Telecommunications, Industry. Where network status, system control, data collection and fault conditions are required.

Transaction Processing - Point of Sale Credit Terminals, Stock Control, Direct Order, Banks, Building Societies, Stock Brokers, Gambling Organizations, etc, where Point of Sale, inventory, credit, or transaction data requires collection and distribution.

Common Carrier Data Services - The high speed, low cost and spectrum efficiency of this device make it well suited to all forms of common carrier data networking.

Alarm Monitoring - Fire, Power, Intrusion \& Essential Services Alarm Reporting.

## designs products \& SO/UtiOnS

## D Series－Data Radio Modem DR900－Digital Radios

## Configuration

Configuration using Trio＇s D Series programming software （DRProg）is completely Windows $^{\circ}$ based for all parameters，such as；frequency，transmitter power，digital mute level，PTT timer， system configurations，port settings．

## Network Management \＆Diagnostic（Optional）

A large distributed network，or even a simple point－to－point link， requires comprehensive fault reporting and diagnostics to ensure a high level of availability．Trio D Series data radio modem products offer sophisticated in－built diagnostics using the optional TView ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ software．This capability allows the customer to remotely monitor and maintain their system，minimising the likelihood of failures，by pointing out component degradation and decreasing the time to diagnose and repair．There is no necessity to visit the master station or interfere with the host data integrity，other than additional data transfer．For further details，consult the TView data sheet．

## Specifications：

| Eable |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Frequency Range＊＊ | 853－929 M ${ }^{\text {M }}$＋／－5 ${ }^{\text {AHz }}$ |
| Channel Selection | Fully programmable |
| Frequency Splits | $76 \mathrm{MHz} \mathrm{Tx/Rx}$ frequency split available including simplex |
| Frequency Stability | $\pm 1 \mathrm{ppm}\left(-10\right.$ to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ambient，opt -30 to $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ） Higher frequency stability options are available due to intelligent processor controlled temperature compensation |
| Aging | ＜＝1ppm／annum |
| Half／Full Duplex | half duplex or full duplex＊ |
| Data Rate（ff） | 4800 ／ 9600 bps |
| Configuration | All configuration via Windows software |
| URANENHTAB |  |
| Tx Power | $5 \mathrm{~W}(+37 \mathrm{dBm})$ or $1 \mathrm{~W}^{*}(+30 \mathrm{dBm})$ （software programmable） |
| Modulation | Narrow band digital fittening binary GMSK． |
| Occupied Bandwidth | Meets various international regulatory guidelines for point－to－point and point－to－multipoint |
| Tx Attach Time | ＜ 1 mSecond |
| Timeout Timer | Programmable 1－255 seconds |
| Tx Spurious | $<=-65 \mathrm{dBm}$ |
| HGCun |  |
| Sensitivity | －115 dBm for 12 dB SINAB |
| Blocking | $>75 \mathrm{~dB}$（티A） |
| Intermodulation | $<=70 \mathrm{~dB}$（EIA） |
| Spurious Response | $<=70 \mathrm{~dB}$（EIA） |
| Select．and Desense | 70 dB （EIA） |
| AFC Tracking | $\pm 3 \mathrm{kHz}$ tracking＠－90 dBm／attack time＜ 10 ms |
| Mute | Programmable digital mute |

## Collision Avoidance

A unique fully integrated，yet independent，low speed supervisory data channel embedded within the primary bit－stream provides collision avoidance facilities which are transparent to the user．The use of this feature makes this product ideally suited for reliable error free data transmissions between stations in high density point－ to－multipoint data networks．

The benefits include：
－Multiple asynchronous applications operating on the one radio channel．
－Enhanced performance of report－by－exception networks．

## Related Products

| $\therefore$ | Base Stations（DB900） |
| ---: | :--- |
| $\therefore$ | Hot Standby Base Station（DH900） |
| $\therefore$ | 9 Port Stream Router Multiplexer（MSR） |
| $\therefore$ | Network Management and Diagnostic Software（TView |
|  | TM $)$ |
| $\therefore$ | D Series Programming Software（DRProg ${ }^{\text {M }}$ ） |

## Conmandions

| User Data Port | $2 \times$ DB9 RS232 female ports |
| :--- | :--- |
| Antenna | SMA female bulkhead（optional N） |
| Power | 2 pin locking．Mating connector supplied |

## WTOEM

| Data Serial Port \＃1 | Full duplex，DB9 RS232，DCE（modem），300－ 19，200 bps asynchronous，hardware／software handshaking |
| :---: | :---: |
| Data Serial Port \＃2 | Full duplex，DB9 RS232，300－9600 bps asynchronous，software handshaking |
| Data Storage | On－board RAM |
| Channel Data Rate | 4800 ／ 9600 bps ，full duplex |
| Bit Error Rate | ＜ $1 \times 10^{-6}$＠-108 dBm （4800 bps） |
|  | $<1 \times 10^{-6}$＠-105 dBm （9600 bps） |
| Collision Avoidance | Trio DataCom＇s unique supervisory channel C／DSMA collision avoidance system |
| MultiStream ${ }^{\text {m／}}$ | Trio DataCom＇s unique simultaneous delivery of multiple data streams（protocols） |
| Ciginimb |  |
| Pöwer Supply | 13．8 Vdc nominal（11－16 Vdc） |
| Transmit Current | 600 mA max．＠ 1 W |
|  | 1700 mA max．＠ 5 W |
| Receive Current | 175 mA |
| Dimensions | $260 \times 161 \times 65 \mathrm{~mm}$（robust metal enclosure） |
| Weight | 1.3 kg |

－Available for OR900 hall duplex I W version（ $853 \pm 5 \mathrm{MHz} / 929 \pm 5 \mathrm{MHz}$ ）
－Various sub－frequency bands available．
－Various sub－frequency bands available．

$\square$ O Copyright 2004 Trio DataCom Pty Lid．All rights reserved．Isaue $11 / 04$


## TC-900DR

## 900 MHz Full Duplex Data Transceiver

## User Manual

Issue 13: February 2001

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 INTRODUCTION ..... 1
1.1 GENERAL ..... 1
1.2 FACTORY QUALITY ASSURANCE ..... 2
1.3 FEATURES ..... 3
1.4 SPECIFICATIONS ..... 4
1.4.1 RADIO SECTION ..... 4
1.4.2 MODEM SECTION ..... 5
1.4.3 RADIO AND MODEM SECTIONS COMBINED ..... 5
1.4.4 CONNECTORS ..... 6
1.5 OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES ..... 6
2 HARDWARE TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION ..... 7
2.1 GENERAL ..... 7
2.2 RADIO SECTION ..... 8
2.2.1 RECEIVER ..... 9
2.2.2 TRANSMITTER ..... 12
2.2.3 FREQUENCY CONTROL ..... 16
2.2.4 INTERFACES ..... 19
2.3 ANTENNA DIPLEXER SECTION ..... 21
2.3.1 GENERAL ..... 21
2.3.2 INTERFACES ..... 22
2.4 AUDIO HANDSET SECTION ..... 23
2.4.1 GENERAL ..... 23
2.4.2 INTERFACES ..... 24
2.5 MODEM SECTION ..... 25
2.5.1 MODEM CONTROL ..... 26
2.5.2 HOST INTERFACE ..... 28
2.5.3 RADIO INTERFACE ..... 29
2.5.4 TRANSMIT SIGNAL CONDITIONING ..... 31
2.5.5 RECEIVE SIGNAL CONDITIONING ..... 31
2.5.6 USER INDICATIONS ..... 33
2.5.7 POWER SUPPLY ..... 34
2.5.8 INTERFACES ..... 35
3 OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION ..... 37
3.1 GENERAL ..... 37
3.2 TC-900DR MODEM FIRMWARE REVISION VA2.3.0 ..... 39
3.2.1 FUNCTIONAL CHANGES AND ADDITIONS ..... 39
3.2.2 OTHER ENHANCEMENTS ..... 40
3.3 FACILITIES AND CONFIGURATION INFORMATION ..... 41FIRMWARE VERSION 2.2
3.3.1 GENERAL ..... 41
3.3.2 INTERNAL DATA STREAM ROUTING ..... 42
3.3.3 DIAGNOSTICS REPEAT FUNCTION ..... 42
3.3.4 DIAGNOSTICS FRAME STRUCTURE ..... 42
3.3.5 DIAGNOSTICS COMMAND SET ..... 43
3.3.6 PARAMETER SET ..... 49
3.3.7 ADVANCED STREAM ROUTING FUNCTIONS ..... 51
3.4 FACILITIES AND CONFIGURATION INFORMATION ..... 52 VERSION 2
3.4.1 GENERAL ..... 52
3.4.2 BRIEF OVERVIEW OF MODEM INTERNAL OPERATION. ..... 52
3.4.3 SELECTING FRAME SIZE ..... 53
3.4.4 CONFIGURING PAD PARAMETERS ..... 54
3.4.5 SUPERVISORY SIGNALLING CHANNEL: APPLICATIONS ..... 55 \& CONFIGURATION
3.4.6 SLIP/KISS PROTOCOL DRIVERS ..... 57
3.4.7 RF TRANSMITTER CONTROL AND CHANNEL ACCESS ..... 60 STRATEGIES
3.4.8 SELECTING FLOW CONTROL REGIMES ..... 61
3.4.9 SETTING MINIMUM RSSI LEVEL ..... 64
3.4.10 SETTING PTT TIMER ..... 64
3.4.11 DATA STREAM SWITCHING, SELECTING AND ..... 65 ENABLING SID CODES
3.4.12 SETTING TRANSMITTER LEAD_IN_DELAY ..... 66
3.5 FACTORS AFFECTING MODEM SYNCHRONISATION TIME ..... 67
3.5.1 (UN)SCRAMBLER AND HDLC STATE MACHINE ..... 67
3.5.2 PHASE LOCKED LOOP ..... 67
3.5.3 ERROR CONTROL ..... 67
3.5.4 TRANSMISSION FORMAT AND TIMING ..... 68
3.5.5 COLLISION AVOIDANCE SCHEME ..... 69
3.6 TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION ..... 70
3.7 USER INDICATIONS ..... 70
3.8 SPECIAL MODES OF OPERATION ..... 71
3.8.1 GENERAL ..... 71
3.8.2 PROGRAMMER MODE ..... 71
3.8.3 BIT ERROR RATE TEST MODE ..... 72
3.8.4 HANDSET MODE ..... 72
3.8.5 ERROR INDICATION MODES ..... 73
3.9 SYNCHRONOUS OPERATION MODE FIRMWARE ..... 75
REVISION: V2. 1
3.9.1 GENERAL ..... 75
3.9.2 DATA RECEIVER ..... 75
3.9.3 SETTING MINIMUM RSSI LEVEL ..... 75
3.9.4 DATA RECEIVER CLOCK OUTPUT ..... 76
3.9.5 OTHER RS232 RECEIVER CONTROL LINES ..... 76
3.9.6 DATA TRANSMITTER ..... 76
3.9.7 DATA TRANSMITTER CLOCKS ..... 76
3.9.8 TRANSMITTER RTS/CTS LINES ..... 77
3.9.9 PHASE SYNCHRONISM WITH GLOBAL CLOCKS ..... 77
3.9.10 TRANSMIT TIMER ..... 77
3.9.11 LED INDICATORS ..... 77
3.9.12 SPECIAL MODES OF OPERATION ..... 78
3.9.13 WIRING ADAPTOR HARNESS FOR TC-900DR ..... 81 SYNCHRONOUS MODEL
4 ALIGNMENT PROCEDURE ..... 82
4.1 GENERAL ..... 82
4.2 TEST EQUIPMENT REQUIRED ..... 82
4.3 TEST POINT LOCATIONS ..... 83
4.3.1 MODEM SECTION PCB ..... 83
4.3.2 RADIO SECTION PCB ..... 84
4.4 ADJUSTMENT POINTS ..... 85
4.5 LINK OPTIONS ..... 85
4.6 HOUSING ..... 86
4.6.1 DISASSEMBLY PROCEDURE ..... 86
4.6.2 MODEM AND POWER SUPPLY PCB ..... 86
4.6.3 ANTENNA DIPLEXER ..... 86
4.6.4 RADIO SECTION PCB ..... 87
4.7 ALIGNMENT DESCRIPTION ..... 88
4.7.1 REFERENCE OSCILLATOR AND SYNTHESIZER ..... 88
4.7.2 121 MHZ MODULATOR ..... 89
4.7.3 TX FINAL ..... 90
4.7.4 RECEIVER ..... 91
5 INSTALLATION OVERVIEW ..... 92
5.1 GENERAL ..... 92
5.2 INSTALLATION ..... 93
5.2.1 DATA CONNECTION ..... 93
5.2.2 MOUNTING ..... 93
5.2.3 POWER CONNECTIONS ..... 93
5.2.4 COAX CABLE CONNECTION ..... 93
5.3 ANTENNA INSTALLATION ..... 95
5.3.1 YAGI ANTENNAS ..... 95
5.3.2 OMNI DIRECTIONAL ANTENNAS ..... 95
5.3.3 ANTENNA PLACEMENT ..... 96
5.3.4 REFLECTIONS AND OUTPUT POWER ..... 96
5.4 COMMISSIONING - RSSI LEVEL ..... 97
5.4.1 CHECKING DATA COMMUNICATIONS ..... 97
5.4.2 BIT ERROR RATE (BER) TESTING ..... 97
5.4.3 OUTPUT POWER - VSWR ..... 98
5.4.4 DATA CONNECTION ..... 98
5.5 GENERAL CHECKLIST ..... 100
6 FAULT FINDING ..... 101
6.1 MODEM/GENERAL ..... 101
6.2 RECEIVER ..... 103
6.2.1 RECEIVE SENSITIVITY LOW ..... 103
6.2.2 RECEIVER LEVEL CHART ..... 104
6.3 TRANSMITTER ..... 105
7 APPENDIX A DRAWINGS ..... 108
8 APPENDIX B GLOSSARY ..... 109

## IMPORTANT NOTICE

## © COPYRIGHT - ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

This handbook is for the installation, operation and maintenance of the TC-900DR. The specifications described are typical only, and are subject to normal manufacturing and service tolerances.

Trio DataCom Pty Ltd reserves the right to modify the equipment, its specifications or this manual without prior notice, in the interest of improving performance, reliability or servicing. At the time of publication all data is correct for the operation of the equipment at the voltage and/or temperature referred to. Performance data indicates typical values related to the particular product.

This manual is copyright © by Trio DataCom Pty Ltd. All rights reserved. No part of the documentation or the information supplied may be divulged to any third party without the express written permission of Trio DataCom Pty Ltd.

Same are proprietary to Trio DataCom Pty Ltd and are supplied for the purposes referred to in the accompanying documentation and must not be used for any other purpose. All such information remains the property of Trio DataCom Pty Ltd and may not be reproduced, copied, stored on or transferred to any other media or used or distributed in any way save for the express purposes for which it is supplied.

Products offered may contain software which is proprietary to Trio DataCom Pty Ltd. However, the offer of supply of these products and services does not include or infer any transfer of ownership of such proprietary information and as such reproduction or re-use without the express permission in writing from Trio DataCom Pty Ltd is forbidden.

Permission may be applied for by contacting Trio DataCom Pty Ltd in writing.

## Modifications

| Issue 1 | February 1993 (Preliminary) |
| :---: | :---: |
| Issue 2 | May 1993 Major Changes to Section 3 |
| Issue 3 | September 1993 |
|  | Minor Changes to sections, $\begin{aligned} & 3.1,3.2 .1,3.2 .2 .1,3.2 .7,3.4 .3,3.4 .4, \\ & 4.4,4.5,4.7,4.7 .2,4.7 .3\end{aligned}$ |
|  | Major Changes; Inserted new section 3.2.6 KISS/SLIP <br> Deleted section 4 Programming <br> Deleted section 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 5.7.7 AFC Alignment |
|  | Removed Filter Alignment Setup Diagram |
|  | Inserted RSSI Level cf Received Signal (typical) |
| Issue 4 | February 1994 |
|  | Minor Changes to all sections |
|  | Additions to Section 3 for Firmware V2.2 and Synchronous Operation |
| Issue 5 | March 1994 |
|  | Addition of section 5.2.6.1 and 5.2.6.4 |
|  | Revised figure on page 75 |
| Issue 6 | September 1994 |
|  | Addition to Section 3.2.5, 4.7.1, 4.7.2, 4.7.3, 4.7.4 |
|  | Addition of Sections 3.3.11.1, 3.3.11.2, 4.5.1, |
| Issue 7 | April 1995 |
|  | Addition to Sections 3.8.11.2 and 3.8.12.5 Rev D Sync LED |
| Issue 8 | September 1995 |
|  | Insertion of new Section 3.2 |
| Issue 9 | June 1998 |
|  | Section 3.3.6 replaced |
| Issue 10 | February 1999 |

## Modifications (cont.)

## Issue 11 February 1999

Minor changes to Sections 1.5, 3.3.1,
Deleted Section 1.6, 4.5.1
Replaced Section 5

| Issue $12 \quad$ July 2000 |  |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | Minor Change to Section 7 |

Issue 13 February 2001
Change of Company Name

## SECTION 1

## INTRODUCTION

## 1 INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

The TC-900DR is a Full Duplex 900 MHz Radio, featuring a fully integrated 4800 or 9600 bps data modem.

The entire unit is housed in a robust metal enclosure that provides a compact and transportable means for the transmission of data over radio.

The product has been fully designed and developed in Australia, by an Australian owned and managed company.

The TC-900DR meets the ACA SP4/89 specification which covers radio data transmissions over point-to-point and point-to-multipoint systems.

It is ideally suited for applications such as :
, Transaction Processing.
, Public Utility Telemetry Systems.
, Alarm Monitoring.
, Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition.
" Energy Distribution.
, Inventory Control
, Common Carrier Data Services.
, Temporary Installations
The modem provides byte oriented packet data communications over narrow band FM systems, using digital filtered binary FSK modulation.

The TC-900DR can be supplied for use with $12.5 \mathrm{kHz}, 15 \mathrm{kHz}, 25 \mathrm{kHz}$ or 30 kHz channel spacings. Its operational parameters can be programmed with the TC-D Series installation programmer. This is a separate software package that runs on an IBM compatible PC under Windows 95/98/NT.

### 1.2 FACTORY QUALITY ASSURANCE

The TC-900DR has been designed and manufactured with particular emphasis placed on the following points :
\{ State of the art design techniques.
\{ Simple assembly/disassembly.
\{ Minimal alignment requirements.
\{ Manufactured using quality components.
All units have been manufactured using automated assembly procedures. This assures attention to detail and a high level of quality control.

All components used are of high quality, and conform to Trio DataCom's required specifications. The component suppliers provide batch, date and manufacturing criteria that are required to meet quality control standards.

Each unit is individually tested with an inbuilt self diagnostic program. It is then passed through a set of automatic test procedures with minimal human intervention. This ensures a consistently manufactured and performing product. Many of the alignments are factory set and should not require re-alignment in the field.

Trio DataCom's quality control does not finish here. Once each unit has passed its individual tests, it is placed in a cyclic heat/cooling chamber. This chamber is automatically cycled from $-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+65^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, twice, over a twenty hour period. During this time, the modem controller - using external precision calibrated test equipment - monitors and stores frequency stability versus temperature data. The TC-900DR uses this information to achieve its temperature compensated, frequency stability level of 1 ppm .

Power output is measured during the temperature cycling. This is achieved by having the unit connected to a PC and various test equipment via a GPIB. Units that fail any of these tests are reported by the test program and corrective action taken before going through the complete cycle once again. Each unit shipped from the factory comes with a factory alignment printout which details:
n Configuration.
. Transmit frequency.
" Receive frequency.
, Receiver sensitivity.
" Transmitter power output.
" Transmitter modulation.
In most cases, the radio transmitter as shipped from the factory will require no re-alignment.

It is this care and quality control that ensures that the purchaser of a TC-900DR radio modem, obtains a consistently manufactured and performance specified product, which has been "burned in" to minimise any operational failures.

### 1.3 FEATURES

Advanced microwave and digital techniques were employed during the design phase of the TC-900DR, ensuring an innovative and state of the art product.

Features include :
\{ Fully integrated full duplex radio and modem
\{ Built in antenna diplexer
\{ Power output $+30 \mathrm{dBm}(1$ Watt nom) at antenna connector
\{ Radio meets ACA SP4/89 requirements 2/90
\{ In-built transparent remote diagnotics capability.
\{ Custom single chip modem - digital signal processing
\{ $4800 \& 9600$ bps transfer rates, full duplex
\{ Selectable 110..19k2 asynchronous RS-232 host interface
\{ Unique collision avoidance facilities
\{ Integrated supervisory signalling channel
\{ Software selectable configuration parameters
\{ Configurable bit error rate testing
\{ Excessive temperature power fold-back
\{ Auxiliary port for use with an optional supervisory audio handset

### 1.4 SPECIFICATIONS

### 1.4.1 RADIO SECTION

| Rx frequency range | : | 923 MHz to 933 MHz (see note 1) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Tx frequency range |  | 847 MHz to 857MHz (see note 2) |
| Channel spacing | : | Fully synthesized $12.5 \mathrm{kHz} / 25 \mathrm{kHz}$, [opt $15 / 30$ ] with programmable $1 / 2$ channel raster offset |
| Frequency stability | : | $1 \mathrm{ppm}\left(-10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $\left.65^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \mathrm{amb}\right),\left[\mathrm{ppt}-30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ], aging <= 1ppm/Annum |
| Power output at Antenna connector | . | $+30 \mathrm{dBm} \pm 1 \mathrm{dBm}$ ( 1 W nom) <br> switchable under software control $200 \mathrm{~mW} / 1 \mathrm{~W}$ |
| Duty cycle |  | Continuous |
| Output impedance |  | 50 Ohms |
| Timeout timer |  | Programmable from 1 sec . to 28 minutes (max) |
| Tx key up time |  | <= to 1 mS (output _ 1 dB of power). |
| Rx sensitivity | : | 0.5 uV at antenna input for 12 dB SINAD at "delayed Rx signal" test point. |
| Rx intermodulation | : | $>=70 \mathrm{~dB}$ spurious free dynamic range. |
| Rx spurious responses | : | $<=-65 \mathrm{~dB}$. |
| Tx spurious emissions |  | <=-65 dBc (ref unmodulated carrier). |

Full duplex with single antenna.

Note 1. The reciprocal frequency option for point-to-point operation or point to multi-point base repeaters is available as follows :

- Rx frequency range 847 MHz to 857 MHz .
- Tx frequency range 923 MHz to 933 MHz .

Note 2. The transmitter is normally supplied, with its frequency offset from the receiver by 76 MHz .

### 1.4.2 MODEM SECTION

| User Ports | $:$ | DB-9 connector, EIA RS232, DCE, serial <br> asynchronous, $300 . .19 \mathrm{k} 2$ baud, $7 / 8 \mathrm{bit}$, <br> no/odd/even parity. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Data Rate | $:$ | $4800 / 9600 \mathrm{bps}$ Full Duplex. |
| BER | $:$ | Less than 10E-6 @ -105dbm measured at antenna port |
| Data Format | $:$ | Narrow band digital filtered binary FSK Modulation, <br> using Trio DataCom's DFM4-9 digital modem chipset, <br> including Trio's unique supervisory signalling channel <br> C/DSMA collision avoidance scheme. |
| Synchronisation Delay: | 20 milliseconds. |  |

### 1.4.3 RADIO AND MODEM SECTIONS COMBINED



### 1.4.4 CONNECTORS

| User RS-232 Connection | DB9 female wired as DCE (modem). (AMP Part \# 747844-5) |
| :---: | :---: |
| Mating connectors | DB9 male solder type. <br> (AMP Part \# 747983-3) <br> Backshell to suit. <br> (AMP Part \# 205729-1). <br> Optional supplied to order. |
| Antenna Connection | Gold plated SMA female bulkhead. (E.F.JOHNSON Part \# 142-0701-501) |
| Mating connector | SMA male to RG223 crimp type. (E.F.JOHNSON Part \# 142-0407-006) Optional supplied to order |
| AC/DC Power Connector | 2 pin locking (9A rating). <br> (PCB SOCKET MOLEX Part \# M5569-2A2) |
| Mating connector | (RECEPTACLE MOLEX Par\# M5557-2R) (RECEPT PINS MOLEX Part \# M5556-TL). Supplied with standard unit. |
| Supervisory Audio |  |
| Handset Connector | 6 pin modular jack. <br> (AMP Part \# 520250-3) |
| Mating connector | 6 pin modular jack plug. <br> (AMP Part \# 5-641337-3). <br> Supplied with optional audio handset. |

### 1.5 OPTIONAL ACCESSORIES

Trio stock a large range of ancillary devices including coax cables, RF connectors, antennas, lightning protection, power supplies, etc.

Please contact Sales for futher information.

## SECTION 2

## HARDWARE TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

## 2 HARDWARE TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

### 2.1 GENERAL

The TC-900DR is a 900 MHz full duplex radio complete with radio modem and antenna diplexer. In this and subsequent descriptions to follow, references have been made to block diagrams, circuit diagrams and component loading diagrams.

These can be found in appendix $A$, at the rear of this manual.
The unit can be divided into five major sub-blocks :
Radio section.
Antenna diplexer section.
Audio handset.
Modem section.
Unit housing assembly.

### 2.2 RADIO SECTION

The radio section is built on a single PCB with approximate dimensions of $193 \mathrm{~mm} \times$ $152 \mathrm{~mm} \times 1.6 \mathrm{~mm}$.

This section consists of the following main blocks:
Receiver.
Transmitter.
Frequency control. Interfaces.

Each of these blocks can be further broken down as follows :
Receiver.
Pre-amplifier.
Mixer.
45 MHz I.F. filter.
FM I.F. \& Demodulator
Audio processing.

- Data.
- Voice.

RSSI processing.
Transmitter.
Audio processing.

- Data.
- Voice.

Modulator.
Multiplier.
Mixer.
Power amplifier.
Control.

- PTT.
- Power.

Frequency control
Synthesiser.
Local oscillator.
AFC
Interfaces
Modem section.
Antenna diplexer.
Audio handset.

### 2.2.1 RECEIVER

The general form of the receiver circuitry is shown in diagrams "DR9 Macro Block Diagram" (drawing number TC01-05-19 sheet 3/3), and "900 MHz Radio - Block Diagram" (drawing number TC01-05-19 sheet $2 / 3$ ).

### 2.2.1.1 PRE-AMPLIFIER

The receiver pre-amplifier obtains signal direct from the antenna diplexer port connector X2. It consists of two stages. The first stage is optimised to give a low noise figure, while the second is optimised to produce gain.

The central devices used are MRF5711 high frequency transistors. They provide the basis for a wide band amplifier that can receive from the lowest band frequency range of 852 to 854 MHz to the higher band frequency range of 928 to 930 MHz .

The RF selectivity is provided by the diplexer filter.
Strip line impedance matching networks are employed to ensure optimum performance of the amplifier.

The overall gain of the pre-amplifier is set to 20 dB .

### 2.2.1.2 MIXER

The receiver mixer consists of a 180 "rat race hybrid ring" followed by a passive Schottky mixer diode.

The mixer injection frequency is set 45 MHz from the required receive frequency, (high side injection for 930 MHz receive and low side for 850 MHz receive). This results in an I.F. frequency output of 45 MHz .

The level of the injection is set to 6 dBm by the amplifier stage Q3.

### 2.2.1.3 FIRST I.F. STRIP FILTER

The required receiver mixer product is filtered by the first I.F. filter. The filter is a bandpass crystal controlled device, centred on 45 MHz , and provides image rejection for the second IF Mixer.

The filter is aligned for optimum response by adjustment of inductors L4,L3 and L5.

TC-900DR User Manual

### 2.2.1.4 FM IF and DEMODULATOR

The heart of the demodulator section is an NE615D high performance low power mixer FM IF system IC.

This device incorporates a mixer/oscillator, two limiting intermediate frequency amplifiers, a quadrature detector, muting circuitry, logarithmic RSSI, and a voltage regulator.

The input to the device is from the output of the 45 MHz first IF strip filter. This is applied at $R F_{\text {in }}$ and $R F_{\text {bypass }}$ pins (U2-p1,p2).
This signal is applied internally to a Gilbert cell mixer, which is set to convert the signal down to 455 kHz .

The mixer injection is supplied by an internal oscillator, which is driven by an external oscillating signal applied at the XTAL OSC pins (U2-p3,p4).
The basic injection frequency is governed by the 44.545 MHz crystal XTAL1. This produces a mixer output product of 455 kHz .

The output of the mixer is available at MIXER OUT (U1-p20). This is applied to a 455 kHz centred bandpass filter. This acts as the "front end" filter, CF1.
The bandwidth and rolloff characteristics of this filter are set, depending on the required baud rate of the data being used on the modem, and the required channel spacing. Refer to Circuit Diagram for filter types.

The filtered output is then applied to the input of the internal IF amplifier, IF AMPIN (U1-p18). The bandwidth of the amplifier is about 40 MHz , with a gain of about 39 $\mathrm{dB}(\mathrm{uv})$. C 10 and C 11 provide IF amplifier decoupling.

The output is available at IF AMP OUT (U1-p16). This is applied to a 455 kHz centered bandpass filter. This acts as the "rear end" filter, CF2.

Again the filter selection depends on the required bandwidth. Refer to Circuit Diagram for filter types.

The filtered output is then applied to the input of the internal IF limiter, LIMITER IN (U1-p14). The bandwidth of the limiter is about 28 MHz , with a gain of about $62 \mathrm{~dB}(\mathrm{uv})$. C13 and C14 provide IF limiter decoupling.

The signal from the second limiting amplifier is passed to an internal Gilbert cell quadrature detector, as well as to LIMITER OUT (U1-p11).

One of the Gilbert cell ports is driven directly by the IF, the other by a tuned quadrature network, which is driven by the IF signal from LIMITER OUT. The tuned network is based around a ceramic resonator CF3. The Q of the network is varied depending on the required baud rate used by the modem. For 9600 baud the link LK3 is inserted, giving a higher damping factor than that required for 4800 baud, where the link is removed.

This gives the two input signals applied to the Gilbert cell a 90 degree phase relationship, the output of which is the demodulated audio/data signal.

The output signal is available at UNMUTED AUDIO OUT (U1-p9). A gated output is also available at MUTED AUDIO OUT (U1-p8).

### 2.2.1.5 AUDIO PROCESSING

### 2.2.1.5.1 DATA

The demodulated data signal output has been assigned to the UNMUTED AUDIO OUT pin (U1-p9). This ensures no interruption to the flow of data.
The signal is filtered by the C22, R20, R29 and C23 filter network. This is to remove any high frequency components produced at the output of the quadrature detector.
It is then amplified and DC level shifted by op-amp U1:C. The amount of DC bias applied to the signal can be varied by the potentiometer VR2. For correct processing by the modem, this level is set to 2 V . The AC level of the signal is set to about $1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {p-p }}$

### 2.2.1.5.2 AUDIO

The demodulated audio signal output has been assigned to the MUTED AUDIO OUT pin (U1-p8). This allows switching control of the audio passed to the handset earpiece.
The signal is filtered by R23 and C17. This is to remove any high frequency components produced at the output of the quadrature detector.

It is then buffered, amplified and level shifted by op-amp U1:D, and presented to the handset via coupling capacitor C 20 and connector X3-p2.

The mute control signal is applied to the NE615 (FM IF system IC) MUTE IN pin (U2-p5). When active, the audio output signal from the IC is attenuated by greater than 60 dB .

### 2.2.1.6 RSSI

The RSSI output is presented by the NE615 at RSSI OUT (U2-p7). This signal is logarithmic with an output range greater than 90 dB . It is used for audio mute processing, and by the modem section as a data qualifier signal.

The signal is first passed through a unity gain buffer, op-amp U1:B, before it is split.
The RSSI level is compared with the setting of "audio mute adj" potentiometer VR1, by op-amp U1:A. The result is passed to the MUTE IN pin of the NE615.

This allows a suitable mute cutoff point to be set for the received audio sent to the handset earpiece.

The RSSI signal is also passed to the modem section for processing via R19 and connector X1-p21.

### 2.2.2 TRANSMITTER

The general form of the transmit circuitry is shown in diagrams "DR9 Macro Block Diagram" (drawing number TC01-05-19 sheet 3/3), and "900 MHz Radio - Block Diagram" (drawing number TC01-05-19 sheet 2/3).

### 2.2.2.1 AUDIO PROCESSING

### 2.2.2.1.1 DATA

The transmit data signal enters the radio section via connector J*3-p13, from the modem section. It is biased via R68 and R75 to a DC level of about 0.86 V . The signal is then passed through a level setting potentiometer VR2, used to set the level of transmit deviation.

It is then presented to the input of the modulator circuit.

### 2.2.2.1.2 VOICE

The transmit voice signal enters the radio section via connector X3-p4, from the microphone in the handset. The pre-amp in the microphone circuit is given some bias via R76.

The signal is first passed through a clipping circuit. This consists of back to back clamping diode pair D2, AC-coupled via C154. This ensures that a maximum transmit deviation level is imposed.

The modulator circuitry is based around a low power FM transmitter system IC,MC2833. Included in this device is a microphone amplifier and clipper. The audio is passed to the amplifier via R76 at the MIC AMP INPUT pin (U7-p5).

Feedback for gain is supplied by R76, and band limiting by C50. The amplifier output is presented at MIC AMP OUTPUT (U7-p4).

Further low pass filtering is provided by the network of R71, C49, R59.. and C42... C43 provides a rising response below 100 Hz . This filtering is needed to shape the base band signal, so as the transmit frequency spectrum stays within channel boundaries.

The audio is coupled into the modulator circuit at the MODULATOR INPUT pin of the MC2833 (U7-p3).

### 2.2.2.2 MODULATOR

The heart of the modulator section is an MC2833 low power FM transmitter system IC. This device is a one chip FM transmitter subsystem designed for FM communication equipment. It includes a microphone amplifier, a variable reactance modulator, a voltage controlled oscillator, and two auxiliary transistors.

Data is fed directly to the input of the reactance modulator at the MODULATOR INPUT pin (U7-p3). The audio channel is fed via an inbuilt clipper amplifier in the MC2833. The output of this variable reactance circuit is used to modulate the FM carrier.

The carrier frequency of the modulator is provided by an internal oscillator, which is driven by an external oscillating signal applied at the RF OSC pins (U7-p15,p16).

This oscillating signal is governed by the 20.166 MHz crystal XTAL3. The actual applied frequency is set by the modulating signal, which slightly varies ("pulls") the crystal frequency. This is achieved by connection of the crystals circuit to the output of the variable reactance circuit VARIABLE REACTANCE OUTPUT (U7-p1). This output is coupled to the crystal via a frequency trimming coil L6.

The output FM signal is presented at the RF OUTPUT pin (U7-p14).

### 2.2.2.3 MULTIPLIER

The output of the modulator is passed to a frequency tripler stage employing auxiliary transistor TR2. This places the carrier frequency at 60.5 MHz .

It then passes to a frequency doubler stage employing auxiliary transistor TR1, where the carrier is moved up to 121 MHz .

The signal is amplified through these stages to a level of about -4 dBm at 121 MHz .

### 2.2.2.4 MIXER

The transmit FM signal at 121 MHz when mixed with the VCO frequency by U8 produces a transmitter signal 76 MHz from the receiver frequency.

The mixer employed is an MCL SBL-1X monolithic doubly balanced mixer (UB).
The transmit VCO signal is amplified to a level of about +6 dBm by Q2, and applied to the " L " input of the mixer. The 121 MHz signal is applied to the "I" input of the mixer.

To select the correct mixing product for the transmitter, a tunable filter using C 78 and a coupled stripline circuit is used.

The output signal is then buffered by two MRF5711 transistors Q4 and Q5, to provide about +4 dBm of signal level, which is applied to the final amplifier section.

### 2.2.2.5 POWER AMPLIFIER

The power amplifier provides an overall gain of about 30 dB . This is achieved by three stages of amplification.

The first stage uses an MRF5711 transistor (Q8). This device is primarily designed for high gain, low-noise, small signal amplifiers, and is ideal for a transmitter pre amplifier. This stage provides about 13 dB of gain. The power control circuit acts on this stage to provide constant power at the PA. output connector.

The second stage uses an MRF8372 transistor (Q9). This device is primarily designed for wideband, large signal predriver stages, in the 800 MHz range. This provides a further 10 dB of gain.

The final stage uses two MRF8372 transistors (Q10, Q11) in a parallel configuration to provide the final output power. Each of these stages provides about 10 dB of gain. The output impedance is matched to 50 ohms via the use of balanced impedance strip lines.

The transmitted signal is presented at connector X 4 , at a level of about +32 dBm , where it is passed to the diplexer section.

### 2.2.2.6 CONTROL

### 2.2.2.6.1 PTT

PTT must be activated for the TC-900DR to transmit an RF signal. There are two sources of $P \Pi$, the audio handset, and the modem section.

PTT from the audio handset is referred to as "manual PTT". It enters the radio section via connector X3-p6. It is passed to the PTT control switch transistor Q12. PTT is active LOW, and turns on Q12 when applied.

PTT from the modem section enters the radio section via connector X1-p12, "/PTT". It is connected to the PTT control switch transistor Q12.

When PTT is not activated the transmitter is totally disabled. All stages of the transmit chain are turned off. This is to ensure that power consumption is kept to a minimum.

The PTT signal connects to the start of the transmit chain at the multiplier stage.
The internal transistors of the MC2833 IC, TR1 and TR2 have their bases effective grounded, turning off the devices. Similarly the mixer output buffer and amplifier transistors Q4 and Q5 are turned off as are the final amplifier stages employing Q8, Q9, Q11 and Q10.

When the PTT is activated, bias is applied to all these stages and transmission is possible.

Note : Tx enable must also be active to allow transmission.

### 2.2.2.6.2 TRANSMIT ENABLE

Transmit enable is a further control placed on the transmitter circuits. No transmission is possible unless the transmit enable signal is active. The signal enters the radio section via connector X1-p11, "TXX EN", from the modem section.

This signal basically enables the PTT switching transistor Q12, thus providing VCC for the 20.166 MHz oscillator section of the MC2833 modulator IC, and bias to the handset microphone.

### 2.2.2.6.3 POWER

The RF power output of the TC-900DR can be set to two levels. Low power level is 200 mW , and high power is 1 W .

This level is controlled by two dc levels. One signal is a control level from the modem section, the other from an RF detector located at the output of the transmitter itself. These two signals are used in conjunction to hold the output power constant.

The signal from the modem section enters the radio section via connector X1-p10, "TXPWR". The signal is fed to an op-amp comparison circuit U9:A, via level setting potentiometer VR4.

The level is compared to that actually detected at the output of the transmitter, by the circuit based around diode D3. The comparator output is then used to bias the first stage of the P.A. section (Q8) of the transmitter, hence varying the transistor gain performance and ultimately the output RF power. This basic feedback network is required to keep the power at a constant level, regardless of any external conditions.

The detected output power level is also fed back to the modem section for monitoring and analysis via connector X1-p9, "TXPWR SENSE".

### 2.2.2.6.4 TEMPERATURE SENSE

A temperature sensing device is included in the radio section. The device used is an LM335 precision temperature sensor, U6. It is operated as a two terminal zener diode, with a breakdown voltage directly proportional to absolute temperature, with an output of +10 mV per degree kelvin.

The temperature data output is passed to the modem section for analysis and processing via connector X 1 -p14, "TEMP SENSE".

During the "Burn $\ln$ " cycle, that the TC-900DR is passed through during production, the unit calibrates the output of the sensor to the test temperature. In particular it stores the hottest temperature reached by the test cycle (about 65C).

If the unit reaches this maximum temperature setting while operating in the field, the modem section of the TC-900DR will automatically signal the power control circuit to place the transmitter into low power mode $(200 \mathrm{~mW})$.

This low level of output power is retained until the temperature sensor signals the modem section, that the temperature has fallen back below the maximum temperature. When this occurs the transmitter is placed back to its previous power setting. A hysteresis is built into the microprocessor control circuitry to stop power jitter.
This scheme is referred to as "High Temperature Fold Back". It is used to protect the transmitter final power transistors from any damage that may be encountered under extreme temperature conditions.

### 2.2.3 FREQUENCY CONTROL

### 2.2.3.1 SYNTHESISER

The synthesiser section provides a local oscillator for use by the receiver and transmitter sections.

The synthesiser circuitry is based around a TBB206 PLL frequency synthesiser IC.
This device is a complex PLL circuit in CMOS technology for processor controlled frequency synthesis. The processor resides in the modem section, and three basic control lines are used to interface to the device. The enable "EN", data "DA" and clock "CL" control signals are passed to the TBB206 via connector X1-p16,p17,p18 respectively.

The reference frequency for the synthesiser is applied to the "RI" pin of the TBB206 (U3-p2). This reference is provided by a 12.000 MHz voltage adjustable temperature compensated crystal oscillator (VTCXO), XTAL2. This input has a sensitive preamplifier for a 16-bit (R)eference divider. C33 provides AC coupling for the input.

The VCO frequency is applied to the "FI" input pin of the TBB206 (U3-p8). This input has a highly sensitive preamplifier for a 12-bit $N$ divider and a 7 -bit A divider. C29 provides AC coupling for the input.

The actual signal applied to the " Fl " input is from the output of a TBB202 dual modulus divider IC (U4-p4). This is to transform the actual VCO frequency of between 786 MHz and 996 MHz , down to a frequency acceptable for use by the "FI" input.

The divider ratio selected by the TBB202 is determined by the state of the "MOD" input pin (U4-p6). If the signal is HIGH, then a ratio of $1: 128$ is used. If the signal is LOW, a ratio of $1: 129$ is used. The state of this signal is controlled by the TBB206 synthesiser "MOD" output pin (U3-p7). The TBB206 drives this output LOW at the beginning of a cycle. When the A divider has reached its set value, the "MOD" output is set to HIGH. When the $N$ divider reaches its set value, the output is set LOW again and the cycle is repeated.

The input to the TBB202 divider is from the VCO output via a strip line impedance matching network. The signal is applied to the "11" pin (U44-p1).

The TBB202 can be placed into standby mode, when not in use. This is achieved by connection of the "STB" pin (U4-p7), to the multi function output port of the TBB206 synthesiser (U3-p6). This port is driven by the DFM4-9 modem IC located in the modem section.

The phase detector signal is provided on the "PD" pin of the TBB206 (U3-p12). This signal has especially short anti backlash pulses to avoid any "dead zones", and to neutralise any small phase deviations. This signal is passed to the loop filter of the VCO circuit.

A lock detect indication is given by the TBB206 synthesiser at the "LD" output pin (U3-p14). This signal is filtered and shaped by the network using R47 and C36, and presented to the modem section for monitoring and processing, via connector X1-p19.

### 2.2.3.2 VCO

The VCO used is an MQC309 series VCO. The exact device used depends on the required frequencies that the unit has to work with.

Two types are used :
A. MQC309 798 - Frequency range of 784 MHz to 816 MHz

Gives unit frequency ranges of :

- Transmit : 905 MHz to 937 MHz
- Receive : 829 MHz to 861 MHz
B. MQC309 978 - Frequency range of 962 MHz to 994 MHz

Gives unit frequency ranges of :

- Transmit : 841 MHz to 873 MHz
- Receive : 917 MHz to 949 MHz

The 798 type employs low side injection to the mixers, whereas the 978 type employs high side injection.

The loop filter consists of R44, C40, C41 and R43.
The output of the VCO is passed to the receiver mixer via RXMIX, and to the transmitter mixer via TXMIX signal lines. Each of these is impedance matched by strip line circuits for optimum performance.

The layout and selection of all these components has been done in such a way so as to minimise VCO noise being impressed onto either the transmitted or received RF signals.

### 2.2.3.3 VCO TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION

Frequency temperature compensation is provided for by an input to the reference oscillator circuit.

During the "Burn In" cycle, that the TC-900DR is passed through during production, the unit calibrates the output of the temperature sensor to the test temperature and to any frequency variations that occur, and stores the results.

When the unit is operating in the field, the temperature of the unit is constantly being analysed. Should a frequency offset be required based on the calibration measurements, the modem section signals to the 12.000 MHz reference oscillator to vary its frequency slightly. This signal is passed to the radio section via connector X1-p15, "TEMP COMP". The voltage on this line "pulls" the reference oscillator XTAL2 onto a new frequency, which corresponds to the correct offset required.

Note : Because the temperature compensation for the installed VTCXO is held in the NVRAM of the modem it is imperative that modems and radio boards are maintained as matched pairs. Should either the VCO or NVRAM require replacement it is highly recommended that the unit be returned to the manufacturer for re-calibration.

### 2.2.3.4 RECEIVER AFC

Automatic frequency control is provided for the received signal. The control signal is applied to the radio section from the modem section via connector X1-p22, "AFC CTL".
The basic injection frequency to the front end mixer of the NE615 FM demodulator IC (U2), is governed by the 44.545 MHz crystal XTAL1. The actual applied frequency can be set by the level of the AFC signal, which slightly varies ("pulls") the XTAL1 crystal frequency via the varactor diode DV1.

The modem section monitors the average DC level of the received signal (DATA signal $\mathrm{X} 1-\mathrm{p} 13$ ), which gives an indication of received frequency drift.

From this the modem section calculates the required compensation necessary and applies it to the "AFC CTL" signal line.

A reference signal is passed back to the modem section from the radio section via connector X1-p23, "AFC REF". This is processed by the modem section, and used to help determine the level of AFC signal level.

### 2.2.4 INTERFACES

### 2.2.4.1 MODEM SECTION

The radio section interfaces to the modem section via connector X 1 . Attached permanently to this connector is a 90 mm length of 26 way ribbon cable, fitted with a female 26 way connector at the other end. This attaches to connector JX3 on the modem section PCB.

Refer to interface diagram "RADIO MODEM INTERFACE", drawing number TC01-05-18 sheet 1/3.

CONNECTOR $\times 1 / J \times 3$ SIGNAL DESCRIPTION
PIN NUMBERS

| 1 | 13V8 POWER SUPPLY RAIL |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2 | 13V8 POWER SUPPLY RAIL |  |
| 3 | 13V8 POWER SUPPLY RAIL |  |
| 4 | GROUND |  |
| 5 | GROUND |  |
| 6 | GROUND |  |
| 7 | 8V POWER SUPPLY |  |
| 8 | 8V POWER SUPPLY |  |
| 9 | TXPWR SENSE | (o/p- TRANSMIT POWER SENSE) |
| 10 | TXPWR | (i/p-TRANSMIT POWER LEVEL) |
| 11 | TX EN | (i/p-TRANSMIT ENABLE) |
| 12 | IPTT | (i/p-PRESS TO TALK) |
| 13 | DATA | (i/p-TRANSMIT DATA) |
| 14 | TEMP SENSE | (o/p-TEMPERATURE SENSOR) |
| 15 | TEMPCOMP | (i/p-TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION) |
| 16 | EN | (i/p-ENABLE FOR SYNTH) |
| 17 | DA | (i/p-DATA FOR SYNTH) |
| 18 | CK | (i/p-CLOCK FOR SYNTH) |
| 19 | LD | (o/p-LOCK DETECT FROM SYNTH) |
| 20 | DATA OUT | (o/p-RECEIVED DATA) |
| 21 | RSSI | (o/p-RSSI SIGNAL) |
| 22 | AFC CTL | (i/p-AFC CONTROL) |
| 23 |  | (UNUSED) |
| 24 | SUPPLY/MIC | (UNUSED) |
| 25 | TEST1 | (UNUSED) |
| 26 | TEST2 | (UNUSED) |

### 2.2.4.2 ANTENNA DIPLEXER

The interface between the radio section and the antenna diplexer section is via coaxial connectors $X 4$ and $X 2$, and low loss coaxial cables.

| CONNECTOR | SIGNAL DESCRIPTION |
| :--- | :--- |
| $x 4$ | TRANSMITTER OUTPUT |
| X2 | RECEIVER INPUT |

### 2.2.4.3 AUDIO HANDSET

The interface between the radio section and the audio handset is via the modular- 6 pin connector X3.

| CONNECTOR X3 <br> PIN NUMBERS | SIGNAL DESCRIPTION |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 8V POWER SUPPLY |
| 2 | AUDIO OUT (o/p-AUDIO TO EARPIECE) |
| 3 | GROUND |
| 4 | MIC (i/p-MICROPHONE AUDIO) |
| 5 | GROUND |
| 6 | MANUAL PTT $\quad$ (i/p-HANDSET PTT) |

### 2.3 ANTENNA DIPLEXER SECTION

### 2.3.1 GENERAL

The antenna diplexer section of the TC-900DR is a separate plug in module, that "piggy backs" the radio section PCB.

The diplexer performs two major tasks. Firstly it couples both the transmit and receive RF paths to the antenna while providing high isolation between them, and secondly it provides image and spurious rejection for each of these paths, with high $Q$ bandpass filters.

The isolation between the transmit side and the receive side is greater than 50 dB .
The diplexer consists of two teflon PCB's bonded together using a critical temperature and pressure process. The top and bottom outer layers are connected via brass eyelets, that are pressed through the PCB. This eliminates the need for through hole plating of Teflon, which requires the use of dangerous chemicals.

The design is essentially two continuous ground planes, filled in between, with laminate dielectric, and stripline filter tracks which are centrally located between these ground planes.

The etching of the filter tracks is closely monitored and controlled to ensure an accuracy of better than $0.001^{\prime \prime}$ in track width and spacing.

The diplexer has been factory tested to ensure bandpass and performance characteristics are met. The diplexer has approximately 3 dB of loss at 930 MHz and 2 dB of loss at 850 MHz .

This diplexer requires no alignment in the field.

### 2.3.2 INTERFACES

The antenna diplexer connects to the radio section via low loss coaxial cables and connectors, and to the units antenna via a SMA connector.

Two versions of the diplexer are available, depending on the transmit and receive frequencies used. The difference between the two is the loading of the SMA connector.

TYPE-A CONNECTIONS (Transmit frequency $=930 \mathrm{MHz}$ range)

| DIPLEXER CONNECTOR | SIGNAL DESCRIPTION AND DESTINATION |
| :--- | :--- |
| 850 MHz port | RF RECEIVE - RADIO SECTION X2 |
| 930 MHz port | RF TRANSMIT - RADIO SECTION X4 |
| ANT port | ANTENNA |

TYPE-B CONNECTIONS (Transmit frequency $=850 \mathrm{MHz}$ range)
DIPLEXER CONNECTOR SIGNAL DESCRIPTION AND DESTINATION
850 MHz port RF TRANSMIT - RADIO SECTION X4
930 MHz port RF RECEIVE - RADIO SECTION X2
ANT port ANTENNA

### 2.4 AUDIO HANDSET SECTION

### 2.4.1 GENERAL

Refer to diagram "MTCU HANDSET MAIN PCB \& MIC PCB CIRCUIT DIAGRAM", drawing number 5015-A200-50.

The handset provides an audio link between units, to assist in link setup and commissioning. It is not intended for general use and the equipment is not licensed for voice operation only.

Caution ; When the handset is inserted into the TC-900DR, reliable data transmission or reception is not possible. Unintentional voice traffic on a point to multi point system may cause data corruption to other units.

The data transmission section of the modem is totally disabled, if the handset is plugged in when the TC-900DR is turned on.

The handset contains two PCB's, a receive board and a microphone board, which are connected by a 10 way ribbon cable. Acoustic padding is also included in the handset for improved performance.

The microphone board contains an ECM30 electret microphone, along with a common emitter preamplifier stage (Q1), to provide transmit voice audio.

There are four indication LED's that are not used by the TC-900DR.
The receiver board contains a 78 L 055 V voltage regulator (REG1). This is used to supply power to the LF353 receive amplifier (U2-p7), which drives a DH32-30 ohm earpiece.

The sidetone circuit provided by U2-p1 is disabled and not used by the TC-900DR. Similarly, the LED drivers are disabled.

The PTT switch places a ground connection onto its output signal line, for processing by the radio section.

### 2.4.2 INTERFACES

The audio handset connects directly to the radio section via the RJ11 connector, X3. Attached to the handset is an 8 way flexible curly cord.

| PIN NUMBER | HANDSET CONNECTOR | X3 PIN NUMBER | RADIO SECTION CONNECTOR $\times 3$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | LED CLK | - | UNUSED |
| 2 | LED DATA | - | UNUSED |
| 3 | 13V2 | 1 | 8V POWER SUPPLY |
| 4 | DGND | 3 | GROUND |
| 5 | PTT | 6 | MANUAL PTT |
| 6 | MIC | 4 | MIC |
| 7 | MIC RET | 5 | GROUND |
| 8 | EAR PHONE | 2 | AUDIO OUT |

### 2.5 MODEM SECTION

The modem section is built on a single PCB with approximate overall dimensions of $165 \mathrm{~mm} \times 152 \mathrm{~mm} \times 18 \mathrm{~mm}$.

It consists of the following main blocks :
Modem control

- DFM4-9 modem.
- Reset and watchdog.
- Memory.
- External NVRAM.
- External RAM.

Host interface.
Radio interface.
Transmit signal conditioning.
Receive signal conditioning.

- Data recovery.
- Clock recovery.

User indications.
Power supply
Interfaces.

- Radio section.
- Port A.
- Port B.
- Power.


### 2.5.1 MODEM CONTROL

### 2.5.1.1 DFM4-9 MODEM

The modem section is controlled by a DFM4-9 Trio DataCom modem IC, (U5).
This device is specifically designed to provide data communications from a host computer over a radio channel.

The DFM4-9 is capable of full duplex operation, at data rates of 4800 baud or 9600 baud over the radio channel. The transmitter and receiver data rates may be set independently. The host computer interface provides two RS232 asynchronous serial ports, configurable for a variety of baud rates, and data formats.

In the standard delivery format of the modem, only one asynchronous serial port is operational. (Port A).

Advanced data recovery techniques are employed to ensure excellent performance in both good and noisy signal environments.

The data transmission method used, employs advanced optimal waveform shaping techniques. This maximises the recovered signal at the destination receiver, while remaining within the allocated RF channel bandwidths. The method uses computer generated Finite Impulse Response (FIR) techniques, to derive the transmitted waveform data.

The modem features a unique supervisory signalling channel, which embeds low speed data in the primary bit-stream, and is transparent to the user of the primary channel.

To drive the DFM4-9 modem clocking circuits, an external resonator is required. A 19.6608 MHz crystal (XTAL1) is applied to the OSC pins (U5-p9,10) of the device to achieve this.

A 4 way DIP switch is supplied to set up some configuration parameters of the modem. These are only read by the DFM4-9 at device power up. They connect to the "ESx" pins of the device (U5-p3,p5,p6,p7). Switches 1 and 2 are presently unused, switches 3 and 4 are defined in section 4.5.1.

### 2.5.1.2 RESET AND WATCHDOG

A MAX690 reset and watchdog IC (U3), is used to perform a variety of ancillary functions. This device provides a fixed length reset pulse for the proper initialisation of the modem chip on power up and reinitialisation. The MAX690 monitors the level of the VCC power supply line. If the voltage moves out of specification, the reset output is activated. This ensures that the modem chip recovers correctly in the event of a power failure. The reset signal is applied to the "RESET" pin of the modem (U5-p8).

The MAX690 provides a power monitoring function, which gives advance warning of imminent power supply failure. The DFM4-9 modem checks this signal, applied to its "PF" pin (U5-p2), before performing any transactions with the non-volatile memory, thus preventing accidental corruption of the contents of this memory. This "advance warning", is the length of time that the power supply capacitors hold their charge, after loss of power, before the Vcc supply rail drops below its cutoff level, and a reset pulse is generated.

The MAX690 also includes a "watchdog" timer. This timer must be strobed at a minimum rate, to prevent a reset pulse being generated. The DFM4-9 provides this signal at its "WDO" pin (U5-p22). Should the DFM4-9 modem operation go astray for some reason, it is probable that it will no longer perform this strobing function correctly. This condition is treated as irrecoverable and the MAX690 will timeout on its watchdog function and re-initialise the modem.

### 2.5.1.3 MEMORY

### 2.5.1.3.1 EXTERNAL NVRAM

The DFM4-9 modem, has a wide variety of configurable operating parameters, all of which are stored in an ST24C04 NVRAM IC, (U4). These parameters are read at power up, and determine the operating characteristics of the modem.

The NVRAM has 4096 bits of memory. It is accessed using the standard $I^{2} C$, two wire, bus interface. A feature of this particular device, is a write protect function for one area of the memory.

This write protect feature prevents configuration data being inadvertently corrupted should some anomaly in modem operation occur. A hardware signal line is used to override this write protection feature, so that the configuration data may be changed by manual means. This signal can be accessed via the front panel connector, and is used when the TC-DFM9IP modem programmer is connected.

### 2.5.1.3.2 EXTERNAL RAM

External RAM is used to store data frames.
The RAM used may be either a $6264-8 \mathrm{~K}$ or $62256-32 \mathrm{~K}$ byte IC (U9). The standard TC-900DR is supplied with an 8K package. The DFM4-9 modem, tests the size of the attached RAM on power up.

All of the externally connected RAM is used to store packet data, and is allocated evenly between transmit and receive data. This memory is connected to the modem chip, by an 8 bit bus, and 3 control lines.

Two 8 bit 74HC573 latches (U8 and U10), are used to latch the memory address off the bus, before the data read or write cycle. The read/write control line to the RAM, is passed as the top address line in the MSB address latch.

The RAM read cycle operates as follows :

- The modem sets the two latch control lines, LADR_EN and HADR_EN, high.
- The high-address/R_select is then placed on the 8 bit bus.
- The HADR_EN line is set low to latch the data into U8.
- The lower eight address bits are placed on the bus.
- The LADR_EN line is set to low to latch the data into U10.
- The modem bus port is set to input mode.
- The RAM CE line is set low.
- The modem reads the data off the bus.

The RAM write cycle operates as follows :

- The modem sets the two latch control lines LADR_EN and HADR_EN, high.
- The high-address $W_{\text {_ }}$ select is then placed on the 8 bit bus.
- The HADR_EN line is set low to latch the data into U8.
- The lower eight address bits are placed on the bus.
- The LADR_EN line is set to low to latch the data into U10.
- The modem bus port is set to output mode.
- The modem writes the data to the bus.
- The RAM CE line is set low to write the data into the RAM.

Note: WARNING
A modem containing a $32 K$ RAM package will not be compatible with a modem containing an $8 K$ RAM package if end to end flow control is being used over the data link.

### 2.5.2 HOST INTERFACE

The host interface is provided by two RS232 ports, configured as DCE. These ports are presented to the user as 9 way female DMIN connectors, designated as PORT A and PORT B.

With the standard TC-900DR, only PORT A is operational.
The RS232 level translation is performed by two LT1081/MAX232 line transceivers (U1 and U2). These require a single five volt supply, and include internal charge pumps to generator the required +10 V and -10 V rails.

The four input and four output lines implement one full duplex serial port with RTS/CTSIDTR and DCD. This is PORT A. A second full duplex port with no handshake lines is provided on PORT B.

### 2.5.3 RADIO INTERFACE

The interface to the radio is via a 26 pin PCB header connector, X 4 .
The modem section has full control over the connected radio transceiver. It provides :

- Four lines for synthesiser control (used for RF channel selection).
- RSSI detection.
- Temperature sense input.
- Transmit power sense input.
- Temperature compensation for the synthesiser reference frequency.
- Receiver AFC.
- PTT control.
- Analogue lines for receive and transmit data signals.
- Regulated +13.8 V and +8 V power supplies.

Input to the receiver signal port, RXSIG, is offset by 2.0 V DC, with a signal level of $1 \mathrm{Vp}-\mathrm{p}$ AC.

The transmit signal output, TXSIG, has a signal level of $1 \mathrm{Vp}-\mathrm{p}$ for 4800 BPS , and $2 \mathrm{Vp}-\mathrm{p}$ for 9600 BPS , with a nominal DC offset of 2.0 V . This offset may vary by $\pm 1 \mathrm{v}$ according to the modulator temperature compensation requirements.

An ADC0834 four channel ADC (U6), is used to monitor various analogue quantities within the radio. The DFM4-9 modem communicates with the ADC by controlling 3 lines. An active high chip select, "ADCS" line (U5-p33), a data clock, "DCLK" line (U5-p35), and a serial data, "SD" line (U5-p36).

The state of the data line from the ADC is clocked into internal registers of the DFM4-9 on the rising edge of the clock line. The data stream consists of a four bit preamble, which includes the channel address. From the 5th clock pulse onward, the ADC drives the data line with the data of the conversion, MSB first. The transaction is terminated with the CS line being set to inactive low.

The first channel is used to monitor temperature, by measuring the voltage from an LM335 monolithic temperature sensor U6. The LM335 is situated in the radio section, adjacent to the 20.1666 MHz XTAL and VCXO synthesiser reference oscillator, and is fed into the modem section via connector $\mathrm{X4} 4$-p14, ADC0.

The second channel is used to monitor RSSI, by measuring the RSSI output of the NE615 IF circuit. This signal is fed to the modem section from the radio section via connector X4-p21, ADC1.

The third channel is used to monitor the power level output by the RF transmitter, by measuring a voltage derived in the power control section of the radio. This is used to determine the "health" of the radio transmitter. This signal is fed to the modem section from the radio section via connector $\mathrm{X} 4-\mathrm{p} 9$, ADC 2 .

The fourth channel of the ADC, is used to measure the voltage of the +13.8 volt supply rail and to sense the presence of the audio handset at power up. The handset derives microphone bias from the modulator stage, and the voltage at this point is measured and compared with a fixed nominal value, to determine if the handset is connected at the time of TC-900DR power up. This signal is fed to the modem section from the radio section via connector $X 4-\mathrm{p} 24$, ADC3. This 4 th ADC channel is also multiplexed to measure the AFC control voltage so that an indication of received signal frequency can be made. U14:D is used to perform this switching function.

An auxiliary latch (U11) is provided to supply some of the output control to the radio section.

The latch receives data from the same data buss as the RAM. The lower six bits are fed to an R/2R ladder network DAC (RN2), which is used to present an analogue voltage to the radio's local oscillator synthesiser frequency reference. This correction voltage provides for excellent temperature stability of the radio. This signal is fed to the radio section via connector X4-p 15, TEMP COMP.

The two top bits of the latch, drive auxiliary functions within the radio section.
Bit 6 is used to control the power of the RF transmitter in the radio section. This can be set to a HIGH level of 1 W , or to a LOW level of 200 mW . This signal is fed to the radio section via connector X4-p10, TXPWR.

Bit 7 provides the RF transmitter enable signal to the radio section. No RF signal can be transmitted unless this signal is set to active. This signal is fed to the radio section via connector X4-p11, TX EN.

### 2.5.4 TRANSMIT SIGNAL CONDITIONING

The transmit section of the DFM4-9 modem, outputs a byte of data, four times per bit period, on the "TDx" pins (TD1..TD7, U5-p56..49).

The parallel data is presented to an eight bit R/2R ladder network (RN1). This is a simple DAC which produces the transmit waveform at its output.

This signal is fed into opamp (U13:C) for amplification and filtering. This stage is a single pole low pass filter, used to attenuate clocking noise in the waveform. Two more filter stages follow, U13:B and U13:D.

By using 4 samples per bit, and an 8 bit resolution, precise control of the waveform shape is possible.

The gain and pole frequency of amplifier stage U13:C is switched by the DFM4-9 modem, via a 74 HC 4066 CMOS FET switches (U14:A). This is to produce the required waveform for the two data rates currently available. The bit rate output signal, "BRO" is provided at U5-p44.

For 4800 baud, components C43 and R45, are "included" in the feedback loop of the amplifier stage. When 9600 baud is selected, switch U14:A is turned OFF, and the components are "excluded" from the circuit.

### 2.5.5 RECEIVE SIGNAL CONDITIONING

The data receiver, consists of several functional blocks. Some of these are implemented by internal functions of the modem IC, and the remainder by external circuitry.

The incoming analogue signal, is routed to two separate sections of circuitry. One to process the received clock, the other to process the received data.

TC-900DR User Manual

### 2.5.5.1 DATA RECOVERY

The data recovery is based around an "Integrating Data Slicer" circuit.
This circuit consists of a non-inverting, resetable integrator (U16:A, U12:C and U15:D), a dual peak detector ( $\mathrm{U} 12: \mathrm{A}, \mathrm{B}$ ) and a reference divider.

The received signal is passed into the modem section from the radio section via connector X4-p20, "RXSIG".

The signal is integrated by the non-inverting integrator formed by U16:A, and U12:C, and then forwarded on to a comparator ( $\mathrm{U7}: \mathrm{B}$ ), where it is "squared up", ready to be read by the DFM4-9 modem.

An output signal is provided by the modem IC, to indicate the sampling point. In fact this signal, called "RxCLKOUT", is pulsed high immediately after the sampling operation has taken place.

The integrator is reset at the end of each bit period, by the 74 HC 4066 FET switch, U15:D, after the value of the bit has been read. The DFM4-9 provides this reset signal at the reset integrator "RxCLKOUT" pin (U5-p19).
The integrated receive signal, is then fed to the dual peak detector, where the positive and negative peaks of the integrated signal are detected, and stored on the capacitors C28 and C27.

The peak detector's attack time is determined by the output resistance of the opamps (U12:A,B) and the bulk resistance of the diodes (D7, D4). The decay time however is determined by the values of the hold capacitors (C28, C27) and the summing resistors (R24, R25).

Four diodes (D5, D6, D8, D9) are used to clamp the reference rail. If the incoming signal has a large DC shift, this clamping arrangement ensures that the data slicer reference level is quick to settle somewhere near its final operating point. This clamp however does impose a maximum allowable input signal level. Exceeding this level will cause the integrated signal to directly modulate the reference rail. The derived reference voltage level, is amplified and output back to the radio section, where it is used for AFC in the receiver.

### 2.5.5.2 CLOCK RECOVERY

The received clock signal is presented to the DFM4-9 modem at its "RXCLK" input (U5-p4).

Within the DFM4-9, a phase-locked-loop is used for data clock recovery, which relies on level transitions in the data signal.
This mechanism maintains the data sampling point in the center of the bit cells by comparing the signal's level transitions with an internal clock.

An error in the relative phase of the RXCLK signal and the internal clock, causes the internal clock to increase or decrease in speed, to bring the phase error to zero.

The phase-locked-loop clock recovery mechanism within the DFM4-9 modem, maintains the sampling point in the center of the bit cells, but the use of the integrator demands that this take place at the end of the bit cell. This means that the signal fed to the DFM4-9 modem RXCLK input must be delayed by half a bit period.

To obtain this, the received signal is passed through a half bit delay, low-pass filter (U16:D, U12:D, U7:A). The delay characteristics of this filter, are switchable between the available data rates of 4800 and 9600 baud operation, by five 74 HC 4066 FET switches. These switches are controlled by the "BRO" output of the DFM4-9.

### 2.5.6 USER INDICATIONS

There are four indication LED's supplied for user information. POWER, TXMIT, SYNC and RXSIG. The POWER LED is green, TXMIT LED is red and the other two are yellow.

The POWER LED (LED4), is driven from the $13 V 8$ power supply line. When supply is present the LED is activated.
The TXMIT LED (LED3), is activated when PTT is present. It is driven when the switching transistor Q3 is turned ON by the DFM4-9 modem "PTT" output going active (UX3-p38).

The SYNC LED (LED2), is activated when a valid data stream has been detected. It is driven when the switching transistor Q2 is turned ON by the DFM4-9 modem "SYNC" output going active (U5-p43).

The RXSIG LED (LED1), is activated when the received signal level is at a usable level. It is driven when the switching transistor Q1 is turned ON by the DFM4-9 modem "RXSIG" output going active (U5-p43).

### 2.5.7 POWER SUPPLY

The power supply is based around the use of three voltage regulators that supply +13 V 8 , +8 V and +5 V .

The incoming power is applied to a bridge rectifier (BR1), Normally two legs of this bridge are linked out, so it provides only reverse polarity protection shunt diodes. A special manufacturing option allows for $A C$ input, where the links are removed. A 2200uF electrolytic capacitor (C2), provides filtering for $A C$ inputs.
This is then applied to an LT1086 low dropout regulator (REG1). The output of this is set to 13 V 8 and feeds the RF final amplifier, and the following two regulators.

The 8 V regulator (REG2) takes it's input directly from the 13 V 8 rail, its output is routed to the radio section, and provides supply for one of the amplifier devices.
The 5 V regulator (REG3) provides the supply rail for the modem section logic circuits. It takes it's input from the 13 V8 rail via diode D1. Extra filtering capacitance is provided by C7.

### 2.5.8 INTERFACES

### 2.5.8.1 RADIO SECTION

The modem section interfaces to the radio section via connector JX3. The physical link between the two sections is achieved via a 90 mm length of 26 way ribbon cable.

Refer to interface diagram "RADIO MODEM INTERFACE", drawing number TC01-05-18 sheet 1/3.

## CONNECTOR JX3 SIGNAL DESCRIPTION <br> PIN NUMBER

| 1 | 13V8 POWER SUPPLY RAIL |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2 | 13V8 POWER SUPPLY RAIL |  |
| 3 | 13V8 POWER SUPPLY RAIL |  |
| 4 | GROUND |  |
| 5 | GROUND |  |
| 6 | GROUND |  |
| 7 | 8V POWER SUPPLY |  |
| 8 | 8V POWER SUPPLY |  |
| 9 | ADC2 | (i/p - TRANSMIT POWER SENSE) |
| 10 | TXPWR | (o/p - TRANSMIT POWER LEVEL) |
| 11 | TXEN | (o/p - TRANSMIT ENABLE) |
| 12 | IPTT OUT | (o/p-PRESS TO TALK) |
| 13 | TXSIG | (o/p - TRANSMIT DATA) |
| 14 | ADC0 | (i/p - TEMPERATURE SENSOR) |
| 15 | TEMPCOMP | (o/p- TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION) |
| 16 | EN | (o/p - ENABLE FOR SYNTH) |
| 17 | DA | (o/p - DATA FOR SYNTH) |
| 18 | CK | (o/p - CLOCK FOR SYNTH) |
| 19 | LD | (i/p - LOCK DETECT FROM SYNTH) |
| 20 | RXSIG | (i/p - RECEIVED DATA) |
| 21 | ADC1 | (i/p - RSSI SIGNAL) |
| 22 | AFC CTL | (o/p - AFC CONTROL) |
| 23 | SPARE | (UNUSED) |
| 24 | ADC3 | (FOR SUPPLY/HANDSET) |
| 25 | TEST1 | (UNUSED) |
| 26 | TEST2 | (UNUSED) |

### 2.5.8.2 PORT A

The modem section interfaces to the host user via the 9 way female DMIN type connector JX1.

CONNECTOR JX1 SIGNAL DESCRIPTION
PIN NUMBER

| 1 |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2 | DATA CARRIER DETECT | (DCD) |
| 3 | RECEIVE DATA OUTPUT | (RXD) |
| 4 | TRANSMIT DATA IN | (TXD) |
| 5 | DATA TERMINAL READY | (DTR) |
| 6 | COMMON | (COM) |
| 7 | DATA SET READY/prog mode | (DSR) |
| 8 | REQUEST TO SEND | (RTS) |
| 9 | CLEAR TO SEND | (CTS) |
|  | RING INDICATE/BER Test Mode | (RI) |

Note: Pin 6 and pin 9 provide a dual function which depends on the mode that the TC-900DR is operating in.

### 2.5.8.3 PORT B

For the standard delivery version of the TC-900DR, port $B$ is normally not enabled. This port provides no handshake lines except DCD (parallel connected with DCD on Port A) and DSR which is wired active.

CONNECTOR JX1 SIGNAL DESCRIPTION
PIN NUMBER

| 1 | DATA CARRIER DETECT | (DCD) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 2 | RECEIVE DATA OUTPUT | (RXD) |
| 3 | TRANSMIT DATA IN | (TXD) |
| 4 |  |  |
| 5 | COMMON | (COM) |
| 6 | DATA SET READY/prog mode | (DSR) |
| 7 |  |  |
| 8 |  |  |
| 9 | RECEIVE SIGNAL STRENGTH INDICATOR | (RSSI) |

Pin 9 is used to output the RSSI signal for external measurement.
The RSSI output ranges from 0 to 5 Volts, where 5 volts indicates the strongest signal. It is important to note that this port output has a high impedance of around 50 K ohms and loading will decrease accuracy of the recorded measurement.

### 2.5.8.4 POWER

Power is supplied to the modem section via connector $X 1$. Typically +13.8 V DC is applied to the top pin, with the common connected to the bottom pin.

## SECTION 3

## OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

## 3 OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

The Trio DataCom TC-900DR radio modem, is a full duplex 4800/9600 bits per second device, which converts digital data into an analogue form suitable for transmission over a radio channel. It uses specially filtered direct binary frequency modulation techniques to achieve this. It conversely, converts the analogue signal derived from a radio channel into a digital data signal.
The heart of the unit is the DFM4-9 modem IC. This performs all waveform shaping, randomising and de-randomising, NRZNRZI conversion, clock recovery, and HDLC framing and CRC error generation and checking. These functions are performed simultaneously, allowing full duplex operation at up to 9600bps.

The modem is fully HDLC compatible. The user is provided with two RS232 compatible ports, which may each be configured with a standard PAD interface or SLIP/KISS protocol driver. The unit may also be configured for repeater operation.

It may be configured to use RS232 handshake lines, or XON/XOFF flow control on Port A.

The modem features a unique supervisory signalling channel, which embeds low speed data in the primary bit-stream, and is transparent to the user of the primary channel.

The supervisory signalling channel can be disabled if not required. It could be used to pass low speed data such as E and M status or C/DSMA control schemes.

The data rate of the supervisory signalling channel can be set independently for transmit and receive. It can range from about 40 to 533 bps with the primary channel rate at 4800 baud, and 80 to 1067 bps at a primary channel rate of 9600 baud.

NOTE: with the supervisory signalling channel active, the bit-stream is not compatible with standard HDLC interface devices (such as 8530).

The host user port may be configured for baud rates of 300 to 19 K 2 , with 7 or 8 bit character size, 1 or 2 stop bits, and parity off/odd/even.

The DFM4-9 modem includes several data tables which are used to generate waveforms with different characteristics. This is primarily for optimum performance at differing baud rates. A custom data table can be placed into the NVRAM of the modem, for specialised applications.

Configuration of the modem is fully programmable, with parameters held in non-volatile memory. All configuration parameters are accessible with the TC-DFM9IP Installation Program.

Configuration parameters include but are not limited to:
Supervisory Signalling Channel rate.
XON/XOFF or RTS/CTS/DTR/DCD handshake mode.
Default transmitter lead in delay.
Constant specifying minimum RF RSSI for valid receive.
Constant specifying minimum Tx power level.
Asynchronous serial port parameters.
User interface operating mode :

- User port interface protocol
- PAD Parameters


### 3.2 TC-900DR MODEM FIRMWARE REVISION VA2.3.0

### 3.2.1 FUNCTIONAL CHANGES AND ADDITIONS

The Diagnostics " M " command (serial port Mode) completed. The implementation of this command was not finished in time for VA2.2 release. This command is used to configure either of the two user ports, for character length, number of stop bits, parity odd/even/off.

1 Bit 7 is used to address which port is being referenced (set to "0" for Port B, or set to "1" for Port A).

2 Bit 6 determines the character size. Set to " 0 " for 8 bit, or "1" for 7 bit character size.

3 Bit 5 is set to " 1 " to enable parity, " 0 " to disable parity.
4 Bit 4 determines Odd (set bit to "1"), or Even (set bit to "0") parity if Bit 5 is set.
5 Bit 3 determines the number of stop bits. Set to "0" for 1 stop bit, or set to " 1 " for 2 stop bits.

6 Bits 2, 1, and 0 are used to select the baud rate. The following table shows the available rates. The 19.2 K baud selection should only be made for Port A if Port $B$ is disabled. The last selection of 110 baud may be deleted from future firmware revisions.

| Bit | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | Baud Rate |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | ---: | ---: |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 300 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 600 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1,200 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 2,400 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 4,800 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 9,600 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 19,200 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 110 |

Channel Access Strategy 3 is now defined. This is selected by setting bits 1 and 0 ( $\mathrm{X} \times \mathrm{Ctr} 11$ and Tx Ctr 10 ) in "Config1", both to "1". This mode forces a randomly generated delay before transmission begins, even if the channel is perceived to be clear. This delay mechanism is similar to that used in Channel Access Strategy 2 when the channel is perceived to be busy. This operating mode is useful in systems that include remote terminals that generate reports at regular fixed intervals. In such a system, slight differences in this interval between two remotes, would cause them to become synchronised for some time, and thus transmissions from them would consistently
collide. Inserting a randomly generated delay before all transmissions will reduce the incidence of this effect.

The RS232 DCD handshake line now becomes active only during output of received data. Formerly, the DCD line indicated real time SYNC status of the modem data receiver. To facilitate the use of RS232 to RS422/RS485 converters, the DCD line is driven active a short time (approximately 0.5 mS ) before the received data is output to the user port, and lingers for approximately 2 to 3 character times (i.e. is proportional to baud rate of user port). The modem generates only one DCD function, which is available on pin 1 of both Port A and Port B. Thus the DCD pin of both user ports will be activated when either port is outputting received data.

### 3.2.2 OTHER ENHANCEMENTS

Improvements in handling of the RS232 RTS line (Port A), makes the modem more tolerant in the timing of rapid OFF transitions of this handshake line, immediately after the end of the last character of a message. It has been observed that communications drivers in many PLCs turn their RTS output line OFF very shortly after the end of a message, resulting in the loss of the last character of the message with previous modem firmware revisions. This revision does not suffer this problem.

The random number generator used for the Channel Access Timer, has been improved to make it more random.

### 3.3 FACILITIES AND CONFIGURATION INFORMATION FIRMWARE VERSION 2.2

### 3.3.1 GENERAL

The TC-900DR provides fully transparent remote diagnostics facilities, and expanded data stream switching, which supports advanced stream trunking applications.

The diagnostics core, supports the reporting of current analogue conditions, including temperature, RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indication), RF transmitter power, AFC (i.e. received signal frequency offset), and supply voltage. Also, an extensive range of operating parameters may be changed remotely, including remote (RF) channel change.

Configuration options, allow various system topology's, so that the location of the system's diagnostics controller is flexible.

The data stream switching mechanism has been upgraded to allow either MUXIDeMUXing or multi-stream routing functions, independently for each port.

A few other minor upgrades to previous revisions of firmware are:

* Two different "ticker clocks" implemented, one running at 1 mS , and used for a) PAD Character Input Timers, and b) Channel Access Timer when running in Collision Avoidance mode. The other "ticker clock" runs at 10 mS , and is used for the PTT timer, and a host of other internal functions, not accessible by configuration programming.
* When XON/XOFF flow control is enabled on PortA, the CTS output line continues to operate correctly, indicating the flow control state. XON/XOFF characters are generated in addition to, and reflect state changes on this line. As before, the DTR input line is ignored while XON/XOFF flow control is set, and the RTS line is not required to be true to validate transmit data.
* The modem stores data for transmission in buffer memory, which is limited. It also keeps track of frame boundaries of the stored data, and the number of frames it can manage is also limited by the amount of memory used to record the position of the frame boundaries. Thus it is possible that the modem can approach overflow before exhausting data buffer space, if frames are small. This flow control state is activated when the "frame boundary memory" approaches half full, for similar reasons used in data buffer management.
* If the Supervisory Signalling Channel is enabled in both transmit and receive directions, and PortA is configured in Repeater Mode, then the received Supervisory Signalling Channel data is also repeated, by being copied from the Supervisory Signalling Channel receiver to the Supervisory Signalling Channel transmitter.
* RSSI measurements are full eight bit conversion, so the "min_RSSI" configuration parameter lies in the range $0-255$ (decimal). This is only important when setting this parameter without the aid of the DRPROG programmer.


### 3.3.2 INTERNAL DATA STREAM ROUTING

Essentially, all data streams travelling in both directions (transmit and receive), are examined and tested for a match with the diagnostics receive SID header code. If this match test is successful, then the data frame is copied into a buffer for the diagnostics core to process. The data frame also continues in the original direction as well. Thus diagnostics frames received from the radio channel (receive data), and from the stream switcher (transmit data, from one of the physical ports), are copied as they pass between the HDLC "device" and the data stream "switcher". Messages generated by the diagnostics core in response to received commands, are always sent back to the source of the command. That is, if a status request is received from the radio channel side of the modem, then the response is directed back out of the radio channel.

This dual access structure, allows the diagnostics controller to be located on either side of the modem, and thus supports any system topology.

### 3.3.3 DIAGNOSTICS REPEAT FUNCTION

Some applications will require that the "base" unit in a point to multi-point system repeats diagnostics frames. This will be the case where the system diagnostics controller is attached to a remote terminal in the system, and polls the system population from this point. The "base" unit must re-transmit diagnostics frames which are not addressed to itself. A "diagnostics repeat" configuration bit enables this function.

### 3.3.4 DIAGNOSTICS FRAME STRUCTURE

Diagnostics data frames, are structured according to a defined protocol. A frame consists 1st of the SID header code, which would normally (but not necessarily) be 00. Following this is a three byte address of the destination unit, followed by a three byte source address. An addressed unit responding to a diagnostics command, will swap these two address fields around, in the response frame. The destination address in a diagnostics frame to a TC-900DR unit, is in fact the unique (factory) serial number of the unit. By convention, the diagnostics controller (a DOS based PC), will use a unique address for itself, outside the range of permissible TC-900DR addresses (e.g. 000000). Following the two address fields, is a single character command/response code, which is in turn followed by any operands that may or may not be required for the command/response. Total frame size is limited to 17 bytes. After the SID header, address fields, and command/response mnemonic, this allows up to nine bytes of data to be transferred per diagnostics frame.

### 3.3.5 DIAGNOSTICS COMMAND SET

The following is a list of the command set recognised by the diagnostics core in the TC-900DR Firmware. Also is tabulated the response to each command. The following examples use address 123456 for the TC-900DR unit address, and 000000 for the address of the system diagnostics controller. For the purposes of clarity only, each byte in the example messages is separated by a comma. Mnemonics are represented in quoted form to indicate an ASCII character (e.g. " $C$ " is actually binary byte $h^{\prime} 43$ ).

## B Warm Boot Command.

This command forces the addressed unit to perform a "warm boot". Previous to this, the unit will have been halted (see " H " command), and one or more parameters changed with "P" and "W" commands.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00$, "B"
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " b "$

## C Calibration Constant Poll.

This command requests the addressed unit to reply with it's internal Analogue To Digital Converter (ADC) calibration constants. These are necessary to accurately interpret the data sent in Status Poll ("S") replies. This command has no operands, and the response mnemonic is " c ". The form of the command and reply is:
Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, "{ }^{\prime \prime}$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " c ", t t, r r, p p, f f, s s$
Where:-
$\mathrm{t}=$ Temperature calibration code
$\mathrm{rr}=$ RSSI calibration code
$\mathrm{pp}=$ Transmit Power calibration code
$\mathrm{ff}=$ Received Frequency Offset calibration code
ss = Power Supply calibration code

## D Powered Up Response

This command is sent from the modem to the controller in response to a status poll ("S") immediately after the modem has been powered up. The modem will continue to send this command in response to a status poll until the controller acknowledges the command with a "d". The modem will then respond normally to a status poll.

This mechanism is used by the controller to determine whether it requires calibration data from the modem.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56{ }^{\prime \prime} \mathrm{D}^{\prime \prime}$
Response:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00 " d "$

## F Set New RF Synthesiser Frequency.

This command forces the unit to set the RF synthesiser to a new frequency, thus selecting another radio channel. This command has one operand, which defines the source of the synthesiser data. A value of zero, indicates that the frequency data has already been set with a parameter set command. Values from one to four select one of the channels stored in the NVRAM of the modem configuration. The addressed unit responds with an " $f$ " reply, before executing the channel change command (i.e. on the old channel).

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " F ", n n$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " f "$
Where:-
$\mathrm{nn}=00$ to 04 to select data source .

## H Halt Command.

This command forces the addressed unit to halt all internal operations, except diagnostics processing. This is necessary, when changing some parameters, before a warm boot command is issued to the re-configured unit.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " H "$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " h "$

## M Set Serial Port Mode.

This command forces the addressed unit to change the operating mode of one or both serial ports. Parameters such as character size, number of stop bits, parity etc. are changed with this command. It should be noted, that data may be lost while the operating mode of the serial ports is changed.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " \mathrm{M}^{\prime \prime}, \mathrm{xx}$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " \mathrm{~m} "$
Where:-
$x x=$ Serial port address bit and mode data

## P Parameter Set command.

This command stores the contents of the operand string to a storage buffer. No other action is taken. This command should be immediately followed by a "W" command. See " W " command below. The parameter may be either a bit quantity, a byte quantity, a word quantity, or a string quantity. The diagnostics core in the modem firmware determines this from the parameter indentifier, which indexes an internal lookup table. String quantities are of indefinite length, and determined by the length of the operand string in the received " P " command. The " P " command response (" p "), echoes the complete received string. This is unique to the " P " and " W " commands.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " P^{\prime \prime}, n n, a a, b b, c c, \ldots$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " p ", n \pi, a a, b b, c c, \ldots$
Where:-
$\mathrm{nn}=$ parameter identifier
$a a, b b, c c, \ldots$ are data value(s) for selected parameter

## R Parameter Readback command.

This command forces the addressed unit to read the state of the addressed parameter, and send this data back the the command originator (diagnostics controller) in a reply message. Again the size of the parameter (bit, byte, word, or string) is determined by the parameter identifier. String parameters are returned as a string of eight consecutive bytes.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " R ", n n$
Response:- 00,00,00,12,34,56,"r",nn,aa,bb,...hh

S Status Poll.
This command requests the addressed unit to reply with the current value of analogue quantities, present temperature, last/present received RSSI, transmit power of last transmission, received frequency offset of last/present received signal, and present supply voltage.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " S "$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " s$ ",tt,rr,pp,ff,ss
Where:-
tt = Temperature conversion code
rr = RSSI conversion code
$\mathrm{pp}=$ Transmit Power conversion code
ff = Received Frequency Offset conversion code
ss $=$ Power Supply conversion code

## T Diagnostics Watchdog Timer command.

This command forces the addressed unit to (re)set a special watchdog timer. The operand value is a word (16_bit) quantity. A zero value will disable the timer. A non-zero value will initialise the timer. This timer, while non-zero, will be decremented periodically. If the timer is decremented to zero, then the TC-900DR will perform a cold boot, thus restoring operating parameters from the NVRAM configuration memory. This command should be used in conjunction with parameter set and write commands. If a parameter change renders the unit in-operable, then either it will not continue to receive further "T" commands to reset the timer, or the system diagnostics controller may cease to send the timer reset commands, thus will eventually cause the unit to cold boot.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " T ", n n n n$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " t "$
Where:-
nnnn = timer reset value (16 bit value)

## V Request Firmware Version String command.

This command requests the addressed unit to reply with a string indicating it's firmware version number. Future firmware versions may provide further facilities that may then be used, by sending appropriate commands.

Syntax:-
Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " V "$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " v ", " A 2.2 .0 "$

## W Write Parameter command.

This command is used in conjunction with the "P" parameter set command. This parameter write command must be identical to the previous parameter set command. Providing they are identical (excepting the command mnemonic), then the operand is written to the selected modem operating parameter. Changing some parameters while normal operation continues could produce improper operation, possibly resulting in corrupted parameters, so the unit should be halted with a HALT command before such parameters are changed.

## Syntax:-

Command:- $\quad 12,34,56,00,00,00, " W ", n n, a a, b b, c c, \ldots$
Response:- $\quad 00,00,00,12,34,56, " w ", n n, a a, b b, c c, \ldots$.
Where:-
$\mathrm{nn}=$ parameter identifier
$\mathrm{aa}, \mathrm{bb}, \mathrm{cc}, \ldots$ are data value(s) for selected parameter

### 3.3.6 PARAMETER SET

The following is a list of parameters which may be remotely set. Parameters marked with a "*", should only be changed while the unit is in a halted state, followed by a warm boot command. Parameters marked with a "\#", may only be referenced in an "R" readback command. Attempts to change these with "P" and "W" commands may produce unpredictable results.

| Parameter Identifier | Parameter Type(Size) | Parameter Name |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 00 (^@) | undefined | not defined, reserved to facilitate future expansion |
| 01 (^A) | undefined | not defined, Trio DataCom test use only |
| 02 (^B) | byte | Drift_Offset |
| 03 (^C) | word | PTT_Time |
| 04 (^D) | string | Synthesiser Data for channel change |
| 05 (^E) | byte | min_RSSI |
| 06 (^F) | byte | Tx_LID |
| $07(\wedge \mathrm{G})$ | byte | Slot_Num |
| $08(\wedge)$ | byte | Slot_Time |
| 09 (^) | word | SIDA1 and SIDA2 |
| OA (^J) | word | SIDB1 and SIDB2 |
| OB (^K) | word | SIDD1 and SIDD2 |
| OC (^L) | byte | KISS_adrA |
| OD (^M) | byte | KISS_adrB |
| OE (^N) | byte | EOMA_code |
| $0 \mathrm{~F}(\wedge)$ | byte | EOMB_code |
| 10 (^P) | byte | input_timeA |
| 11 (^Q) | byte | input_timeB |
| 12 (^R) | byte | frame_sizeA |
| 13 (^S) | byte | frame_sizeB |
| 14 (^) | bit * | SLIP/KISS_mode portA |
| 15 (^U) | bit * | SLIP/KISS_mode portB |
| 16 (^V) | bit | EOM_enable portA |
| 17 (^W) | bit | EOM_enable portB |
| 18 (^X) | bit * | KISS_mode portA |
| 19 (^Y) | bit * | KISS_mode portB |
| $\left.1 \mathrm{~A}{ }^{\wedge} \mathrm{Z}\right)$ | bit | RTS/CTS_interlock portA |
| 1B (^I) | bit * | PORTB_enable |
| $1 \mathrm{C}{ }^{\wedge}$ ) | bit * | Repeat_Enable portA |
| 1D (^) | bit * | Repeat_Enable portB |


| 1E (^^) | bit * | (Not defined, reserved for Error Recovery Enable) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1F (^_) | bit * | (Not defined, reserved for Error Recovery Enable) |
| 20 () | bit | LiveFrame portA |
| 21 (!) | bit | LiveFrame portB |
| 22 (") | bit | XonXoffMode portA |
| 23 (\#) | bit | XonXoffMode portB |
| 24 (\$) | byte | PORTA_Config |
| 25 (\%) | byte | PORTB_Config |
| 26 (\&) | bit | diags_repeat |
| 27 (') | bit | TxPWR_HI/LOW |
| 28 (0) | bit | SID_Enable |
| 29 ()) | bit | RTS2PTT |
| 2A (*) | bit | SYNC2PTT |
| 2B(+) | bit | SCDO_Default |
| 2C() | bit | SupChnFunc |
| 2D (-) | bit | TxCtrl1 |
| 2E (.) | bit | TxCtrio |
| 2F (/) | byte | Config1 |
| 30 (0) | byte \# | SMR1 (portA serial port mode) |
| 31 (1) | byte \# | SMR0 (portB serial port mode) |
| 32 (2) | byte \# | BRR1 (portA serial port baud rate) |
| 33 (3) | byte \# | BRR0 (portB serial port baud rate) |
|  |  | Additions for version A2.3.0 |
| 34 (4) | byte | err_limit (Frame Error output for Base Station) |
| 35 (5) | byte | err_flags |
| 36 (6) | word | good_cnt |
| 37 (7) | word | bad_cnt |
| 38 (8) | word | lost_sync_cnt |
| 39 (9) | word | lost_RSSI_cnt |
|  |  | Additions for version A2.3.1 |
| 3A (:) | byte | DCD_timeA |
| $3 \mathrm{~B}(;)$ | byte | DCD_timeB |
| 3C ( $<$ ) | byte | Diags_Delay |

### 3.3.7 ADVANCED STREAM ROUTING FUNCTIONS

The TC-900DR provides advanced stream routing functions. For each port, there is allocated two SID (Stream IDentifier) codes, and a configuration flag that determines how these two codes are used.
With the flag off, SIDx1 (where $x$ is $A$ or $B$ for portA and portB respectively) defines the SID code of received frames that are de-multiplexed to the port, and SIDx2 defines the SID code that is inserted by the modem at the front of every frame it transmits. Thus only one data stream passes through the port, and the modem manages the insertion and extraction of SID header codes.

With the configuration flag on, SIDx1 and SIDx2 define a range of streams that will be passed from the received data to the port. SIDx1 defines the lowest stream, while SIDx2 defines the highest stream. The SID header codes remain on the received frames, and are passed to the port. For transmit data, the modem assumes that the SID header codes are already in place, being inserted by some external device, and no processing is performed on the transmit data. For this application, it is highly desirable that a SLIP (or KISS) driver be employed so that frame boundaries are defined.
These functions are independent for each port, so it is possible to construct (say), a multi-drop, multi-hop repeated data system, where one stream can be "peeled off" at each repeater site. There are many other possibilities, the TC-900DR product simply requiring suitable configuration to construct a vast range of network topologies.

### 3.4 FACILITIES AND CONFIGURATION INFORMATION VERSION 2

### 3.4.1 GENERAL

The TC-900DR, provides two independent user data streams, which are multiplexed onto the radio channel data stream. The stream switching protocol also provides for an embedded remote diagnostics facility.

The two (asynchronous) user ports can be configured for a variety of baud rates, character sizes, parity, and stop bits.

Flow control on user Port_A may be set to use RTS/CTS/DTR/DCD handshake lines, or XON/XOFF characters. Flow control for Port_B may be set to use XON/XOFF characters, or no flow control. Port_B is not supported by RTS/CTS/DTR handshake lines.

Data is transported in (HDLC) frames, protected by a 16 bit CRC error checking sequence, conforming to the CCITT standard. Received frames found to contain errors are discarded. The TC-900DR does not release received data frames to the user port, until completely received, and error checked.

Maximum frame size is configurable for each port independently, and may be set to any value between 4 and 255 . Frame size limiting is disabled by setting this parameter to zero (0).

Each user port, is supported with PAD functions conforming to X 3 , or SLIP*1 or KISS* protocol interface.

For Point To Multipoint applications, a unique collision avoidance mechanism is available, with configurable channel access parameters.

All configuration parameters are held in a non-volatile memory. Normally, this memory can only be written when the radio modem is connected to a programmer.

### 3.4.2 BRIEF OVERVIEW OF MODEM INTERNAL OPERATION.

### 3.4.2.1 DATA TRANSMITTER

Each physical user port, is supported by a "driver", in this case a PAD (Packet Assembler/Dis-assembler) or SLIP/KISS. This function transfers the data from the port, to a buffer memory. This buffer not only stores the raw user data, but also keeps track of frame boundaries. Another functional block, retrieves that stored data, and feeds it to a third mechanism, which generates the data waveform which is applied to the radio transmitter modulator.

[^8]
### 3.4.2.2 DATA RECEIVER.

The receiver extracts data frames from the received signal, and stores the contents of the frames into buffer memory. It may also perform a steering function, if more than one port is enabled. A second function is to retrieve the stored data, and send it to the user port(s), consistent with some flow control regime.

### 3.4.3 SELECTING FRAME SIZE

The selection of maximum frame size is a compromise between channel through-put and data propagation time over the link.

The receiving modem collects and stores the incoming data frame, and on detecting the end of the frame, checks if an error has occurred. If not, then the stored data is released for transfer to the user data port. If an error has occurred, then the stored data is "flushed" from the data store. Thus a delay is introduced between the time the frame data begins to enter the destination radio modem, and the time this data begins to emanate from the user port. This delay is effectively the length of the data frame, which consists of the user's data, plus the framing overhead. This overhead will include at least 24 bits for the HDLC Flag and FCS (error checking data), plus another 8 bits if SID (Stream IDentifier) codes are enabled (refer to detailed description elsewhere in this document), plus the duration of the transmitter Lead-In-Delay, if the radio transmitter had to be started up to send the data. Thus larger frames reduce the proportional overhead, but increase the end to end propagation delay.

On the assumption that the radio transmitter was already on, and that the frames include the SID header, then every frame includes 32 bits of overhead.

Assuming that the user port is configured for 8 bit character size ( 8 bit data no parity, or 7 bit data and parity), and 1 stop bit, then each character is carried as a 10 bit sequence on the asynchronous user channel. On the radio channel data stream, user data is stripped of the start and stop bits used on the asynchronous user port, and transmitted as eight bit "octets", and so the character rate is $1 / 8$ th of the bit rate, while on the asynchronous user port, the character rate is $1 / 10$ th of the bit rate. For every 16 user characters 32 bits are stripped off, so if the maximum frame size parameter is set to 16 , and the nominal baud rates are the same, then the effective character rates on the asynchronous user channel and the synchronous radio data channel will be the same. This also assumes that the supervisory signalling channel is not enabled, and does not allow for the overhead introduced by the HDLC "dummy zero" stuffing mechanism.

### 3.4.4 CONFIGURING PAD PARAMETERS

The Packet Assembler/Dis-assembler (PAD) can be configured with a variety of parameters. Each user port is supported by an identical but independent PAD.

The configuration parameters of the PAD, control how the user data (to be transmitted) is framed. There are three distinct mechanisms that can cause the frame that will carry the user data to be closed.

The first of these is the Maximum Frame Size parameter, already discussed above. As each character is input to the modem, a counter is incremented, and when this counter reaches the set maximum frame size, the data storage mechanism that operates within the modem, will close the frame. This function may be disabled, by setting the parameter to zero.

The second mechanism, is the use of a specified End Of Message (EOM) character. This function is enabled/disabled by a flag in a configuration byte for the port driver. The EOM character may be any 8 bit character. When the EOM function is enabled, all incoming user data is compared to the selected EOM character code, and in the event of a match, the current frame is closed. Note that this match only triggers the frame closure mechanism. The matching character is not deleted from the user data stream, and in fact becomes the last user character in the frame.

The third mechanism, is the implementation of a timer. If the timer is enabled, each character received from the user port re-starts the timer. If the time duration between successive user characters allows the timer to expire, then the frame closure mechanism is invoked. The timer counts in units of "ticker clocks", which is a time interval generated by the modem internally, and is approximately 2.5 mS . The reload value for the timer can be set from 1 to 255 ticker clocks. The timer mechanism is disabled by setting the PAD timer parameter to zero.

There is a single bit configuration flag, that allows the radio modem to begin transmitting user data, even before the frame is deemed to be complete. In this case, as soon as there is any data in the storage buffer, the modem begins the transmission procedure. Providing that the input character rate is greater than or equal to the character rate on the synchronous radio channel, then there is no danger of an under-run condition, where the modem transmitter runs out of data before the PAD deems a frame end. However, should this occur, the modem data transmitter function simply closes the frame itself. Further data is carried in the next frame. This may or may not cause problems elsewhere in a system context. If higher protocol layers are employed (e.g. X. $25, \mathrm{AX} .25$ etc.), where address and control fields normally occupy fixed positions in data frames, then the above scenario should not be allowed to occur.

The major advantage of allowing the radio modem to begin the transmission procedure before the frame is deemed to be complete, is that it avoids a (store and forward) delay in the modem transmitter, similar to that required in the receiver. For applications where a transparent point to point link is all that is required, this mode provides the most time efficient transport mechanism.

In fact with the immediate transmission function enabled, there is little necessity to enable the EOM or timer functions of the PAD.

### 3.4.5 SUPERVISORY SIGNALLING CHANNEL: APPLICATIONS \& CONFIGURATION.

The reader is referred to drawing number TC01-05-18, which provides a diagramatic view of this section.

The Supervisory Signalling Channel (SSC) is implemented by the insertion of extra data bits in the primary bit-stream on the synchronous radio channel. These extra bits are inserted between primary data octets, at a rate which can be set to range from once every octet, to once every 15 octets. The SSC operates independently for transmit and receive directions, and can be disabled by setting the rate variable to zero.

The SSC, when enabled, can be configured either to provide end-to-end flow control for Port_A data, or implement the collision avoidance mechanism.

### 3.4.5.1 PORT_A END TO END FLOW CONTROL APPLICATION.

In this configuration, the SSC is used to carry flow control information for data on Port_A at each end of the link.

SSC data inserted into the transmitted bit-stream, relates to the flow of the primary data stream received. When handshake lines are employed, the DTR line locally controls the flow of receive data to the user port. The state of this line is also logically combined with the "fill" state of the receive buffer, and the result is then sent as SSC data in the transmit data stream. Thus the state of the transmitted SSC data bit is one ("1") if the DTR line is in a "false" state, OR the receive buffer is more than half (approximately) full. In the case where XON/XOFF flow control is used, the DTR line input is instead replaced with the state of the last received XON or XOFF control character.

SSC data extracted from the received bit-stream, is logically combined with the "fill" state of the transmit buffer, and the result is output to the CTS line of the modem. The CTS output line is set to "false" if the transmit buffer is more than half (approximately) full, OR the received SSC data bit is a one ("1"). Thus the CTS line is set to "false" if the local transmit buffer is more than half (approximately) full, OR the remote receive buffer is more than half full, OR the remote DTR input line is "false" (or equivalent XOFF received).

Data flow control is exercised only at the user port. No flow control is used on the radio channel, so once data is entered into the transmit buffer, it will be transmitted. This is the reason why the buffers are only allowed to become half full before the flow control mechanism engages. If the flow of receive data is stopped by deactivating the DTR line, the remaining data in the transmit buffer will not overflow the receive buffer. It should be noted that some hysteresis is used in the buffer occupancy tests, to prevent the CTS line from changing state too often, as some hosts (e.g. DOS machines) appear to get confused when this happens.

If the SSC is not configured for end to end flow control, or is disabled, then the flow control mechanisms still operate at a local level. That is, the CTS line (or equivalent XON/XOFF control regime) reflects the fill state of the local transmit buffer.

### 3.4.5.2 COLLISION AVOIDANCE APPLICATION.

When the SSC is allocated to transporting collision avoidance data, the transmitted SSC data reflects the state of the radio receiver. Other processes in the modem, measure the RSSI signal from the radio receiver, and compare this measurement to a preset threshold level. This threshold value is also held in the non-volatile configuration memory. The result of the comparison is copied to the modem pin that drives the RXSIG LED. The transition of the RXSIG signal from off to on, (re)starts an internal timer. This time is a fixed value of $35 \pm 5 \mathrm{mS}$. The SSC data transmitted, is simply a copy of the RXSIG pin state, until the timer terminates, and there-after, the modem data receiver must be "SYNC'd" to maintain the "1" state of the SSC transmit data. Thus the SSC data transmitted by the modem will indicate that the radio channel receiver is busy, using only RSSI for the first $35 \pm 5 \mathrm{mS}$, but after this time, data receiver SYNC is used to qualify this state. This prevents low level RF interference from effectively blocking the channel.
At the receiving end, the recovered SSC data is used by the radio modem to determine when the receiver of the destination station is free. This data can then be used to control it's channel access strategy. Channel access strategies are dealt with in more detail elsewhere in this document.

In such a data transport system, there is a single unit which performs the function of Master, and two or more stations which operate as Slaves. The SSC need only operate in one direction, that from Master to Slaves. In the reverse direction, the SSC can be disabled. That is the SSC in the Slaves is enabled in the data receiver only, while in the Master, it is enabled only in the data transmitter.

### 3.4.5.3 RECEIVED SSC DATA DEFAULT STATE

The received SSC data bit is stored in an internal latch. This latch is updated each time a SSC data bit is extracted from the incoming bit-stream. However, if the radio receiver looses signal, then a default state is forced into the latch. This default state is configurable.

For applications which use the SSC for collision avoidance, this configuration bit would normally be set to " 1 ", so that the remote station would not attempt channel access while the signal from the base is lost.

For applications which use the SSC for end to end flow control, setting the default state of the SSC receive data latch to "0", would cause the CTS output line to indicate local flow control status only, until the destination unit enables it's transmitter, where-upon the received SSC data would reflect the state of the destination receive buffer and DTR input line. Alternatively, setting the default state to "1", would ensure that the CTS output line would be in a "FALSE" state, until the destination unit enables it's transmitter, where-upon the received SSC data would reflect the state of the destination receive buffer and DTR input line.

An associated configuration bit, is one that allows the automatic activation of the radio transmitter, whenever the data receiver attains SYNC. When this configuration bit is set to " 1 ", the modem will automatically activate the radio transmitter's PTT control line when the data receiver is SYNC'd. This could be used at the base end of a small point to multipoint network, using the SSC for flow control, and would not require the host connected to base, to specifically activate the radio transmitter to establish the end to end link.

### 3.4.6 SLIP/KISS PROTOCOL DRIVERS

In addition to a generic PAD, two other host interface protocols are supported, "Serial Line Interface Protocol", SLIP, which hails from the world of UNIX(tm), and an extension of SLIP, KISS "Keep It Simple Stupid", (a rather unfortunate phrase in the present context, but a protocol standard proposed by Phil Kahn, USA, specifically for the control of radio connected data terminals) which includes a facility to send commands which are addressed to the DCE device itself. These commands set operating parameters of the radio-modem DCE, such as transmitter lead-in delay, or radio channel (RF frequency).

Neither of these protocol standards, specify anything about the construction of data packets on the radio channel. Allocation of address, control, and information fields is the user's responsibility.

As standard, the modem is equipped with an 8 K ( 8192 bytes, 32 K optional) data storage memory to hold transmit and receive data. This memory is divided equally between transmit and receive buffer space, and equally between the two user ports, so the largest frame size is 4095 bytes, if only PortA is enabled, (or 2047 bytes each if both user ports are enabled), before the frame check sequence (FCS)is appended.

Additionally, the modem can store up to sixty four separate frames for each direction, again split between the two user ports if both are enabled, though the total byte count is still limited to 8192 total.

### 3.4.6.1 SLIP Protocol Description/Definition

The SLIP protocol, is a data transport protocol, originated and used extensively in UNIX(tm) based systems, and thus also closely associated with TCP/IP networked systems. Although not truly a "standard" it is so widely used that it has become the defacto standard for serial interface in UNIX and many other networked systems. SLIP is a method of framing messages containing binary data, on asynchronous channels. The asynchronous serial channel is configured for eight bit character size, no parity, and one stop.

A specific binary code called FEND (Frame End, hexadecimal value $=C 0$ ) is reserved to define a frame boundary. Should this same code occur in the data message to be transferred across the channel controlled under SLIP, then an escape sequence is used so that the message byte will not be confused for a FEND. This escape sequence, involves replacing the message hexadecimal C0 code with a two byte sequence FESC, TFEND. FESC (Frame Escape) is the binary code hexadecimal DB, and TFEND (Transposed FEND) is binary code hexadecimal DC. Likewise, if the FESC character ever appears in the user data, it is replaced with the two character sequence FESC, TFESC (Transposed FESC). The TFESC is the binary code hexadecimal DD. The following table clarifies this.
ABBREVIATION
FEND
FESC
TFEND
TFESC

DESCRIPTION
Frame end
Frame escape
Transposed frame end
Transposed frame escape

HEX.VALUE C0 (192)

DB (219)
DC (220)
DD (221)

As characters arrive at the SLIP receiver, they are appended to a buffer containing the current frame. Receiving a FEND marks the end of the frame, and consequently, succeeding bytes are considered part of the next frame.

Receipt of a FESC code puts the SLIP receiver into "escaped mode", causing it to translate a following TFESC or TFEND back to a FESC or FEND code, appending it to the buffer, and resuming it's normal state. Receipt of any byte other than TFESC or TFEND while in escaped mode, is an error. No translation occurs, and the SLIP receiver leaves escaped mode. A TFESC or TFEND received while not in escaped mode is treated as an ordinary character and stored accordingly. Reception of consecutive FEND characters, causes no action to be taken (i.e. is not interpreted as zero length frames).

An example of a typical SLIP frame is shown below. The message consists of the string DA,C4,C0,C5,DB, 20,BD,DC,DD. The SLIP frame will be:-

$$
\begin{aligned}
& <\text { FEND }>, \mathrm{DA}, \mathrm{C} 4,<\mathrm{FESC}>,<\mathrm{TFEND}>, \mathrm{C} 5,<\mathrm{FESC}>,<\mathrm{TFESC}>, 20, \mathrm{BD}, \mathrm{DC}, \mathrm{DD},<\mathrm{FEND}> \\
& ==>\quad \mathrm{C} 0, \mathrm{DA}, \mathrm{C} 4, \mathrm{DB}, \mathrm{DC}, \mathrm{C} 5, \mathrm{DB}, \mathrm{DD}, 20, \mathrm{BD}, \mathrm{DC}, \mathrm{DD}, \mathrm{C} 0
\end{aligned}
$$

### 3.4.6.2 KISS Protocol Description/Definition

The KISS protocol is an extension of SLIP. It uses the same method of framing packets, using FEND, FESC, TFEND, and TFESC codes. However, the first byte in each frame is reserved as a control code, that defines the function/content of the frame, and also contains an address.

This addressing scheme allows up to sixteen "Terminal node controliers" (TNC's), to share a multidrop buss. The top nibble of the control code carries the TNC address, and the lower nibble carries the command code. Normally the address is set at zero for installations containing only one TNC. Note that some extensions have been proposed for the KISS protocol, that properly support addressed multidrop line operation of multiple TNCs, that the present TC-900DR modem firmware does not implement. The following table shows the commands defined by KISS, and the comment column indicates how the TC-900DR modem interprets them.

| COMMAND | FUNCTION | COMMENTS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | Data Frame | The rest of the frame is data to be transmitted. |
| 1 | TxDelay | The next byte is the RF transmitter key-up delay in octets. |
| 2 | Slotnum | The next byte is the Slotnum parameter. |
| 3 | Slot-Time | The next byte is the "Slot" interval in "ticker clocks". |
| 4 | TxTail | The next byte is the time to hold up the RF transmitter after the closing FLAG has been sent. This command is obsolete, and not implemented in the TC-900DR. |
| 5 | FullDuplex | The next byte is zero for half duplex, non-zero for full duplex. This command is not implemented in the TC-900DR, as it always operates in full duplex mode. |
| 6 | SetHardware | Specific for each TNC. This parameter has values between 00 and 03, and commands the TC-900DR to set RF channels 0 to 3 . Values above 3 are ignored by the present modem firmware, but may be used in future versions. |
| F | ExitKISS | Exit KISS and return control to higher level TNC control program. This command is not implemented in the TC-900DR. |

### 3.4.7 RF TRANSMITTER CONTROL AND CHANNEL ACCESS STRATEGIES

There are three conditions which cause the modem to activate the radio transmitter. These are: a) receiver SYNC if enabled, as described above; b) RTS if enabled, as described below; and c) the existence of a data frame ready for transmission. The first two mechanisms are absolute, and if enabled, cause an immediate activation of the radio transmitter. There are two configuration bits that control how the availability of a data frame, will activate the radio transmitter, and thus gain access to the channel. For the purposes of this description, these are referred to as Modes A, B, and C.

In Mode A, channel access is immediate. The radio transmitter is activated, and the modem then proceeds to send a preamble sequence, followed by the data. The preamble sequence is necessary for receiver synchronisation, and the length is a configuration parameter. Further discussion of these aspects of the modem configuration are dealt with elsewhere in this document.

In Mode B, the modem will attempt channel access only if the radio receiver is NOT receiving a signal (i.e. the measured RSSI level is below the minimum RSSI threshold as described elsewhere in this document). This method could be used for small point to multipoint systems, where the base station would enable it's radio transmitter on receiving a transmission. Typically this would be done at the base unit by enabling the SYNC-PTT function, as described above. This implements a basic collision avoidance system, without the use of the Supervisory Signalling Channel, which then remains available for flow control applications.

In Mode C, the modem will attempt channel access only if the data receiver is SYNC'd, and the SSC data is " 0 " (i.e. base receiver free). This is the full Collision Avoidance system as described in detail above.

In the latter two cases, if another data frame is ready for transmission at the time the present one is ending, then it is automatically appended as another frame, and the transmission continues. Obviously since the radio transmitter is already enabled, no preamble is required or sent. The modem itself does not limit the number of consecutive frames it will transmit. If data continues to be input to the modem, once channel access is gained, it continues to be transmitted. It is the responsibility of the user to manage any maximum channel access time in overall system design. However, if the PTT timer is enabled (dealt with in detail elsewhere in this document), and the set time is reached, then the modem will disable the radio transmitter PTT line. User data will now be lost.

For the two latter strategies, if channel access fails (i.e. signal at radio receiver in the former case, or SSC=1 in latter case), then the modem uses a timed delay mechanism before testing for channel availability again.

### 3.4.7.1 SELECTING "SLOTIME" AND "SLOTNUM" VALUES

This delay time is necessary to prevent multiple remotes from attempting to gain access to the channel as soon as it is signalled to be clear after another transmission has finished, as this would result in the transmissions from all these remotes colliding. Instead, when a modem fails to gain channel access, it generates a randomly selected delay time, and when this time has expired, it again tests for channel availability.

There are two parameters which are used to generate the delay time. The "Slotime" parameter defines the size of the time increment used in selecting the delay. This value defines a time counted in "ticker clocks" (approximately 2.5 mS ), and has an allowable range of 0 to 255 . The "SlotNum" parameter defines the upper limit of the random number generator. The random number generator selects an integer between one and the value of "SlotNum", and then multiplies this by the value of "Slotime" to derive the delay time. The "SlotNum" parameter has a maximum allowable range of 1 to 16 .

These two parameters together provide a very flexible method of tuning the channel access characteristics of a system, and should be regarded as system tuning parameters. In the absence of any knowledge of a system configuration, Trio DataCom's set default values for these to parameters to 4 and 16 for "Slotime" and "SlotNum" respectively.

### 3.4.7.2 PTT CONTROL BY RTS LINE

Applications relying on establishing a point to point link before data is transferred, would normally require some "manual" method of activating the radio transmitter. A configuration bit enables the RTS input line to be used as a PTT control. The modem is always generating a data signal. During the time when no user data is available, the modem continually generates an "idle" bit-stream of HDLC FLAGs. This sequence produces no data output at the receiving radio modem.

### 3.4.8 SELECTING FLOW CONTROL REGIMES

The type of flow control to be used on the radio modem port(s), depends on the user's application and capabilities of the equipment which the user interfaces to the TC-900DR.

Port_A, which is always active, can be configured to use the standard RS232 handshake lines RTS/CTS/DTR, or use XON/XOFF protocol.

### 3.4.8.1 PORT_A, HARDWARE HANDSHAKE FLOW CONTROL

If hardware handshake lines are configured, then RTS must be active to validate characters input to the modem for transmission. As each character is received (i.e. at the end of each character bit sequence) the state of the RTS input line is tested to validate the character. If the RTS line is tested "true", then the character is stored ready for transmission. If "false", then the character is discarded. The modem provides flow control of transmit data with the CTS line. The CTS line is set "false" to indicate that no more transmit data should be input. Normally, most terminals or hosts will still send one or two more characters after the CTS line is set "false", and this is normal and allowed for in the CTS control logic. In fact the modem will continue to accept and store transmit data (providing the RTS line is still active) even though it has set the CTS line to "false", however the user then risks the occurrence of an overflow condition. If the transmit buffer becomes full, then further data is discarded.

A configuration bit, further controls the state of the CTS output line in relation to the RTS input line. If the bit is clear, then the CTS output will always indicate the flow control state, regardless of the state of the RTS input. If the bit is set, the CTS line is conditional on the state of the RTS input. If the RTS input is "false", then the CTS output is also "false". If the RTS input is "true", then the CTS output indicates the flow control state. This latter configuration is typical of a "wired" modem.

The modem's internal data store holds both the raw user data, and records the position of frame boundaries (as defined by PAD operation) in the data. A limited amount of memory is allocated to storing the frame boundary data. When this memory space is full, the modem sets the CTS output to false, even though the character storage space may not be full. The frame boundary storage space is sufficient to hold data for 64 frames. If the modem has both ports (Port_A and Port_B) enabled, then this space is evenly divided between the two, or if Port_B is disabled, then up to 64 frames can be stored for Port_A. If data continues to be input when the CTS line has been set to "false" because no more frame boundaries can be recorded, then the frame closure mechanism may abort. This has the effect that a frame will not be closed when defined by PAD configuration. An example of this, is where the PAD is configured to close the frame on receiving a <CR> (carriage return) EOM. If the frame boundary space is full, when a <CR> is input, then the subsequent characters will be appended to the same frame. Another attempt to create a new frame will not occur until the same or another frame close condition (as defined by PAD configuration) occurs, in this case another <CR>. This logic avoids the unnecessary loss of data.

Situations where the data storage space or frame boundary storage space become full, would be rare, and would only be likely to occur if the transmitter could not gain access to the channel, or the input data rate exceeds the channel transmission rate for some time.

Normally the TC-900DR is manufactured with an 8 kilobyte memory for data storage. This memory space is divided equally between transmit and receive data storage. If both user ports are enabled, then each half is equally divided between the ports (i.e. $2 \mathrm{~K} / 2 \mathrm{~K} / 2 \mathrm{~K} / 2 \mathrm{~K}$ for Port_A transmit, Port_A receive, Port_B transmit, Port_B receive). If Port_B is disabled, then 4 K is available for each of the transmit and receive data storage functions for Port_A.

The DTR line controls the flow of receive data to the user port. While the DTR input line is "true", available received data is output from the port. If the DTR input is "false", then receive data output ceases.

### 3.4.8.2 PORT_A XON/XOFF FLOW CONTROL PROTOCOL

When XON/XOFF flow control is configured for Port_A, the CTS line is set "true", the RTS input line is not required to validate input data, and receive data is not dependent on the state of the DTR line. Instead of controlling the CTS line, the modem sends XON/XOFF characters (embedded in the receive data stream), to the port. The flow of receive data is controlled by the receipt of XON/XOFF characters in the transmit data stream. These control characters are trapped out of the transmit data stream, and are not transmitted.

The underlying flow control logic is the same as RTS/CTS/DTR control. An XON is sent instead of a "false" to "true" transition of the CTS line, and an XOFF is sent instead of a "true" to "false" transition on the CTS line. A received XON is recorded by an internal flag that emulates a "true" state on the DTR line, and a received XOFF is recorded by the flag to emulate a "false" state on the DTR line.

This method of flow control would be considered to be less reliable, since a lost XON or XOFF control character could cause either an overflow condition, or data flow to stop altogether.

### 3.4.8.3 PORT_B FLOW CONTROL

User Port_B can be configured for no flow control, or XON/XOFF flow control. When XON/XOFF flow control is configured, it operates identically to Port_A, except that this port has no CTS line to set "true". Flow control on Port_B operates at a local level only, since end to end flow control via the SSC is available only for Port_A.

If XON/XOFF flow control is disabled, then no flow control is used on Port_B, as there are no RTS/CTS/DTR lines implemented on Port_B. Users should be careful to avoid overflow conditions, to avoid loss of data.
It will now be obvious that the RTS input line on Port_A can be used by more than one function in the modem. RTS can have no function, or be used in Port_A flow control, and/or provide a manual PTT facility.

### 3.4.9 SETTING MINIMUM RSSI LEVEL

The data receiver of the modem is continually running. It will be in one of two states. It is not SYNC'd, and thus looking for HDLC FLAGs in the radio receiver signal, or it is SYNC'd, and recovering frame data to be checked and stored. If the radio receiver is not receiving a signal, then the recovered signal applied to the data receiver of the modem, will consist only of noise. To prevent the modem from erroneously locking onto noise, a minimum RSSI level must be present to validate the recovered signal applied to the modem data decoder. This threshold level, is stored in the non-volatile configuration memory. It should be set by applying a signal to the radio receiver, which produces a desired SiNaD result, a desired bit error rate, or more crudely, a predetermined absolute signal level into the antenna connector of the TC-900DR. The modem (operating in Test/Program mode) is then commanded to measure the RSSI level, which produces a response of a message indicating the measured level, in hexadecimal. This process should be repeated several times, then an average taken. The analogue to digital conversion performed in this way, is an eight bit conversion. In normal operation, the modem performs a six bit conversion when measuring the RSSI level, so the average of the levels measured in the test mode should now be divided by four. The result should now be stored in the configuration memory, at the address reserved for it.

### 3.4.10 SETTING PTT TIMER

The modem implements a PTT timer. This timer can be disabled entirely by setting the PTT Timer configuration value to zero. The timer value is a 16 bit number, that counts in "ticker clocks". If the timer is enabled, whenever the modem activates the PTT control to the radio transmitter, it initialises the timer with the configured value. The timer is decremented while the PTT control remains active, and if it terminates, the PTT control is deactivated. No other action is taken, and all other functions within the modem are oblivious to this condition, so data frames continue to be output, and thus lost. The PTT timer is to be considered an emergency override mechanism only, in case an error occurs in the operation of the user's host equipment and/or software. To reset this time-out state, conditions must be met that would cause the modem to normally deactivate the PTT control. The PTT timer will then be re-initialised the next time the PTT control is activated. The time-out period may be set in "ticker clock" ( 2.5 mS ) increments to over 160 seconds.

### 3.4.11 DATA STREAM SWITCHING, SELECTING AND ENABLING SID CODES

The TC-900DR radio modem includes a feature that provides data stream switching. This is achieved by placing a Stream Identifier code (SID) at the beginning of every frame. This code functions as a simple addressing function. If both user ports of the TC-900DR are enabled, then SID codes should also be enabled, so that data frames carry a code which identifies the originating port ( A or B ), thus the port to which the frame data should be directed when the frame is received at the destination station.

However this stream switching mechanism is not only confined to this simple application. The SID codes for each user port, are contained in the configuration memory, and are thus "soft". It would be possible to engineer a small (up to 256 stations) network using an individual SID code for each remote station. Since the modem receiver will discard frames which are headed by an SID code which is not recognised, only frames specifically addressed would be stored and passed on to the attached host. The SID code is allocated to the port, so the modem uses the same SID code both for transmission and receipt of frames. Therefore in such a system, the master would be configured with SID codes disabled. The host attached to the master would preface each message with the eight bit address of the destination remote. The message from the remote emanating from the port will have the SID code removed. A message received from a remote, will have the SID code of the sending station at the beginning as the first byte. The remote modem itself places this code at the head of the frame.

Another application of the stream switching feature, is a remote diagnostics facility. This is a facility which is planned for release in the next firmware version. A reserved SID code will be used to address a diagnostics function within the modem. A command/addressing protocol is being developed that employs the units own unique serial number for addressing. "Stay tuned for further updates!".

The SID code is placed in the first octet of each frame. This provides up to 256 unique codes. However, to avoid possible future compatibility problems where higher level protocols are in use on the same channel (e.g. AX.25, etc.), it is suggested that the SID codes used have bit0 set to "1". Such higher level protocols normally use extended addressing where more than one octet is used to carry the destination/source address. A frame using an SID code with bit0 set, will fail an address test and be discarded by such systems. Conversely, if this modem receives a frame containing a higher level protocol, bit 0 of the first octet will normally be set to " 0 ", so will not match any SID code stored in the configuration memory, and be discarded.

By default, Trio DataCom sets the SID codes to 03 and 05 for ports A and B respectively. We have also reserved SID code 00 for the diagnostics facilities.

### 3.4.11.1 Separate Tx And Rx SID Codes. (Firmware Revision V2.1 onwards)

Firmware revision V2.1.0 onwards allows the Transmit and Receive SID codes to be different. Normally the RxSID and TxSID parameters (separate for each port) would be programmed the same. By programming them to be different, means that a TC-900DR unit will receive frames carrying a SID code that matches the configured RxSID code, but transmit frames which carry a SID code that is specified by the TxSID code configuration parameter. Applications for this feature are in small point to multipoint systems, using a central "community" repeater.

### 3.4.11.2 Repeater Operation Mode. (Firmware Revision V2.1 onwards)

The TC-900DR radio modem may also be configured in a repeater mode. The repeater function is enabled as a protocol driver on a port. Thus each user port driver can individually be configured for repeater operation. Essentially, what this does is automatically routes the received data frames back to the transmitter. If SID codes are enabled, then the original SID codes are stored as part of the data frame, and thus the retransmitted frame is identical to that received. Note that only frames received error free will be repeated.

When a port driver is configured for repeater operation, the RxSID and TxSID codes stored in configuration data in the NVRAM are used to define a range of streams to be repeated. The RxSID code configuration parameter defines the lowest SID stream to be repeated, and the TxSID code configuration parameter defines the highest SID stream that will be repeated. Thus it is possible to configure a unit to perform a repeater function for two separate ranges of streams, by configuring both user ports with a repeater driver, or to configure one end of a data link to also be a repeater for a range of other streams.

### 3.4.12 SETTING TRANSMITTER LEAD_IN_DELAY

Whenever the radio transmitter is activated a timer is started. No data frames are transmitted until this timer terminates, so that the destination unit receiver has time to synchronise it's data receiver before frame data is begun. The radio transmitter is very fast, reaching final output power and frequency stability in a matter of a few hundred microseconds (other sections of this document deal with the receiver synchronising aspects). This timer counts in octets, not "ticker clocks" as most other timed functions do, so the actual time elapsed is a function of the radio channel bit rate. However, the synchronisation time is primarily a function of the number of bits to the receiver. Trio DataCom would suggest a value of 25 to 50 (decimal) for this parameter, but it's final value will depend on signal strength and quality at the receiving point, and should best be determined by test.

### 3.5 FACTORS AFFECTING MODEM SYNCHRONISATION TIME

### 3.5.1 (UN)SCRAMBLER AND HDLC STATE MACHINE

It can be shown, that the un-scrambler in the receiving unit will synchronise to the scrambler in the sending unit in 17 bits maximum.

The receiving unit must then detect an HDLC FLAG, which will take another 15 bits maximum. Thus the HDLC state machine and unscrambler should be synchronised in 32 bits maximum.

### 3.5.2 PHASE LOCKED LOOP

Before valid data can be read for the unscrambler, the phase locked loop (PLL) must lock. The time required for this to occur is affected by signal quality and content. The PLL relies on level transitions of the binary signal, on which to lock. It essentially compares the phase of an internal counter, with the phase of the incoming data bits. A detected phase error, will cause the internal counter to speed up or slow down, to reduce the phase error. The greater the error, then the greater the speed adjustment to the internal counter.

If the incoming data stream has few transitions, then the internal counter will "catch up" to it quicker, since it's speed is adjusted less often. The PLL will synchronise to within $90 \%$ of the correct phase (from 0\%), in 16 to 36 bits time, depending on the number of transitions.

In practice, even though the PLL has not reached $90 \%$ lock, meaningful data will still be obtained as long as a good strength, clean signal is available.

### 3.5.3 ERROR CONTROL

Having recovered the raw data, the modem then applies the bit-stream to a de-ramdomiser, which is based on a recursive tapped shift register, described by the polynomial:

$$
X^{17}+X^{12}+1
$$

The output of the de-randomiser is then fed through another conversion function, to convert the NRZI data to NRZ.

The data is now an HDLC data stream, conforming to ISO3309. It is then applied to a function which detects HDLC FLAGs, and extracts "dummy zeros", which were inserted by the transmitter. Frame boundaries are detected at this point.

The modem calculates and appends a 16 bit Cyclic Redundancy Checksum (CRC) word to the end of each frame. This calculation uses the polynomial:

$$
X^{16}+X^{12}+X^{5}+1
$$

This is sometimes referred to as CRC-CCITT since it is a CCITT standard.

TC-900DR User Manual

The 1's complement is taken of the calculation result and this FCS is appended to the end of the data frame and sent MSB first. (Refer to ISO 3309 for more information)
At the receiver, this calculation is repeated on the received data, and the result checked. A detected error, will cause the receiver to discard the entire frame. A higher protocol level (determined by the user) will detect the lost packet, and initiate a re-send of the packet.

In terms of the reliability of this FCS, it can be claimed that the following will be detected : 2

All single bit errors.
All double bit errors.
Any odd number of errors.
Any burst error less than 16 bits long.
Most large burst errors.
From here emanates the original frame data, provided the FCS was correct. If not then the frame data is discarded. The data is stored in externally addressed memory, connected to the modem IC. Maximum data packet size is determined by the amount of available memory. Normally the modem is fitted with an 8 K CMOS RAM, of which half ( 4096 bytes) is allocated to the receiver. The modem can be fitted with an external memory up to 32 K with no other modifications. The receiver section of the modem can store up to 32 separate data packets.

How this data is handled from this point on, depends on the user protocol implemented by the modem on the user interface.

### 3.5.4 TRANSMISSION FORMAT AND TIMING

The data to be transmitted is input to the modem, via the user interface protocol implemented on the user interface. The modem stores the data packet(s) in externally addressed memory, connected to the DFM4-9 modem IC. Maximum data packet size is determined by the amount of available memory. Normally the modem is fitted with an 8 K CMOS RAM, of which half ( 4096 bytes) is allocated to the transmitter. The modem can be fitted with an external memory up to 32 K with no other modifications. The transmitter section of the modem can store up to 32 separate data packets.
Most of the transmitter functions are performed internally in the modem IC, with only a DAC (Digital to Analogue Converter) and final low pass filter implemented by external circuitry.
The data is placed into an HDLC frame (consistent with ISO3309), complete with dummy zeroes where required. During transmission, a CRC calculation (CRC-CCITT) is performed, and when the end of the data packet is reached, this FCS (Frame Check Sequence) is appended to the end of the frame, before the closing HDLC FLAG.

Where two or more consecutive frames are sent, only one FLAG octet is used to delimit the frames. All frames are composed of an integral number of octets.
2 "Data and Computer Communications" William Stallings

Data from the HDLC formatting stage is fed through a function, to convert the NRZ data to NRZI format.

The NRZI encoded data stream is now fed to a data randomiser, to ensure that there is no DC component to the data stream. This is based on a recursive seventeen bit shift register with two taps.

### 3.5.5 COLLISION AVOIDANCE SCHEME

The unique supervisory signalling channel facility available in this product is ideally suited to the implementation of a highly effective collision avoidance mechanism. This is a highly desirable feature in a multipoint data network, in that it allows vastly increased usage of the available channel capacity.

For instance, take a point-to-multipoint network, with a central base station, and a large number of remote data terminals scattered around the central station.

This is a split frequency duplex channel, where the central station is able to transmit on frequency F1, and simultaneously receive on frequency F2. Remote stations transmit on frequency F2, and receive on frequency F1.

If a transmission by one remote station is "crashed" by a transmission by another remote station, then the base station may not get the message correctly, and thus not acknowledge it. If there is no control over when the remote stations transmit, then because the remote stations cannot "hear" each other, their transmissions will begin to collide more often as the data traffic increases. This type of system will suffer a total blockage as the total traffic requirement approaches about $50 \%$ of the channel capacity.

Now, if the base station could quickly inform all other remote terminals, when the base receiver is busy because one of the remote terminals is transmitting, then this message can be delivered to the base receiver without being "jumped on" by another terminal blindly "crashing in". The next terminal can then deliver it's message when the receiver is signaled to be free. Of course collisions are still possible, but the occurrence of these can be dramatically reduced by this type of scheme.

Now to implementation specifics. The supervisory signalling channel in the modem, can be set independently for transmit and receive directions. For the purposes of this collision avoidance scheme, the supervisory signalling channel is only required in the base transmit direction. In the reverse direction, the supervisory signalling channel is disabled. The base transmitter is active full time, sending only FLAGs when it has no real data to send. The base controller, then indicates to the whole population of remote terminals, the current status of the base receiver, in the value of the supervisory signalling channel data bits.

The remote data terminals are programmed so that they will not begin a transmission if the received supervisory signalling channel data indicates that the base receiver is currently busy. This would result in remote terminals queuing for access to the base receiver. To prevent all these remote terminals all beginning a transmission as soon as the base indicates a free receiver, a "windowed" timing mechanism would be implemented, with a random factor added in the terminal's selection of a "window".
There are many factors that would determine the quantification of system variables, but this short description serves to illustrate a basic approach.

### 3.6 TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION

Periodically, the modem controller reads the voltage on the temperature transducer mounted on the radio section. This value is then used in a table look-up procedure, to derive correction data to be applied to the modulator circuitry via a transmit waveform offset voltage. This is provided by the output of the six bit DAC (UX8/RN2), which is fed to the correction voltage input of the 12 MHz reference oscillator.

The offset table is constructed in the temperature calibration cycle performed during the factory testing procedure. The radio-modem is temperature cycled twice from -10C to +65 C . During this time, the necessary data is determined to correct the temperature induced frequency errors. At the end of the cycle, the final database is constructed and written to the non-volatile memory.

### 3.7 USER INDICATIONS

The TC-900DR provides three LED's that show status information to the user - RXSIG, SYNC, and TXMIT indications.

In all operation modes of the modem except "Programmer mode" (see the section below on special modes of operation), the RXSIG LED indicates the level of the RSSI signal from the radio IF strip, compared to a threshold set in the configuration data read from the non-volatile memory. If the signal is above the threshold, then the LED indicator is turned on. There is no hysteresis applied in this process.

In normal operation, the SYNC LED indicates when the modem has detected a valid data stream. The SYNC LED is activated, when the modem detects a valid HDLC flag sequence, and remains active until an invalid sequence of seven or more consecutive "1" bits is detected. The SYNC LED will not be turned on if the RSSI signal strength (as indicated by the RXSIG LED) is below the minimum threshold. This prevents false SYNC detection from noise. While the modem is SYNC'd, it does not continue to measure RSSI levels.

The TXMIT LED indicator is connected directly to the modem's PTT output transistor. It is active whenever the PTT line to the radio section is active low.

### 3.8 SPECIAL MODES OF OPERATION

### 3.8.1 GENERAL

Part of the power-up/reset initialisation phase of the TC-900DR modem, is a set of tests to determine whether the modem should enter a special operation mode.

There are three of these "special" modes. Whilst in these modes the TC-900DR will not operate in its standard run mode.

- Programmer mode.
- Bit error rate test mode.
- Handset mode.

These modes are only entered if the required setup conditions are present at power up of the TC-900DR. An error mode of operation can also be entered into, if during normal operation of the TC-900DR modem, an error condition occurs.

### 3.8.2 PROGRAMMER MODE

Pin 6 on the DB9 connector of Port A, is normally the DSR line. This pin is pulled high by a resistor to +13.8 v , so that to a connected DTE the DSR signal implies that this DCE is ready.

However, if this pin is connected to pin 5 when the modem is powered up, the controller senses this, and attempts to enter "Programmer mode". The modem sends out of the serial port, an ASCII "?" (question mark) character, and waits for the programmer to reply with a password. The SYNC LED toggles on and off with every output of the "?" prompt until the correct password is entered. This mode is sustained for approximately 30 seconds. Failure to supply the correct password in time, will cause the modem to abandon the "Programmer mode" attempt, and go on with it's normal power-up procedure. This password protection scheme provides some defense against unauthorised tampering with the TC-900DR modems configuration data.


### 3.8.3 BIT ERROR RATE TEST MODE

Pin 9 of the DB9 connector of Port A, is normally the Ring Indicate output line. The modem includes a resistive pulldown to ground to show a negative condition on this line. However, if this pin is driven positive (typically by connecting it to pin 6), then the modem's data transmitter and receiver will enter the BER test mode.

It will activate the RF transmitter and generate a scrambled bit pattern which should be decoded at a receiver as a constant logic "1" level in the unscrambled data.

A test point on the modem section PCB, is available to monitor this point with a frequency counter. (In fact this test point is always active, and may be used to monitor the received data decoded by the DFM4-9 modem IC at any time). Any errors in the decoded bitstream, will be " 0 ", and the receiver portion of the modem in this mode, will activate the SYNC LED every time it sees a "0" bit.

An internal timer is used to generate a time equivalent to 1000 bits. Every error bit detected, will activate the SYNC LED, and restart the timer. If and when the timer expires, the SYNC LED is deactivated. Thus, for error rates of 1 in 103 and above, the SYNC LED will be ON most of the time. A 1 in 104 error rate will show the SYNC LED active for approximately $10 \%$ of the time. This function provides a crude indication of Bit Error Rate for installation purposes.

Other functions performed in this state include RXSIG indication, and temperature compensation. The state of pin 9 is constantly monitored in this mode. If the pin ceases to be driven positive, then the BER Test mode is terminated, and the modem restarts it's initialisation phase.

### 3.8.4 HANDSET MODE

The DFM4-9 modem tests for the presence of a handset plugged into the handset audio port at power up.

This is done by measuring the voltage on channel 4 of the analogue to digital converter (UX10-p6). This signal is passed into the modem section from the radio section via connector X4-p24, "ADC3".

If a handset is plugged in, then the measured voltage will be about 2 V , but if it isn't installed, then the voltage will be about 4 V . The measured voltage is compared to 3 V to determine whether the handset is plugged in. If this test succeeds, then the modem will not generate a data stream. However, it will continue to indicate received RF signal strength, and perform temperature compensation. The handset has a PTT button, and this signal is connected across the modem's PTT output. Thus the handset PTT switch will activate the TXMIT LED.

### 3.8.5 ERROR INDICATION MODES

### 3.8.5.1 GENERAL

There are three error conditions that will cause the RXSIG and SYNC LEDs to be used for error indications and not their normal purpose. Two of these are fatal conditions, that cause the modem to restart after the duration of the error indication phase.

### 3.8.5.2 TRANSMIT POWER LOW

While the modem activates the radio transmitter, it periodically checks the transmit power. If the power measurement is less than a threshold set in the non-volatile memory, then the RXSIG and SYNC LEDs are made to alternate, approximately four times per second. The TXMIT LED will also be on during this process. This indication condition will persist for the duration of the transmission. As soon as the transmission is discontinued, the error indication will cease, and the two LEDs revert to their normal function.

### 3.8.5.3 NVRAM READ ERROR

The DFM4-9DR modem accesses the non-volatile memory as part of it's initialisation phase, to get configuration data. If the communication protocol with the device is violated, or the non-volatile memory CRC checksum is found to be incorrect, then the modem indicates this by flashing the RXSIG and SYNC LEDs twice alternately. That is, one LED operates ON and OFF twice, then the other. A total of five cycles of this occurs, then the modem restarts it's initialisation from scratch.

### 3.8.5.4 SYNTHESISER LOCK DETECT ERROR

If at any time during normal operation, BER mode, or handset mode, the TBB206 frequency synthesiser indicates an out of lock condition, the modem enters an error indication mode for a short time before restarting. One LED is turned ON ( $\%$ ), the LEDs are swapped, then both turned OFF $(\bullet)$. Then the latter LED ON again, swap LEDS, and then OFF. This will give the appearance of a sweeping motion between the LEDs.

The following table shows all error condition displays for comparison.

| Tx PWR Error |  | NVRAM Error |  | TBB206 Error <br> Synthesiser |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| RXSIG | SYNC | RXSIG | SYNC | RXSIG | SYNC |
| 0 | - | 0 | $\bullet$ | 0 | - |
| - | 0 | - | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | 0 |
| 0 | $\bullet$ | 0 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | - |
| - | 0 | - | - | $\bullet$ | 0 |
| 0 | - | $\bullet$ | 0 | 0 | $\bullet$ |
| - | 0 | $\bullet$ | - | - | $\bullet$ |
| 0 | - | - | 0 |  | repeat |
| - | 0 | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| continue |  |  | repeat |  |  |

### 3.9 SYNCHRONOUS OPERATION MODE FIRMWARE REVISION: V2.1

### 3.9.1 GENERAL

The TC-900DR when operating in Synchronous mode, implements a $V .24$ like interface. The unit uses a special wiring harness that converts the two 9 pin " $D$ " connectors on the end panel of the TC-900DR to a standard 25 pin "D" connector for user interface.

Synchronous Mode implements a bit level interface. Data is carried on a bit by bit basis. No framing or error detection is performed. Modem operation is full duplex.

Current implementations of SYNC mode, do not provide a DCD signal in the 25 pin RS232 interface.

### 3.9.2 DATA RECEIVER

While sufficient RF signal is present into the radio receiver, the data decoder is continually extracting data bits from the received signal, and outputting these to the user interface connector. If the received RF signal into the radio receiver falls below the minimum threshold, then the data decoder stops.

### 3.9.3 SETTING MINIMUM RSSI LEVEL

The data decoder of the modem is continually running while sufficient RF signal is present into the radio receiver. If the radio receiver is not receiving a signal, then the recovered signal applied to the data decoder of the modem, will consist only of noise. To prevent the modem from erroneously locking onto noise and producing "garbage" at the RxD pin, a minimum RSSI level must be present to validate the recovered signal applied to the modem data decoder. This threshold level, is stored in the non-volatile configuration memory. It should be set by applying a signal to the radio receiver, which produces a desired bit error rate, a desired SiNaD result, or more crudely, a predetermined absolute signal level *into the antenna connector of the TC-900DR. The modem (operating in Test/Program mode) is then commanded to measure the RSSI level, which produces a response of a message indicating the measured level, in hexadecimal. This process should be repeated several times, then an average taken. The analogue to digital conversion performed in this way, is an eight bit conversion. In normal operation, the modem performs a six bit conversion when measuring the RSSI level, so the average of the levels measured in the test mode should now be divided by four. The result should now be stored in the configuration memory, at the address reserved for it. The DR9_PRGM programmer available from Trio DataCom Pty Ltd facilitates this process.
*Use a signal generator modulated with a sine wave frequency of half the nominal bit rate of the unit (e.g. for a 4800 BPS unit, use 2400 Hz modulation).

### 3.9.4 DATA RECEIVER CLOCK OUTPUT

The receive section of the modem, includes a clock line driven by the modem. This signal is used to synchronise the transfer of receive data to the user system. The RCO (Rx_Clock_Output, pin17 in the DB25 connector) line changes from ON (TRUE) to OFF (FALSE) as the RxD (Receive_Data, pin3 in the DB25 connector) line outputs the next bit, and from OFF (FALSE) to ON (TRUE) in the nominal centre of the bit cell. This conforms to the V .24 specification.

### 3.9.5 OTHER RS232 RECEIVER CONTROL LINES

The DSR (Data_Set_Ready) line is driven true by the modem. This line is in fact merely tied to the internal +13.8 volt rail via a 4 K 7 resistor. The DTR (Data_Terminal_Ready) input is unused in Synchronous mode.

### 3.9.6 DATA TRANSMITTER

The transmit data input is continually sampled and coded for transmission. This process consists of sampling the data input, randomising the bit pattern so that the $D C$ component of the transmitted stream is zero, and generating a waveform suitable for application to the modulator of the FM radio transmitter.

### 3.9.7 DATA TRANSMITTER CLOCKS

The modem transmit data interface, includes two clock lines. One clock line, TCO (Transmit_Clock_Out, pin15 in DB25 connector) is driven by the modem, the other, TCl (Transmit_Clock_In, pin24 in the DB25 connector) can be enabled to allow the external user to supply a transmit data clock. This is implemented by synchronising the internal clock generator to the user's clock (within a small frequency range). This function is essentially a Phase Locked Loop, and effectively adjusts the phase of the internal clock to match that of the input clock. If the user clock source stops, then the modem will continue to generate the internal clock at it's nominal rate. In accordance with specification V.24, the state of the transmit data line ( $T \times \mathrm{D}$, pin2 in the DB25 connector) is sampled on the ON to OFF transition of the clock, the bit cell boundary occurs with the OFF to ON transition of the clock.

### 3.9.8 TRANSMITTER RTS/CTS LINES

Two other control lines are included in the transmitter interface. The RTS (Ready_To_Send) input line, is used to control the radio RF transmitter. The CTS (Clear_To_Send) output line is driven by the modem, to indicate that the modem transmitter is ready to accept transmit data. The RTS to CTS time is determined by an internal timer. A configuration parameter is used to load the internal timer when the RTS line is activated, which must expire before the modem activates the CTS line. This time is necessary to allow the remote receiver to settle and synchronise to the data stream, before the user at the transmitting end begins sending data. However it should be noted, that the CTS signal does not perform any flow control function within the modem.

### 3.9.9 PHASE SYNCHRONISM WITH GLOBAL CLOCKS

When data is transferred over more than short distances, and synchronism must be maintained to some external global master clock (e.g. Telecom DDN network), then the propagation delay, and thus phase shift of the data becomes significant. A facility is provided, to introduce a phase delay in the transmitted data stream, of up to $3 / 4$ of a bit, in $1 / 4$ bit steps. This delay is adjusted so that minimum phase offset results at the receiver of the destination station.

### 3.9.10 TRANSMIT TIMER

The modem implements a transmit (PTT) timer. This timer can be disabled entirely by setting the PTT Timer configuration value to zero. The timer value is a 16 bit number, that counts in increments of 2.5 milliseconds. If the timer is enabled, whenever the modem activates the PTT control to the radio transmitter, it initialises the timer with the configured value. The timer is decremented while the RTS line remains active, and if it terminates, the PTT control is deactivated. No other action is taken, and all other functions within the modem are oblivious to this condition, including the CTS line, so data continues to be "carried", and thus lost. The PTT timer is to be considered an emergency override mechanism only, in case an error occurs in the operation of the user's host equipment and/or software. To reset this timeout state, the RTS line must be taken from ON to OFF. The PTT timer will then be re-initialised the next time the RTS line is activated. The timeout period may be set in 2.5 mS increments to over 160 seconds.

### 3.9.11 LED INDICATORS

### 3.9.11.1 Received Signal Strength Indication. RXSIG LED

In all operation modes of the modem except "Programmer Mode" (see section below on special modes of operation), the RXSIG LED indicates the level of the RSSI signal from the radio IF strip, compared to a threshold set in the configuration data read from the non-volatile memory. If the signal is above the threshold, then the LED indicator is turned on. There is no hysteresis applied in this process.

### 3.9.11.2 Data Carrier Detect Indication. SYNC LED

In "Synchronous" operation mode (V2.1.x), prior to modem hardware revision "D", and firmware revision "V2.1.4", the SYNC LED is superfluous and not driven.

Note that firmware revision V2.1.5 onwards should only be used in SYNC mode.
From modem hardware Revision D onwards, the SYNC LED drive is used to generate a DCD function in the user interface connector, and requires firmware revision V2.1.4 onwards (i.e. firmware revision V2.1.4 onwards drives the SYNC LED ON 20 mS after the "leading edge" of the RxSig LED).

This means that the SYNC LED drive should always show this function and not be allowed to show low Tx Power (see Error indication modes section 3.8.5.2). To facilitate this the Min Tx Pwr parameter in the TC-900DR modem should be set to zero, when the modem is built for synchronous operation.

### 3.9.11.3 Radio Transmitter Active Indication. TXMIT LED

This LED indicator is connected directly to the modem's PTT output drive. It is illuminated whenever the PTT line to the radio board is active.

### 3.9.12 SPECIAL MODES OF OPERATION

### 3.9.12.1 Programmer Mode

Part of the power-up/reset initialisation phase of the modem, are tests to determine whether the modem should enter a special operation mode. The first, is a test for "Programmer Mode". Pin6 on the DB9 connector of Port A, is normally the DSR line. To this end, this pin is pulled high by a resistor to +13.8 v , so that to a connected DTE this signal says that this DCE is ready. However, if this pin is connected to pin5 (Com) when the modem is powered up, the modem senses this, and attempts to enter "Programmer Mode". The modem sends out of PORTA, an ASCII "?" (question mark) character, and waits for the programmer to reply with a password. Failure to supply the correct password in time, will cause the modem to abandon the "Programmer Mode" attempt, and go on with it's normal power-up procedure. This password protection scheme provides some defence against unauthorised tampering with the radio/modem's configuration data.

### 3.9.12.2 Bit Error Rate Test Mode

The next test, is one for "Bit Error Rate Test Mode". Pin9 of the DB9 connector of Port A, is normally the Ring Indicate output line. The modem includes a resistive pulldown to Gnd to show a negative condition on this line. However, if this pin is driven positive (typically by connecting it to pin6), then the modem's data transmitter and receiver will enter the BER test mode. It will activate the RF transmitter and generate a scrambled bit pattern which should be decoded at a receiver as a constant logic "1" level in the unscrambled data. A test point on the modem PCB, is available to monitor this point with
a frequency/event counter. (In fact this test point is always active, and may be used to monitor the received data decoded by the modem IC). Each error bit in the decoded bitstream, will be " 0 ", and the receiver portion of the modem in this mode, will activate the SYNC LED every time it sees a "0" bit. An internal timer is used to generate a time equivalent to 1000 bits. Every error bit detected, will activate the SYNC LED, and restart the timer. If and when the timer expires, the SYNC LED is deactivated. Thus, for error rates of 1 in $10^{3}$ and above, the SYNC LED will be ON most of the time. A 1 in $10^{4}$ error rate will show the SYNC LED active for approximately $10 \%$ of the time. This function provides a crude indication of Bit Error Rate for installation purposes. Other functions performed in this state include RXSIG indication, and temperature compensation. The state of pin9 is constantly monitored in this mode. If the pin ceases to be driven positive, then the BER Test mode is terminated, and the modem restarts it's initialisation phase.

### 3.9.12.3 Order_Wire/Handset Mode

Failure of the BERT Mode test, brings the modem to test for the presence of a handset plugged into the handset audio port. This is done by measuring the voltage on channel 4 of the analogue to digital converter. If a handset is plugged in, then the measured voltage will be about 2 volt, but if it isn't installed, then the voltage will be about 4 volt. The measured voltage is compared to 3 volt to determine whether the handset is plugged in. If this test succeeds, then the modem will not generate a data waveform to the radio transmitter. However, it will continue to indicate received RF signal strength, and perform temperature compensation. The handset has a PTT button, and this signal is connected across the modem's PTT output. Thus the handset PTT switch will activate the TXMIT LED.

### 3.9.12.4 Error Indication Modes

There are three error conditions that will cause the RXSIG and SYNC LEDs to be used for error indications and not their normal purpose. Two of these are "fatal" conditions, that cause the modem to restart after the duration of the error indication phase.

### 3.9.12.5 Transmit Power Low

While the modem activates the radio transmitter, it periodically checks the level of the radio transmitter output power. If the power measurement is less than a threshold set in the non-volatile memory, then the RXSIG and SYNC LEDs are made to alternate, approximately four times per second. Of course, the TXMIT LED will also be on in this case. This indication condition will persist for the duration of the transmission. As soon as the transmission is discontinued, the error indication will cease, and the two LEDs revert to their normal function. The user should be aware that from Revision D of the modem PCB, this state will cause incorrect operation of the DCD output line. As stated above, the Min Tx Pwr parameter should be set to zero.

### 3.9.12.6 NVRAM Read Error

The modem accesses the non-volatile memory as part of it's initialisation phase, to get configuration data. If the communication protocol with the memory device is violated, or the non-volatile memory CRC checksum is found to be incorrect, then the modem indicates this by flashing the RXSIG and SYNC LEDs twice alternately. That is, one LED winks on and off twice, then the other. A total of five cycles of this occurs, then the modem restarts it's initialisation from scratch.

### 3.9.12.7 Radio Frequency Synthesiser, Lock Detect Error

If at any time during normal operation, BERT mode, or handset mode, the frequency synthesiser indicates an out of lock condition, the modem enters an error indication mode for a short time before restarting. One LED is turned ON, the LEDs are swapped, then both off. Then the latter LED ON again, swap LEDS, and OFF. This will give the appearance of a sweeping motion between the LEDs. The following table shows all three modes for comparison.

| Tx PWR Error |  | NVRAM Error |  | TBB206 Error Synthesiser |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| RXSIG | SYNC | RXSIG | SYNC | RXSIG | SYNC |
| 0 | - | 0 | - | 0 | - |
| - | 0 | - | - | - | 0 |
| 0 | - | 0 | - | - | - |
| - | 0 | - | - | - | 0 |
| 0 | $\bullet$ | $\bullet$ | 0 | 0 | $\bullet$ |
| - | 0 | - | - | - | $\bullet$ |
| 0 | - | - | 0 |  | repeat |
| - | 0 | - | $\bullet$ |  |  |
| continue |  |  | repeat |  |  |

### 3.9.13 WIRING ADAPTOR HARNESS FOR TC-900DR SYNCHRONOUS MODEL



## SECTION 4

## ALIGNMENT PROCEDURE

## 4 ALIGNMENT PROCEDURE

### 4.1 GENERAL

This section details operational performance and alignment procedures that may be required for the TC-900DR. During servicing it may also be necessary to measure specific performance parameters as a means of verifying the presence of a fault condition.

### 4.2 TEST EQUIPMENT REQUIRED

The following list of test equipment is required to carry out all of the procedures detailed below.

Frequency counter accurate to better than 100 Hz at 1 GHz
FM Signal generator. 455 kHz to $1 \mathrm{GHz} .-120 \mathrm{dBm}$ to +10 dbm . Synthesised in 100 Hz steps.

Spectrum analyser 10 MHz to 1 GHz . Dispersion down to $2 \mathrm{kHz} / \mathrm{cm} .80+$ dB dynamic range. IF $\mathrm{b} / \mathrm{w}$ down to 1 kHz .

RF Power meter to 1 GHz . -20 to +30 dbm . Accuracy $\pm 0.25 \mathrm{~dB}$.
Digital volt meter.
HP3406 RF Millivoltmeter or similar.
RF Test leads, MCX male and SMA male.
Audio noise and distortion test set.
Audio oscillator.

- Surface mount repair tools.


### 4.3 TEST POINT LOCATIONS

Both the radio section PCB and the modem section PCB contain numerous test points. They are easily located on the PCB's, and are detailed below.

### 4.3.1 MODEM SECTION PCB

| TEST POINT | SIGNAL | DESCRIPTION |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| TP1 | TxCLK | Transmit clock |
| TP2 | BER TST | BER test output |
| TP3 | SYNC | Synchronised output |
| TP4 | RxCLKOUT | Integrator reset |
| TP5 | RxCLK | Receive clock |
| TP6 | RxDATA | Receive data |
| TP7 | DATA OUT | Transmit data |
| TP8 | INTEGRATOR | Rx integrator reset |

### 4.3.2 RADIO SECTION PCB

TEST POINT SIGNAL DESCRIPTION
FINAL PA SECTION

TP31
TP25
TP27
TP14
TP15
TP20
TP28
TP29
TP26
TP33
TP30

TXPWR-2 Bias to Q8
TXPWR-3 Bias to Q8
TXPWR-4 Bias to Q9
+8v Power Supply
TXEN Transmit enable
RxMIXOUT Rx mixer bias
TXPA-1 Bias to Q10
TXPA-2 Bias to Q11
+13V8 Power supply
PWR CONT Power control supply
$\mathrm{PTT}+8 \mathrm{~V} \quad$ Press to talk

121 MHz SECTION
TP13 DATA Tx data input

TP17
60.5 MHz

Modulated 60.5 MHz
TP16 $\quad 121 \mathrm{MHz} \quad$ Output of doubler
TP18 $\quad 121 \mathrm{MHz} \quad$ Modulated 121 MHz
TP32 MIC Tx Mic audio input
NE615 IF SECTION
TP6
TP9
TP8
TP10
TP7
TP4
TP1
TP2
TP3
TP5
TP19

415 kHz I/P 455 filter input/second mixer output
QUAD Quad detector
DATA Rx data out
AUDIO Rxaudio out
RSSI RSSI output
MUTE Mute control output
2nd L.O Second Xtal oscillator
2nd L.O Second Xtal oscillator
IF Input $\quad 45 \mathrm{MHz}$ IF filter input
IF Output $\quad 45 \mathrm{MHz}$ IF filter output
VCO VCO oscillator injection

SYNTHESISER/VCO SECTION
TP12 LOCK DET Synthesiser lock detect
TP11 $+5 \mathrm{~V} \quad$ Synthesiser $+5 v$ supply
AUXILIARY HANDSET INTERFACE SECTION
TP21 MIC Tx mic audio input
TP22 PTT Manual press to talk
TP23 +8V Handset +8 V supply
TP24 AUDIO OUT Rx audio output

### 4.4 ADJUSTMENT POINTS

All adjustment points are located on the radio section PCB. The following is a list of these adjustable components.

COMPONENT
XTAL2
VR3
L10
L9
L7
L8
L6
VR4
C78
VR1
VR2
L3
L1
L4
L5

ADJUSTMENT
VCO reference frequency
Deviation level set
Tripler filter
Doubler filter
121 MHz filter
121 MHz final filter
Tx frequency set ( 121 MHz Osc)
Tx power control adjust
Tx mixer tunable filter
Rx audio mute adjust
Rx data DC BIAS offset adjust
45 MHz filter alignment
44.545 oscillator adjust

45 MHz filter alignment
45 MHz filter alignment

### 4.5 LINK OPTIONS

Several options are set in the TC-900DR modem by the setting of links on the radio section PCB. Listed below is an option table for the various combinations.

| LINK NUMBER |  | SETTING |  | DESCRIPTION |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| LK2 | IN |  | AFC option disabled |  |
|  | OUT |  | AFC option enabled | (factory standard) |
| LK4 | IN |  | PWR control disable |  |
|  | OUT |  | PWR control enabled |  |

### 4.6 HOUSING

The TC-900DR has been designed with the serviceability of the unit in mind. Construction of the unit is robust yet easily dismantled. The unit is primarily assembled in an aluminium extrusion with a central chassis that is fixed to the front panel.

### 4.6.1 DISASSEMBLY PROCEDURE

To disassemble the unit, simply remove the two silver screws on the underside of the unit and the six black screws located on the front panel (the front panel of the unit has the two DB9 connectors protruding from it). Ensure you do not loose the attached nylon washers, as these prevent the Lexan front panel label being damaged upon replacing and tightening the six screws. Simply slide the unit out of the extrusion clasping front panel and the complete unit is exposed to you.

Caution: When re-assembling be careful not to foul the ribbon cable against the case when sliding the unit into its case as this may inadvertently damage the cable.

### 4.6.2 MODEM AND POWER SUPPLY PCB

All components and connections to the modem section PCB are accessible without removing the PCB from the chassis. If access to the rear of the PCB is required, firstly remove two nuts that clamp the C TO-220 power supply regulator to the front panel. Once this is removed, simply remove the four screws securing the PCB to the chassis.

The PCB is now free to work on, and can be folded out so as to service the unit in an open accessible condition whilst still connected to the radio section PCB. If required, the modem section PCB can be separated from the radio section PCB by simply unplugging the ribbon cable.

NOTE: Regulators will need to have heat-sinks fitted if unit is to be operated in this condition for excessive time periods.

### 4.6.3 ANTENNA DIPLEXER

The antenna diplexer is mounted on top of the radio section PCB. It is easily removed by firstly disconnecting the two miniature RF connectors (MCX type) from the PCB.

Care should be taken when unplugging these connectors so as not to damage them, it is important to remove and insert connectors in a vertical direction.

Secondly, remove the nut securing the antenna output connector from the central mounting chassis. The last two remaining screws must be removed which secure the diplexer to two metal PCB standoffs on the radio section PCB. The diplexer can now be removed.

Testing of the radio section PCB can be continued without the antenna diplexer, by connecting to the receiver and transmitter ports separately.

Miniature MCX RF Connectors are available from Trio DataCom if required.

### 4.6.4 RADIO SECTION PCB

The radio section consists of a two sided PCB which has surface mount components on one side and conventional components on the other. Several critical test points are accessible on the component side of the PCB which minimises removal of the PCB from the chassis.

To remove the PCB from the chassis, fifteen screws must be removed. Upon removal of these screws, the PCB can be manoeuvred from the chassis and once again can fold out so as to be serviceable as a complete unit.

NOTE : It is essential that all RF Deck mounting bolts are fitted and secure upon reassembly as many of these bolts provide inter-stage isolation and secure grounding ensuring the product meets all specifications.

Once service of the unit is complete, reassembly is simply the reversal of the above procedures.

Care should be taken when sliding the complete chassis assembly back into the extrusion. Ensure that the ribbon cable connecting the modem and radio section PCB's is carefully "tucked" away within its designated slot so as not to damage the cable.

### 4.7 ALIGNMENT DESCRIPTION

CAUTION - As the TC-900DR is capable of full duplex operation, care should be taken to avoid damage to sensitive test equipment such as signal generators or spectrum analysers. It is recommended that a 30 db 2 Watt pad be connected between the unit and any test equipment prior to testing.

This section is for alignment/adjustment of the RF Deck and should be read in conjunction with Section 2 (Hardware Technical Description) and Section 7 (Fault Finding) if faults or difficulties are experienced.

For initial alignment, proceed in the following order :
Reference oscillator \& synthesiser.
121 MHz Tx modulated injection oscillator.
Tx final stage/Power control.
Receiver and audio mute

### 4.7.1 REFERENCE OSCILLATOR AND SYNTHESIZER

1 Check VCXO (XTAL2) for reference frequency o/p at a level of 550 mV rms with an RF Millivoltmeter, and the VCO o/p for an RF level of around 150 mV rms.

2 Check that the TBB202 dual modulus prescaler (U4) is producing an output of approximately 7 MHz and a level of 550 mV rms at the "IF" $i / p$ to the TBB206 synthesiser I.C.(U3-p8)

3 Ensure that the synthesiser has been programmed to a frequency within the range of the VCO , and check that the VCO is locked by observing a high ( 5 V ) level on Lock detect output of the synthesiser I.C.(U3-p14). Note that very short duration pulses to ground is normal.

4 Program the synthesiser with the following VCO frequencies according to VCO type and ensure lock occurs at both ends of the frequency range. These frequencies are 2 MHz beyond the published specification.
VCO TYPE: MQC-798
Maximum $786 \mathrm{MHz} \vee C O=907 \mathrm{MHz}$ Tx or 831 MHz Rx
Minimum 814 MHz VCO $=935 \mathrm{MHz}$ Tx or 859 MHz Rx
VCO TYPE: MQC-978
Maximum $\quad 996 \mathrm{MHz} \mathrm{VCO}=875 \mathrm{MHz}$ Tx or 951 MHz Rx
Minimum $\quad 960 \mathrm{MHz}$ VCO $=839 \mathrm{MHz}$ Tx or 915 MHz Rx
5 Program the VCO to a given frequency within the range as specified above and measuring the VCO o/p frequency, adjust the $12 \mathrm{MHz}(\mathrm{VCXO})$ reference trimmer to bring the frequency within 250 Hz of the VCO frequency. Note: Unit is temperature compensated at factory and no field adjustment of Ref. Oscillator is possible. If VCO frequency is not correct $( \pm 1500 \mathrm{~Hz})$, consult factory for service advice.
Note ensure that the VCXO control input is within its active range (1-4 Volts).

6 Check the VCO power o/p by monitoring the Rx mixer bias at TP20, where approximately 200 mVDC should be measured.

7 With a spectrum analyser set to the VCO frequency and a dispersion of about 5 or 10 kHz per cm , check that the reference sidebands are less than -60 dBc in the adjacent channel.

8 Check VTCXO Reference frequency is $\mathrm{F}(\mathrm{tx})+121 \mathrm{MHz}$ for 853 remote units or $\mathrm{F}(\mathrm{tx})-121 \mathrm{MHz}$ for master units. If Reference is out by more than $\pm 1.5 \mathrm{kHz}$, drift offset should be applied via the programmer or unit should be returned for factory service. attempting to alter Reference trimmer will void temperature compensation process and should only be done in an emergency and as a temporary measure.

### 4.7.2 121 MHZ MODULATOR

## Note - make sure the transmitter is loaded with a suitable attenuator on the antenna or Tx o/p socket before energising

1. For Initial alignment set all coil cores to their nominal positions as per the table below :

Miller coils
L9 5 turns from top of coil can
L10 2 turns
L7 4 turns
L8 5 turns
L6 0 turns
To prevent the final transmitter stages from producing excessive power whilst low level stages are being aligned, it is suggested that the Tx post mixer tunable filter be de-tuned. Energise the transmitter via manual PTT from the auxiliary handset.
2. Tune $L 7$ through $L 10$ for peak $o / p$. For initial alignment this can be done by monitoring the 121 MHz level at TP18 initially and then at the input to the SBL-1X transmit mixer (U8), where a level of about 75 mV should be measured by an RF millivoltmeter (e.g HP11960).

Typical RF millivoltmeter readings for each stage are :
TP17 $\quad 125 \mathrm{mV}$ RF $=0.25 \mathrm{VDC}$ on HP11960 probe.
TP16 $\quad 40 \mathrm{mVRF}=0.06 \mathrm{VDC}$ on HP11960 probe.
TP18 550 mV RF $=1.0 \mathrm{VDC}$ on HP11960 probe.
$121 \mathrm{MHz} \mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ to mixer $\quad 75 \mathrm{mVRF}=0.13 \mathrm{VDC}$ on HP11960 probe.
Note: The signal at TP17 is present as long as "Tx En" is active. The subsequent test points require PTT to also be active.

If the complete transmit chain is known to be operative then the 121 MHzo op can be peaked by first de-tuning C 78 on the tunable Tx filter until the Tx power o/p is less than 100 mW and then tuning Inductors L7 to L10 for maximum output at the Tx frequency.
3. With the radio section links set for the desired data rate (see link table above), set the peak deviation as per the chart below with VR3, and center frequency to 121.000 MHz with L6.

NOTE : THESE ADJUSTMENTS ARE INTERACTIVE. ENSURE ALL COILS ARE SECURE BAUD RATE 4800 bps

DEVIATION LEVEL
$9600 \mathrm{bps} \quad \pm 2.75 \mathrm{kHz}$ peak
4. Note that temperature compensation is applied to the 121 MHz oscillator so attempting to adjust either VR3 or L6 will upset compensation and should only be done as a temporary measure. Return unit to factory for repair if errors $> \pm 500 \mathrm{~Hz}$ are detected.

### 4.7.3 TX FINAL

NOTE: It is essential that all RF Deck mounting bolts are fitted and secure upon reassembly as many of these bolts provide inter-stage isolation and secure grounding ensuring the product meets all specifications.

1 Ensure the 121 MHz Tx injection is operating correctly.
2 Check Q2,4,5,8, are all biased correctly as per the voltage chart. Temporarily disable the Tx power control circuitry by shorting LK4 located on the top side of the board near the ribbon cable.
Energise the transmitter via the manual PTT on the auxiliary handset.
3 Tune the Tx filter tuning capacitor C78 for a peak output power measured at Antenna port or X 4 .

4 With full drive, Q9 driver collector current as seen across TP26//TP27 should be approximately $45 \mathrm{~mA}(100 \mathrm{mVDC})$, and NOT MORE THAN 55 mA ( 120 mVDC ).

5 With full drive at Q9 each final transistor should be drawing around 175 $\mathrm{mA}(385 \mathrm{mVDC})$ as seen across TP26/TP29 or TP28. The output power measured directly at the final connector should be between +32 and +34 dbm without power control.

6 Re-enable the power control circuitry and with the 'Txpwr' control line set at +5 VDC , set VR4 for $+32 \mathrm{dbm}+/-0.25 \mathrm{~dB}$ at the tx o/p socket X 4 . Check that the current in EACH final collector does NOT EXCEED 225 mA .

7 Check with the spectrum analyser that the $\mathrm{T} \times \mathrm{o} / \mathrm{p}$ is free from spurious signals.
Note 1. Prior to the diplexer the VCO level is nominally about -20 dbc .
Note 2. Close in mixing products (less than $+/-30 \mathrm{MHz}$ ) must be greater than $65 d b$ below the carrier, as they are not attenuated by the diplexer filters.

## D.C. Voltages of Radio Section

RF Output Power set to +32 dbm at $\times 4$ (diplexer input) with 13.8 VDC supply

| Transistor | Base | Emitter | Collector |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Q2 | 1.66 VDC | 0.92 VDC | 6.96 VDC |
| Q4 | 1.79 VDC | 1.06 VDC | 6.46 VDC |
| Q5 | 1.80 VDC | 1.08 VDC | 7.51 VDC |
| Q8 | 1.05 VDC | 0.31 VDC | 4.02 VDC |
| Q9 | 0.47 VDC | 0 VDC | 13.35 VDC |
| Q10 | 0.28 VDC | 0 VDC | 13.05 VDC |
| Q11 | 0.29 VDC | 0 VDC | 13.16 VDC |
| Q12 | 7.17 VDC | 7.97 VDC | 7.88 VDC |
| Q1 | 7.29 VDC | 7.97 VDC | 7.91 VDC |
| Q13 | 4.56 VDC | 3.84 VDC | 7.97 VDC |
| Q7 | 1.14 VDC | 0.41 VDC | 6.68 VDC |
| Q6 | 1.13 VDC | 0.40 VDC | 7.52 VDC |
| Q3 | 1.06 VDC | 0.33 VDC | 7.59 VDC |

### 4.7.4 RECEIVER

The receiver section requires little or no alignment once factory aligned.

### 4.7.4.1 No AFC Models (Xtal $1=45.455 \mathrm{MHz}$ )

1 Adjust L1 for 45.455 MHz measured with pickup loop near L1.
2 In emergency adjust coils L3, L4 and L5 for best SINAD at TP8.
3 Adjust audio mute VR1 to mute handset audio at 10dB SINAD
4 Adjust VR2 for 2.0 VDC at TP8 whilst receiving data off-air.

### 4.7.4.2 AFC Models

Monitor 44.545 MHz with pickup at L1. Test for $44.545 \pm 1.5 \mathrm{KHz}$
Consult factory for alignment or service information.

## SECTION 5

## INSTALLATION AND COMMISSIONING

## 5 INSTALLATION OVERVIEW

All Data Radio Modem devices needs to be properly installed and commissioned in order to function reliably. It is important that installers are familiar with RF products / installations and are geared up with appropriate tools necessary to confirm the ongoing reliability of a communications system.

This chapter is intended as a short form checklist to ensure such radio devices are installed correctly and that important tests are made and recorded at each site for future reference should a problem eventuate.
installers should check that each data radio has been programmed to suit their specific requirements before installation.

### 5.1 GENERAL

Installations play a critical role in network performance. Although this is a known fact, installations are often performed poorly or given little regard. It is essential that the installation is performed in a professional manner with careful attention and consideration to the following items :

1. Adequate primary power cable - relative to the length of cable to minimise voltage drop.
2. Shielded data cable between the unit and any external data equipment.
3. Low loss coax used for antenna feed line.
4. Careful termination of RF connectors.
5. A suitabie antenna for the requirement.
6. Suitable placement of the antenna.
7. Adequate signal strength from the base station / other radio communications device.

### 5.2 INSTALLATION

The following information should assist when installing and commissioning data radio systems.

### 5.2.1 DATA CONNECTION

In industrial environments connection to any external device should be by shielded data cable with the shield connected to the connector shell to minimise data corruption, and/or radio interference.

### 5.2.2 MOUNTING

The radio modem should be mounted in a cool, dry, and vibration free environment. Mounting of the unit should be in a location providing easy access to screws and all connections.

### 5.2.3 POWER CONNECTIONS

The power required for 5 Watt ( Tx ) at 13.8 VDC , is typically 2.0 Amps . As the $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{x}}$ key up current is significant, the gauge of primary power wiring should be considered. It is suggested that a minimum of 18 gauge stranded copper wire be used for distances of up to two metres and a minimum of 14 gauge for longer distances up to 5 metres.

Ensure correct polarity to avoid costly repairs.

### 5.2.4 COAX CABLE CONNECTION

It is important to select the correct cable and connectors for each application as a poor selection can seriously degrade the performance of the unit.

As an example, for each 3dB of cable and connector loss, half the transmitter power is lost and twice the receiver signal power is required to produce the same bit error rate.

In some installations where strong signals are present, a compromise of cable and connector cost may be acceptable.
It is essential that all connector terminations are performed as per the manufacturers specifications (especially at 900 MHz and above) and if connectors are to be used outside, it is essential that a sealant such as amalgamating tape be used to seal connectors. DO NOT use acetic cure silicon to seal the connectors.

It is also important that coax cables are not stressed by tight bends, kinking or excessive flexing. Ensure that coax cables have sufficient strain relief and are secure. If large diameter rigid or semi rigid cable is used, it is recommended to use a short length of high quality RG58 or RG223 cable between the unit and main cable feed.

The following chart is a guide to losses in various types of coaxes at 400 MHz and 900 MHz over distance, please consider this when installing the unit.

| CABLE TYPE | loss relative to distance |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 dB |  | 3 dB |  | 6 dB |  | 9 dB |  |
|  | 450 MHz | 900MHz | 450 MHz | 900 MHz | 450 MHz | 900 MHz | 450 MHz | 900MHz |
| RG58C/U | 2.3m | 1.6m | 7 m | 5 m | 14m | 10m | 20m | 15m |
| RG223/U | 3.1 m | 2.3 m | 9 m | 7 m | 18m | 14m | 28m | 21 m |
| RG213/U | 6.1 m | 4m | 18m | 12m | 37m | 24m | 55m | 37m |
| HELIAX <br> LDF4-50A | 19m | 14m | 57m | 43m | 114m | 87m | 171m | 130m |
| HELIAX LDF5-50A | 38m | 25m | 114m | 75m | 229m | 150m | 343m | 225m |

### 5.3 ANTENNA INSTALLATION

The selection of antennas and their placement is one of the most important factors when installing a radio based network. People often use a simile, it is like putting square wheels on a Mercedes Benz..... very true comparison.

Antennas are generally mounted to a vertical pole with either vertical or horizontal polarisation as per the licence requirement.

Antennas should be mounted as high as practical and away from metal surfaces which can cause reflections.

Determining the type of antenna is very important and as a typical generic example, Point to Multipoint (PTMP) systems generally employ high gain (3, 6, or 9 dB gain) omni directional antennas at the base station sites and either omni directional whips (unity gain) or preferably high gain directional yagi antennas ( 9 or 14 dB gain) at the remote sites.

### 5.3.1 YAGI ANTENNAS

Yagi antennas not only provide signal gain and directivity, but also provides protection from interfering signals which are outside the beam width of the antenna. Yagi antennas are essential when communicating over very long distances.

Yagi antennas are polarised and must be mounted either vertically (elements pointing from the ground to the sky) or horizontally (elements in parallel with the horizon).

As a general rule, Point to Multipoint remote units are vertically polarised, while Point to Point links are horizontally polarised.

When mounting yagi antennas with vertical polarisation, it should be noted that the dipole (loop section of antenna) has a drain hole. The small drain hole on one end of the dipole must be pointed towards the ground so that water will drain out of the antenna.

### 5.3.2 OMNI DIRECTIONAL ANTENNAS

Omni directional antennas provide a radiation pattern of equal strength through $360^{\circ}$ in the horizontal plane. This makes them ideal for base antennas in point to multipoint systems because they can reach the remote antennas.

Omni directional antennas are also used at remote sites (although yagi antennas are preferred) and are typically ground independent "whip" type antennas. The main reason for using whips at remote sites is for aesthetics as they are far less obtrusive than a yagi.

Regardless of the type, antennas need to be mounted properly and in a suitable location as covered below.

### 5.3.3 ANTENNA PLACEMENT

Antenna placement is of paramount importance and plays a big part of the antennas and in turn systems performance.

When choosing antenna locations the aim is to find the largest path of unobstructed space and locate the antennas within that space. It is important to locate antennas as high as possible and definitely clear of any moving obstructions.

Where possible it is important to avoid mounting antennas:

1. Against or adjacent to steel structures.
2. In an area which will have constant intermittent obstructions - people walking past, vehicles driving past etc. That is, mount antennas well above such moving obstructions.
3. Near any electrical equipment.
4. Near metal beams, structures etc.
5. Inside any metal enclosures, tin sheds / warehouses etc. - note meshed wire fences act like a "brick wall" to RF transmissions.
6. Away from guard rails or support beams.

Note: Sometimes installations in such environments are unavoidable and where this is the case, certain care can be taken to still ensure a reliable installation. Please consult Trio for assistance on a case by case basis.

If tests indicate poor signal strength then the antennas at one or both ends of the link should be raised, and/or moved clear of obstructing objects, or if directional antennas are employed they should be checked for correct directional orientation and polarisation (horizontal or vertical signal orientation).

### 5.3.4 REFLECTIONS AND OUTPUT POWER

Ideally, the propagation path should be clear Line of Site (LOS).
The biggest problem with UHF radio when used within "steel" buildings or obstructed paths is the large presence of signals randomly reflected from the surrounding obstructions or "steel" walls. These signals cannot be eliminated, but by maintaining a 10 to 20 dB margin between the wanted and unwanted signals, problems should not be experienced. The simplest way to do this is to use directional gain antennas.

These antennas will provide attenuation to all signals arriving from a direction other than the direct path. Where steel walls or structure exist immediately behind the antenna location, the high front to back ratio of such antennas will negate such high level reflections. Power output should be set at the minimum level required to achieve a 25 dB fade margin, in order to minimise the amount of RF being reflected, and to avoid saturating the receiver front end and therefore reducing the margin between wanted and unwanted signals.

### 5.4 COMMISSIONING - RSSI LEVEL

When commissioning a data radio network, it is important to ensure that the incoming received signal strength (RSSI) is adequate to provide reliable communications.

Note: A good signal path should allow for approximately 30dB fade margin.
Received signal strength (RSSI) of the incoming signal is available as an analogue output on Trio data radio modems. This RSSI output ranges from 0 to approx 4 Volts, where 4 Volts indicates the strongest signal. The actual values of received signal strength can be determined by comparing the output voltage against the calibrated graph supplied in the handbook.

By referring to the RSSI chart alignment of aerials can be optimised to achieve the greatest signal strength (highest output voltage).

Note: Be sure to stand clear of aerials when measuring this output voltage, touching or standing in close proximity to aerials will give inaccurate readings.

### 5.4.1 CHECKING DATA COMMUNICATIONS

If the host computer and remote equipment are capable of performing data integrity tests then connect the host and terminal data equipment to the radio modems.

Remove and re-apply power to each radio modem to ensure they are both in data comms mode, and run data tests on the link.

### 5.4.2 BIT ERROR RATE (BER) TESTING

If the connected data equipment is NOT capable of running data integrity tests then the TC-450DS modems can be put into a BER test mode, whereby the data channel can be tested in each direction to a reasonable level without external test equipment. To run a link test with the radio modems themselves, they must BOTH be put into BER test mode.

To place the unit in BER mode connect pin 6 and pin 9 of port A together and apply power..

The transmitter can be activated by driving the RTS pin (7) of port A positive. The unit will then send a predefined pseudo random sequence which is tested for accuracy by the receiving unit and any errors displayed on the front panel 'SYNC' lamp.

Each error bit will illuminate the lamp for approximately 1000 bits duration, therefore error rates above 1 in 1000 will show an almost constant error indication.

To return the unit to normal data transmission mode simply power it up without pin 9 connected to pin 6.

For further information on radio path problems please contact Trio DataCom for detailed advice.

Note : BER testing is not viable in an operational point to multi-point environment as the $B E R$ test will interfere with other operative units.

### 5.4.3 OUTPUT POWER - VSWR

Upon installation of equipment an output power measurement should be done using a suitable power meter. Forward and reflected power should be measured at the antenna port and recorded for future reference. The reflected power measurement should be as a minimum $3: 1$ of the forward power. If this is not the case, investigate possible causes such as poor terminations, faulty antenna etc.

### 5.4.4 DATA CONNECTION

The data connection is via a DB9 connector labelled 'Port A', which is wired as a DCE as shown below. The port labelled 'Port B' is not used for the standard configuration but can be enabled by the programmer for use as a totally independent second data channel. In industrial environments connection to the modem should be by shielded data cable with the shield connected to the connector shell to minimise data corruption, and radio interference.

- User Serial "Port A" Pin Assignment

PIN NO. \& FUNCTION
EXTERNAL VIEW OF 'PORT A'

1. DATA CARRIER DETECT (DCD)
2. RECEIVE DATA OUTPUT (RXD)
3. TRANSMIT DATA IN (TXD)
4. DATA TERMINAL READY (DTR)
5. COMMON (COM) $\qquad$
6. PROGRAM PIN (PGM)

7. REQUEST TO SEND (RTS)
8. CLEAR TO SEND (CTS)
9. BIT ERROR RATE PIN (BER)

NOTE: Pin 6 and pin 9 provide a dual function which depends on the mode that the $T C-450 D R$ is operating in.

## - User Serial "Port B" Pin Assignment.

Port B of the TC450DR is essentially unused in its standard configuration but can be enabled by the Programmer for use as a totally independent second data channel. This port is essentially used for specific applications and only has one connection that may be of use for installation purposes. This connection (Pin 9) is Receive Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) output.

This RSSI output ranges from 0 to 5 Volts, where 5 Volts indicates the strongest signal. It is important to note that this Port output has a high impedance of around 10 K ohms and loading will decrease accuracy of the recorded measurement.

PIN NO. \& FUNCTION

1. DATA CARRIER DETECT
2. RECEIVE DATA O/P (RxD)
3. TRANSMIT DATA O/P (TxD)
4. DATA TERMINAL READY (DTR)
5. COMMON
6. DATA SET READY (DSR)
7. REQUEST TO SEND (RTS)
8. CLEAR TO SEND (CTS)
9. RECEIVE SIGNAL STRENGTH

EXTERNAL VIEW OF 'PORT B'


### 5.5 GENERAL CHECKLIST

The following is a simple commissioning checklist which should be used at every site not only to ensure correct installation, but also as a reference list for problems which may eventuate.

| TRIO SITE COMMISSIONING CHECK LIST / RECORD |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Company: | Operator: |  |
| Site Location: | Date: |  |
| Link to: | Serial \#: |  |
| Radio Type: | Config File Name: |  |
| Antenna Type / Gain | Path Distance |  |
| Tx Power at Radio | Measured RSSI Volts |  |
| Reflected Power | Fade Margin |  |
| VSWR |  | Line of Site to Base |
| Tx Power at Antenna | DC volts at Radio (Tx) |  |
| Site QA Inspection: |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| Signed |  |  |

## SECTION 6

## FAULT FINDING

## 6 FAULT FINDING

This section is to assist with difficulties that may be experienced when installing or working on the TC-900DR.

### 6.1 MODEM/GENERAL

The following is a list of possible problem areas, and suggested checks that can be made to isolate any general problem that may have occurred.

1. POWER SUPPLY
a) Check for +13.8 Volts at supply input.
b) Check fuse on Modem PIS PCB (1 Amp SLO-BLOW).
c) Check supply volts:

Modem PIS i) 13.8 Volts
ii) 8 Volts
iii) 5 Volts

RF Deck i) 13.8 Volts
ii) 8 Volts
iii) 5 Volts
2. ANTENNA
a) Check antenna, cable and connectors for damage or water
b) Check forward and reflected power at antenna connector of unit.

VSWR should be $<=1.5: 1$
3. PROGRAMMING

Check programming information. e.g.
i)Transmit and receive frequencies are within the operating band of the unit
ii) User interface configuration.

## 4. INTERFACE

a) Check connections to Port A (DB9 Connector).
b) Check cable to host communications.
c) Interface commands to unit are incorrect or communications are not established correctly.
5. POOR TRANSMITTER PERFORMANCE
a) Check correct transmit frequency programmed.
b) Check transmitter carrier frequency.
c) Check transmitter deviation.
d) Check RF output power level.
6. POOR RECEIVER PERFORMANCE
a) Check correct receive frequency programmed.
b) Check receive sensitivity.
c) Check audio output level and DC bias to modem.
d) Check mute threshold.

### 6.2 RECEIVER

The following is a list of problem areas, and suggested checks that can be made to isolate any receiver specific problems that may have occurred.

### 6.2.1 RECEIVE SENSITIVITY LOW

1 Check mixer drive level by measuring DC bias developed across R27.
2 Check for correct DC bias conditions and supply volts on RF Amp, Local Osc buffer, and IF Strip, compared to voltage charts.

3 Ensure 44.545 MHz oscillator (part of NE615 IF IC) is within $\pm 250 \mathrm{~Hz}$. This is best carried out by using a communications test set such as an IFR1200 or similar in receiver mode with frequency error displayed.

4 Ensure that the local oscillator is netted to frequency by monitoring the Tx mixer injection with a pick up loop connected to a sensitive frequency counter of high stability. Adjust the VCXO frequency reference until correct L.O. frequency is observed. Note that the VCO and synthesiser use the VCXO as the frequency standard. Measure the Synthesiser LOCK signal to ensure the VCO is in phase lock.

5 With a 50 ohm signal generator tuned to 455 kHz , apply signal via a 1 nF capacitor to the inputs of the 1st and second IF Amp sections of the 615 IF IC and compare the level required to produce the correct RSSI level.

6 With a 50 OHM signal generator tuned to 45.000 MHz , apply signal to the points defined on the IF test chart and compare RF level required to produce the reference RSSI level as specified at TP4.

7 Apply signal frequency to the RF input connector at X2 and compare the level required to produce RSSI reference level at TP4 with that shown in the IF Level Chart.

8 Reconnect the Antenna Diplexer and apply the signal generator to the Antenna terminal of the diplexer. Adjust the generator level to provide the same Rx mixer bias from applied RF signal as was noted in 7) above. The level required should be no more than 3 dB ( Rx diplexer path loss) greater.

Note that the RSSI signal provided by the IF IC is a fairly accurate logarithmic scale between 0.5 and 4 VDC , providing about 0.5 VDC for each 10 dB of signal applied to the input of the IF Strip, and can be used as a reasonable measure of signal providing it is unmodulated and on center frequency at 455 kHz .

### 6.2.2 RECEIVER LEVEL CHART

The following chart lists the level (terminated) of a 50 OHM signal generator to produce 2.0VDC of RSSI at TP4 when applied as specified to the point shown and at the frequency indicated.

| FREQUENCY | CONNECTION POINT AND APPLICATION | NOM LEVEL |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 455 kHz | Pin 20 of IC U2 NE615 via 1 nF | -72 dBm |
| 455 kHz | Pin 18 of IC U2 NE615 via 1 nF | -74 dBm |
| 455 kHz | Pin 1(i/p) of IF Filter CF2 via 1 nF | -58 dBm |
| 455 kHz | Pin 14 of IC U2 NE615 via 1 nF | -43 dBm |
| 45 MHz | Rx i/p at X2 via coax direct | -49 dBm |
| 45 MHz | Mixer i/p following R.F. Amp | -62 dBm |
| 45 MHz | Mixer diode (D1) o/p across C100 | -61 dBm |
| 45 MHz | Junction of 1st \& 2nd 45 MHz crystal filter | -77 dBm |

### 6.3 TRANSMITTER

The following is a list of problem areas, and suggested checks that can be made to isolate any transmitter specific problems that may have occurred.

1. NO TRANSMIT
2. Check PTT circuit.
3. Check unit is programmed within its operational range.
4. Check if manual PTT (Rear Aux connector) keys transmitter.
5. Check if any transmitter output is present. Tuning required?

## 2. TRANSMITTER SPURIOUS EXCESSIVE

The probable cause is dependent upon the nature of the spurious as follows:
Carrier $\pm 910 \mathrm{kHz}$. - IF detector signal ( $2 \times 455$ ) modulating or mixing with carrier. Check 1 n bypass on reference $\mathrm{i} / \mathrm{p}$ to power control op-amp. Check bypasses on collectors and supply lines of low level transmitter stages, and L.O. buffer.

Carrier $\pm 20.166$ and/or 40.333. - Excessive harmonics of 20.166 crystal oscillator in 121 MHz FM driver IC (U7). Check all pins of IC (U7) for correct DC conditions. Check all tuning inductors for 'normal Q ', as 'soft' tuning will almost surely indicate an incorrect or faulty capacitor, or inductor.

Carrier $\pm$ VCXO reference frequency (approximately 7 MHz ). - Reference signal modulating VCO, or mixing with carrier in L.O.buffers. - Check Synthesiser supply bypasses, check for defective joints or components in and around the resistive divider at output of VCO.

Note that it is imperative that low frequency divider products be attenuated before they can reach the base/emitter junctions of the L.O. buffer transistors where they can mix with the VCO frequency.

Note also that poor SMD solder joints will provide nonlinear conductance and give rise to frequency mixing in this area. Check for faulty components or poor joints around the Synthesiser to VCO frequency control area, or VCO supply line bypassing.

Excessive Transmitter power radiated or conducted to the area of the VCO can also cause spurious effects and may enhance the levels of otherwise acceptable levels of spurious. If this is suspected, check that ALL chassis securing bolts are fitted and tight on the RF deck, and that ALL bypass capacitors and chokes are fitted and correct in and around the final $T x$ stages.
3. TRANSMITTER POWER LOW OR UNSTABLE :

1 Firstly - Ensure that ALL RF Deck mounting bolts are fitted and secure.
2 Check that the feed resistors used for current indication on all stages of the final are of correct value and firmly in circuit.
3 Check that the Tx L.O. buffer and post mixer buffers are correctly biased as per the voltage charts.

4 If necessary disconnect the final stages from the Tx post mixer buffers by removing the solder bridge between Q5 and Q8, and with an appropriate instrument measure the RF power available from the Tx buffers to the final pre-driver.
Note that the o/p impedance of the buffer is 50 OHM and must be measured by a 50 OHM instrument. It is highly recommended that a measuring spectrum analyser be used here as this instrument will also display the relationship between the wanted signal and other spurious or unwanted mixing products.
The nominal display seen at this point by a spectrum analyser is shown on the spectrum charts attached.
5 To test the final stages separate from the buffers - inject a signal from a 50 OHM generator at Tx frequency into pre-driver ( Q 8 ) via C122. The level required to drive the final to full output is shown on the $T_{x}$ level chart.

6 Check that the current drawn by the driver transistor as measured across the feed resistor (TP28 to TP27) is within spec, and if not check and or replace the driver transistor or associated components as necessary.

7 Check that the current drawn by each final transistor as indicated by the voltage across the 2.2 OHM ( $2 \times 4.7$ ohm in parallel) collector feed resistors (TP26 to TP28 and TP29) is within the range stated in the voltage charts, and that both are within $10 \%$ of each other. If in error check components around final pair and replace final transistors as necessary.
NOTE it is possible for power transistors to be partly defective due to current or thermal abuse, and the fact that the devices are actually drawing current does not always indicate that they are producing full power at the collector.

## TX LEVEL CHART :

| Frequency | Connection Point \& Application | Level Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Base band | Data from modem section TP13 (4800 baud) | 2 VD.C |
| Base band | Applied data signal to modulator U7 pin 3 (4800 baud level from modem) | $1 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {p-p }}$ |
| Base band | Audio signal to modulator TP32 | 0.84 VD.C <br> $60 \mathrm{mV}_{\mathrm{pp}}$ for VR3 set for maximum value $400 \mathrm{mV}_{\mathrm{p}-\mathrm{p}}$ for VR3 set for minimum value |
| Base band | Audio signal to modulator U7- pin 4 | $\begin{aligned} & 1.3 \mathrm{VD.C} \\ & 0.5 \mathrm{~V}_{p-p} \end{aligned}$ |
| 121 MHz | Signal level at TP18:A | -5dBm |
| Final Tx frequency | Output to diplexer connector X1 | $3 W$ at maximum power setting |

## SECTION 7

## APPENDIX A

## DRAWINGS

## 7 APPENDIX A DRAWINGS

TC01-08-12 Data Radio Mounting Details
TC01-08-11 Data Radio Assembly Details
TC01-04-05 Data Radio Basic Modem 9K6/4K8 Component Loading Details
TC01-00-05 450DR / 900DR Packet Modem (2 sheets)
TC01-08-10 PWB Manufacturing Details 900DR Data Radio - Radio Board (2 sheets)
TC01-00-10 Data Radio Project Sheet
TC01-00-10 Data Radio Final PA (AFC Fitted)
TC01-00-10 Data Radio 121 MHz OSC (AFC Fitted)
TC01-00-10 Data Radio - Synthesiser - VCO (AFC Fitted)
TC01-00-10 Data Radio - NE6154K8/9K6 (AFC Fitted)
TC01-04-15 850-930 MHz Antenna Diplexer Component Side Assembly
TC01-05-10 Radio Board Top Side (C/S) Test Point \& Adjustment Location Details
TC01-05-10 Radio Board Bottom Side (S/S) Test Point \& Adjustment Location
Details
TC01-05-16 Duplex Radio BER/S $+\mathrm{N} / \mathrm{N}$ vs Sig
TC01-05-17 AFC Alignment Setup - Block Diagram
TC01-05-12 4800/9600 BPS Modem Functional Diagram
TC01-05-23 Asynchronous Modem Functional Diagram
TC01-05-19 Macro Block Diagram
TC01-05-18 Radio Section - Modem Section Interface
DR9-BLOK 900 MHz Radio Block Diagram RSSI Level cf Received Signal (typical)

## SECTION 8

## APPENDIX B

## GLOSSARY of TERMS and ABBREVIATIONS

## 8 APPENDIX B GLOSSARY

ADC: Analogue to digital converter.
AFC: Automatic frequency control.
BER: Bit error rate.
bps: Bits per second.
C/DSMA: Carrier or data sense, multiple access scheme.
COM: Common.
CRC: Cyclic redundancy checksum.
CTS: Clear to send.
DAC: Digital to analogue converter.
DCD: Data carrier detect.
DCE: Data communications equipment.
DFM4-9: Trio DataCom digital modem chipset.
DIP: Dual in line package.
DOTAC: Department of Transport and Communications.
DSR: Data set ready.
DTR: Data terminal ready.
FCS: Frame check sequence.
FEND: Frame end.
FESC: Frame escape.
FIFO: First in first out.
FIR: Finite impulse response.

FM: Frequency modulation.
FSK: Frequency shift keying.
GPIB: General purpose interface bus.
HADR_EN: High address enable signal.
$I C: \quad$ Integrated circuit.
I.F.: Intermediate frequency.
i/p: Input.
KISS: Keep it simple stupid.
LADR_EN: Low address enable signal.
MSB: Most significant bit.
NVRAM: Non volatile RAM.
NRZ: $\quad$ Non return to zero.
NRZI: Non return to zero - inverted.
o/p: Output.
PCB: Printed circuit board.
PLL: Phase locked loop.
PMP: Point-to-multipoint.
ppm: Parts per million.
PTP: Point-to-point.
PTT: Press to talk.
RF: Radio frequency.
RI: Ring indicate.
R_select: RAM read select signal.
SIO: Serial input/output.
RSSI: Receive signal strength indication.
RTS: Request to send.
Rx: Receive.
RXD: Receive data output.
SCADA: Supervisory control and data acquisition.
SLIP: Serial line interface protocol.

TC-900DR: Trio DataCom 900 MHz full duplex data transceiver.
TC-DFM9IP: Trio DataCom TC-900DR parameter programming software suite.
TFEND: Transposed Frame End.
TFESC: Transposed Frame Escape.
TNC: Terminal node controller.
Tx: Transmit.
TXD: Transmit data in.
VCO: Voltage controlled oscillator.
W_select: RAM write select signal
$\infty$

## SOFT STARTER

## 1. MSF SOFT STARTER TECHNICAL DETAILS

Valid for the following Soft starter Models: MSF-017 to MSF-1400

## MSF SOFT STARTER

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

Document number: 01-1363-01
Edition: r2
Date of release: 2001-04-20
© Copyright Emotron AB 2000
Emotron retain the right to change specifications and illustrations in the text, without prior notification. The contents of this document may not be copied without the explicit permission of Emotron $A B$.

## SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

## Safety

The soft starter should be installed in a cabinet or in an electrical control room.

- The device must be installed by trained personnel.
- Disconnect all power sources before servicing.
- Always use standard commercial fuses, slow blow e.g. type gl, gG, to protect the wiring and prevent short circuiting. To protect the thyristors against short-circuit currents, superfast semiconductor fuses can be used if preferred. The normal guarantee is valid even if superfast semiconductor fuses are not used.


## Operating and maintenance personnel

1. Read the whole Instruction Manual before installing and putting the equipment into operation.
2. During all work (operation, maintenance, repairs, etc.) observe the switch-off procedures given in this instruction as well as any other operating instruction for the driven machine or system. See Emergency below.
3. The operator must avoid any working methods which reduce the safery of the device.
4. The operator must do what he can to ensure that no unauthorised person is working on the device.
5. The operator must immediately report any changes to the device which reduce its safery to the user.
6. The user must undertake all necessary measures to operate the device in perfect condition only.

## Installation of spare parts

We expressly point out that any spare parts and accessories not supplied by us have also not been tested or approved by us.

Installing and/or using such products can have a negative effect on the characteristics designed for your device. The manufacturer is not liable for damage arising as a result of using non-original parts and accessories.

## Emergency

You can switch the device off at any time with the mains switch connected in front of the soft starter (both motor and control voltage must be switched off).

## Dismantling and scrapping

The enclosure of the soft starter is made of recyclable material as aluminium, iron and plastic. Legal requirements for disposal and recycling of these materials must be complied with.

The soft starter contains a number of components demanding special treatment, as for example thyristors. The circuit board contain small amounts of tin and lead. Legal requirements for disposal and recycling of these materials must be complied with.

1. GENERAL INFORMATION ..... 6
1.1 Integrated safety systems ..... 6
1.2 Safety measures ..... 6
1.3 Notes to the Instruction Manual ..... 6
1.4 How to use the instruction Manual ..... 6
1.5 Standards ..... 6
1.6 Tests in accordance with norm EN60204 .....  6
1.7 Inspection at delivery ..... 7
1.7.1 Transport and packing ..... 7
1.8 Unpacking of MSF-310 and larger types ..... 7
2. DESCRIPTION ..... 8
2.1 General .....  8
2.2 MSF control methods ..... 9
2.2.1 General features ..... 9
3. HOW TO GET STARTED ..... 10
3.1 Checklist ..... 10
3.2 Main functions/Applications ..... 10
3.3 Motor Data ..... 10
3.4 Setting of the start and stop ramps ..... 11
3.5 Setting the start command ..... 12
3.6 Viewing the motor current ..... 12
3.7 Starting ..... 12
4. APPLICATIONS AND FUNCTIONS SELECTION ..... 13
4.1 Soft starter rating according to AC53a ..... 13
4.2 Soft starter rating according to AC53b ..... 13
4.3 MSF Soft starter ratings ..... 14
4.4 The Application Ratings List ..... 14
4.5 The Application Functions List ..... 16
4.6 Function and combination matrix ..... 19
4.7 Special condition ..... 20
4.7.1 Small motor or low load ..... 20
4.7.2 Ambient temperature below $0 \times C$ ..... 20
4.7.3 Phase compensation capacitor ..... 20
4.7.4 Pole-changing contactor and two speed motor 20 ..... 20
4.7.5 Shielded motor cable ..... 20
4.7.6 Slip ring motors ..... 20
4.7.7 Pump control with soft starter and frequency inverter together ..... 20
4.7.8 Starting with counter clockwise rotating loads 20
4.7.9 Running motors in parallel ..... 20
4.7.10 How to calculate heat dissipation in cabinets .20
4.7.11 Insulation test on motor ..... 20
4.7.12 Operation above 1000 m ..... 20
4.7.13 Reversing ..... 20
5. OPERATION OF THE SOFT STARTER ..... 21
5.1 General description of user interface ..... 21
5.2 PPU unit ..... 21
5.3 LED display ..... 22
5.4 The Menu Structure ..... 22
5.5 The keys ..... 23
5.6 Keyboard lock ..... 23
5.7 Overview of soft starter operation and parameter set-up. ..... 23
6. INSTALLATION AND CONNECTION ..... 24
6.1 Installation of the soft starter in a cabinet ..... 24
6.2 Connections ..... 28
6.3 Connection and setting on the PCB control card ..... 32
6.4 Minimum wiring ..... 33
6.5 Wiring examples ..... 34
7. FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION SET-UP MENU ..... 35
7.1 Ramp up/down parameters ..... 36
7.1.1 RMS current [005] ..... 36
7.2 Start/stop/reset command ..... 37
7.2.1 2-wire start/stop with automatic reset at start ..... 37
7.2.2 $\quad$ 2-wire start/stop with separate reset ..... 37
7.2.3 3 -wire start/stop with automatic reset at start. ..... 37
7.3 Menu expansion setting ..... 38
7.4 Voltage control dual ramp ..... 38
7.5 Torque control parameters ..... 39
7.6 Current limit (Main Function) ..... 39
7.6.1 Voltage ramp with current limit ..... 39
7.6.2 Current limit ..... 40
7.7 Pump control (Main Function) ..... 40
7.8 Analogue Input Control (Main Function) ..... 41
7.9 Full voltage start, D.O.L. (Main Function) ..... 41
7.10 Torque control (Main function) ..... 42
7.11 Torque boost ..... 43
7.12 Bypass ..... 43
7.13 Power Factor Control ..... 46
7.14 Brake functions ..... 46
7.15 Slow speed and Jog functions ..... 48
7.15.1 Slow speed controlled by an external signal. ..... 48
7.15.2 Slow speed during a selected time ..... 49
7.15.3 Jog Functions ..... 49
7.15.4 DC-brake after slow speed at stop [040] ..... 49
7.16 Motor data setting ..... 50
7.17 Programmable relay K1 and K2 ..... 51
7.18 Analogue output ..... 52
7.19 Digital input selection ..... 53
7.20 Parameter Set ..... 54
7.21 Motor protection, overload (F2 alarm) ..... 55
7.22 Mains protection ..... 56
7.23 Application protection (load monitor) ..... 57
7.23.1 Load monitor max and min/protection (F6 and F7 alarms) ..... 57
7.23.2 Pre-alarm .....  .58
7.24 Resume alarms ..... 61
7.24.1 Phase input failure F1 ..... 61
7.24.2 Run at current limit time-out F4 ..... 61
7.25 Slow speed with JOG ..... 61
7.26 Automatic return menu ..... 62
7.27 Communication option, related Parameters ..... 62
7.28 Reset to factory setting [199] ..... 63
7.29 View operation ..... 63
7.30 Keyboard lock ..... 65
7.31 Alarm list ..... 65
8. PROTECTION AND ALARM ..... 66
8.1 Alarm description ..... 66
8.1.1 Alarm with stop and requiring a separate reset66
8.1.2 Alarm with stop and requiring only a new start command ..... 66
8.1.3 Alarm with continue run ..... 66
8.2 Alarm overview ..... 67
9. TROUBLE SHOOTING ..... 68
9.1 Fault, cause and solution ..... 68
10. MAINTENANCE ..... 71
11. OPTIONS ..... 72
11.1 Serial communication ..... 72
11.2 Field bus systems ..... 72
11.3 External PPU ..... 72
11.3.1 Cable kit for external current transformers ..... 72
11.4 Terminal clamp ..... 73
12. TECHNICALDATA ..... 74
13. SET-UP MENU LIST ..... 79
14. INDEX ..... 82
REPRESENTATION ..... 85
List of tables
Table 1 Applications Rating List ..... 15
Table 2 Application Function List ..... 17
Table 3 Combination matrix ..... 19
Table 4 Start/stop combination. ..... 19
Table 5 The keys ..... 23
Table 6 Control modes ..... 23
Table 7 MSF-017 to MSF-250. ..... 25
Table 8 MSF-017 to MSF-250 ..... 25
Table 9 MSF-310 to MSF-1400 ..... 25
Table 10 MSF-310 to MSF-1400 ..... 25
Table 11 Busbar distances ..... 26
Table 12 PCB Terminals ..... 32
Table 13 Set-up Menu overview ..... 35
List of figures
Fig. 1 Scope of delivery ..... 7
Fig. 2 Unpacking of MSF-310 and larger models .....  7
Fig. 3 Voltage control ..... 8
Fig. 4 Current control .....  8
Fig. 5 Torque control .....  8
Fig. 6 Standard wiring ..... 10
Fig. 7 Example of start ramp with main function voltage ramp. ..... 12
Fig. 8 Rating example AC53a ..... 13
Fig. 9 Duty cycle, non bypass. ..... 13
Fig. 10 Rating example AC53b. ..... 13
Fig. 11 Duty cycle, bypassed ..... 13
Fig. 12 MSF soft starter models. ..... 21
Fig. 13 PPU unit ..... 21
Fig. 14 LED indication at different operation situation. ..... 22
Fig. 15 Menu structure ..... 22
Fig. 16 MSF- 017 to MSF- 250 dimensions. ..... 24
Fig. 17 Hole pattern for MSF-017 to MSF-250 ..... 24
Fig. 18 Hole pattern for MSF-170 to MSF-250 with upper mounting bracket instead of DIN-rail. ..... 24
Fig. 19 MSF - 310 to MSF - 835 . ..... 26
Fig. 20 Hole pattern for screw attachment, MSF-310 to MSF-835. Hole distance (mm). ..... 26
Fig. 21 Busbar distances MSF - 310 to MSF -835 ..... 26
Fig. 22 MSF - 1000 to -1400 ..... 27
Fig. 23 Hole pattern busbar MSF - 1000 to -1400 ..... 27
Fig. 24 Connection of MSF-017 to MSF -085 ..... 28
Fig. 25 Connection of MSF-110 to MSF-145. ..... 29
Fig. 26 Connection of MSF-170 to MSF-250 ..... 30
Fig. 27 Connection of MSF-170 to MSF-1400 ..... 31
Fig. 28 Connections on the PCB, control card ..... 32
Fig. 29 Wiring circuit, "Minimum wiring" ..... 33
Fig. 30 Analogue input control, parameter set, analogue output and PTC input ..... 34
Fig. 31 Forward/reverse wiring circuit ..... 34
Fig. 32 Menu numbers for start/stop ramps, initial voltage at start and step down voltage at stop ..... 36
Fig. 33 Menu numbers for dual voltage ramp at start/stop, initial voltage at start and step down-voltage at stop. ..... 38
Fig. 34 Current limit ..... 39
Fig. 35 Current limit ..... 40
Fig. 36 Pump control ..... 40
Fig. 37 Wiring for analogue input ..... 41
Fig. 38 Setting voltage or current for analogue input. ..... 41
Fig. 39 Full voltage start ..... 41
Fig. 40 Torque control at start/stop. ..... 42
Fig. 41 Current and speed in torque control ..... 42
Fig. 42 The principle of the Torque Booster when starting the motor in voltage ramp mode ..... 43
Fig. 43 Bypass wiring example MSF 310-1400. ..... 44
Fig. 44 Current transformer position when Bypass MSF-017 to MSF-250 ..... 45
Fig. 45 Current transformer position when Bypass MSF-310 to MSF-1400. .....  .45
Fig. 46 Braking time ..... 46
Fig. 47 Soft brake wiring example ..... 47
Fig. 48 Slow speed controlled by an external signal. ..... 48
Fig. 49 Slow speed at start/stop during a selected time. ..... 49
Fig. 50 Start/stop sequence and relay function "Operation" and "Full voltage" ..... 51
Fig. 51 Wiring for analogue output ..... 52
Fig. 52 Setting of current or voltage output ..... 52
Fig. 53 Setting of J1 for current or voltage control. ..... 53
Fig. 54 Wiring for slow speed external input. ..... 53
Fig. 55 Parameter overview ..... 54
Fig. 56 Connection of external control inputs. .....  .54
Fig. 57 The thermal curve ..... 55
Fig. 58 Load monitor alarm functions ..... 60
Fig. 59 The 2 Jog keys. ..... 61
Fig. 60 Option RS232/485 ..... 72
Fig. 61 Option Profibus ..... 72
Fig. 62 Shows an example of the External PPU after it has been built in ..... 72
Fig. 63 Cable kit ..... 72
Fig. 64 The terminal clamp. ..... 73 ..... 7

## 1. GENERAL INFORMATION

### 1.1 Integrated safety systems

The device is fitted with a protection system which reacts to:

- Over temperature
- Voltage unbalance.
- Over- and under voltage.
- Phase reversal
- Phase loss
- Motor overload protection thermal and PTC.
- Motor load monitor, protecting machine or process max or min alarm
- Starts per hour limitation

The soft starter is fitted with a connection for protective earth $\stackrel{\perp}{\perp}(\mathrm{PE})$.

MSF soft starters are all enclosed IP 20, except MSF-1000 and MSF-1400 which are delivered as open chassi IP00.

### 1.2 Safety measures

These instructions are a constituent part of the device and must be:

- Available to competent personnel at all times.
- Read prior to installation of the device.
- Observed with regard to safety, warnings and information given.

The tasks in these instructions are described so that they can be understood by people trained in electrical engineering. Such personnel must have appropriate tools and testing instruments available. Such personnel must have been trained in safe working methods.

The safety measures laid down in DIN norm VDE 0100 must be guaranteed.

The user must obtain any general and local operating permits and meet any requirements regarding:

- Safety of personnel.
- Product disposal.
- Environmental protection.

NOTE! The safety measures must remain In force at all times. Should questlons or uncertainties arise, please contact your local sales outlet.

### 1.3 Notes to the Instruction Manual

 WARNING! Warnings are marked with a warning triangle.

## Serial number

The information given in these instructions only applies to the device with the serial number given on the label on the front page. A plate with the serial number is fixed to the device.

## Important

For all enquiries and spare parts orders, please quote the correct name of the device and serial number to ensure that your inquiry or order is dealt with correctly and swiftly.

NOTE! These instructions only apply to the soft starters having the serial number glven on the front page, and not for all models.

### 1.4 How to use the Instruction Manual

This instruction manual tells you how to install and operate the MSF soft starter. Read the whole Instruction Manual before installing and putting the unit into operation. For simple start-up, read chapter 2. page 8 to chapter 3 . page 10 .

Once you are familiar with the soft starter, you can operate it from the keyboard by referring to the chapter 13. page 79. This chapter describes all the functions and possible setting.

### 1.5 Standards

The device is manufactured in accordance with these regulations.

- IEC 947-4-2
- EN 60204-1 Electrical equipment of machines, part 1, General requirements and VDE 0113.
- EN 50081-2, EMC Emission
- EN 50081-1, EMC Emission with bypass
- EN 50082-2, EMC Immunity
- GOST
- UL508


### 1.6 Tests in accordance with norm EN60204

Before leaving the factory, the device was subjected to the following tests:

- Through connection of earthing system;
a) visual inspection.
b) check that earthing wire is firmly connected.
- Insulation
- Voltage
- Function


### 1.7 Inspection at delivery



Fig. 1 Scope of delivery.

### 1.7.1 Transport and packing

The device is packed in a carton or plywood box for delivery. The outer packaging can be returned. The devices are carefully checked and packed before dispatch, but transport damage cannot be ruled out.

## Check on receipt:

- Check that the goods are complete as listed on the delivery note, see type no. etc. on the rating plate.


## Is the packaging damaged?

- Check the goods for damage (visual check).


## If you have cause for complaint

If the goods have been damaged in transport:

- Contact the transport company or the supplier immediately.
- Keep the packaging (for inspection by the transport company or for returning the device).


## Packaging for returning the device

- Pack the device so that it is shock-resistant.


## Intermediate storage

After delivery or after it has been dismounted, the device can be stored before further use in a dry room.

### 1.8 Unpacking of MSF-310 and larger types

The soft starter is attached to the plywood box/loading stool by screws, and the soft starter must be unpacked as follows:

1. Open only the securing plates at the bottom of the box (bend downwards). Then lift up the box from the loading stool, both top and sides in one piece.
2. Loosen the three ( 3 pcs ) screws on the front cover of the soft starter, down by the lower logo.
3. Push up the front cover about 20 mm so that the front cover can be removed.
4. Remove the two ( 2 pcs ) mounting screws at the bottom of the soft starter.
5. Lift up the soft starter at the bottom about 10 mm and then push backwards about 20 mm so that the soft starter can be removed from the mounting hooks* at the top. The hooks are placed under the bottom plate and cannot be removed until the soft starter is pulled out.
6. Loosen the screws ( 2 pcs ) for the mounting hooks and remove the hooks.
7. The hooks are used as an upper support for mounting the soft starter.


Fig. 2 Unpacking of MSF-310 and larger models.

## 2. DESCRIPTION

### 2.1 General

The MSF is installed directly between the mains and the supply cable to the motor. If a mains contactor is used it can be activated by the integrated K1 relay.


The MSF is developed for soft starting, stopping and braking three-phase motors.

There are 3 different kinds of soft starting control methods:

- Control method 1-Phase

The single phase controlled soft starters provide only a reduction in starting torque no control of current or torque. These starters need a main and bypass contactor as well as external motor protections. This is a open loop voltage controller. These starters are mainly in the power up to 7.5 kW .

- Control method 2-Phase

The two phase starters can start a motor without a mains contactor, but in that case voltage still is present at the motor when it's stopped. These starters are mainly in the power up to 22 kW .

- Control method 3-Phase

In the three phase Soft Starters there are different technologies:

- Voltage control
- Current control
- Torque control


## Voltage control

This method is the most used control method. The starter gives a smooth start but doesn't get any feedback on current or torque. The typical settings to optimize a voltage ramp are: Initial voltage, ramp time, dual ramp time.


Fig. 3 Volage control

## Current control

The voltage ramp can be used with a current limit which stops the voltage ramp when the set maximum current level is reached. The maximum current level is the main setting and must be set by the user depending the maximum current allowed for the application.


Fig. 4 Current control

## Torque control

Is the most sufficient way of starting motors. Unlike voltage and current based systems the soft starter monitors the torque need and allows to start with the lowest possible current. Using a closed loop torque controller also linear ramps are possible. The voltage ramp can not hold back the motor starting torque this results in a current peak and unlinear ramps. In the current ramp there will be no peak current, but a higher current for a longer period of time during the start compared to torque control. Current starting doesn't give linear ramps. The linear ramps are very important in many applications. For an example, to stop a pump with an unlinear ramp will give water hammer. Soft starters which doesn't monitor the torque, will start and stop to fast if the load is lighter than the setting of current or ramp time.


Fig. 5 Torque control

### 2.2 MSF control methods

MSF Soft Starters control all three phases supplied to the motor. It manages all the 3 possible starting methods where the closed loop Torque control is the most efficient way of starting and stopping motors.

### 2.2.1 General features

As mentioned above soft starters offer you several features and the following functions are available:

- Torque controlled start and stop
- Current limit control at start
- Application "Pump"
- External analogue input control
- Torque booster at start
- Full voltage start (D.O.L)
- Dual voltage ramp at start and stop
- Bypass
- Dynamic DC-brake or Softbrake
- Slow speed at start and stop
- Jogging forward and reverse
- Four parameter sets
- Analogue output indicating current, power or voltage
- Viewing of current, voltage, power, torque, power consumption, elapsed time etc.
- Integrated safety system acc. to $\S 1.1$, page 6 , with an alarm list.

3. HOW TO GET STARTED


Fig. 6 Standard wiring.
This chapter describes briefly the set-up for basic soft start and soft stop by using the default "Voltage Ramp" function.


WARNING! Mounting, wiring and setting the device Into operation must be carried out by property trained personnel. Before set-up, make sure that the installation is according to chapter 6. page 24 and the Checklist below.

### 3.1 Checklist

- Mount the soft starter in accordance with chapter 6 . page 24.
- Consider the power loss at rated current when dimensioning a cabinet, max. ambient temperature is $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (see chapter 12 . page 74 ).
- Connect the motor circuit according to Fig. 6.
- Connect the protective earth.
- Connect the control voltage to terminals 01 and 02 ( $100-240$ VAC or $380-500$ VAC).
- Connect relay K1 (PCB terminals 21 and 22) to the contactor - the soft starter then controls the contactor.
- Connect PCB terminals 12 and 13 to, e.g., a 2-way switch (closing non-return) or a PLC, etc., to obtain control of soft start/soft stop. ${ }^{1}$ )
- Check that the motor and supply voltage corresponds to values on the soft starter's rating plate.
- Ensure the installation complies with the appropriate local regulations.

1) The menu 006 must be put to 01 for start/stop command from keyboard.

### 3.2 Main functions/Applications



WARNING! Make sure that all safety measures have been taken before switching on the supply.

Switch on the control voltage (normally $1 \times 230 \mathrm{~V}$ ), all segments in the display and the two LED's will be illuminated for a few seconds. Then the display will show menu 001. An illuminated display indicates there is supply voltage on the PCB. Check that you have mains voltage on the mains contactor or on the thyristors. The settings are carried out according to following:

The first step in the settings is to set menu 007 and 008 to "ON" to reach the main functions 020-025 and motor data 041-046.

NOTE! The main function is chosen according to the application. The tables in the applications and functions selection (table 1, page 15), gives the Information to choose the proper main function.

### 3.3 Motor Data

Set the data, according to the motor type plate to obtain optimal settings for starting, stopping and motor protection.

NOTE! The default settings are for a standard 4-pole motor acc. to the nominal power of the soft-starter. The soft starter will run even If no specific motor data is selected, but the performance will not be optimal.



NOTE! Now go back to menu 007 and set it to "oFF" and then to menu 001.

### 3.4 Setting of the start and stop ramps

The menu's 002 and 003 can now be set to adjust the start ramp up time and the stop ramp down time.


Estimate the starting-time for the motor/machine. Set "ramp up time" at start ( $1-60 \mathrm{sec}$ ).
Key "ENTER $\_$" to confirm new value.
Key "NEXT $\rightarrow$ ", "PREV $\leftarrow$ " to change menu.


Set "ramp down time" at stop (2-120 s). "oFF" if only soft start requires.

8
8

### 3.5 Setting the start command

As default the start command is set for remote operation via terminal 11, 12 and 13 . For easy commissioning it is possible to set the start command on the start key on the keyboards. This is set with menu 006.


Menu 006 must be set to 1 to be able to operate from keyboard.

NOTE! Factory default setting is remote control (2).
To start and stop from the keyboard, the "START/ STOP" key is used.

To reset from the keyboard, the "ENTER $\leftarrow$ / RESET" key is used. A reset can be given both when the motor is running and when the motor is stopped. A reset by the keyboard will not start or stop the motor.

### 3.7 Starting

Start the motor by pressing the "START/STOP" key on the keyboard or through the remote control, PCB terminal 11,12 and 13 . When the start command is given, the mains contactor will be activated by relay K1 (PCB terminal 21 and 22), and the motor then starts softly.


## WARNING! Make sure that all safety measures have been taken before starting the motor in order to avoid personal injury.



Fig. 7 Example of start ramp with main function voltage ramp.

### 3.6 Viewing the motor current

Set the display to menu 005. Now the Motor current can be viewed on the display.


NOTE! The menu 005 can be selected at any time when the motor is running.

## 4. APPLICATIONS AND FUNCTIONS SELECTION

This chapter is a guide to select the correct soft starter rating and the selection of the Main function and additional functions for each different application.

To make the right choice the following tools are used:

- The norm AC53a.

This norm helps selecting the soft starter rating with regard to duty cycle, starts per hour and maximum starting current.

- The Application Rating List.

With this list the soft starter rating can be selected depending on the kind of application used. The list use 2 levels of the AC53a norm. See table 1, page 15.

- The Application Function List.

This table gives an complete overview of most common applications and duties. For each applications the menu's that can be used are given. See table 2 , page 17.

- Function and Combination matrix.

With these tables it is easy to see which combinations of Main and additional functions are possible, see table 3, page 19 and table 4, page 19.

### 4.1 Soft starter rating according to AC53a

The IEC947-4-2 standard for electronic starters defines AC53a as a norm for dimensioning of a soft starter.

The MSF soft starter is designed for continuous running. In the Applications table (table 1, page 15) two levels of AC53a are given. This is also given in the technical data tables (see chapter 12. page 74).


Fig. 8 Rating example AC53a.
The above example indicates a current rating of 210 Amps with a start current ratio of $5.0 \times$ FLC (1050A) for 30 seconds with a $50 \%$ duty cycle and 10 starts per hour.

NOTE! If more than $\mathbf{1 0}$ starts/hour or other duty cycles are needed, please contact your suppller.

(Start Duration + Run Time + Off Time)
(03F60)
Fig. 9 Duty cycle, non bypass.

### 4.2 Soft starter rating according to AC53b

This norm is made for Bypass operation. Because the MSF soft starter is designed for continuous operation this norm is not used in the selection tables in this chapter.


Fig. 10 Rating example $A C 536$.


Fig. 11 Duty cycle, bypassed
The above example indicates a current rating of 210 Amps with a start current ratio of $5.0 \times$ FLC (1050A) for 30 seconds with a 24 -minute period between starts.
\%

### 4.3 MSF Soft starter ratings

According to the norms AC53a and AC53b a soft starter can have many current ratings.

NOTE! Because the MSF soft starter is designed for continuous operation the norm AC53b is not used in the application rating list.

With help of the Application Rating List with typical starting currents and categories in the AC53a level (see table 1 , page 15 and table 2 , page 17) it is easy to select the proper soft starter rating with the application.

The Application Rating List uses two levels for the AC53a norm:

- AC53a 5.0-30:50-10 (heavy duty)

This level will be able to start all applications and follows directly the type number of the soft starter. Example: MSF 370 is 370 Amps FLC and then 5 time this current in starting.

- AC 53a 3.0-30:50-10 (normal/light duty)

This level is for a bit lighter applications and here the MSF can manage a higher FLC.
Example: MSF 370 in this norm manage 450 Amps FLC and the 3 times this current in starting

NOTE! To compare Soft Starters it's important to ensure that not onily FLC (Full Load Current) is compared but also that the operating parameters are Identical.

### 4.4 The Application Ratings List

Table 1 gives the Application Ratings List. With this list the rating for the soft starter and Main Function menu can be selected.

Description and use of the table:

- Applications.

This column gives the various applications. If the machine or application is not in this list, try to identify a similar machine or application. If in doubt pleas contact your supplier.

- AC53a ratings.

The rating according to AC53a norm is here classified in 2 ratings. The first for normal/light duty (3.0-30:50-10) and the second for heavy duty (5.0-30:50-10)

- Typical Starting current.

Gives the typical starting current for each application

- Main Function menu.

The Main Function menu is advised here.
" $25 ;=1$ ", means: program selection 1 in menu 25.

- Stop function.

Gives a possible Stop function if applicable.
"36; $=1 / 38-40$ ", means: program selection 1 in menu 36 , also menus 38 to 40 can be selected.

## EXAMPLE:

Roller Mill:

- This is an application for heavy duty,
- Typical starting current of $350 \%$.
- Main function Torque ramp start (menu 25) will give the best results.
- Stop function Dynamic Brake (menu 36, selection 1) can be used.
- As well as the Slow Speed at start and stop (menu $38-40$ ) can be used for better start and stop performance.

Table
Applications Rating List


### 4.5 The Application Functions List

This list gives an overview of many different applications/duties and a possible solution with one of the many MSF functions.

Description and use of the table:

- Application / Duty.

This column gives the various applications and level of duty. If the machine or application is not in this list, try to identify a similar machine or application. If in doubt pleas contact your supplier.

- Problem.

This column describes possible problems that are familiar for this kind of application.

- Solution MSF.

Gives the possible solution for the problem using one the MSF function.

- Menus.

Gives the menu numbers and selection for the MSF
function.
"25;=1", means: program selection 1 in menu 25.
" 36 ; $=1 / 34,35$ ", means: program selection 1 in menu 36 , menus 34 and 35 are related to this function.

Table 2 Application Funcrion List

| Application/ Duty | Problem | Solution MSF | Menus |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PUMP Normal | Too fast start and stops | MSF Pump application with following start/stop features | 22 |
|  | Non linear ramps | Linear ramps without tacho. |  |
|  | Water hammer | Torque ramps for quadratic load |  |
|  | High current and peaks during starts. |  |  |
|  | Pump is going in wrong direction | Phase reversal alarm | 88 |
|  | Dry running | Shaft power underload | 96-99 |
|  | High load due to dirt in pump | Shaft power overload | 92-95 |
| COMPRESSOR Normal | Mechanical shock for compressor, motor and transmissions | Linear Torque ramp or current limit start. | $\left\lvert\, \begin{aligned} & 25:=1 \text { or } \\ & 20,21 \end{aligned}\right.$ |
|  | Small fuses and low current available. |  |  |
|  | Screw compressor going in wrong direction | Phase sequence alarm | 88 |
|  | Damaged compressor if liquid ammonia enters the compressor screw. | Shaft power overload | 92-95 |
|  | Energy consumption due to compressor is running unloaded | Shaft power underload | 96-99 |
| CONVEYOR Normal/Heavy | Mechanical shocks for transmissions and transported goods. | Linear Torque ramp | 25:=1 |
|  | Filling or unloading conveyors | Slow speed and accurate position control. | 37-40,57,58 |
|  | Conveyor jammed | Shaft power overload | 92-95 |
|  | Conveyor belt or chain is off but the motor is still running | Shaft power underload | 96-99 |
|  | Starting after screw conveyor have stopped due to overload. | Jogging in reverse direction and then starting in forward. |  |
|  | Conveyor blocked when starting | Locked rotor function | 75 |
| FAN Normal | High starting current in end of ramps | Torque ramp for quadratic need | $25 ;=2$ |
|  | Slivering belts. |  |  |
|  | Fan is going in wrong direction when starting. | Catches the motor and going easy to zero speed and then starting in right direction. |  |
|  | Belt or coupling broken | Shaft power underload | 96-99 |
|  | Blocked filter or closed damper. |  |  |
| PLANER Heavy | High inertia load with high demands on torque and current control. | Linear Torque ramp gives linear acceleration and lowest possible starting current. | $25 ;=1$ |
|  | Need to stop quick both by emergency and production efficiency reasons. | Dynamic DC brake without Contactor for medium loads and controlled sensor less soft brake with reversing contactor for heavy loads. | $\begin{aligned} & 36 ;=1,34,35 \\ & 36 ;=2,34,35 \end{aligned}$ |
|  | High speed lines | Conveyor speed set from planer shaft power analog output. | 54.56 |
|  | Worn out tool | Shaft power overload | 92-95 |
|  | Broken coupling | Shaft power underload | 96-99 |
| ROCK CRUSHER Heavy | High enertia | Linear Torque ramp gives linear acceleration and lowest possible starting current. | $25 ;=1$ |
|  | Heavy load when starting with material | Torque boost | 30,31 |
|  | Low power if a diesel powered generator is used. |  |  |
|  | Wrong material in crusher | Shaft power overload | 92-95 |
|  | Vibrations during stop | Dynamic DC brake without Contactor | 36: $=1,34,35$ |
| BANDSAW Heavy | High inertia load with high demands on torque and current control. | Linear Torque ramp gives linear acceleration and lowest possible starting current. | $25:=1$ |
|  | Need to stop quick both by emergency and production efficiency reasons. | Dynamic DC brake without Contactor for medium loads and controlled sensor less soft brake with reversing contactor for heavy loads. | $\begin{aligned} & 36 ;=1,34,35 \\ & 36:=2,34,35 \end{aligned}$ |
|  | High speed lines | Conveyor speed set from band saw shaft power analog output. | 54-56 |
|  | Worn out saw blade | Shaft power overload |  |
|  | Broken coupling, saw blade or belt | Shaft power underload |  |
| CENTRIFUGE Heavy | High inertia load | Linear Torque ramp gives linear acceleration and lowest possible starting current. | 25;=1 |
|  | To high load or unbalanced centrifuge | Shaft power overload |  |
|  | Controlled stop | Dynamic DC brake without Contactor for medium loads and controlled sensor less soft brake with reversing contactor for heavy loads. | $\begin{aligned} & 36 ;=1,34,35 \\ & 36 ;=2,34,35 \end{aligned}$ |
|  | Need to open centrifuge in a certain position. | Braking down to slow speed and then positioning control. | 37-40,57,58 |

Table 2 Application Function List

| Application <br> Duty | Problem | Solution MSF | Menus |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MIXER <br> Heavy | Different materials | Linear Torque ramp gives linear acceleration and lowest <br> possible starting current. | $25 ;=1$ |
|  | Need to control material viscosity | Shaft power analog output | $54-56$ |
|  | Broken or damaged blades | Shaft power overload | $92-95$ |
|  |  | Shaft power underload | $96-99$ |
| HAMMER MILL <br> Heavy | Heavy load with high breakaway torque | Linear Torque ramp gives linear acceleration and lowest <br> possible starting current. | $25 ;=1$ |
|  |  | Torque boost in beginning of ramp. | 30,31 |
|  | Jamming | Shaft power overload | $92 \cdot 95$ |
|  | Fast stop | Controlled sensor less soft brake with reversing contactor <br> for heavy loads. | $36 ;=2,34,35$ |
|  | Motor blocked | Locked rotor function | 75 |

## EXAMPLE:

## Hammer Mill:

- This is an application for heavy duty,
- Main function Torque ramp start (menu 25) will give the best results.
- Torque boost to overcome high breakaway torque (menu 30 and 31)
- Overload alarm function for jamming protection (menu 92 and 95)
- Stop function Soft Brake (menu 36, selection 2) can be used. Menu 34 and 35 to set the brake time and strength.


### 4.6 Function and combination matrix

Table 3 gives an overview of all possible functions and combination of functions.

1. Select function in the horizontal "Main Function" column. Only one function can be selected in this column, at a time.
2. In the vertical column "Additional Functions" you will find all possible function that can be used together with your selected main function.

Tablc 3 Combination matrix

|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \circ \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & \frac{0}{E} \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \\ & 0 \end{aligned}$ |  | Power factor control (033) |  |  | Timer controlled slow speed |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Voltage ramp start/stop (default) | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |  |
| Torque control start/stop (menu 025) |  |  | $x$ | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |  |
| Voltage ramp with current limit (menu 020) |  | X | X | $x$ | X | X | X | X | $X$ | X | X | $X$ |
| Current limit start (menu 021) |  | X | $x$ | $x$ | X | X | X | X | $x$ | X | X | X |
| Pump control (menu 022) |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | X | X |  |  |
| Analog input (menu 023) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | X | X |  |  |
| Direct on line start (menu 024) |  |  | X |  |  |  |  |  | X | X |  |  |

By using one parameter set, the following start/stop table is given.

NOTE! Voltage and torque ramp for starting only with softbrake.

Table 4 Start/stop combination.

| START FUNCTION | 0 <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> $\vdots$ <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> 00 <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> 0 |  | $\overline{0}$ <br> $\vdots$ <br> $\vdots$ <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> 0 <br> $a$ <br> $\vdots$ <br> 3 |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Voltage ramp start | X |  |  |  | X | X | X |
| Torque control start |  | X |  |  | X | X | X |
| Current limit start | X |  |  |  | X | X | $X$ |
| Voltage ramp with current limit | X |  |  |  | X | X | X |
| Pump control |  |  | X |  | X |  |  |
| Analog input |  |  |  | X | $x$ |  |  |
| Direct on line start |  |  |  |  | X |  |  |

By using different parameter sets for start and stop, it is possible to combine all start and stop functions.

### 4.7 Special condition

### 4.7.1 Small motor or low load

The minimum load current for the soft starter is $10 \%$ of the rated current of the soft starter. Except for the MSE-017 there the min. current is 2 A . Example MSE-210, rated current $=210 \mathrm{~A}$. Min. Current 21 A . Please note that this is "min. load current" and not min . rated motor current.

### 4.7.2 Ambient temperature below $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$

For ambient temperatures below $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ e.g. an electrical heater must be installed in the cabinet. The soft starter can also be mounted in some other place, due to that the distance between the motor and the soft starter is not critical.

### 4.7.3 Phase compensation capacitor

If a phase compensation capacitor is to be used, it must be connected at the inlet of the soft starter, not between the motor and the soft starter.

### 4.7.4 Pole-changing contactor and two speed motor

The switching device must be connected between the output of the soft starter and the motor.

### 4.7.5 Shielded motor cable

It is not necessary to use shielded wires together with soft starters. This is due to the very low radiated emissions.

NOTE! The soft starter should be wired with shielded control cable to fulfill EMC regulations acc. to $\$ 1.5$, page 6.

### 4.7.6 Slip ring motors

Slip ring motors can not be used together with the soft starter. Unless the motor is rewinded (as a squirrel cage motor). Or keep the resistors in, please contact your supplier.

### 4.7.7 Pump control with soft starter and frequency inverter together

It is possible e.g. in a pump station with two or more pumps to use one frequency inverter on one pump and soft starters on each of the other pumps. The flow of the pumps can then be controlled by one common control unit.

### 4.7.8 Starting with counter clockwise rotating loads

It is possible to start a motor clockwise, even if the load and motor is rotating counter clockwise e.g. fans. Depending on the speed and the load "in the wrong direction" the current can be very high.

### 4.7.9 Running motors in parallel

When starting and running motors in parallel the total amount of the motor current must be equal or lower than the connected soft starter. Please note that it is not possible to make individual settings for each motor. The start ramp can only be set for an average starting ramp for all the connected motors. This applies that the start time may differ from motor to motor. This is also even if the motors are mechanically linked, depending on the load etc.

### 4.7.10 How to calculate heat dissipation in cabinets

See chapter 12. page 74 "Technical Data", "Power loss at rated motor load $\left(\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{N}}\right)$ ", "Power consumption control card" and "Power consumption fan". For further calculations please contact your local supplier of cabinets, e.g. Rittal.

### 4.7.11 Insulation test on motor

When testing the motor with high voltage e.g. insulation test the soft starter must be disconnected from the motor. This is due to the fact that the thyristors will be seriously damage by the high peak voltage.

### 4.7.12 Operation above 1000 m

All ratings are stated at 1000 m over sea level.
If a MSF is placed for example at 3000 m it must be derated unless that the ambient temperature is lower than 40 C and compensate for this higher pressure.

To get information about motors and drives at higher altitudes please contact your supplier to get technical information nr 151.

### 4.7.13 Reversing

Motor reversing is always possible. See Fig. 31 on page 34 for the advised connection of the reverse contactors.

At the moment that the mains voltage is switched on, the phase sequence is monitored by the control board. This information is used for the Phase Reverse Alarm (menu 88, see $\S 7.22$, page 56 ).

However if this alarm is not used (factory default), it is also possible to have the phase reversal contactors in the input of the soft starter.
5. OPERATION OF THE SOFT STARTER


Fig. 12 MSF soft starter models.

### 5.1 General description of user interface



WARNING! Never operate the soft starter with removed front cover.

To obtain the required operation, a number of parameters must be set in the soft starter.

Setting/configuration is done either from the builtin keyboard or by a computer/control system through the serial interface or bus (option). Controlling the motor i.e. start/stop, selection of parameter set, is done either from the keyboard, through the remote control inputs or through the serial interface (option).

Setting


WARNING! Make sure that all safety measures have been taken before switching on the supply.

Switch on the supply (normally $1 \times 230 \mathrm{~V}$ ), all segments in the display will light up for a few seconds. Then the display will show menu 001. An illuminated display indicates there is supply voltage on the PCB.

Check that you have voltage on the mains contactor or on the thyristors. To be able to use all extended functions and optimize of the performance, program the motor data.

### 5.2 PPU unit



Fig. 13 PPUunit.
The programming and presentation unit (PPU) is a build-in operator panel with two light emitting diodes, three + four seven-segment LED-displays and a keyboard.

### 5.3 LED display

The two light emitting diodes indicates start/stop and running motor/machine. When a start command is given either from the PPU, through the serial interface (option) or through the remote control inputs, the start/stop-LED will be illuminated.

At a stop command the start/stop-LED will switch off. When the motor is running, the running-LED is flashing during ramp up and down and is illuminated continuously at full motor voltage.


Fig. 14 LED indication at different operation situation.

### 5.4 The Menu Structure

The menus are organised in a simple one level structure with the possibility to limit the number of menus that are reachable by setting the value in menu 007 to "oFF" (factory setting). With this setting only the basic menus $001,002,003,004,005,006$ and 007 can be reached.

This to simplify the setting when only voltage start/ stop ramps are used.

If menu 007 is in "on" and menu 008 "oFF" it is possible to reach all viewing menus and alarm lists as well.


Fig. 15 Menu structure.

### 5.5 The keys

The function of the keyboard are based on a few simple rules. At power up menu 001 is shown automatically. Use the "NEXT $\rightarrow$ " and "PREV $\leftarrow$ "keys to move between menus. To scroll through menu numbers, press and hold either the "NEXT $\rightarrow$ " or the "PREV $\leftarrow$ " key. The "+" and "-" keys are used to increase respectively decrease the value of setting. The value is flashing during setting. The "ENTER $\longleftarrow$ " key confirms the setting just made, and the value will go from flashing to stable. The "START/STOP" key is only used to start and stop the motor/machine.
The $\Omega$ and $\Theta$ keys are only used for JOG from the keyboard. Please note one has to select enable in menu 103 or 104 , see $\S 7.25$, page 61 .

Table 5 The keys

| Start/stop motor operation. | START |
| :--- | :---: |
| Sisplay previous menu. |  |
| Display next menu. | PREV |
| Decrease value of setting. |  |
| Increase value of setting. |  |
| Confirm setting just made. |  |
| Alarm reset. |  |
| JOG Reverse |  |
| JOG Forward |  |

Table 6 Control modes

| Control mode $\begin{gathered}\text { Operation/ } \\ \text { Set-up }\end{gathered}$ |  | Start/Stop | JOG fwd/rev | Alarm reset | Setting of parameters |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Parameter set with external selection Menu 061=0 |  |  | Parameter set with internal selection Menu 061=1-4 |
| Keyboard <br> Menu 006=1 | Unlocked keyboard |  | Keyboard | Keyboard | Keyboard | - | Keyboard |
|  | Locked keyboard | - | - | - |  | - |
| Remote Menu 006=2 | Unlocked keyboard | Remote | Remote | Remote and keyboard | Remote | Keyboard |
|  | Locked keyboard | Remote | Remote | Remote | Remote | - |
| Serial comm. <br> Menu 006=3 | Unlocked keyboard | Serial comm | Serial comm | Serial comm. and keyboard | - | Serial comm |
|  | Locked keyboard | Serial comm | Serial comm | Serial comm | - | Serial comm |

## 6. INSTALLATION AND CONNECTION

Mounting, wiring and setting the device into operation must be carried out by trained personnel (electricians specialised in heavy current technology):

- In accordance with the local safery regulations of the electricity supply company.
- In accordance with DIN VDE 0100 for setting up heavy current plants.
Care must be taken to ensure that personnel do not come into contact with live circuit components.


WARNING! Never operate the soft starter with removed front cover.

### 6.1 Installation of the soft starter in a cabinet

When installing the soft starter:

- Ensure that the cabinet will be sufficiently ventilated, after the installation.
- Keep the minimum free space, see the tables on page 25.
- Ensure that air can flow fre ely from the bottom to the top.

NOTE! When Installing the soft starter, make sure it does not come into contact with live components. The heat generated must be dispersed via the cooling fins to prevent damage to the thyristors (free circulation of alr).

MSF-017 to MSF-835 soft starters are all delivered as enclosed versions with front opening. The units have bottom entry for cables etc. see Fig. 25 on page 29 and Fig. 27 on page 31. MSF-1000 and MSF-1400 are delivered as open chassis.

NOTE! The soft starter should be wired with shielded control cable to fulfill EMC regulations acc. to 5 1.5, page 6.

NOTE! For UL-approval use $75^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ Copper wire only.
MSF-017 to MSF-250


Fig. 16 MSF-017 to MSF-250 dimensions.


Fig. 17 Hole pattern for MSF-017 to MSF-250 (backside view).


Fig. 18 Hole pattern for MSF-170 to MSF-250 with upper mounting bracket instead of DIN-rnil.

MSF-017 to MSF-250

Table 7 MSF-017 to MSF-250.

| MSF model | Class | Connection | Conv./ Fan | Dimension HxWxD (mm) | Hole dist. w1 (mm) | Hole dist. h1 (mm) | Diam./ screw | Weight (kg) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -017, -030 | IP 20 | Busbars | Convection | 320x126×260 | 78.5 | 265 | 5.5/M5 | 6.7 |
| $\begin{aligned} & -045,-060, \\ & -075,-085 \end{aligned}$ | IP 20 | Busbars | Fan | 320x126x 260 | 78.5 | 265 | 5.5/M5 | 6.9 |
| -110, -145 | IP 20 | Busbars | Fan | $400 \times 176 \times 260$ | 128.5 | 345 | 5.5/M5 | 12.0 |
| -170, -210, -250 | IP 20 | Busbars | Fan | $500 \times 260 \times 260$ | 208.5 | 445 | 5.5/M5 | 20 |

Table 8 MSF-017 to MSF-250

| MSF model | Minimum free space (mm): |  |  | Dimension Connection busbars Cu | Tightening torque for bolt ( Nm ) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | above 1) | below | at side |  | Cable | PE-cable | Supply and PE |
| -017, -030, -045 | 100 | 100 | 0 | $15 \times 4$ (M6), PE (M6) | 8 | 8 | 0.6 |
| -060, -075, -085 | 100 | 100 | 0 | $15 \times 4$ (M8), PE (M6) | 12 | 8 | 0.6 |
| -110,-145 | 100 | 100 | 0 | $20 \times 4$ (M10), PE (M8) | 20 | 12 | 0.6 |
| -170, -210, -250 | 100 | 100 | 0 | $30 \times 4$ (M10), PE (M8) | 20 | 12 | 0.6 |
| 1) Above: wall-soft starter or soft starter-soft starter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## MSF-310 to MSF-1400

Table 9 MSF-310 to MSF-1400 see Fig. 20 on page 26.

| MSF model | Class | Connection | Conv./ Fan | Dimension HxWxD (mm) | Hole dist. w1 (mm) | Hole dist. h1 (mm) | Diam./ screw | Weight (kg) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -310 | IP 20 | Busbars | Fan | $532 \times 547 \times 278$ | 460 | 450 | 8.5/M8 | 42 |
| -370, -450 | IP 20 | Busbars | Fan | $532 \times 547 \times 278$ | 460 | 450 | 8.5/M8 | 46 |
| -570 | IP 20 | Busbars | Fan | $687 \times 640 \times 302$ | 550 | 600 | 8.5/M8 | 64 |
| -710 | IP 20 | Busbars | Fan | $687 \times 640 \times 302$ | 550 | 600 | 8.5/M8 | 78 |
| -835 | IP 20 | Busbars | Fan | $687 \times 640 \times 302$ | 550 | 600 | 8.5/M8 | 80 |
| -1000, -1400 | IPOO | Busbar | Fan | $900 \times 875 \times 336$ | Fig. 23 |  | 8.5/M8 | 175 |

Table 10 MSF- 310 to MSF-1400.

| MSF model | Minimum free space (mm): |  |  | Dimension Connection, busbars AI | Tightening torque for boit (Nm) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | above 1) | below | at side |  | Cable | PE-cable | Supply and PE |
| -310, -370, -450 | 100 | 100 | 0 | 40x8 (M12) | 50 | 12 | 0.6 |
| -570, -710, -835 | 100 | 100 | 0 | 40x10 (M12) | 50 | 12 | 0.6 |
| -1000, -1400 | 100 | 100 | 100 | $75 \times 10$ (M12) | 50 | 12 | 0.6 |
| 1) Above: Wall-soft starter or soft starter-soft starter |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |



Fig. 19 MSF 310 to MSF-835.


| MSF model | Dist. h1 <br> $(\mathbf{m m})$ | Dist. w1 <br> $(\mathbf{m m})$ | Dist. w2 <br> $(\mathbf{m m})$ | Dist. w3 <br> $(\mathbf{m m})$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| -310 to -450 | 104 | 33 | 206 | 379 |
| -570 to -835 | 129 | 35 | 239.5 | 444 |
| $-1000-1400$ |  | 55 | 322.5 | 590.5 |

Fig. 20 Hole pattern for screw attachment, MSF-310 to MSF-835. Hole distance (mm).


03-F12

Fig. 22 MSF-1000 to - 1400


Fig. 23 Hole pattern busbar MSF-1000 to - 1400 .

### 6.2 Connections



Fig. 24 Connection of MSF-017 to MSF-085.

## Connection of MSF-017 to MSF-085

## Device connections

1. Protective earth, $\perp$ (PE), Mains supply, Motor
(on the right and left inside of the cabinet)
2. Protective earth, $\perp$ (PE), Control voltage
3. Control voltage connection 01,02
4. Mains supply L1, L2, L3
5. Motor power supply T1, T2, T3
6. Current transformers (possible to mount outside for bypass see $\S 7.12$, page 43)
7. Mounting of EMC gland for control cables


Fig. 25 Connection of MSF-110 to MSF-145.

## Connection of MSF-110 to MSF-145

## Device connections

1. Protective earth, $\perp$ (PE), Mains supply, Motor (on the left inside of the cabinet)
2. Protective earth $\xlongequal{\perp}$ (PE), Control voltage
3. Control voltage connection 01,02
4. Mains supply L1, L2, L3
5. Motor power supply T1, T2, T3
6. Current transformers (possible to mount outside for bypass see $\S 7.12$, page 43 )
7. Mounting of EMC gland for control cables


Fig. 26 Connection of MSF-170 10 MSF-250

## Connection of MSF-170 to MSF-250

## Device connections

1. Protective earth, $\perp$ (PE), Mains supply, Motor (on the left inside of the cabinet)
2. Protective earth $\stackrel{\perp}{ }$ (PE), Control voltage
3. Control voltage connection 01,02
4. Mains supply L1, L2, L3
5. Motor power supply T1, T2, T3
6. Current transformers (possible to mount outside for bypass see $\S 7.12$, page 43)
7. Mounting of EMC gland for control cables


Fig. 27 Connection of MSF-170 to MSF-1400.

## Connection of MSF-310 to MSF-1400

## Device connections

1. Protective earth, $\stackrel{\perp}{=}$ (PE), Mains supply and Motor
2. Protective earth, $\perp$ (PE), Control voltage
3. Control voltage connection 01,02
4. Mains supply L1, L2, L3
5. Motor power supply T1, T2, T3
6. Current transformers (possible to mount outside for bypass see $\S 7.12$, page 43)
7. Mounting of EMC gland for control cables

### 6.3 Connection and setting on the PCB control card



Fig. 28 Connections on the $P C B$, control card.
Table 12 PCB Terninals

| Terminal | Function | Electrical characteristics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 01 | Supply voltage | $100-240$ VAC $\pm 10 \% / 380-500$ VAC $\pm 10 \%$ |
| 02 |  |  |
| PE | Gnd | $\stackrel{1}{1}$ |
| 11 | Digital inputs for start/stop and reset. | $0-3 V->0 ; 8-27 V->1 . M a x .37 V$ for 10 sec. Impedance to $0 \mathrm{VDC}: 2.2 \mathrm{k} \Omega$. |
| 12 |  |  |
| 13 | Supply/control voltage to PCB terminal 11 and 12, $10 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ potentiometer, etc. | +12 VDC $\pm 5 \%$. Max. current from +12 VDC: 50 mA . Short circuit proof. |
| 14 | Remote analogue input control, 0-10 V, $2-10 \mathrm{~V}, 0.20 \mathrm{~mA}$ and $4-20 \mathrm{~mA} /$ digital input | Impedance to terminal 15 ( 0 VDC ) voltage signal: $125 \mathrm{k} \Omega$, current signal: $100 \Omega$. |
| 15 | GND (common) | 0 VDC |
| 16 | Digital inputs for selection of parameter set. | 0-3 V -> 0; 8-27 V--> 1. Max. 37 V for $10 \mathrm{sec} . ~ I m p e d ~$ ance to $0 \mathrm{VDC}: 2.2 \mathrm{k} \Omega$. |
| 17 |  |  |
| 18 | Supply/control voltage to PCB terminal 16 and 17, $10 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ potentiometer, etc. | +12 VDC $\pm 5 \%$. Max. current from +12 VDC $=50 \mathrm{~mA}$. Short circuit proof. |
| 19 | Remote analogue output control | Analogue Output contact: <br> $0-10 \mathrm{~V}, 2-10 \mathrm{~V}$; min load impedance $700 \Omega$ <br> $0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ and $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$; max load impedance $750 \Omega$ |
| 21 | Programmable relay K1. Factory setting is "Operation" indication by closing terminal 21-22. | 1-pole closing contact, 250 VAC 8 A or 24 VDC $8 A$ resistive, 250 VAC, 3 A inductive. |
| 22 |  |  |
| 23 | Programmable relay K2. Factory setting is "Full voltage" indication by closing terminal 23-24. | 1-pole closing contact, 250 VAC 8 A or 24 VDC 8 A resistive, 250 VAC, 3 A inductive. |
| 24 |  |  |
| 31 | Alarm relay K 3 , closed to 33 at alarm. | 1-pole change over contact, 250 VAC 8 A or 24 VDC 8A resistive, 250 VAC, 3 A inductive. |
| 32 | Alarm relay K3, opened at alarm. |  |
| 33 | Alarm relay K3, common terminal. |  |
| 69-70 | PTC Thermistor input | Alarm level $2.4 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ Switch back level $2.2 \mathrm{k} \Omega$. |
| 71-72* | Clickson thermistor | Controlling soft starter cooling fine temperature MSF-310 - MSF-1400 |
| 73-74* | NTC thermistor | Temperature measuring of soft starter cooling fine |
| 75 | Current transformer input, cable S1 (blue) | Connection of L1 or T1 phase current transformer |
| 76 | Current transformer input, cable S1 (blue) | Connection of L3, T3 phase (MSF 017 - MSF 250) or L2, T2 phase (MSF 310 - MSF 1400) |
| 77 | Current transformer input, cable S2 (brown) | Common connection for terminal 75 and 76 |
| 78* | Fan connection | 24 VDC |
| 79* | Fan connection | O VDC |

*Internal connection, no customer use.

### 6.4 Minimum wiring



Fig. 29 Wiring circuit, "Minimum wiring".
The figure above shows the "minimum wiring". See
$\$ 6.1$, page 24 , for tightening torque for bolts etc.

1. Connect Protective Earth (PE) to earth screw marked $\stackrel{\perp}{=}$ (PE).
2. Connect the soft starter between the 3 -phase mains supply and the motor. On the soft starter the mains side is marked L1, L2 and L3 and the motor side with T1, T2 and T3.
3. Connect the control voltage ( $100-240 \mathrm{VAC}$ ) for the control card at terminal 01 and 02.
4. Connect relay K 1 (terminals 21 and 22) to the control circuit.
5. Connect PCB terminal 12 and 13 ( PCB terminal 11-12 must be linked) to, e.g. a 2 -position switch (on/oFF) or a PLC, etc., to obtain control of soft start/stop. (For start/stop command from keyboard menu 006 must be set to 01 ).
6. Ensure the installation complies with the appropriate local regulations.

NOTE! The soft starter should be wired with shielded control cable to fulfill EMC regulations acc. to § 1.5, page 6.

NOTE! If local regulations say that a mains contactor should be used, the K1 then controls It. Always use standard commercial, slow blow fuses, e.g. type gl, gG to protect the wiring and prevent short circulting. To protect the thyristors against shortcircult currents, superfast semiconductor fuses can be used if preferred. The normal guarantee is valid even if superfast semiconductor fuses are not used. All signal inputs and outputs are galvanically insulated from the mains supply.

### 6.5 Wiring examples

Fig. 30 gives an wiring example with the following
functions.

- Analogue input control, see $\$ 7.7$, page 40
- Parameter set selection, see $\$ 7.20$, page 54
- Analogue output, see $\S 7.18$, page 52
- PTC input, see $\mathbb{\$} 7.21$, page 55

For more information see $\oint 6.3$, page 32 .


Fig. 30 Analogue input control, parameter set, analogue output and PTC input.


Fig. 31 Fonvard/reverse wiring circuit.

5

## 7. FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION SET-UP MENU

This chapter describes all the parameters and functions in numerical order as they appear in the MSF. Table 13 gives an overview of the menus, see also Chapter 13. page 79 (set-up menu list).

Table 13 Set-4p Memm overview

|  | Menu number | Parameter group |  | Menu numbers | See § |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Basic functions | 001-008 | Basic | Ramp up/down parameters | 001-005 | 7.1 |
|  |  |  | Start/Stop/Reset command | 006 | 7.2 |
|  |  |  | Menu Expansion | 007-008 | 7.3 |
| Extended functions | 011-199 | Voltage control dual ramp |  | 011-014 | 7.4 |
|  |  | Torque control parameters |  | 016-018 | 7.5 |
|  |  | Main functions |  | 020-025 | 7.6-7.10 |
|  |  | Additional functions |  | 030-036 | 7.11-7.14 |
|  |  | Slow speed and Jog functions |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 037-040, 57-58, } \\ & 103-104 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 7.15,7.19 \\ & 7.25 \end{aligned}$ |
|  |  | Motor Data Setting |  | 041-046 | 7.16 |
|  |  | Outputs | Relays | 051-052 | 7.17 |
|  |  |  | Analogue output | 054-056 | 7.18 |
|  |  | Input | Digital input | 057-058 | 7.19 |
|  |  | Parameter set selection |  | 061 | 7.20 |
|  |  |  | Motor protection | 071-075 | 7.21 |
|  |  |  | Main protection | 081-088 | 7.22 |
|  |  |  | Application protection | 089-099 | 7.23 |
|  |  |  | Resume alarms | 101, 102 | 7.24 |
|  |  | Auto retur | enu | 105 | 7.26 |
|  |  | Factory d |  | 199 | 7.28 |
| View functions | 201-915 | Main view |  | 201-208 | 7.29 |
|  |  | RMS current per phase |  | 211-213 | 7.29 |
|  |  | RMS voltage per phase |  | 214-216 | 7.29 |
|  |  | Keyboard lock status |  | 221 | 7.30 |
|  |  | Alarm list |  | 901-915 | 7.31 |

### 7.1 Ramp up/down parameters



Fig. 32 Menu numbers for start/stop ramps, initial voltage at start and step down voltage at stop.

Determine the starting time for the motor/machine. When setting the ramp times for starting and stopping, initial voltage at start and step down voltage at stop, proceed as follow:

## $00 \mid 1{ }_{0}^{\circ}$



Set the initial voltage. Normally the factory setting, $30 \%$ of $U_{n}$, is a suitable choice.



### 7.1.1 RMS current [005]



NOTE! This is the same read-out as function 201, see § 7.28 , page 63 .

### 7.2 Start/stop/reset command

Start/stop of the motor and reset of alarm is done either from the keyboard, through the remote control inputs or through the serial interface (option). The remote control inputs start/stop/reset (PCB terminals 11,12 and 13) can be connected for 2-wire or 3-wire control.

| 006 |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | 2 |
| Default: | 2 |
| Range: | 1,2,3 |
| 1 | START/STOP/RESET command via the keyboard. <br> - Press the "START/STOP" key on the keyboard to start and stop the soft starter. <br> - Press "ENTER/RESET" key to reset a trip condition. |
| 2 | Via Remote control. START/STOP/ RESET commands. The following control methods are possible: <br> 2-wire start/stop with automatic reset, see § 7.2.1, page 37. <br> - 2-wire start / stop with separate reset, see §7.2.2, page 37. <br> - 3-wire start/stop with automatic reset at start, see § 7.2.3, page 37. <br> WARNING! The motor will start if terminals 11, 12, 13 is in start position. |
| 3 | START/STOP/RESET commands via serial interface option. Read the operating instruction supplied with this option. |

NOTE! A reset via the keyboard will not start or stop the motor.

NOTE! Factory default setting is 2 , remote control.
To start and stop from the keyboard, the "START/ STOP" key is used.

To reset from the keyboard, the "ENTER $\leftarrow /$ RESET" key is used. A reset can be given both when the motor is running and when the motor is stopped. A reset from the keyboard will not start or stop the motor.

### 7.2.1 2-wire start/stop with automatic reset at start



Closing PCB terminals 12 and 13 , and a jumper between terminal 11 and 12 , will give a start command. Opening the terminals will give a stop. If PCB terminals 12 and 13 is closed at power up a start command is given (automatic start at power up). When a start command is given there will automatically be a reset.

### 7.2.2 2-wire start/stop with separate reset



Closing PCB terminals 11,12 and 13 will give a start and opening the terminals 12 and 13 will give a stop. If PCB terminals 12 and 13 are closed at power up a start command is given (automatic start at power up). When PCB terminals 11 and 13 are opened and closed again a reset is given. A reset can be given both when the motor is running and stopped and doesn't affect the start/stop.

### 7.2.3 3-wire start/stop with automatic reset at start.



PCB terminal 12 and 13 are normally closed and PCB terminal 11 and 13 are normally open. A start command is given by momentarily closing PCB terminal 11 and 13. To stop, PCB terminal 12 and 13 are momentarily opened.

When a start command is given there will automatically be a reset. There will not be an automatic start at power up.

### 7.3 Menu expansion setting.

In order to use the viewing menus and/or the extended functions menu 007 must be set to "On", then one reach read out of the viewing menus 201915. To be able to set any extended functions in the menus 011-199 menu 008 must be set to "on" as well.

| $0\|0\| 7$ | Selecting of extended |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  O F <br> functions and viewing   <br> functions   |  |
| Default: | oFF |
| Range: | oFF, on |
| oFF | Only function 1-7 are visible |
| on | - View functions 201-915 are visible <br> - Extended functions (menu 008) <br> selectable |


| 008 |  |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 0 | F | F |
|  | Selecting of extended <br> functions |  |  |
| Default: | oFF |  |  |
| Range: | oFF, on |  |  |
| oFF | Only view function 201-915 are visi- <br> ble. |  |  |
| on | All the function menus are visible |  |  |

NOTE! Menu 007 must be "on".

### 7.4 Voltage control dual ramp

To achieve even smoother ramps at start and or stop, a dual ramp can be used.


Fig. 33 Menu numbers for dual voltage ramp at start/stop, initial voltage at start and step down-poltage at stop.

The settings are carried out by beginning with the settings in menus 001-004 and 007-008 and proceed with the following steps:



| 0 | 1 | 3 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | 4 | 0 |
|  |  | Setting of step down voltage <br> in stop ramp 2 |  |
| Default: | $40 \%$ |  |  |
| Range: | $100-40 \% \mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{n}}$ |  |  |
| Set the step down voltage for stop ramp 2. The <br> step down voltage for stop ramp 2 is limited to the <br> step down voltage at stop (menu 003). |  |  |  |



### 7.5 Torque control parameters

See also $\S 7.10$, page 42 and chapter 4 . page 13 for more information on the Torque control setting.


### 7.6 Current limit (Main Function)

The Current Limit function is used to limit the current drawn when starting ( $150-500 \%$ of $\ln$ ). This means that current limit is only achieved during set start-up time.

Two kinds of current limit starts are available.

- Voltage ramp with a limited current.

If current is below set current limit, this start will act exactly as a voltage ramp start.

- Current limit start.

The soft starter will control the current up to set current limit immediately at start, and keep it there until the start is completed or the set start-up time expires.
See Fig. 34 Current limit.
NOTE! Make sure that nominal motor current in menu 042 is correctly inserted.

### 7.6.1 Voltage ramp with current limit

The settings are carried out in three steps:

1. Estimate starting-time for the motor/machine and select that time in menu 002 (see $\S 7.1$, page 36 ).
2. Estimate the initial voltage and select this voltage in menu 001 (see §7.1, page 36).
3. Set the current limit to a suitable value e.g. $300 \%$ of In in menu 020.


NOTE! Only possible when Voltage Ramp mode is enabled. Menus 021-025 must be "oFF".


Fig. 34 Current limit

### 7.6.2 Current limit

The settings are carried out in two steps:

1. Estimate starting time for the motor/machine and select that time in menu 002 (see $\S 7.1$, page 36 ).
2. Set the current limit to a suitable value e.g. $300 \%$ of In in menu 021.


|  | O F | F |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Current limit at start |  |  |
| Default: | oFF |  |
| Range: | oFF, 150-500\% In |  |
| oFF | Current limit mode disabled. Voltage <br> Ramp enabled. |  |
| $\mathbf{1 5 0 - 5 0 0}$ | Current limit level in current limit <br> mode. |  |

NOTE! Only possible when Voltage Ramp mode is enabled. Menus 020, 022-025 must be "oFF".

NOTE! Even though the current limit can be set as low as $150 \%$ of the nominal motor current value, this minimum value cannot be used generally. Considerations must be given to the starting torque and the motor before setting the appropriate current limit. "Real start time" can be longer or shorter than the set values depending on the load conditions. This applies to both current limit methods.


Fig. 35 Current limit
If the starting time is exceeded and the soft starter is still operating at current level, an alarm will be activated. It is possible to let the soft starter to either stop operation or to continue. Note that the current will rise uncontrolled if the operation continues (see $\S$ 7.24 .2 , page 61 ).

### 7.7 Pump control (Main Function)

By choosing pump control you will automatically get a stop ramp set to 15 sec . The optimising parameters for this main function are start and stop time; initial torque at start and end torque at start and stop. End torque at stop is used to let go of the pump when it's no longer producing pressure/flow, which can vary on different pumps. See Fig. 36.


Fig. 36 Pump control

## Pump application

The pump application is using Torque ramps for quadratic load. This gives lowest possible current and linear start and stop ramps. Related menus are 2,4 (see $\$ 7.1$, page 36 ), 16,17 and 18 (see $\mathbb{\$} 7.5$, page 39 ).


NOTE! Only possible when Voltage Ramp mode is enabled. Menu 020-021, 023-025 must be "oFF".

### 7.8 Analogue Input Control (Main Function)

Soft starting and soft stopping can also be controlled via the Analogue Input Control ( $0-10 \mathrm{~V}, 2-10 \mathrm{~V}, 0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ and $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ ). This control makes it possible to connect optional ramp generators or regulators.

After the start command, the motor voltage is controlled through the remote analogue input.


WARNING! The remote analogue control may not be used for continuous speed regulation of standard motors. With this type of operation the increase in the temperature of the motor must be taken into consideration.

To install the analogue input control, proceed by:

1. Connect the ramp generator or regulator to terminal $14(+)$ and $15(-)$.


Fig. 37 Wiring for analogue inpur.
2. Set Jumper J1 on the PCB control card to voltage (U) or current control (I) signal position, see Fig. 38 and Fig. 24 on page 28. Factory setting is voltage (U).


Fig. 38 Setting voltage or arrent for analogue input.


NOTE! Only possible when Voltage Ramp mode is enabled. Menu 020-022, 024, 025 must be "oFF"

### 7.9 Full voltage start, D.O.L. (Main Function)

The motor can be accelerated as if it was connected directly to the mains. For this type of operation:

Check whether the motor can accelerate the required load (D.O.L.-start, Direct On Line start). This function can be used even with shorted thyristors.

| 0 2 4 <br> 0   |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  0 $F$ Fetting of D.O.L start <br> Default: oFF   <br> Range: oFF, on   <br> oFF D.O.L. start disabled. <br> Voltage Ramp enabled.   <br> on D.O.L. start enabled   |

NOTE! Only possible when Voltage Ramp mode is enabled. Menu 020-023, 025 must be "oFF".


Fig. 39 Full voltage start.
$\rightarrow 3$

### 7.10 Torque control (Main function)

This main function can be used to make a start according to a pre-defined torque reference curve. Two different load characteristics, linear and square, are possible to select.

At start/stop the torque controller will follow the selected characteristic.

A torque start/stop behaviour can be seen in Fig. 40.

A perfect start and stop with torque ramps have a good linearity of current. To optimise this, use the setting of initial torque (menu 16) and end torque (menu 18). See also $\$ 7.5$, page 39 .

## Example:

Default for initial torque is $10 \%$ so if starting a more heavy load this will result in a small current peak in beginning of ramp. By increasing this value to $30 /$ $70 \%$ the current peak will not appear.

The end torque is increased mainly if the application has a high inertial load, like planers, saws and centrifuges. A current peak will appear in the end of ramp because the load is pushing the speed more or less by itself. By increasing this level to 150-250\% the current will be linear and low.

| $0 / 2 \mid 5$ | 0 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 0 | F |
|  | Forque control at start/stop |  |
| Default: | oFF |  |
| Range: | oFF, 1, 2 |  |
| oFF | Torque control is disabled Voltage <br> Ramp enabled. |  |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | Torque control with linear torque <br> characteristic |  |
| $\mathbf{2}$ | Torque control with square torque <br> characteristic |  |

NOTE! Torque control mode is only possible when Voltage Ramp mode is enabled (menu 020-024 are "oFF").


Fig. 40 Torque control at start/stop.


Fig. 41 Current and speed in torque control.

### 7.11 Torque boost

The Torque Booster enables a high torque to be obtained by providing a high current during $0.1-2 \mathrm{sec}$ at start. This enables a soft start of the motor even if the break away torque is high at start. For example in crushing mills applications etc.

When the torque booster function has finished, starting continues according to the selected start mode.


Fig. 42 The principle of the Torque Booster when starting the motor in voltage ramp mode.

See $\oint 4.6$, page 19 , which main function that can be used with the torque boost.

| $0\|3\| 0$ 0  <br>    <br>  Torque boost active time  <br>  F F <br> Default: oFF  <br> Range: oFF, 0.1 - 2 sec  <br> oFF Torque boost disabled  <br> $\mathbf{0 . 1 - 2 . 0}$ Set the Torque boost time.  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |


| $031{ }^{0}$ |  |  | Torque boost current limit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $300$ |  |  |  |
| Default: |  | 300 |  |
| Range: |  | 300 | 700\% of In |
| The Torque boost current controller use selected value as the motor current reference. |  |  |  |

NOTE! Check whether the motor can accelerate the load with "Torque booster", without any harmful mechanical stress.

### 7.12 Bypass

In cases of high ambient temperatures or other reason it may sometimes be necessary to use a by-pass contactor to minimize the power loss at nominal speed (see Technical Data). By using the built-in Full Voltage Relay function an external contactor can be used to Bypass the soft starter when operating at nominal speed.

Bypass contactor can also be used if soft stop is required. Normally a Bypass contactor is not necessary as the device is designed for continues running conditions, see Fig. 29 on page 33 for wiring example.

NOTE! If one like to use the alarm functions, the extended functions or the viewing functions the 2-pes current transformers must be mounted outside the soft start as shown in Fig. 44 and Fig. 45 on page 45 . For this purpose an optional extension cable for the current transformers is available. Code No 01-2020-00.

| 0 3 2 |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | Setting of Bypass |
|  | F | F |
| Default: | oFF |  |
| Range: | oFF, on |  |
| oFF | Bypass disabled |  |
| on | Bypass enabled. <br> Program either relay K1 or K2 to <br> function 2 to control the bypass con- <br> tactor, see menu 51/52. |  |

!
CAUTION! If the current transformers are not mounted as in Fig. 43 on page 44 and $\S 6.2$, page 28, the alarm and viewing functions will not work. Do not forget to set menu 032 to 0 N , otherwise there will be an F12 alarm and at the stop command will be a freewheeling stop.

For further information see chapter 6.2 page 28 .


Fig. 43 Bypass wiring example MSF 310-1400.

## SOFTSTARTER



Fig. 44 Current transformer position when Bypass MSF-017 to MSF-250.


Fig. 45 Current transformer position when Bypass MSF-310 to MSF-1400.

### 7.13 Power Factor Control

During operation, the soft starter continuously monitors the load on the motor. Particularly when idling or when only partially loaded, it is sometimes desirable to improve the power factor. If Power factor control (PFC) is selected, the soft starter reduces the motor voltage when the load is lower. Power consumption is reduced and the degree of efficiency improved.


NOTE! If the PFC is used the EMC-directive is not fulfilled.

### 7.14 Brake functions

There are two built in braking methods for applications were the normal stop ramp is not enough.

## - Dynamic DC-brake

Increases the braking torque by decreasing speed.

- Soft brake

Gives a high torque at the start of the braking and then also increasing torque by decreasing speed.

In both methods the MSF detects when the motor is standing still, so rotating in wrong direction is avoided.

## Dynamic Vector Brake

- Possible to stop motors with high inertia loads from close to synchronous speed.
- At $70 \%$ of the nominal speed a DC-brake is activated until the motor is standing still or the selected Braking Time has expired (see menu 34 , next page).
- No contactor needed.
- For extra safety, the soft starter has a digital input signal for monitoring standstill so that at real motor standstill will stop the output voltage immediately (see § 7.19 , page 53 ).


## Soft brake

- Even very high inertia loads can be stopped
- The Soft brake is a controlled reversing of the motor as the MSF measures the speed during braking.
- Two contactors are needed which can be placed on the in- or output of the soft starter. On the input the first contactor is connected to relay K1 which is also used as a mains contactor.
- At $30 \%$ of the nominal speed a DC-brake is activated until the motor is standing still or the selected Braking Time has expired (menu 34, next page).
- For extra safety, the soft starter has a digital input signal for monitoring standstill. So that the output voltage is stopped immediately (see menu 57-58, § 7.19, page 53).

See Fig. 47 on page 47 for the following set-up sequence:

- Soft brake is activated if menu $36=2$ and menu 34 has a time selected (see next page).
- Menu 51 and 52 are automatically set to 5 and 4 to get the correct relay functions on K1 and K2 (see $\rrbracket$ 7.17, page 51).
- Relay K1 should be used to connect a contactor for supply L1, L2, L3 to MSF or motor.
- Relay K2 is used to connect phase shifting contactor to change L1, L2 and L3 to MSF or motor.
- At start K1 is activated and connects L1, L2, L3 then the motor starts. At stop K1 opens and disconnects L1, L2, and L3 and after 1s K2 connects with the other phase sequence and the braking of the motor is active.

NOTE! Soft brake uses both programmable relays. For other functions, see also the function table in chapter 7. page 35.

## NOTE! For several start/stops it is recommend to use the PTC input.



WARNING! If the Soft Brake function has been selected once and after that the Bypass function is selected, then the relay functions on K1 and K2 remain in the Soft Brake functionality. Therefore it Is necessary to change the relay functions in menu 51-52 manually to the Bypass functions (see $\S 7.17$, page 51 ) or reset to default in menu 199 (see § 7.28, page 63) and select the Bypass function again.



Fig. 46 Braking time

| 0 3 0$\quad$ Braking Strength |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 1 | 0 |
|  | 0 |  |
|  |  |  |
| Default: | 100 |  |
| Range: | $100-500 \%$ |  |

$0136{ }^{\circ}$

|  |  | 1 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | Brake method |  |
| Default: | 1 |  |
| Range: | 1,2 |  |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | Dynamic vector brake, active |  |
| $\mathbf{2}$ | Soft brake active |  |



Fig. 47 Soff brake wiring example.

### 7.15 Slow speed and Jog functions

The soft starter is able to run the motor at a fixed slow speed for a limited period of time.

The slow speed will be about $14 \%$ of the full speed in the forward direction and $9 \%$ in the reverse direction.

The following functions are possible:

- Slow speed controlled by an external signal. The digital input is used to run at slow speed at a start or stop command for a selected number of pulses (edges) generated by an external sensor (photo cell, micro switch, etc.). See $\S 7.19$, page 53 for more instructions.
- Slow Speed during a selected time period.

The slow speed will be active after a stop command for a selected time period. See $\S 7.19$, page 53 for more instructions.

- Slow Speed using the "JOG"-commands.

The slow Speed can be activated via the JOG keys on the keyboard or externally via the analogue input. See $\$ 7.25$, page 61 for more instructions.

### 7.15.1 Slow speed controlled by an external signal.

With these setting it is possible to have an external pulse or edge signal controlling the time that the Slow Speed is active either after a Start command or a Stop command or at both commands. The following menu's are involved:

| Menu | Function | See page |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 57 | Digital input selection | page 53 |
| 58 | Pulse selection | page 53 |
| 37 | Slow speed torque | page 49 |
| 38 | Slow speed time at start | page 49 |
| 39 | Slow speed time at stop | page 49 |
| 40 | DC-Brake at slow speed | page 49 |

Installation is as follows:

1. Set the analogue input selection for Slow Speed operation. Menu $57=2$. See $\S 7.19$, page 53 . See Fig. 37 on page 41 for a wiring example.
2. Select in menu 38 (see $\$ 7.15 .2$, page 49 ) the Slow Speed at Start time. This time will now be the absolute maximum time for Slow Speed to be active after a start command, in case the external signal will not appear.
3. Select in menu 39 (see $\S 7.15 .2$, page 49) the Slow Speed at Stop time. This time will now be the absolute maximum time for Slow Speed to be active after a stop command, in case the external signal will not appear.
4. Select in menu 57 (see $\S 7.19$, page 53 ) the number of edges to be ignored by the Slow Speed input, before a start or stop is executed at slow speed. The edges are generated by an external sensor (photo cell, micro switch, etc.).

The Slow Speed torque (menu 37) and DC-Brake after Slow Speed (menu 40) can be selected if needed. (see $\$ 7.15 .4$, page 49).

When the number of edges exceeds or the time expire, a start according to selected main function is made.

At stop, the motor will ramp down (if selected) and DC brake (if selected) before a slow speed forward at stop will begin. Slow speed will last as long as the number of edges on the external input is below parameter value in menu 036 and the max duration time doesn't expires. When the number of edges exceeds or the time expire, a stop is made.

In Fig. 48 on page 48 the selected number of edges are 4. It is recommended to select DC-brake (se $\$ 7.14$, page 46) before a slow speed at stop if it is a high inertia load. See Fig. 29 on page 33 for wiring diagram. In case one use DC-brake, see $\S 7.15 .4$, page 49.


Fig. 48 Slow speed controlled by an external signal.
This additional function can be used together with most of the main functions (see $\S 4.6$, page 19).


### 7.15.2 Slow speed during a selected time

It is possible to have a slow speed in forward direction before a start and after a stop. The duration of the slow speed is selectable in menus 038 and 039.

It is recommended to select DC brake (see $\S 7.14$, page 46) before a slow speed at stop if it is a high inertia load. This slow speed function is possible in all control modes, keyboard, remote and serial communication.

| $0 \mid 3$ | 0 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 0 | 0 |
|  | Flow speed time at start |  |
|  | F |  |
| Default: | oFF |  |
| Range: | oFF, 1-60 sec |  |
| ofF | Slow speed at start is disabled |  |
| $\mathbf{1 - 6 0}$ | Set slow speed time at start. |  |



Fig. 49 Slow speed at start/stop during a selected time.
The Slow speed torque (menu 37) and the DC-Brake after Slow speed (menu 40, $\S 7.15 .4$, page 49 ) can be selected if needed.

### 7.15.3 Jog Functions

The Jog commands can be used to let the motor run at a Slow speed (forward or reverse) as long as the Jog command is active.

The Jog commands can be activated in 2 different ways:

- Jog keys

The Jog-Forward and Jog-reverse keys on the control panel. The keys can be programmed separate for each function. See $₫ 7.25$, page 61 for more instructions

## - External Jog command

The external command is given via terminal 14 at the digital input. Only 1 function (forward or reverse) can be programmed to the digital input at the time. See $\S 7.19$, page 53 for more instructions.

### 7.15.4 DC-brake after slow speed at stop [040]

A DC-brake after a slow speed at stop is possible to have, i.e. for a high inertia load or for a precise stop.

The current is controlled and the reference value for the normal DC-brake function is used (see $\$ 7.15 .4$, page 49 ).
The duration for the DC-brake is possible to select.
This DC-brake function is not applied when the "JOG $\Omega$ " and "JOG $\Omega$ " keys are used.

| 0 4 0 0 <br>     <br>  0 $F$ $F$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| DC-Brake at slow speed |  |
| Default: | oFF |
| Range: | oFF, 1-60 |
| oFF | DC-brake after slow speed at stop <br> disabled. |
| $\mathbf{1 - 6 0}$ | DC-brake duration time after slow <br> speed at stop. |

24
0

### 7.16 Motor data setting

The first step in the settings is to set menu 007 and 008 to "on" to be able to reach the menus 041-046 and enter the motor data.

NOTE! The default factory settings are for a standard 4-pole motor acc. to the nominal current and power of the soft starter. The soft starter will run even if no specific motor data is selected, but the performance will not be optimal.


NOTE! Now go back to menu 007, 008 and set it to "oFF" and then to menu 001.


### 7.17 Programmable relay K1 and K2

The soft starter has three built-in auxiliary relays, K3 (change over contacts), is always used as an alarm relay. The other two relays, K1 and K2 (closing contacts), are programmable.

K1 and K2 can be set to either "Operation", "Full Voltage" or "Pre-alarm" indication. If DC-brake is chosen the relay K2 will be dedicated to this function.


Fig. 50 Start/stop sequence and relay function "Operation" and "Full voltage".

| $051{ }_{0}^{\circ}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 ( 1 |
| Default: | 1 |
| Range: | 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 |
| 1 | K1 is set for "Operation" |
| 2 | K1 is set for "Full Voltage" |
| 3 | K1 is set for "Power pre-alarm" |
| 4 | No function |
| 5 | K1 is set for "Run" |

### 7.18 Analogue output

The soft starter can present current, voltage and power on an analogue output terminal, for connection to a recording instrument or a PLC. The output can be configured in 4 different ways, $0-10 \mathrm{~V}$,
$2-10 \mathrm{~V}, 0-20 \mathrm{~m} \mathrm{~A}$ or $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$. To install the instrument proceed as follows:

1. Connect the instrument to terminal $19(+)$ and 15 (-).


Fig. 51 Wiring for analogue ourpur.
2. Set Jumper J2 on the PCB board to voltage (U) or current (I) signal position. Factory setting is voltage (U). See Fig. 52 on page 52 and Fig. 24 on page 28.

4. Choose a read-out value in menu 055

5. Set analogue output gain to adjust the range of chosen analogue output value in menu 056.


Example on settings:

| Set value | $\mathbf{I}_{\text {scale }}$ | $\mathbf{U}_{\text {scale }}$ | $\mathbf{P}_{\text {scale }}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $100 \%$ | $0-5 \times I_{n}$ | $0-720 \mathrm{~V}$ | $0-2 \times P_{n}$ |
| $50 \%$ | $0-2.5 \times I_{n}$ | $0-360 \mathrm{~V}$ | $0-P_{n}$ |

Fig. 52 Serting of current or voltage ourpur.
3. Set the parameter in menu 054.

| $0.540_{0}^{0}$ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0 F | $F$ |
| Default: | oFF |
| Range: | oFF, 1, 2 |
| oFF | Analogue ouput is disabled |
| 1 | Analogue output is set to $0-10 \mathrm{~V} / 0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ |
| 2 | Analogue output is set to $0-10 \mathrm{~V} / 4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ |

### 7.19 Digital input selection

The analogue input can be used as a digital input. This is programmed in Menu 57. There are 4 different functions:

- Rotation sensor input for braking functions. See

$$
\int 7.14, \text { page } 46
$$

- Slow speed external controlled. See $\S 7.15 .1$, page 48.
- Jog functions forward or reverse enabled. See $\oint$ 7.25 , page 61.

Fig. 53 shows how to set the input for voltage or current control, with jumper J1 the control board. The default setting for J 1 is voltage control.


Fig. 53 Setting of J1 for current or voltage control.
Fig. 54 shows a wiring example for the analogue input as it is used for digital input.


Fig. 54 Wiring for slow speed external input.

NOTE! If the Main Function Analogue control is programmed (see $\S 7.8$, page 41) the analogue input can not be used for digltal signal input. The menu 57 is then automatically set to OFF.

| 0 | 5 | 7 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 0 | Digital input selection |
|  |  |  |
| Default: | oFF |  |
| Range: | oFF, 1-4 |  |
| oFF | No digital input control |  |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | Rotation sensor for brake functions |  |
| $\mathbf{2}$ | Slow speed function |  |
| $\mathbf{3}$ |  | Jog forward command |
| $\mathbf{4}$ |  | Jog reverse command |

NOTE! Jog forward, reverse has to be enabled, see § 7.25, page 61.

Depending on the selection made in menu 57, menu 58 is used to program the number of the edges. The edges can be generated by an external sensor (photo cell, micro switch etc.).


### 7.20 Parameter Set

Parameter Set, an important function which can be handy when using one soft starter to switch in and start different motors, or working under variable load conditions. For example; starting and stopping conveyor belts with different weight on the goods from time to time.

For sets of parameters can be controlled either from the keyboard, the external control inputs or the serial interface (option). Up to 51 different parameters can be set for each Parameter Set.


Fig. 55 Parameter overniew
When 'Parameter set' in menu 061 is set to 0 (external selection), only parameters in menu 006 (Control mode) and 061 (Parameter set) can be changed. All other parameters are not allowed to change.

It is possible to change parameter set at stop and at full voltage running.


Fig. 56 Connection of extemal control inputs.

| Parameter Set | PS1 (16-18) | PS2 (17-18) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | Open | Open |
| 2 | Closed | Open |
| 3 | Open | Closed |
| 4 | Closed | Closed |

### 7.21 Motor protection, overload (F2 alarm)

In many cases it is convenient to have a complete starter. The soft starter have a possibility to use either an input PTC signal from the motor, an internal thermal model of the motor for thermal protection or both together at the same time. Slight overload for long time and several overloads of short duration will be detected with both methods.


NOTE! Open terminals will give an F2 alarm Immedlately. Make sure the PTC is always connected or the terminals are shorted.

NOTE! The Internal motor thermal protection will still generate an alarm if it is not selected oFF.

| $0 \times 7 \mid 20$ |  |  | Internal motor thermal protection |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 | 0 |  |
| Default: |  | 10 |  |
| Range: |  | oFF | 40 sec |
| oFF |  |  | al motor protection is disabled |
| 2-40 |  | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { Sele } \\ \text { acco } \\ - \text { Che } \\ \text { pro } \\ \text { pag } \\ \text { - If t } \\ \text { leve } \\ \text { - The } \\ \text { mu } \\ \text { can } \\ - \text { Use } \\ \text { in } \end{gathered}$ | ion of the thermal curve ling to Fig. 57 <br> $k$ that menu 042 is set to the motor current (see § 7.16, 50). <br> current exceeds the $100 \%$ an F2 alarm is activated. motor model thermal capacity cool down to $95 \%$ before reset e accepted. <br> thermal capacity in menu 073 7.21, page 55 . |

NOTE! If 'Bypass' is used check that the current transformers are placed and connected correctly (see Fig. 43 on page 44).


CAUTION! Used thermal capacity is set to 0 If the control board loses its supply (terminal 01 and 02). This means that the internal thermal model starts with a 'cold' motor, which perhaps in reality is not the case. This means that the motor can be overheated.


Fig. 57 The thermal curve

### 7.22 Mains protection



Read-out of the used thermal capacity. If menu 072 'Internal motor thermal protection' is selected oFF, the capacity is shown as if the default class 10 was selected.


Insert limit in \% of nominal motor voltage. Max voltage of the 3 input phases is compared with the selected value. This is a category 2 alarm.



### 7.23 Application protection (load monitor)

### 7.23.1 Load monitor max and min/protection (F6 and F7 alarms)

MSF has a built in load monitor based on the output shaftpower. This is a unique and important function which enables protection of machines and processes driven by the motor connected to the soft starter. Both a Min and Max limit is possible to select.

In combination with the pre-alarm function, see $\$ 7.23 .2$, page 58 , this create a powerful protection. An auto set function is also included for an automatic setting of the alarm limits. A start-up delay time can be selected to avoid undesired alarms at start-up, see Fig. 58 on page 60.

NOTE! The load monitor alarms are all disabled during a stop ramp.

| $0\|8\| 9$ 0  <br>   Auto set power limits <br>   $n$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Default: | no |
| Range: | no, YES |
| no | Auto set is disabled |
| YES | Auto set is activated if ENTER is <br> pressed. |


| 0910 |  | Output shaftpower in \% |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 0 |  |
| Default | - |  |
| Range: |  |  |
| Measured output shaftpower in \% of nominal motor power. |  |  |

NOTE! System must be in full voltage running before an auto set is permitted.

The actual power is regarded as $1.00 \times \mathrm{xPact}$.
The set levels are:

| Power max alarm limit[092]: | $1.15 \times P$ actual |
| :--- | :--- |
| Power max pre-alarm limit[094]: | $1.10 \times \mathrm{xP}$ actual |
| Power min pre-alarm limit[096]: | 0.90 xP actual |
| Power min alarm limit[098]: | $0.85 \times \mathrm{x}$ actual |

A successful auto set shows a message 'Set' for 3 s and if something goes wrong a message 'no' will be showed.



| 0 9 3 0 |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | Response delay max alarm |  |
|  | F | F |
| Default: | oFF |  |
| Range: | ofF, 0.1-25.0 sec |  |
| oFF | Max Alarm is disabled. |  |
| $\mathbf{0 . 1 - 2 5 . 0}$ | Sets the response delay of the Max <br> Alarm level. |  |

### 7.23.2 Pre-alarm

It could be useful to know if the load is changing towards a load alarm limit. It is possible to insert both a Max and Min pre-alarm limit based on the motor output shaft power. If the load exceeds one of these limits, a pre-alarm condition occurs.

It should be noted that it is not normal alarms. They will not be inserted in the alarm list, not activating the alarm relay output, not displayed on the display and they will not stop operation. But it is possible to activate relay K 1 or K 2 if a pre-alarm condition occurs. To have pre-alarm status on any of these relays, select value 3 in menu 051 or 052 (see $\$ 7.17$, page 51 ).

A start-up delay time can be selected in menu 091 to avoid undesired pre-alarms at start-up. Note that this time is also shared with power Max and Min alarms.

NOTE! The pre-alarm status is always avallable on the serial communication.


| $0 \mid 9$ | 0 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | 0 | Max pre-alarm response <br> delay |
|  | 0 | F |
| Default: | oFF |  |
| Range: | oFF, 0.1-25.0 sec |  |
| oFF | Max Pre-Alarm is disabled. |  |
| $\mathbf{0 . 1 - 2 5 . 0}$ | Sets the response delay of the Max <br> Pre-Alarm level. |  |



Insert limit in \% of nominal motor power. The actual power in \% of nominal motor power, could be read out in menu 090. If output shaft power goes below selected limit, an F7-alarm occurs after the response delay time. The 'Auto set' function in menu 089, affect this limit even if the alarm is set 'oFF' in menu 099. This is a category 1 alarm.



## BACKNEXT <br> 会

용



Overioad situation


### 7.24 Resume alarms

### 7.24.1 Phase input failure F1

- Multiple phase failure.

Shorter failure than 100 ms is ignored. If failure duration time is between 100 ms and 2 s , operation is temporary stopped and a soft start is made if the failure disappears before 2 s . If failure duration time is longer than 2 s , an F 1 alarm is given in cat. 2.

- Single phase failure.

During start up (acceleration) the behaviour is like multiple phase failure below. When full voltage running there is a possibility to select the behaviour.

| 1010 |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | R |

### 7.24.2 Run at current limit time-out F4

In modes 'Current limit at start' and 'Voltage ramp with current limit at start' an alarm is activated if still operating at current limit level when selected ramp time exceeds. If an alarm occurs there is a possibility to select the behaviour.

| 1 0 2 | Run at current limit time-out |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

### 7.25 Slow speed with JOG

Slow speed with "JOG" is possible from the "JOG" keys, but also from terminals, see menu 57 page 53 and serial comm. The "JOG" is ignored if the soft starter is running. The slow speed "JOG" function has to be enabled for both forward and reverse directions in menus 103 and 104, see below.

NOTE! The enable functions is for all control modes.


| 1040 |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| O F | $F$ |
| Default: | OFF |
| Range: | oFF, on |
| oFF | JOG reverse disabled |
| on | JOG reverse enabled |



Fig. 59 The 2 Jog keys.

### 7.26 Automatic return menu

Often it is desirable to have a specific menu on the display during operation, i.e. RMS current or power consumption. The Automatic return menu function gives the possibility to select any menu in the menu system.

The menu selected will come up on the display after 60 sec . if no keyboard activity. The alarm messages (F1-F16) have a priority over menu 105 (as they have for all menus).


### 7.27 Communication option, related Parameters

The following parameters have to be set-up:

- Unit address.
- Baud rate.
- Parity
- Behaviour when contact broken.

Setting up the communication parameter must be made in local 'Keyboard control' mode. See $\S 7.2$, page 37.



## Serial comm. broken alarm

If control mode is 'Serial comm. control' and no contact is established or contact is broken the Soft starter consider the contact to be broken after 15 sec , the soft starter can act in three different ways:

1 Continue without any action at all.
2 Stop and alarm after 15 sec .
3 Continue and alarm after 15 sec .
If an alarm occurs, it is automatically reset if the communication is re-established. It is also possible to reset the alarm from the soft starter keyboard.

| 1 | 1 | 4 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |

### 7.28 Reset to factory setting [199]

When selecting reset to factory settings:

- All parameters in all parameter sets will have default factory settings.
- Menu 001 will appear on the display.
- Note that the alarm list, the power consumption and the operation time will not have default settings.


NOTE! Reset to factory settings is not allowed at run.

### 7.29 View operation

## General

The soft start includes as standard a numerous metering functions which eliminates the need of additional transducers and meters.

## Measured values

- Current RMS 3-phase current and per phase
- Voltage RMS 3-phase voltage and per phase
- Output shaft power/torque $\mathrm{kW} / \mathrm{Nm}$
- Power factor
- Power consumption in kWh
- Operation time in hours


## Viewing of the measured values

After setting motor data and extended functions one can set menu 008 in oFF and will then automatically move to menu 201, the first menu viewing the measused values and thus eliminate to scroll through menu 011 to menu 199.




| Default: | - |
| :--- | :--- |
| Range: | $0-720 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| The RMS input main voltage. |  |



NOTE! The power factor viewing will not work at bypass even if the current transformers are mounted outside the soft start.


NOTE! This is the same readout as menu 005 see $\S 7.1 .1$, page 36.


| 21120 |  | RMS current in phase L2 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 0.0 |  |
| Default: | - |  |
| Range: | 0.0 | 999Amp |
| View the current in phase L2. |  |  |



| $2\|0\| 80_{0}^{0}$ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 0.0 |  |  |
| Default: |  |  |  |
| Range: Hours |  |  |  |
| Operation time is calculated when the soft starter is in RUN mode. After 9999 hours the display will show two values. |  |  |  |
| Example: 12467 hours shows |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \mathrm{sec} \\ & 5 \mathrm{sec} \end{aligned}$ |


| 2 1 1 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|     <br>   0. 0$\quad$ RMS current in phase L1 |  |
| Default: | - |
| Range: | $0.0-9999 \mathrm{Amp}$ |
| View the current in phase L1. |  |



### 7.30 Keyboard lock

The keyboard can be locked to prohibit operation and parameter setting by an unauthorised. Lock keyboard by pressing both keys "NEXT $\rightarrow$ " and "ENTER - " for at least 2 sec . The message '- Loc' will display when locked. To unlock keyboard press the same 2 keys "NEXT $\rightarrow$ " and "ENTER $\rightarrow$ " for at least 2 sec . The message 'unlo' will display when unlocked.

In locked mode it is possible to view all parameters and read-out, but it is forbidden to set parameters and to operate the soft starter from the keyboard.

The message '-Loc' will display if trying to set a parameter or operate the soft starter in locked mode.

The key lock status can be read out in menu 221.


### 7.31 Alarm list

The alarm list is generated automatically. It shows the latest 15 alarms ( F 1 - F 16 ). The alarm list can be useful when tracing a failure in the soft starter or its control circuit. Press key "NEXT $\rightarrow$ " or "PREV $\leftarrow$ " to reach the alarm list in menus 901-915 (menu 007 has to be ON).


## 8. PROTECTION AND ALARM

The soft starter is equipped with a protection system for the motor, the machine and for the soft starter itself.
Three categories of alarm are available:

## Category 1

Alarm that stops the motor and need a separate reset before a new start can be accepted.

## Category 2

Alarm that stops the motor and accepts a new start command without any separate reset.

## Category 3

Alarm that continues to run the motor.

All alarm, except pre-alarm, will activate the alarm relay output K3, flash a red fault number on the display and it will also be placed in the alarm list. As long as the alarm is active, the display is locked in the alarm indication.

The relay output K3 can be used in the control circuit for actions needed when alarm occurs.

If more than one alarm is active, it is the last alarm that is presented on the display.

### 8.1 Alarm description

### 8.1.1 Alarm with stop and requiring a separate reset

Operation will stop for a category 1 alarm. A separate reset is needed before a new start command is accepted. It is possible to reset from keyboard (pushing "ENTER/RESET") regardless of selected control mode. It is also possible to reset the alarm from the actual control mode (i.e. if control mode is serial communication, a reset is possible to do from serial communication).

A reset is accepted first when the alarm source goes back to normal.

When a reset is made, the alarm relay output K3 is deactivated, the alarm indication on the display disappear and the original menu shows.

After a reset is made the system is ready for a new start command.

### 8.1.2 Alarm with stop and requiring only a new start command

Operation will stop for a category 2 alarm. A restart can be done and at the same time the alarm relay output K3 is deactivated, the alarm indication on the display disappear and the original menu shows.

It is still possible to reset the alarm in the same way as for category 1 alarms (see 8.1.1), if a start is not required at the time.

### 8.1.3 Alarm with continue run

Operation will continue run for a category 3 alarm. Some different reset behaviour is possible (see remarks for the specific alarms in $\S 8.2$, page 67).

- Automatic reset when the alarm source goes back to normal.
- Automatic reset when a stop command is given.
- Manual reset during run.

When the reset occurs, the alarm relay output K 3 is deactivated, the alarm indication on the display disappear and the original menu shows.

### 8.2 Alarm overview

| Display indication | Protective function | Alarm category | Remark |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| F1 | Phase input failure. | Cat 3. Run with auto reset. | Single phase failure when full voltage running if menu 101 'Run at phase loss' = YES. If the fault phase comes back, an automatic reset is made. |
|  |  | Cat 2. Stop with reset in start. | Multiple phase failure or single phase failure when not full voltage running or if menu 101 ' Run at phase loss' = no. |
| F2 | Motor protection, overload. | Cat 1. Stop with manual reset. | If menu 071 'Motor PTC input' = YES, cool down the motor. <br> If menu 071 'Motor PTC input' = no, the internal model has to 'cool' down. |
| F3 | Soft start overheated | Cat 1. Stop with manual reset. | If not cooled down, a reset will not be accepted. |
| F4 | Full speed not reached at set current limit and start time. | If menu 102 'Run at current limit time-out' = no. <br> Cat 2. Stop with reset in start. | The current limit start is not completed. |
|  |  | If menu 102 'Run at current limit time-out' = YES. <br> Cat 3 . Run with manual reset. | When start time expired, a 6 sec ramp is used to reach full voltage, without control of the current. Reset the alarm with either a manual reset or a stop command. |
| F5 | Locked rotor. | Cat 1. Stop with manual reset. | Motor and/or machine protection. |
| F6 | Above max power limit. | Cat 1. Stop with manual reset. | Machine protection. |
| F7 | Below min power limit. | Cat 1. Stop with manual reset. | Machine protection. |
| F8 | Voltage unbalance. | Cat 2. Stop with reset in start. | Motor protection. |
| F9 | Over voltage. | Cat 2. Stop with reset in start. | Motor protection. |
| F10 | Under voltage. | Cat 2. Stop with reset in start. | Motor protection. |
| F11 | Starts / hour exceeded. | Cat 2. Stop with reset in start. | Motor and/or machine protection. |
| F12 | Shorted thyristor. | Cat 3. Run with manual reset. | When stop command comes, the stop will be a 'Direct On Line' stop, and the soft starter will be resetted. After this fault it is possible to start only in 'Direct On Line' mode. One or more thyristors probably damaged. |
| F13 | Open thyristor. | Cat 1. Stop with manual reset. | One or more thyristors probably damaged. |
| F14 | Motor terminal open. | Cat 1. Stop with manual reset. | Motor not correctly connected. |
| F15 | Serial communication broken. | If menu 114 Serial comm. contact broken $=1$. Cat 2. Stop with reset in start. | Serial communication broken will stop operation. Run from keyboard if necessary. |
|  |  | If menu 114 Serial comm. contact broken $=2$. Cat 3 . Run with auto reset. | Serial communication broken will not stop operation. Stop from keyboard if necessary. |
| F16 | Phase reversal alarm. | Cat 1. Stop with manual reset. | Incorrect phase order on main voltage input. |

9. TROUBLE SHOOTING

### 9.1 Fault, cause and solution

| Observation | Fault indication | Cause | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The display is not illuminated. | None | No control voltage. | Switch on the control voltage. |
| The motor does not run. | F1 <br> (Phase input failure) | Fuse defective. | Renew the fuse. |
|  |  | No mains supply. | Switch the main supply on. |
|  | F2 <br> (Motor protection, overload) | Perhaps PTC connection. Perhaps incorrect nominal motor current inserted (menu 042). | Check the PTC input if PTC protection is used. <br> If internal protection is used, perhaps an other class could be used (menu 072). <br> Cool down the motor and make a reset. |
|  | F3 <br> (Soft start overheated) | Ambient temperature to high. soft starter duty cycle exceeded. Perhaps fan failure. | Check ventilation of cabinet. Check the size of the cabinet. Clean the cooling fins. If the fan(s) is not working correct, contact your local MSF sales outlet. |
|  | F4 <br> (Full speed not reached at set current limit and start time) | Current limit parameters are perhaps not matched to the load and motor. | Increase the starting time and/or the current limit level. |
|  | F5 (Locked rotor) | Something stuck in the machine or perhaps motor bearing failure. | Check the machine and motor bearings. Perhaps the alarm delay time can be set longer (menu 075). |
|  | F6 <br> (Above max power limit) | Overload | Over load. Check the machine. Perhaps the alarm delay time can be set longer (menu 093). |
|  | F7 <br> (Below min power limit) | Underload | Under Ioad. Check the machine. Perhaps the alarm delay time can be set longer (menu 099). |
|  | F8 <br> (Volt age unbalance) | Main supply voltage unbalance. | Check mains supply. |
|  | F9 (Over voltage) | Main supply over voltage. | Check mains supply. |
|  | F10 <br> (Under voltage) | Main supply under voltage. | Check mains supply. |
|  | F11 <br> (Starts / hour exceeded) | Number of starts exceeded according to menu 074. | Wait and make a new start. Perhaps the number of starts / hour could be increased in menu 074. |
|  | F13 <br> (Open thyristor) | Perhaps a damaged thyristor. | Make a reset and a restart. If the same alarm appears immediately, contact your local MSF sales outlet. |
|  | F14 <br> (Motor terminal open) | Open motor contact, cable or motor winding. | If the fault is not found, reset the alarm and inspect the alarm list. If alarm F12 is found, a thyristor is probably shorted. <br> Make a restart. If alarm F14 appears immediately, contact your local MSF sales outlet. |


| Observation | Fault indication | Cause | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The motor does not run. | F15 <br> (Serial communication broken) | Serial communication broken. | Make a reset and try to establish contact. Check contacts, cables and option board. <br> Verify <br> - System address (menu 111). <br> - Baudrate (menu 112). <br> Parity (menu 113). <br> If the fault is not found, run the motor with keyboard control if urgent (set menu 006 to "1"). See also manual for serial communica tion. |
|  | F16 <br> (Phase reversal) | Incorrect phase sequence on main supply. | Switch L2 and L3 input phases. |
|  | .... | Start command comes perhaps from incorrect control source. (l.e. start from keyboard when remote control is selected). | Give start command from correct source (menu 006). |
|  | -LOC | System in keyboard lock. | Unlock keyboard by pressing the keys 'NEXT' and 'ENTER' for at least 3 sec |
| The motor is running but an alarm is given. | F1 (Phase input failure) | Failure in one phase. Perhaps fuse defective. | Check fuses and mains supply. Deselect 'Run at single phase input failure' in menu 101, if stop is desired at single phase loss. |
|  | F4 <br> (Full speed not reached at set current limit and start time) | Current limit parameters are perhaps not matched to the load and motor. | Increase the starting time and/or the current limit level. Deselect 'Run at current limit time-out' in menu 102, if stop is desired at current limit time-out. |
|  | F12 <br> (Shorted thyristor) | Perhaps a damaged thyristor. | When stop command is given, a free wheel stop is made. Make a reset and a restart. If alarm F14 appears immediately, contact your local MSF sales outlet. If it is urgent to start the motor, set soft starter in 'Direct On Line' (menu 024). It is possible to start in this mode. |
|  |  | By pass contactor is used but menu 032 'Bypass' is not set to "on". | Set menu 032 'Bypass' to "on". |
|  | F15 <br> (Serial communication broken) | Serial communication broken. | Make a reset and try to establish contact. Check contacts, cables and option board. <br> Verify <br> - System address (menu 111). <br> - Baudrate (menu 112). <br> - Parity (menu 113). <br> If the fault is not found, run the motor with keyboard control if urgent, see also manual for serial communication. |


| Observation | Fault indication | Cause | Solution |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The motor jerks etc. | When starting, motor reaches full speed but it jerks or vibrates. | If 'Torque control' or 'Pump control' is selected, it is necessary to input motor data into the system. | Input nominal motor dat a in menus 041-046. Select the proper load characteristic in menu 025. Select a correct initial- and end torque at start in menus 016 and 017. If 'Bypass' is selected, check that the current transformers are correct connected. |
|  |  | Starting time too short. | Increase starting time. |
|  |  | Starting voltage incorrectly set. | Adjust starting voltage. |
|  |  | Motor too small in relation to rated current of soft starter. | Use a smaller model of the soft starter. |
|  |  | Motor too large in relation to load of soft starter. | Use larger model of soft starter. |
|  |  | Starting voltage not set correctly | Readjust the start ramp. |
|  |  |  | Select the current limit function. |
|  | Starting or stopping time too long, soft does not work. | Ramp times not set correctly. | Readjust the start and/or stop ramp time. |
|  |  | Motor too large or too small in relation to load. | Change to another motor size. |
| The monitor function does not work. | No alarm or pre-alarm | It is necessary to input nominal motor data for this function. Incorrect alarm levels. | Input nominal motor data in menus 041-046. Adjust alarm levels in menus 091-099. If 'Bypass' is selected, check that the current transformers are correct connected. |
| Unexplainable alarm. | F5, F6, F7, F8, F9, F10 | Alarm delay time is to short. | Adjust the response delay times for the alarms in menus 075, 082, 084, 086, 093 and 099. |
| The system seems locked in an alarm. | F2 <br> (Motor protection, overload) | PTC input terminal could be open. <br> Motor could still be to warm. If internal motor protection is used, the cooling in the internal model take some time. | PTC input terminal should be short circuit if not used. Wait until motor PTC gives an OK (not overheated) signal. Wait until the internal cooling is done. Try to reset the alarm after a while. |
|  | F3 (Soft start overheated) | Ambient temperature to high. Perhaps fan failure. | Check that cables from power part are connected in terminals 073, 074, 071 and 072. MSF-017 to MSF-145 should have a short circuit between 071 and 072 . Check also that the $\mathrm{fan}(\mathrm{s})$ is rotating. |
| Parameter will not be accepted. | $\cdots$ | If the menu number is one of $020 \cdot 025$, only one can bee selected. <br> In other words only one main mode is possible at a time. | Deselect the other main mode before selecting the new one. |
|  |  | If menu 061, 'Parameter set' is set to " 0 ", the system is in a remote parameter selection mode. It is now impossible to change most of the parameters. | Set the menu 061, 'Parameter set' to a value between "1" - "4" and then it is possible to change any parameter. |
|  |  | During acceleration, deceleration, slow speed, DC brake and Power factor control mode, it is impossible to change parameters. | Set parameters during stop or full voltage running. |
|  |  | If control source is serial comm., it is impossible to change parameters from keyboard and vice versa. | Change parameters from the actual control source. |
|  |  | Some menus include only read out values and not parameters. | Read-out values can not be altered. In table 13 , page 35 , read-out menus has '-' in the factory setting column. |
|  | -Loc | Keyboard is locked. | Unlock keyboard by pressing the keys 'NEXT' and 'ENTER' for at least 3 sec . |

## 10. MAINTENANCE

In general the soft starter is maintenance free. There are however some things which should be checked regularly. Especially if the surroundings are dusty the unit should be cleaned regularly.


WARNING! Do not touch parts inside the enclosure of the unit when the control and motor voltage is switched on.

## Regular maintenance

- Check that nothing in the soft starter has been damaged by vibration (loose screws or connections).
- Check external wiring, connections and control signals. Tighten terminal screws and busbar bolts if necessary.
- Check that PCB boards, thyristors and cooling fin are free from dust. Clean with compressed air if necessary. Make sure the PCB boards and thyristors are undamaged.
- Check for signs of overheating (changes in colour on PCB boards, oxidation of solder points etc.). Check that the temperature is within permissible limits.
- Check that the cooling fan/s permit free air flow. Clean any external air filters if necessary.

In the event of fault or if a fault cannot be cured by using the fault-tracing table in chapter 9 . page 68.

## 11. OPTIONS

The following option are available. Please contact your supplier for more detailed information.

### 11.1 Serial communication

For serial communication the MODBUS RTU (RS232/RS485) option card is available order number: 01-1733-00.


Fig. 60 Option RS232/485

### 11.2 Field bus systems

Various option cards are available for the following bus systems:

- PROFIBUS DP order number: 01-1734-01
- Device NET, order number:

01-1736-01

- LONWORKS:

01-1737-01

- FIP IO:

01-1738-01

- INTERBUS-S:

01-1735-01
Each system has his own card. The option is delivered with an instruction manual containing the all details for the set-up of the card and the protocol for programming.


Fig. 61 Option Profibus

### 11.3 External PPU.

The external PPU option is used to move the PPU (keyboard) from the soft starter to the front of a panel door or control cabinet.

The maximum distance between the soft starter and the external PPU is 3 m .
The option can be factory mounted (01-2138-01) or it can be built in later (01-2138-00). For both versions instruction /data sheet are available.


Fig. 62 Shows an example of the External PPU after it has been buils in.

### 11.3.1 Cable kit for external current transformers

This kit is used for the bypass function, to connect the external current transformers more easy. order number: 01-2020-00.


Fig. 63 Cable kit

### 11.4 Terminal clamp

Data: Single cables, Cu or Al

Cables
MSF type Cu Cable
Bolt for connection to busbar
Dimensions in mm
Order No. single
Data: Parallel cables, Cu or Al
Cables
MSF type and Cu Cable
Bolt for connection to busbar
Dimensions in mm
Order No. parallel
$95-300 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$
310
M10
$33 \times 84 \times 47 \mathrm{~mm}$ 9350
$2 \times 95-300 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ 310 to -835
M10
$35 \times 87 \times 65$
9351


Fig. 64 The terminal clamp.
?

## 12. TECHNICALDATA

| 3x200-525 V 50/60 Hz Model | MSF-017 |  | MSF-030 |  | MSF-045 |  | MSF-060 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Soft starter rating according to AC35a, see chapter 4. page 13 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 5.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { heavy } \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 3.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { normal/llight } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 5.0-30:50-10 } \\ \text { heavy } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { 3.0-30:50-10 } \\ \text { normal/light } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 5.0-30:50-10 } \\ \text { heavy } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 3.0-30:50-10 } \\ & \text { normal/llght } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 5.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { heavy } \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 3.0-30:50-10 } \\ & \text { normal/llght } \end{aligned}$ |
| Rated current of soft starter (A) | 17 | 22 | 30 | 37 | 45 | 60 | 60 | 72 |
| Recommended motor size ( kW ) for 400 V | 7.5 | 11 | 15 | 18.5 | 22 | 30 | 30 | 37 |
| Recommended motor size (kW) for 525 V | 11 | 15 | 18.5 | 22 | 30 | 37 | 37 | 45 |
| Order number: supply voltage ( $100-240 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1301-01 |  | 01-1302-01 |  | 01-1303-01 |  | 01-1304-01 |  |
| Order number: supply voltage ( $380-500 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1301-02 |  | 01-1302-02 |  | 01-1303-02 |  | 01.1304-02 |  |
| $3 \times 200690 \mathrm{~V} 50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ Model | MSF-017 |  | MSF030 |  | MSF-045 |  | MSF060 |  |
| Rated current of soft starter ( A ) | 17 | 22 | 30 | 37 | 45 | 60 | 60 | 72 |
| Motor power for 690V | 15 | 18.5 | 22 | 30 | 37 | 55 | 55 | 75* |
| Order number: supply voltage (100-240V) | 01-1321-01 |  | 01-1322-01 |  | 01-1323-01 |  | 01-1324-01 |  |
| Order number: supply voltage ( $380-500 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1321-02 |  | 01-1322-02 |  | 01-1323-02 |  | 01-1324-02 |  |
| Electrical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recommended wiring fuse (A) 1) | 25/50 | 32 | 35/80 | 50 | 50/125 | 80 | 63/160 | 100 |
| Semi-conductor fuses, if required | $80 \mathrm{~A}$ |  | 125 A |  | 160 A |  | 200 A |  |
| Power loss at rated motor load (W) | 50 | 70 | 90 | 120 | 140 | 180 | 180 | 215 |
| Power consumption control card | 20 VA |  | 20 VA |  | 25 VA |  | 25 VA |  |
| Mechanical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dimensions in mm HxW×D | $320 \times 126 \times 260$ |  | $320 \times 126 \times 260$ |  | 320×126×260 |  | $320 \times 126 \times 260$ |  |
| Mounting position (Vertical/Horizontal) | Vertical |  | Vertical |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  |
| Weight (kg) | 6.7 |  | 6.7 |  | 6.9 |  | 6.9 |  |
| Connection busbars Cu , (bolt) | 15x4 (M6) |  | 15×4 (M6) |  | 15x4 (M6) |  | 15x4 (M8) |  |
| Cooling system | Convection |  | Convection |  | Fan |  | Fan |  |
| General Electrical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Number of fully controlled phases | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage tolerance control | Control $+/ \cdot 10 \%$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage tolerance motor | Motor $200-525+/ \cdot 10 \% / 200-690+5 \%,-10 \%$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recommended fuse for control card (A) | Max 10 A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Frequency | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Frequency tolerance | +/.10\% |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Relay contacts | $3 \times 8 \mathrm{~A}, 250 \mathrm{~V}$ resistive load, 3 A 250 VAC inductive ( $\mathrm{PF}=0.4$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Type of protection/insulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Type of casing protection | 1P 20 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Other General Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Ambient temperatures |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| In operation | $0.40{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max.e.g. at 80\% in | $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| In storage | $(-25)-(+70)^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Relative air humidity | 95\%, non-condensing |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max. altitude without derating | (See separate: Technical information 151) 1000 m |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Norms/Standards, Conform to: | IEC 947-4-2, EN 292, EN 60204-1, UL508 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EMC, Emission | EN 50081-2, (EN 50081.1 with bypass contactor) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EMC, Immunity | EN 50082-2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1) Recommended wiring fuses for: $\begin{aligned} & \text { Heavy (first column): ramp/direct start } \\ & \text { Normal/Lght (second column): }\end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| NOTE! Short circult withstand MSF017-060 5000 rms A when used with K5 or RK5 fuses. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

* 2-pole motor

| 3x200-525 V 50/60 Hz Model | MSF-075 |  | MSF-085 |  | MSF-110 |  | MSF-145 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Soft starter rating according to AC35a, see chapter 4. page 13 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 5.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { heavy } \end{array}$ | $\left\|\begin{array}{c\|} 3.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { normal/llight } \end{array}\right\|$ | $\begin{gathered} 5.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { heavy } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 3.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { normal/light } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} 5.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { heavy } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { 3.0-30:50-10 } \\ \text { normal/light } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 5.0-30:50-10 } \\ \text { heavy } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 3.0-30: 50-10 \\ \text { normal/llght } \end{array}$ |
| Rated current of soft starter (A) | 75 | 85 | 85 | 96 | 110 | 134 | 145 | 156 |
| Recommended motor size (kW) for 400 V | 37 | 45 | 45 | 55* | 55 | 75 | 75 |  |
| Recommended motor size (kW) for 525 V | 45 | 55 | 55 | 75* | 75 | 90 | 90 | 110 |
| Order number for supply voltage ( $100-240 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1305-01 |  | 01-1306-01 |  | 01-1307-01 |  | 01-1308-01 |  |
| Order number for supply voltage ( $380-550 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1305-02 |  | 01-1306-02 |  | 01-1307-02 |  | 01-1308-02 |  |
| $3 \times 200-690$ V 50/60 Hz Model | MSF-075 |  | MSF-085 |  | MSF-110 |  | MSF-145 |  |
| Rated current of soft starter (A) | 75 | 85 | 85 | 90 | 110 | 134 | 145 | 156 |
| Motor power for 690V | 55 | 75 | 75 | 90 | 90 | 110 | 132 | 160* |
| Order number for supply voltage ( $100-240 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1325-01 |  | 01-1326-01 |  | 01-1327-01 |  | 01-1328-01 |  |
| Order number for supply voltage ( $380-550 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1325-02 |  | 01-1326-02 |  | 01-1327-02 |  | 01-1328-02 |  |
| Electrical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recommended wiring fuse (A) 1) | 80/200 | 100 | 100/250 | 125 | 125/315 | 180 | 160/400 | 200 |
| Semi-conductor fuses, if required | 250 A |  | 315 A |  | 350 A |  | 450 A |  |
| Power loss at rated motor load (W) | 230 | 260 | 260 | 290 | 330 | 400 | 440 | 470 |
| Power consumption control card | 25 VA |  | 25 VA |  | 25 VA |  | 25 VA |  |
| Mechanical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dimensions in mm $\mathrm{H} \times \mathrm{W} \times \mathrm{D}$ | 320x126×260 |  | $320 \times 126 \times 260$ |  | $400 \times 176 \times 260$ |  | 400×176×260 |  |
| Mounting position (Vertical/Horizontal) | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  |
| Weight (kg) | 6.9 |  | 6.9 |  | 12 |  | 12 |  |
| Connection, busbars Cu , (bolt) | 15×4 (M8) |  | 15x4 (M8) |  | 20x 4 (M10) |  | 20×4 (M10) |  |
| Cooling system | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |  |
| General Electrical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Number of fully controlled phases | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage tolerance control | Control $+/$ 10\% |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage tolerance motor | Motor $200-525+/ \cdot 10 \% / 200-690+5 \%,-10 \%$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recommended fuse for control card (A) | Max 10 A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Frequency | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Frequency tolerance | +/-10\% |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Relay contacts | $8 \mathrm{~A}, 250 \mathrm{~V}$ resistive load. $3 \mathrm{~A}, 250 \mathrm{~V}$ inductive load ( $\mathrm{PF}=0.4$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Type of protectlon/Insulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Type of casing protection | IP 20 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Other General Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Ambient temperatures In operation | 0. $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max.e.g. at $80 \% I_{N}$ | $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| In storage | $(-25)-(+70)^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Relative air humidity | 95\%, non-condensing |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max. altitude without derating | (See separate: Technical information 151) 1000 m |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Norms/Standards, Conform to: | IEC 947-42, EN 292, EN 60204-1, UL508 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EMC, Emission | EN 50081-2, (EN 50081-1 with bypass contactor) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EMC, Immunity | EN 50082-2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1) Recommended wiring fuses for: He | (first column): ramp/direct start mal/Lght (second column): ramp start |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| NOTE! Short circult withstand MSFO75-145 10000 ms A when used with K5 or RK5 fuses. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

* 2-pole motor

| $3 \times 200-525$ V 50/60 Hz Model | MSF-170 |  | MSF-210 |  | MSF-250 |  | MSF-310 |  | MSF-370 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Soft starter rating according to AC35a, see chapter 4. page 13 | 5.0-30: 50-10 heavy | $\left\lvert\, \begin{gathered} 3.0-30: \\ 50-10 \\ \text { normal/light } \end{gathered}\right.$ | 5.0-30: 50.10 heavy | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 3.0-30: \\ 50-10 \\ \text { normal/IIght } \end{array}$ | 5.0.30: $50-10$ <br> heavy | $\begin{array}{\|c} 3.0-30: \\ 50-10 \\ \text { normal/light } \end{array}$ | 5.0.30: 50-10 heavy | $\begin{gathered} 3.0-30: \\ 50-10 \\ \text { normal/IIght } \end{gathered}$ | 5.0-30: 50-10 heavy | $\begin{gathered} 3.0-30: \\ 50-10 \\ \text { normal/light } \end{gathered}$ |
| Rated current of soft starter (A) | 170 | 210 | 210 | 250 | 250 | 262 | 310 | 370 | 370 | 450 |
| Recommended motor size (kW) for 400 V | 90 | 110 | 110 | 132 | 132 | 160* | 160 | 200 | 200 | 250 |
| Recommended motor size (kW) for 525 V | 110 | 132 | 132 | 160 | 160 | 200* | 200 | 250 | 250 | 315 |
| Order no. for supply voltage (100-240V) | 01-1 | 309-11 |  | 310-11 | 01-1 | 311-11 | 01.1 | 312-01 | 01-1 | 1313-01 |
| Order no. for supply voltage (380-550V) |  | 309-12 |  | 310-12 |  | 311-12 | 01-1 | 312-02 | 01-1 | 1313-02 |
| 3x200-690 V 50/60 Hz Model |  | 170 |  | -210 |  | -250 |  | -310 |  | F-370 |
| Rated current of soft starter (A) | 170 | 210 | 210 | 250 | 250 | 262 | 310 | 370 | 370 | 450 |
| Motor power for 690 V | 160 | 200 | 200 | 250 | 250 | 250 | 315 | 355 | 355 | 400 |
| Order no. for supply voltage (100-240V) |  | 329-01 |  | 330-01 |  | 331-01 |  | 332-01 | 01.1 | 1333-01 |
| Order no. for supply voltage ( $380-550 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1 | 329-02 |  | 330-02 | 01-1 | 331-02 | 01. | 332-02 | 01-1 | 1333-02 |
| Electrical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recommended wiring fuse (A) 1) | 200/400 | 200 | 250/400 | 315 | 250/500 | 315 | 315/630 | 400 | 400/800 | 500 |
| Semi-conductor fuses, if required |  | 00 A |  | 00 A |  | 00 A |  | 00 A |  | 00 A |
| Power loss at rated motor load (W) | 510 | 630 | 630 | 750 |  | 50 W | 930 | 1100 | 1100 | 1535 |
| Power consumption control card |  | 5 VA |  | 5 VA |  | 35 VA |  | 5 VA |  | 35 VA |
| Mechanical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dimensions mm HxWxD incl. brackets | 500x | $260 \times 260$ |  | $260 \times 260$ |  | $260 \times 260$ | 532 | 547×278 | 532 x | $547 \times 278$ |
| Mounting position (Vertical/Horizont al) | Vert. | or Horiz. | Vert. | or Moriz. | Vert. | or Horiz. | vert. | or Horiz. | Vert. | or Horiz. |
| Weight (kg) |  | 20 |  | 20 |  | 20 |  | 42 |  | 46 |
| Connection, Busbars Al/ Cu (bolt) |  | (M10) |  | M10) |  | (M10) |  | (M12) | $40 \times 8$ | (M12) |
| Cooling system |  | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |
| General Electrical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Number of fully controlled phases | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage tolerance control | Control $+/-10 \%$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage tolerance motor | Motor 200-525 +/-10\%/200-690 + 5\%, -10\% |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recommended fuse for control card (A) | Max 10 A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Frequency | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Frequency tolerance | +/.10\% |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Relay contacts | 8A, 250 V resistive load, $3 \mathrm{~A}, 250 \mathrm{~V}$ inductive load ( $\mathrm{PF}=0.4$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Type of protection/insulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Type of casing protection | IP 20 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Other General Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Ambient temperatures In operation | $0.40{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max. e.g. at $80 \% \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{N}}$ | $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| In storage | $(-25)-(+70)^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Relative air humidity | 95\%, non-condensing |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max. altitude without derating | (See separate: Technical information 151) 1000 m |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Norms/Standards, Conform to: | IEC 947-4-2, EN 292, EN 60204-1, (UL508, only MSF-170 to MSF-250) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EMC, Emission | EN 50081-2, (EN 50081-1 with bypass contactor) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EMC, Immunity | EN 50082-2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1) Recommended wiring fuses for: | Heavy (first column) : ramp/direct start Normai/Light (second column): ramp start |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| NOTE! Short circult withstand MSF170-250 18000 rms A when used with K5 or RK5 luses. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

[^9]| 3x200-525V 50/60Hz Model | MSF-450 |  | MSF-570 |  | MSF-710 |  | MSF-835 |  | MSF-1000 |  | MSF-1400 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Soft starter rating according to AC35a, see chapter 4. page 13 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 5.0.30: } \\ & \text { 50-10: } \\ & \text { heavy } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3.0-30: } \\ 50-10 \\ \text { nommal/ } \\ \text { light } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 5.0.30: } \\ & \text { 50.10: } \\ & \text { heavy } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 3.0-30: } \\ & \text { 50.10 } \\ & \text { nommal/ } \\ & \text { Hght } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 5.0-30: } \\ & 50-10 \\ & \text { heavy } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3.0.30: } \\ 50.10 \\ \text { nommal/ } \\ \text { light } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 5.0.30: } \\ & \text { 50.10: } \\ & \text { heavy } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3.0-30: } \\ \text { 50-10 } \\ \text { normal/ } \\ \text { light } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 5.0-30: } \\ & \text { 50.10 } \\ & \text { heavy } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} 3.0-30: \\ 50.10 \\ \text { nomal/ } \\ \text { light } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 5.0-30: } \\ & 50-10 \\ & \text { heavy } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 3.0-30: } \\ 50-10 \\ \text { normal/ } \\ \text { light } \end{gathered}$ |
| Rated current of soft starter (A) | 450 | 549 | 570 | 710 | 710 | 835 | 835 | 960 | 1000 | 1125 | 1400 | 1650 |
| Recommended motor size (kW) for 400 V | 250 | 315 | 315 | 400 | 400 | 450 | 450 | 560 | 560 | 630 | 800 | 930 |
| Recommended motor size (kW) for 525 - | 315 | 400 | 400 | 500 | 500 | 560 | 600 | 630 | 660 | 710 | 1000 | 250 |
| Order no. for supply voltage ( 100.240 V ) | 01.1341-01 |  | 01-1315-01 |  | 01-1316-01 |  | 01-1317-01 |  | 01-1318-01 |  | 01-1319-01 |  |
| Order no. for supply volt age ( $380-550 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1314-02 |  | 01-1315-02 |  | 01.1316-02 |  | 01-1317-02 |  | 01-1318-02 |  | 01-131902 |  |
| $3 \times 200-690 \mathrm{~V} 50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ Model | MSF-450 |  | MSF570 |  | MSF-710 |  | MSF-835 |  | MSF-1000 |  | MSF-1400 |  |
| Rated current of soft starter ( A ) | 450 | 549 | 570 | 640 | 710 | 835 | 835 | 880 | 1000 | 1125 | 1400 | 1524 |
| Motor power for 690 V | 400 | 560 | 560 | 630 | 710 | 800 | 800 |  | 1000 | 1120 | 1400 | 1600 |
| Order no. for supply voltage ( $100-240 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01.1334 .01 |  | 01.1335-01 |  | 01-1336-01 |  | 01-1337-01 |  | 01.1338-01 |  | 01-1339-01 |  |
| Order no. for supply voltage ( $380-550 \mathrm{~V}$ ) | 01-1334-02 |  | 01.1335-02 |  | 01-1336-02 |  | 01-1337-02 |  | 01-1338-02 |  | 01-1339-02 |  |
| Electrical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recommended wiring fuse (A 1) | 500/1 k | 630 | 630/1 k | 800 | 800/1 k | 1 k | $1 \mathrm{k} / 1.2 \mathrm{k}$ | 1 k | 1k/1.4 k | 1.2 k | $1.4 \mathrm{k} / 1.8$ | 1.8 k |
| Semi-conductor fuses, if required | $1250 \mathrm{~A}$ |  | 1250 A |  | 1800 A |  | 2500 A |  | 3200 A |  | 4000 A |  |
| Power loss at rated motor load (W) | 1400 | 1730 | 1700 | 2100 | 2100 | 2500 | 2500 | 2875 | 3000 | 3375 | 4200 | 4950 |
| Power consumption control card | 35 VA |  | 35 VA |  | 35 VA |  | 35 VA |  | 35 VA |  | 35 VA |  |
| Mechankal Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dimensions mm $\mathrm{H} \times \mathrm{W} \times \mathrm{D}$ incl. brackets | $532 \times 547 \times 278$ |  | $687 \times 640 \times 302$ |  | $687 \times 640 \times 302$ |  | $687 \times 640 \times 302$ |  | 900×875*336 |  | 900×875×336 |  |
| Mounting position (Vertical/Horizontal) | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  | Vert. or Horiz. |  |
| Weight (kg) | 46 |  | 64 |  | 78 |  | 80 |  | 175 |  | 175 |  |
| Connection, Busbars Al (bolt) | 40x8(M12) |  | 40×10(M12) |  | 40×10(M12) |  | 40×10 (M12) |  | 75×10(M12) |  | 75×10(M12) |  |
| Cooling system | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |  | Fan |  |
| General Electrical Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Number of fully controlled phases | 3 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage tolerance control | Control +/-10\% |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voltage tolerance motor | Motor $200-525+/-10 \% / 200-690+5 \% .-10 \%$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Recommended fuse for control card (A) | Max 10 A |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Frequency | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Frequency tolerance | +/-10\% |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Relay contacts | $8 \mathrm{~A}, 250 \mathrm{~V}$ resistive load, $3 \mathrm{~A}, 250 \mathrm{~V}$ inductive load ( $\mathrm{PF}=0.4$ ) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Type of protection/insulation |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Type of casing protection | 1P 20 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 1P00 |  |  |  |
| Other General Data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Ambient temperatures in operation | 0. $40{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max.e.g. at $80 \% /_{N}$ | $50^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| In storage | $(-25) \cdot(+70){ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Relative air humidity | 95\%, non-condensing |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max. altitude without derating | (See separate: Technical information 151) 1000 m |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Norms/Standards, Conform to: | IEC 947-4-2, EN 292, EN 60204-1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EMC, Emission | EN 50081-2, (EN 50081-1 with bypass contactor) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| EMC. Immunity | EN 50082-2 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1) Recommended wiring fuses for: | Heavy (first column): ramp/direct start Normal/Light (second column): ramp start |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## Semi-conductor fuses

Always use standard commercial fuses to protect the wiring and prevent short circuiting. To protect the thyristors against short-circuit currents, superfast semiconductor fuses can be used if preferred (e.g. Bussmann type FWP or similar, see table below).

The normal guarantee is valid even if superfast semiconductor fuses are not used.

| Type | A | FWP Bussmann fuse |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MSF-017 | 80 | 2.4 |
| MSF-030 | 125 | 7.3 |
| MSF-045 (fuse) $\times \mathbf{1 0 0 0}$ |  |  |
| MSF-060 | 150 | 11.7 |
| MSF-075 | 200 | 22 |
| MSF-085 | 250 | 42.5 |
| MSF-110 | 300 | 71.2 |
| MSF-145 | 350 | 95.6 |
| MSF-170B | 450 | 137 |
| MSF-210B | 700 | 300 |
| MSF-250B | 700 | 300 |
| MSF-310 | 800 | 450 |
| MSF-370 | 800 | 450 |
| MSF-450 | 1000 | 600 |
| MSF-570 | 1200 | 2100 |
| MSF-710 | 1400 | 2700 |
| MSF-835 | 1800 | 5300 |
| MSF-1000 | 2000 |  |
| MSF-1400 | 2500 |  |

## 13. SET-UP MENU LIST

| Menu number | Function/Parameter | Range | Par.set | Factory setting | Value | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 001 | Initial voltage at start | 25-90\% of U | 1-4 | 30 |  | page 36 |
| 002 | Start time ramp 1 | 1.60 sec | 1-4 | 10 |  | page 36 |
| 003 | Step down voltage at stop | 100.40\% U | 1-4 | 100 |  | page 36 |
| 004 | Stop time ramp 1 | oFF, 2-120 sec | 1.4 | oFF |  | page 36 |
| 005 | Current | $0.0 \cdot 9999$ Amp | -- | - |  | page 36 |
| 006 | Control mode | 1, 2, 3 | 1 - 4 | 2 |  | page 37 |
| 007 | Extended functions \& metering | oFF, on | - | oFF |  | page 38 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 008 | Extended functions | oFF, on | - - | OFF |  | page 38 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 011 | Initial voltage start ramp 2 | 30-90\% U | 1-4 | 90 |  | page 38 |
| 012 | Start time ramp 2 | oFF, 1.60 sec | 1.4 | oFF |  | page 38 |
| 013 | Step down voltage stop ramp 2 | 100-40\% U | 1-4 | 40 |  | page 38 |
| 014 | Stop time ramp 2 | oFF, $2 \cdot 120 \mathrm{sec}$ | 1-4 | oFF |  | page 38 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 016 | Initial torque at start | 0-250\% Tn | 1-4 | 10 |  | page 39 |
| 017 | End torque at start | 50-250\% Tn | 1.4 | 150 |  | page 39 |
| 018 | End torque at stop | 0-100\% Tn | 1-4 | 0 |  | page 39 |
| 020 | Voltage ramp with current limit at start | oFF, $150-500 \% \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}$ | 1-4 | OFF |  | page 39 |
| 021 | Current limit at start | oFF, $150 \cdot 500 \% \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{n}}$ | 1-4 | oFF |  | page 40 |
| 022 | Pump control | oFF, on | 1-4 | oFF |  | page 40 |
| 023 | Remote analogue control | oFF, 1, 2 | 1-4 | oFF |  | page 41 |
| 024 | Full voltage start D.O.L | oFF, on | 1-4 | OFF |  | page 41 |
| 025 | Torque control | oFF, 1, 2 | 1.4 | oFF |  | page 42 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 030 | Torque boost active time | oFF, $0.1-2.0 \mathrm{sec}$ | 1-4 | oFF |  | page 43 |
| 031 | Torque boost current limit | 300.700\% $\mathrm{I}_{n}$ | 1-4 | 300 |  | page 43 |
| 032 | Bypass | oFF, on | 1-4 | oFF |  | page 43 |
| 033 | Power Factor Control PFC | oFF, on | 1-4 | OFF |  | page 46 |
| 034 | Brake active time | oFF, 1-120 sec | 1-4 | oFF |  | page 47 |
| 035 | Braking strength | 100-500\% | 1-4 | 100 |  | page 47 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 036 | Braking methods | 1, 2 | 1-4 | 1 |  | page 47 |
| 037 | Slow speed torque | 10-100 | 1.4 | 10 |  | page 49 |
| 038 | Slow speed time at start | oFF, 1-60 sec | 1.4 | oFF |  | page 49 |
| 039 | Slow speed time at stop | oFF, 1-60 sec | 1-4 | oFF |  | page 49 |
| 040 | DC-Brake at slow speed | oFF, 1-60 sec | 1.4 | oFF |  | page 49 |
|  | . |  |  |  |  |  |
| 041 | Nominal motor voltage | 200-700V | 1.4 | 400 |  | page 50 |
| 042 | Nominal motor current | $\begin{gathered} 25-150 \% I_{\text {nsoft }} \text { in } \\ \text { Amp } \end{gathered}$ | 1.4 | $I_{\text {nsoft }}$ in Amp |  | page 50 |
| 043 | Nominal motor power | $\begin{gathered} 25-300 \% \text { of } P_{\text {nsoft }} \text { in } \\ \mathrm{kW} \end{gathered}$ | 1-4 | $P_{\text {nsoft }}$ in kW |  | page 50 |
| 044 | Nominal speed | 500-3600 rpm | 1.4 | $\mathrm{N}_{\text {nsoft }}$ in rem |  | page 50 |
| 045 | Nominal power factor | 0.50-1.00 | 1.4 | 0.86 |  | page 50 |
| 046 | Nominal frequency | $50,60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | - | 50 |  | page 50 |



| Menu number | Function/Parameter | Range | Par.set | Factory setting | Value | Page |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 113 | Serial comm. parity | 0,1 | - | 0 |  | page 62 |
| 114 | Serial comm. contact broken | oFF, 1, 2 | - | 1 |  | page 62 |
| 199 | Reset to factory settings | no, YES | - | no |  | page 63 |
| 201 | Current | 0.0.9999 Amp | - | - |  | page 63 |
| 202 | Line main voltage | 0-720 V | -- | -- |  | page 63 |
| 203 | Output shaft power | -9999.9999 kW | - | -- |  | page 63 |
| 204 | Power factor | 0.00-1.00 | - | - |  | page 63 |
| 205 | Power consumption | 0.000-2000 MWh | - | - |  | page 63 |
| 206 | Reset power consumption | no, YES | - | no |  | page 64 |
| 207 | Shaft torque | -9999.9999 Nm | - | - |  | page 64 |
| 208 | Operation time | Hours | - | - |  | page 64 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 211 | Current phase L1 | 0.0-9999 Amp | - | - |  | page 64 |
| 212 | Current phase L2 | 0.0 - 9999 Amp | - | - |  | page 64 |
| 213 | Current phase L3 | 0.0-9999 Amp | - | - |  | page 64 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 214 | Line main voltage L1-L2 | 0.720 V | - | - |  | page 64 |
| 215 | Line main voltage L1-L3 | 0.720 V | - | - |  | page 64 |
| 216 | Line main voltage L2-L3 | 0.720 V | - | $\square$ |  | page 64 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 221 | Locked keyboard info | no, YES | - | no |  | page 65 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 901 | Alarm list, Latest error | F1-F16 | -- | - |  | page 65 |
| 902-915 | Alarm list, Older error in chronological order | F1-F16 | -- | $\square$ |  | page 65 |

Explanation of units:
U Input line voltage
Un Nominal motor voltage.
In Nominal motor current.
Pn Nominal motor power.
$\mathrm{Nn} \quad$ Nominal motor speed.
Tn Nominal shaft torque.
Insoft Nominal current soft starter.
Pnsoft Nominal power soft starter.
Nnsoft Nominal speed soft starter.
Calculation shaft torque

$$
T_{n}=\frac{P_{n}}{\left(\frac{N_{n}}{60} \times 2 \pi\right)}
$$

NOTE! The slx main functions for motor control, menus 020-025, can only be selected one at a time.

## 14. INDEX

Numerics
2-wire start/stop ..... 37
3-wire start/stop ..... 37
A
Above max power limit ..... 67
Alarm category ..... 67
Alarm list ..... 65
Alarm reset ..... 23
Ambient temperatures. $10,20,74,75$,77
analogue contro ..... 32 ..... 32, 41
Analogue input
Analogue input
Analogue output ..... 32, 52
Analogue output gain ..... 52
Analogue output value ..... 52
Auto set power limits ..... 57
automatic reset ..... 37
Automatic return menu ..... 62
B
Basic parameter setting ................... 10
Below min power limit ..... 67
Brake method ..... 47
Braking Strenght ..... 47
Braking time ..... 46
Busbars ..... 25, 26
Bypass ..... 43
Bypass contactor ..... 44
c
Cabinet ..... 24
Checklist ..... 10
Clickson thermistor ..... 32
Combination matrix ..... 19
Complaint .....  7 H
Connections ..... 28, 32
Control mode ..... 23, 37
Control voltage ..... 32
control voltage ..... 33
Control voltage connection ..... 28, 31
Cooling fins ..... 24
cos phi ..... 50
Current ..... 63
Current in phase L1 ..... 64
Current in phase L2 ..... 64
Current in phase L3 ..... 64
Current limit ..... 39
Current limit time-out ..... 61
Current transformer ..... 45
D
D.O.L start ..... 41
DC-brake ..... 46
DC-Brake at slow speed ..... 49
Decrease value ..... 23
Decrease value of setting ..... 23
Confirm setting ..... 23

| Device connections ................. 28, 31 | Keyboard lock ......................... 23, 65 |
| :---: | :---: |
| different operation situation .......... 22 | keys ......................................... 23 |
| Digital inputs ............................. 32 |  |
| Dimension ........................... 25, 74 | L |
| DIN VDE 0100 .......................... 24 | LED display .............................. 22 |
| Direct On Line start ..................... 41 | Live circuit components ............... 24 |
| Dismantling ................................ 2 | Load monitor ............................. 57 |
| Display next window ................... 23 | Locked rotor .............................. 67 |
| Display previous window .............. 23 | Low load .................................. 20 |
| Dual voltage ramp ....................... 38 |  |
|  | M |
| E | Main functions ........................... 81 |
| Electrical characteristic ................. 32 | Mains contactor .......................... 10 |
| Electrical Data ............. 74, 75, 76, 77 | Mains supply ......................... 28, 31 |
| EMC ........................ 74, 75, 76, 77 | Mains voltage ............................ 10 |
| Emergency ................................. 2 | MAINTENANCE ..................... 71 |
| End torque ................................ 39 | Matrix ..................................... 19 |
|  | Max power alarm limit ................ 58 |
| F | Max power pre-alarm limit ........... 58 |
| Factory setrings ........................... 63 | Max pre-alarm response delay ....... 58 |
| Features ..................................... 9 | Mechanical Data ..........74, 75, 76, 77 |
| Forward/reverse ......................... 34 | Menu |
| Free circulation of air ................... 24 | 001 ................................... 36 |
| frequency .................................. 50 | 002 .............................. 11, 36 |
| Frequency inverter ...................... 20 | 003 ................................... 36 |
| Front cover ................................ 21 | 004 .............................. 11, 36 |
| Full speed not reached ................. 67 | 005 .............................. 12, 36 |
| Full voltage ............................... 51 | 006 .............................. 12, 37 |
| Full voltage start .......................... 41 | 007 .................................... 38 |
| Function ................................... 79 | 008 ................................... 38 |
|  | 011 ................................... 38 |
| G | 012 ................................... 38 |
| General Data .............................. 74 | 013 ................................... 38 |
| General description ..................... 21 | 014 ................................... 38 |
|  | 016 ................................... 39 |
| H | 017 ................................... 39 |
| Heat dissipation .......................... 20 | 020 ................................... 39 |
| High ambient temperatures ........... 43 | 021 .................................. 40 |
|  | 022 .................................... 40 |
| 1 | 023 .................................... 41 |
| Increase value ............................ 23 | 024 .................................. 41 |
| Increase value of setting ......................... 23 | 025 ................................... 42 |
| Initial torque ................................ 39 | 030 ................................... 43 |
| Initial voltage at start ramp $1 \ldots . . . . . .36$ | 031 |
| Initial voltage at start ramp 2 ......... 38 | 032 .................................. 43 |
| INSPECTION AT DELIVERY .... 7 | 034 ................................... 46 |
| Installation ................................ 24 | 034 ................................... 46 |
| Insulation test ............................. 20 | 035 ................................................ 47 |
|  | 037 ................................... 48 |
|  | 038 ................................... 49 |
| JOG Forward ........................ 23, 61 | 039 ................................... 49 |
| JOG fivd/rev .............................. 23 | 040 ................................... 49 |
| JOG Reverse ........................ 23, 61 | 041 .............................. 11, 50 |
| Jumper J1 ................................. 41 | 042 .................................... 50 |
| Jumper J2 ................................. 52 | 043 .............................. 11, 50 |
|  | 044 .............................. 11, 50 |
| K | 045 .............................. 11, 50 |
| Keyboard ................................... 23 | 046 .............................. 11, 50 |


| 051 ................................... 51 | Motor current ............................. 50 | Q |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 052 .................................... 51 | Motor data ................................ 50 | Quick Set-up ............................. 10 |
| 054 .................................... 52 | Motor power ............................. 50 |  |
| 055 .................................... 52 | Motor power supply ............... 28, 31 | R |
| 056 .................................... 52 | Motor protection, overload ...... 55, 67 | Rating plate ............................... 10 |
| 057 ................................... 53 | Motor shaft torque ....................... 64 | Recyclable material |
| 058 ................................... 53 | Motor speed .............................. 50 | Regular maintenance ................... 71 |
| 061 .................................... 54 | Motor terninal open ................... 67 | Relay K1 .................................... 32, 51 |
| 071 ................................... 55 | Motor voltage ............................. 50 | Relay K2 .......................................... 32 |
| 072 ................................... 55 | MOUNTING ........................... 24 | Relay K3 .................................. 32 |
| 073 ................................... 56 | MOUNTING/WIRING ............. 24 | Remote .................................... 23 |
| 074 ................................... 56 |  | Reset ...................................... 23 |
| 075 .................................... 56 | $N$ | reset ......................................... 66 |
| 081 ..................................... 56 | Next ........................................ 23 | Response delay max alarm ............ 58 |
| 082 ................................. 56 | Nominal frequency ..................... 11 | RMS current ........................ 36, 63 |
| 083 .................................... 56 | Nominal motor cos phi ................ 11 | RMS main voltage ...................... 63 |
| 084 ................................... 56 | Nominal motor current ............... 11 | Rotating loads ........................... 20 |
| 085 ................................... 57 | Nominal motor power ................. 11 | Running motors ......................... 20 |
| 086 ................................... 57 | Nominal motor speed .................. 11 | Running-LED ............................ 22 |
| 087 .................................... 57 | Nomms/Standards ........ 74, 75, 76, 77 |  |
| 088 .................................... 57 | NTC thennistor ......................... 32 | S |
| 089 .................................... 57 |  |  |
| 090 .................................... 57 | 0 | Safety measures ............................... 2 . 10 |
| 091 .................................. 58 | Open thyristor ........................... 67 | Scrapping ................................... 2 |
| 092 ................................... 58 | Operation ................................. 51 | Selection of control mode ............. 12 |
| 093 ........................................ 58 | Operation time ...................... 63, 64 | Seniconductor fuses ............... 33, 78 |
| 094 ....................................................... 58 | Operation/Set-up ....................... 23 | Serial comm. .............................. 23 |
| 096 ............................................... 58 | Operator panel ............................. 21 | Serial conmmunication broken ........ 67 |
| 097 ................................................ 59 | Output motor shaftpower ............. 63 | Shaftpower ........................... 57, 63 |
| 098 .................................... 59 | Output shaftpower ................. 57, 63 | Shielded motor cable .................... 20 |
| 099 .................................... 59 | Over voltage ......................... 56, 67 | Shored thyristor ........................ 67 |
| 101 ..................................................... | P | Simple soft start and soft stop ........ 10 |
| 102 .................................... 61 |  | Slip ring motors ......................... 20 |
| 103 .................................... 61 | Parallel .................................... 20 | Slow blow fuses .......................... 33 |
| 104 ................................... 61 | Parallel cables ............................. 73 | Slow speed time at start ................. 49 |
| 105 .............................................. 62 | Parameter ................................ 79 | Slow speed time at stop ................ 49 |
| 199 .................................... 63 | Parameter Set ......................... 32, 54 | Slow speed torque ...................... 48 |
| 201 ........................................... 63 | PFC ........................................ 46 | Snaall motor ............................... 20 |
| 202 .................................................. 63 | Phase compensation capacitor ....... 20 | Softbrake ................................. 51 |
| 203 ................................... 63 | Phase input failure ....................... 67 | Softstart overheated ...................... 67 |
| 204 ............................................... 63 | Phase loss ................................... 61 | Spare pars .................................. 2 |
| 205 .............................................. 63 | Phase reversal alarm .................... 67 | standard commercial fuses ............. 78 |
| 205 ..................................................... 63 | Phase sequence ........................... 57 | Standard witing ..................... 10, 33 |
| 207 .................................................... 64 | Pole-changing contactor ............... 20 | Standards ................................... 6 |
| 208 ................................................. 64 | Potentiometer ............................. 32 | Start command ........................... 22 |
| 211 ............................................... 64 | Power consumption .................... 63 | Start delay power limits ................ 58 |
| 212 .................................................... 64 | Power factor .............................. 63 | Start ramp 1 .............................. 36 |
| 213 .................................................. 64 | Power Factor Control ................... 46 | Start ramp 2 ............................... 38 |
| 214 ...................................................... | Power loss ................................ 10 | Start the motor .......................... 12 |
| 215 ................................... 64 | PPU unit .................................. 21 | Start time ramp $1 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . ~ 11 ~$ |
| 216 ............................................... 64 | Pre-alam ............................. 51, 58 | Start/Stop ............................. 12, 23 |
| 221 ............................................... 23,65 | Prevent damage to the thyristors .... 24 | Start/stop combination ................ 19 |
| $901 \text {........................................... } 65$ | Previous .................................... 23 | Start/stop/reset fronz keyboard ...... 12 |
| RMS current read-out ........... 12 | Programmable relay ..................... 51 | Start/stop-LED .......................... 22 |
| Menu expansion .......................... 38 | Programming and presentation unit (PPU) | Starting ......................................... 12 STARTING/OPERATING ...... 79 |
| Menu Structure .......................... 22 | protection/insulation ... 74, 75, 76, 77 | Sarts per hour $\qquad$ 67 |
| Min alamı response delay ............. 59 | Protective earth .................. 28, 31 | Starts per hour limitation ...................... 56 |
| Min power alanm limit ................. 59 | PTC ........................................... 55 | Step down voltage in stop ramp 2 .. 38 |
| Min power pre-alams limit ........... 59 | PTC Thermistor input ..................................... | Step down voltage stop ramp 1 ..... 36 |
| Min pre-alarm response delay ........ 59 | Pump control .................................. 40 | Stop command ........................... 22 |
| Minimum tree space ................ 24, 25 |  | Stop ramp 1 ............................... 36 |

Motor current ................................ 50

Motor power 50
Motor power supply ................ 28, 31 R

Motor shaft torque ......................... 64
Motor speed ................................. 50
Motor voltage ................................ 50
MOUNTING .............................. 24
Remote ........................................ 23
Reset .............................................. 23
reset ............................................... 66
Response delay max alarm ............. 58
RMS current ........................... 36, 63
RMS main voltage ........................ 63
Rotaing loads ............................... 20
Running motors ............................ 20
Running-LED ............................... 22
s
Safery measures .............................. 10
Scrapping ......................................... 2
Selection of control mode
Seniconductor fuses ................. 33, 78
.i. bok 6
Shaftpower .............................. 57, 63
Shielded motor cable ..................... 20
Shored thyristor ............................ 67
Simple soft start and soft stop ......... 10
Slip ring motors ............................. 20
Slow blow fuses ............................. 33
Slow speed time at start .................. 49
w speed time at stop
mall motor ................................... 20
Softbrake ....................................... 51
fittart overheated
Spare
Standard wiring ...................... 10, 33
............... 6
Start con ind $-\cdots$

Start ramp 1 w
Start ramp 2 ................................... 38
Start the motor ............................. 12
Start time ramp 1 ........................... 11
Start/Stop ............................... 12, 23
Start/stop combination .................. 19
Start/stop/reset fronz keyboard ...... 12
Start/stop-LED .............................. 22
Staring ......................... 12
STARTING/OPERATING ......... 79
Starts per hour ................................ 67
Step down voltage in stop ramp 2 .. 38
Stp 1 22
Stop галир 1 ................................... 36
Stop ramp time 2 ..... 38
Stop time ramp 1 ..... 11
storage .....  7
Supply voltage ..... 32, 74
switch .....  2
Switch the device off .....  2
Switch-off procedures ..... 2
T
TECHNICAL DATA ..... 74
Terminal ..... 32
Terminal clamp ..... 78
Terminals ..... 32
Thermal capacity ..... 56
Thermal protection ..... 55
Tightening torque ..... 25
Torque boost active time ..... 43
Torque boost current limit ..... 43
Torque booster ..... 43
Torque control ..... 42
Trained personnel ..... 2, 10
Transport ..... 7
TROUBLESHOOTING ..... 68
Two speed motor ..... 20
U
Under voltage ..... 57, 67
Unpacking ..... 7
$v$
VIEW OPERATION ..... 63
Voltage ..... 63
Voltage unbalance ..... 56, 67
W
Weight ..... 74
Wiring circuit ..... 33
Wiring example ..... 34

REPRESENTATION

ADL Co.
P.O. Box 47

125040 MOSCOW
Russia
Tel. 00007-095268 7423
Fax 00007. 0952680348
rouslan@adlserv.aha.ru

AUTOMATECH Sp.zo.0
ul. Ry zowa 84
PL-02482 OPACZ-KOLONIA
Poland
Tel. 0048-22-723 0662
Fax 0048-22-7230606
b.kolodziejczyk@automatech.it.pl

Elimko
8. Cadde 68. Sokak Nr. 16

06510 Emek-ANKARA
Turkey
Tel. 0090-312 2126450
Fax 0090-312 2124143
Elpro Drive, S. R. O.
ul. Miru 3
CZ 73961 TRINEC
Tjeckien Republic
Tel. 00420W 659434661
Fax 00420W 659325864
agorgol@elprocz.cz
Emotron AB
Box 22225
SE-250 24 HELSINGBORG
Sweden
Tel. +4642169900
Fax +46 42169949
Info@emotron.com

Emotron Antrlebssysteme GmbH
Goethestrasse 6
38855 WERNIGERODE

## Germany

Tel. 0049-394392050
Fax 0049-394392055
Info@emotron-as.de
Emotron B.V.
P.O. Box 132

5531 NX BLADEL

## Holland

Tel. 0031-497389222
Fax 0031-497386275
info@emotron.nl
Emotron Drives (UK) Ltd
Spaces Business Centre Radway Green Park
Alsager
Cheshire
CW2 5PR
Great Britain
Tel. 0044-1270 879440
Fax 0044-1270 886119
trevor@emotron.freeserve.co.uk

Emotron EI-FI SA
Aribau 229
ES-08021 BARCELONA
Spaln
Tel. 0034-93 2091499
Fax 0034-93 2091245
emotron@emotron.es

Emotron Inc
3440 Granite Circle
TOLEDO, OH 43617
USA
Tel. 001- (419) 841-7774
Fax 001 - (419) 843-5816
paul.hackett@usa-motron.com
Emsby
27 Rodwell Street
QUE - 4108 ARCHERFIELD
Australia
Tel. 0061-7 32742566
Fax 0061. 732742387
dkirkegaard@emsby.com
Esquire Engineering sdn bhd 13. JIn Jurutera U1/23, Seksyen U1 Hicom-Glenmarie Industrial Park 40000 Shah Alam SELANGOR Malaysia
Tel. 0060-35191958
Fax 0060-35191960
barry_h@tm.net.my
HEDTEC OY
P.O.B 110

SF-00201 HELSINGFORS
Finland
Tel. 00358-9682881
Fax 00358-9674918
kaj.nyberg@hedengren.fi
Ingeniör lvar Pettersen ASPostboks
166
N-3001 DRAMMEN
Norway
Tel. 0047-32 212121
Fax 0047-32 212199
lars.hennum@pettersen.no
K.K. EI-F

2-18-4 Hagoromocho
1900021 Tachakawa
J- TOKYO
Japan
Tel. 0081. 425288820
Fax 0081-42528 8821
sato.hiroyukl@el-fi.co.jp

MAS for Eng. \& Trad
From Tahreer St
12, a-Abee Ema"maSt.
DOKKI GIZA
Egypt
Tel. 0020-23357947
Fax 0020-23357948

Mohamad Eid Kari
Marjeh -square,
Euphorat st. Dagestani
BId. 1st. FI. POB 31203
DAMASKUS
Syria
Tel. 00963-11 2223867
Fax 00963-11 2245425

Pardis International
Golbarg W. Kerman
S. Rahmati E. No. 202

TEHERAN
Iran
Tel. 0098-217838571
Fax 0098-217838571
mehraban@ittp.com
Saftronics (PTY) LTD
27 Heronmere Road
POBox 38045
2016 BOOYSENS
South Africa
Tel. 0027-11 4341345
Fax 0027-114341359
rann@pixie.co.za
TENSON Engineering Ltd
Room 908, Nan Fung Commercial
Center
19 LAM LOK St
KOWLOON BAY
Hong Kong
Tel. +852 27580878
Fax +852 27595335
sammy@tenson.com.hk
WELLFORD CHILE S.A.
ENCALA 103645
Madrid No 1602 - Santiago
SANTIAGO
Chile
Tel. 0056-2 5562655
Fax 0056-2556 3528
encala@hotmail.com

Voltampere s.a.
2nd kim Lag ada-Redina
GR-57200 THESSALONIKI
Greece
Tel. 0030-394 26188
Fax 0030-394 26189
automation@voltampere.gr
www.emotron.com


Halmac Services (Qld) Pty. Ltd. ACN 098852923 A.B.N. 40741712113

## SOCKET OUTLET AND INLET PLUG

1. MARECHAL DS RANGE DECONTACTOR
TECHNICAL DETAILS
2. MARECHAL PLUGS AND SOCKET-OUTLETS TECHNICAL DETAILS


Advantages
Core range
DSI-30A
$053 \cdot 50 \mathrm{~A}$
056-pOA
DS9-150A
052 - 250A
Dimensions

## Mechanical features

O Automatic IP54/55 watertightness. 150A and 250A models available al5o in IP66/67
O Casings made of glass fibre reinforced polyester ( 30 to 150 A ) providing excellent electric insulation, high resistance to corrosive, UV and chemical ageent environments and high mëchanical resistance (KKosimpact resistancè).
Q Casings made of anti-corrosion treated metal ( 90 to 250 A ) pröviding high temperature resistance and excellent mechanical ressistance (iKoo, impact resistance)
O Amblent temperature: $-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ (for tempenatures outside th/s range, please contact us)
O Spring-assisted terminals unaffected by vibrations and thermal cycling:
O Self-opening lid ; self-retuming: lid on request

## Regulatory features

DS decontactors comply with:
 (plugs and socket-autlets for industrial purposes);
O The European Low Voltage Directive (decree N ${ }^{\circ} 95-108 \mathrm{~B}$ dated; $3^{\text {r }}$ October 1995),
0 The French decree is $89-1056$ dated $14^{\text {th }}$ November 1988 relating,to workers' protection;

- The decrees relating to workers' protection in Belgium, Spain and Italy:

0 The load breaking capacity according to utilisation categories Aca? and ACas of IEC / EN 60gAT' (switch standard).
Also certified by VERTAS LCIE, UL, AS and CSN (Freinch; Americañ; Australian and Canadian inspection laboratories).

STANDARDS
AUSTRALA


1P 54/55 Plug and socket-outlet with integral switching device (AC22, AC23 utilisation categories occording to IEC/EN 60947.3 stondard), sofety shutter ( $1 P_{4} X$ 5ocket-outlet), silver-nickel butt-contacts with metalic broid. Praduct technical data sheet on e-cotalogue
www.marechal-electric.com

## Outickly find

The right hems


## Marechal's

 modular
## system

DSN decontactors meet the modularity system described on the Bookmark. Before consulting the 'part number' pages, determine the parts required for the needed configuration.


Example : a wall mounting socket-outlet includes an active part, the socket-outlet (female) and an installation accessory,
(B)

the wall box. Each part has its own part number.
Therefore, the order should have two part numbers.

## DS part number system

- Standard DS part numbers are made up of 7 characters. All part numbers start with a ' 3 '.
- The choice of an option or a version with auxiliary contacts results in adding a suffix (of 1 to 3 characters).

** 24 different power supplies (voltage, frequency) and 12 polarities are available: see international standard and colour-code on page 8


## Check that the DS part number meets the need ...

Example : the need is for a $30 \mathrm{~A}, 400 \mathrm{~V}, 3 \mathrm{P}+E$ blue poly wall mounting socket.

- The DS with a 30 A rated current is DS1 (see pages 34 and 35).
- Order a 30 A socket-outlet (S) and a wall box (B).
- In the standard socket-outlet part numbers table, select the part number for a $400 \mathrm{~V}, 3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ socket-outlet: $\mathbf{3 1 1 4 0 1 3}$
- In the standard wall box part number table, choose the accessory that suits you e.g. a $30^{\circ}$ blue poly wall box with a M20 threaded entry: 31 1A 053

You can check the two part numbers found:


|  | Wall mounting socket |  | Coupler socket | Plug | Wall mounting appliance inlet | Inclined appliance inlet |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | (5) |  |  |
| Actuve part | Socket-outtet | Socket-outlet | Sacket-outlet | Inlet | Inlet | Inlet |
| + instalation accessory: | B Wall box | Si, Inclined sleeve | $\underline{H}$ Handle | H Handie | B Wall box | Sil lnclined sleeve |

## DS 130 A (poly)

| Voltage Polarity | Part Number |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 230 V - $1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | 3114015 | 3114015 | 3114015 | 3118015 | 3118015 | 3118015 |
| + instalation accessory: | 311 A 053 | 311 A 027 | 311 A 013 | 3114013 | 311 A 053 | 311 A 027 |
| 400 V 3P+E | 3114013 | 3114013 | 3114013 | 3118013 | 3118013 | 3118013 |
| + installation accessory: | 311 A 053 : | 31 1A 027 | 311 A 013 | 311 A 013 | 311 A 053 | 3114027 |
| $400 \mathrm{~V} * \quad 3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | $3114017^{*}$ | $3114017^{*}$ | $3114017^{*}$ | 3118,017 | 3118017 | $3118 \cdot 017$ |
| + installation accessory: | 3114053 | 311 A 027 | 311 A 013 | 3114013 | 311 A 053 | 311 A 027 |
| Example described at bottom of previous page |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## DS3 50 A (poly)

| Voltage Polarity | Part Number |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 230 V - $1 \mathbf{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | 3134015 | 3134015 | 3134015 | 3138015 | 3138:015 | 3138015 |
| + installation accessory: | 313 A 053 | 31 3A 027 | 313 A 013 | 313 013 | 313 A 053 | 313 A 027 |
| $400 \mathrm{~V} 3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 3134013 | 3134013 | 3134013 | 3138013 | 3138013 | 3138013 |
| + installation accessory: | 313 A 053 | 313 A 027 | 313 A 013 | 3134013 | 313A053 | 313 A 027 |
| 400 V * 3P+N+E | $3134017^{*}$ | $3134017^{*}$ | 3134017 * | 3138017 | 3138.017 | 3138017 |
| + installation accessory: | 313 2 053 | 313 A 027 | 313 A 013 | 313 A 013 | 313 A 053 | 313 A 027 |



## DS9 150 A (poly or metal)

| Vcanciere- |
| :--- |
| Voltage |


| 400 V 3P+E | -3194013 | - 3194013 | - 3194013 | - 3198013 | - 3198013 | . 3198013 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| + installation accessory: | 3998053 | - 3194027 | 3194013 (N) | 3194013 (N) | 39 9A 053 | -319A 027 |
| [409V* 3 + + + + | -3194017* | - $3194017^{\circ}$ | - $3194017^{*}$ | - 3198017 | - 3198.017 | - 3198017 |
| $i+$ installation accessory: | 39 9A 053 | - 3194027 | 319 OL 013 (N) | 3194013 (N) | 399A 053 | -319A027 |

## DS2 250 A (metal)

| Voltage Polarity | Part Number |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 400 V . ${ }^{\text {3P}+E}$ | 3924013 | 3924013 - 3924013 | 3928013 | 3928013 | 3928013 |
| + installation accessory: | 3924053 | $3924027 \cdots 324013$ (N) | 392 A 013 (N) | 3924 053 | 3924027 |
| $400 \mathrm{~V} * 3 \mathrm{BP}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | 3924017 * | $3924017^{*}$ - $3924017^{*}$ | 3928017 | 3928017 | 3928017 |
| - + installation accessory: | 3924053 | 3924027 ( 392 2013 (N) | 3924013 (N) | 392 2 053 | 3924027 |



## DECONTACTORTM

30


- (socket-outlet) IP
- (socket-outlet + inlet) IP
55
54
08
690VAC-250VDC

Wiring (mini/ maxi) flexble
$1 / 6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ $1.5 / 10 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$

- IK (ooty)
$690 \mathrm{VAC}-250 \mathrm{VDC}$
- Uated currents (IEC / EN 60309-1)
- Rated currents and operating voltages
(load breaking capacity according to IEC/EN 60947-3)


## (S) Socket-outlet (female)


" see Bookmark
Other voltages, polarities: see page 8

|  |
| :---: |

\#t you want to add an option to this kind of socket-orttet: call us at +33 (0) 145116000 .

| Socket-oattet options |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1P67 watertightness | Sockel H +677 |
| Device fors selfeejecting coupler sockel | Sockel \# + 354 |
| Device for self-ejecting plug | Sockel ${ }^{\text {d }}+352$ |
| Sell-returning lid | Sockel ${ }^{\text {a }}$ + 8 |
| $180^{\circ}-$-pening lid | Sockel $\#+10$ |
| $180^{\circ}$-opening and sell--eturining lid. | Sockel ${ }^{\text {d }}+18$ |
| Paclocking shatt up to 3 padlocks 8 mmg | Socket \# + 844 |
| Stop button | Sockel $\#+453$ |
| Rubber cover for polyester latich | Socket \# + 833 |
| "t you want to equip a socket with two or more gations: call us at +33 (0) 145116000 . |  |
| Socket-outtet accessories |  |
| Closing mechanism (linget draw plate) | $311 A 346$ |

(1) Inlet (male)


| Voltage | Polarity | Material | Part \# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $20-24 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2 P | Polyester. | 311808 A |
| $190-230 \mathrm{~V}$ | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3118033 |
| $220-250 \mathrm{~V}$ | $1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3118015 |
| $380-440 \mathrm{~V}$ | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3118013 |
| $380-440 \mathrm{~V}$ | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3118017 |

Inlet (Umax 500 V ) with auxiliary contacts
With 2 audiary cintacts (5A) Inlet +972
Inlet options
P67 waterighthess
Inlet accessories

| P67 cap |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Sell-closing lid |  |
| Closing mechanism (finger draw plate) | 311 A 346 |
| Ejecting mechanism (shark ing) | 311 A 338 |
| Tension cord | 311 A 336 |

## Installation accessories



The boxes are supplied without any cable gland. The $70^{\circ}$ boxes are not drilled (drilled at extra cost).

(A)

Industrial - Domestic adapters


Domestic socket-outlet 10/16A 230V + Marechal industrial inlet $1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}, 10 \mathrm{~A} 230 \mathrm{~V}$ fuse protection

| Type | Material | Part number |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| UK | $\ddots$ | Poly |
| FR with safety shutter | Poly | 3118015 D40:* |
|  | 3118015 D16 |  |

- All these domestic socket-outiets are available to foreign standards : replace D40 by D11 for France, D30 for Germany, D06 for Natl, D08 for Switzerland, D67 for Australia, D80 for USA etc


These wall boxes are designed for:

- easy wirIng, recommended for large conductor cross-sections (up to $5 \times 35 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ )
- entries and exit at bottom, top or crossing
- stock reduction, as the same wall box is'common to several products

The sleeves are angled $\left(70^{\circ}\right)$ to reduce the socket-outlet protrusion and impact risk (for lifts ..).


## DECONTACTOR ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ <br> 50A

Main teatares inkuntan


- Wiring (minl/ max) tex|ble
- Wiring (mini/ maxi) stranded
- Other wiring on request maxl flex|ble
$2.5 / 10 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ $2.5 / 16 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$

16 mm

- Pated cur
operating voltages (load breaking capacity according to IEC / EN 60947-3)

50A / 690 V 32A/690V
(AC22)
$(-)$
(1) Inlet (male)


## (S) Socket-outlet (female)



| Voltage | Polarity | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20-24V | 2 P | Polyester | 3134 68A |
| 190-230V | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3134033 |
| 220-250V | $1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3134015 |
| 380-440. | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3134013 |
| Dual viltage: | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3134017 |

*See Bookmank
Other woltages, polarties: see page 8

| Whith 2 auxllay contacti (5A) | Sacket $\frac{4}{2}+972$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| With 4 araliay cantacti ( 5 A) | Sacket ${ }^{\text {d }}+264$ |

\#you want to add an option to this kind ot sacket-outtet: call us at +33 (0) 145116000 .

| Socket-outlet options |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1 P67 waterightness | Socket \# + 677 |
| Device for selfi-jecting coupler socket | Socket \# + 354 |
| Device for selifejecting plug | Socket \# + 352 |
| Selim-retuming lid | Socket \# + R |
| $180^{\circ}$-opening lid | Socket \# + 10 |
| $180^{\circ}$-opening and self-returning lid | Socket \# + 18 |
| Padlocking shatt up to 3 padlocks 8 mmg | Sockel \# + 844 |
| Stop bution | Socket ++453 |
| Rubber cover for polyester latch | Socket \# + 833 |

" you want to equip a socket-adtet with two or more options: call us at +33 (0) 145116000 .
Inlet options
PP67 waterightness $\quad$ inlet +677
Inlet accessories

| P67 cap |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Self-closing lid |  |
| Ejecting mechanism (shark fin) | $313 A 126$ |
| Tension cord |  |

## Installation accessories

| (B) Box |  | Wall box metal 4 poly sleeve $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal 4 metal sleeve $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + metal sleeve $70^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + straight metal sleeve |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Entry |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| M20 | 51 CA 058 | $313 A 653417$ | 393 A 653417 |  | 873A 053417 | 3934095417 |
| M25 | 313 A $053-51$ CA 058 | 313 A 653 | 393A653 | 393 A 053 | 8734053 | 393A095 |
| M32 | 51 CA 058 | 313 A 653419 | 393 A 653419 |  | 8734053419. | 393A095419 |
| M40 | 51 CA 058 | $313 A 653420$ | 393A653420 |  | 87.3 A 053420 | 3934095420 |

The boxes are supplied without any cable gland. The $70^{\circ}$ boxes are not drilled (drilled at extra cost).


## zopm

## Perfect cable flt and broad tightening, range

A special anchoring system provides a perfect cable fit and a broad tightening range (mutilayer lining to choose the best cable fitting ring.



## DECONTACTORTM <br> (2) ${ }^{(1)}$



| - (socket-outlet) IP |  | 55 |
| :--- | ---: | ---: |
| - (socket-outlet + Inlet) IP | 54 |  |
| - IK (poly / metal) | $08 / 09$ |  |
| - Umax |  |  |


| - Wing (min! / maxi) flexdble <br> - Wiring (min// maxl) stranded <br> - Other wiring on request maxt flexdble / stranded |  | $\begin{gathered} 6 / 25 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ 6 / 35 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ 35 / 50 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \end{gathered}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 90A/400V | 90A / 690V | 63A/1000V |
| 90A/400V | $63 \mathrm{~A} / 690 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |
| (AC23) | (AC22) | $(-)$ |

## (S) Socket-outlet (female)



| Voltage Polarity | Materiat | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20-24V, 2P | Polyester | 3164 08A |
|  | Metal | 3964 08A |
| 190-230V $\mathrm{V}^{\text {a }}$ 3P+E : Polyester |  | $3164033 \cdot$ |
| - | Metal | 3964033 |
| 220-250V $1 P+N+E$ | Polyester | 3164015 |
|  | Metal | 3964015 |
| 380-440V $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3164013 |
|  | Metal | 3964013 |
| Dual voltage* $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3164017 |
|  | Metal | 3964017 |

- See Bookmark

Other voltages, polarities: see page 8
Socket-outlet with auxiliary contacts

| With 2 auxiliary contacts $(5 A)$ | Socket \# +972 |
| :--- | :--- |
| Whth 3 auxilary contacts $(5 A)$ | Socket $\#+263$ |

It you want to add an option to this kind of sacket-outtet:
call us at +33 (0) 145116000 .
Socket-outlet options

| IP67 watertightness | Sockêt \#. + 677 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Device for self-ejecting coupler socket | Socket \# + 354 |
| Device for self-ejecting plug | Socket \# + 352 |
| Self-returning lid | Socket \# + R |
| $180^{\circ}$-opening lid | Socket \# + 10 |
| $180^{\circ}$-opening and self-returning lid | Socket \# + 18 |
| Padlocking shaft up to 3 padlocks 8 mm 0 | Socket \# + 844 |
| Stop button | Socket \# + 453 |
| Rubber cover for polyester latch | Socket \# + 833 |
| Rubber cover for metal latch | Socket \#+835 |

It you want to equip à socket-outlet with two or more options: call us at +33 (0) 145116000 .

## (I) Inlet (male)



| Voltage | Polarity | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20-24V | 2 P | Polyester | 3168 08A |
|  |  | Metal | 3968 08A |
| 190-230 V | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3168033 |
|  |  | Metal | 3968033 |
| 220-250V | $1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3168015 |
|  |  | Metal | 3968015. |
| 380-440V | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3168013 |
|  |  | Metal | 3968013 |
| 380-440V | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3168017 |
|  |  | Metal | 3968017 |

Inlet with auxiliary contacts

| With 2 auxilary contarcts $(5 A)$ | Inlet \# +972 |
| :--- | :--- |
| With 3 auxiliary contacts $(5 A)$ | Inlet $\#+263$ |

## Inlet options

IP67 waterightness
Inlet accessories

| P67 cap | 316 A 126 |
| :--- | :--- |
| Self-closing lid | 316 A 226 |
| Ejecting mechanism (shark fin) | 316 A 338 |
| Tension cord | 31 AA 336 |

## Installation accessories.

| Box | Wall box <br> poly $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box <br> poly $70^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + poly sleeve $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + metal sleeve $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + metal sleeve $70^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + straight metal sleeve |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Entry |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| M25 |  | 51 DA 058 |  | $3164653418{ }^{\circ}$ | 3968653418 | 876 A 053418 | 39 AA 095418 |
| M32 |  | 51 DA 058 |  | 316 A 653.419. | 396 A 653419 | 87 6A 053.419 | 39.6A 095419 |
| M40 | 3168053 | 51 DA 058 | 3964053 | 316 A 653 | 3964653 | 8764053 | 3964095 |
| M50 |  |  |  | 3164653429 | 3964653429 | 87614053429 | 3964095429 |

The boxes are supplied without any cable gland. The $70^{\circ}$ boxes are not drilled (drilled at extra cost).



This stralght handle is recommended for in-line connections:


* With built-in finger draw plate (for in-line connections)

*Handle with eyelet for tension cord * Cable gland on request Handles for flat or steel amoured cables on request



## Self-ejection

To provide self-ejection to a coupler socket or to a plug, choose an appropriate device, offered as an option or accessory on the previous page. Various devices are offered depending on the
 DECONTACTOR ${ }^{\text {TM }}$ rated current.


## DECONTACTORTM <br> 150 A

## 

- (socket-outlet) IP

| 55 |  |
| ---: | ---: |
|  | 54 |
| 08/09 |  |
| 1000VAC $-250 V D C$ |  |


| - Wiring (mini/ maxi) flexble | $16 / 50 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| :--- | ---: |
| - Wing (mini/ maxi) stranded | $25 / 70 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |
| - Other wifng on request |  |
| maxd flexible / stranded | $-70 / 95 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ |

- IK (poly / metal) $\begin{array}{r}\text { O8/09 } \\ \text { - Umax }\end{array} \quad 1000 \mathrm{VAC}-250 \mathrm{VDC}$
maxt fiextble / stranded
$70 / 95 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$
- Rated currents (IEC / EN 60309-1)
- Rated currents and operating voltages (load breaking capacity according to IEC / EN 60947-3)
$150 \mathrm{~A} / 400 \mathrm{~V}$
$150 \mathrm{~A} / 400 \mathrm{~V}$
(AC22)

125A/690V
90A/690V
(AC22)

90A/1000V
(-)

## (S) <br> Socket-outlet (female)



| Voltage Polarity | Material | Part\# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 20-24V. $2 P$ | Polyester | 3194 D8A |
|  | Metal | 3994 08A |
| 190-230V 3 3 + E | Polyester | 3194033 |
|  | Metal | 3994033 |
| 220-250 V $1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3194015 |
|  | Metal | 3994015 |
| 380-440V 3P+E | Polyester | 3194013 |
|  | Metal | 3994013 |
| Dual voltage* $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3194017 |
|  | Metal | 3994017 |


| - See Bookmark |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Socket-outtet with auxiliary contacts |  |
| With 2 auxilary contacte ( 5 A) | Socket \# + 972 |
| It you want to add an option to this kind of socket-outtet: call us at +33 (0) 145116000. |  |
| Socket-outlet options |  |
| Device for self-ejecting coupler socket | Socket \# + 365 |
| Device for seti-ejecting plug | Socket \# + 353 |
| IP66/67 watertightress | Socket \# + 687 |
| Sett-returning lid | Socket \# + R |
| $180^{\circ}$ opening lid | Socket \# + 10 |
| $180^{\circ}$ opening and seff-returning lid | Socket $\mathrm{H}+18$ |
| Padtocking shatt up 103 padlocks 8 mmg | Socket I + +844 |
| Stop buttón | Socket \# + 453 |
| Rubber cover for polyester latch | Socket \# + 833 |
| Rubber cover for metal latch | Socket \# + 835 |
| Hyou want to equip a socket-outtet with two or more options: call us at +33 (0) 145116000. |  |
| Socket-outlet accessories |  |
| Closing mechanism (draw lever) | 3998876 |

## (I) Inlet (male)



Poly version

| Voltage Polarity | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $20-24 \mathrm{~V}$ 2P | Polyester | 319808 A |
|  | Metal | 3998 18A |
| 190-230V 3P+E | Polyester | 3198033 |
| . | Matal | 3998033 |
| 220-250V $1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyestar | 3198015 |
|  | Metal | 3998015 |
| 380-440V 3 P + E | Polyester | 3198013 |
|  | Metal | 3998013 |
| 380-440V $\quad 3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Polyester | 3198017 |
|  | Metal | 3998017 |

Inlet with auxiliary contacts

| With 2 auxllary contacts. $(5 A)$ | Inlet $\#+972$ |
| :--- | :--- |

Inlet options

| Device for self-ejecting coupler socket | Inlet $\#+204$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Device for sef-ejecting plug | Inlet $\#+204$ |
| $1 P 66 / 67$ watertightress | Inlet $\#+687$ |


| 1P67 cap | 319 Al 126 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Self-closing lid | 319A 226 |
| Closing mechanism (draw base) | 3994886 |
| Ejecting mechanism (plug release cam) | 399 A 397 |
| Tension cord | 31 1A 336 |

## Installation accessories



## zogM <br> Protection against mechanical shocks

The poly and metal versions do not offer the same level of protection against mechanical shocks (IK): According to standard IEC / EN 50102, the poly version is IK08, whereas the metal version achieves IKog (impact energy absorption up to 10 Joules).



DECONTACTOR ${ }^{\text {TM }}$
250 A

## 

| - (socket-outtet) IP |  |
| :--- | ---: |
| - (socket-outlet + Inlet) IP | 55 |
| - IK (metal) | 54 |
| - Umax | 09 |


| -Wring (minI/ maxi) fiexdble <br> - Wiring (mini/ maxi) stranded <br> - Other wiring on request maxl flexible / stranded |  | $\begin{gathered} 70 / 95 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ 70 / 120 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ 150 / 185 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \end{gathered}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A/ 400 V | 200A / 690V | 150A/1000V |
| A/400V | 125A/690V |  |
| (AC22) | (AC22) | $(-)$ |

## (I) Inlet (male)



| Voltage | Polarity | Material | Part \# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| $200-24 \mathrm{~V}$ | 2 P | Metal | 3928 08A |
| $190-230 \mathrm{~V}$ | $3 P+\mathrm{E}$ | Metal | 3928033 |
| $220-250 \mathrm{~V}$ | $1 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Metal | 3928015 |
| $380-440 \mathrm{~V}$ | $3 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | Metal | 3928013 |
| $380-440 \mathrm{~V}$ | $3 P+\mathrm{N}+\mathrm{E}$ | Metal | 3928017 |

Inlet with auxiliary contacts
With 2 abxilary contacte ( 5 A) In_ Inlat $\#+972$

## Inlet options

| Device for self-ejecting coupler socket | Inlet $\#+204$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Device for self-ejecting plug | Inlet $\#+204$ |
| $1866 / 67$ waterighitness | Inlet $\#+687$ |

Inlet accessories

| 11967 cap | 312 A 126 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Clasing mechanism (draw base) | 3924886 |
| Ejecting mechanism (plug release cam) | 3924397 |
| Tension cord | 311 A 336 |

Dimenslons page 44

## Installation accessories

(B)

(51)


| Handle | Straight <br> neoprene | Straight <br> metal |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Tightening |  |  |
| $34-58 \mathrm{~mm}$ | $392 A 013$ |  |
| $40-54 \mathrm{~mm}$ |  | $392 A$ 913 |


|  | Straight poly with <br> poly cable gland | Straight poly flowerpot <br> with metric thread * |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Entry | Tightening | Entry |
| M63 | 39 | 2A 753 |
| Cable gland not included | Handies for flat or steel armoured cables on request |  |




## Coupler socket + inlet



DS
Advantages Coieronge 05: 30A D53.50A 056́ $\cdot 90$ A D59. 150 A D52-250A Dimensions

|  | A | B8 | 日H | C | D | E | H | Q |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| OS1OS24C | 48 | 32.5 | 37 | 66.5 | 58 | 48.1 | 14 | 5 |
| DS3ODS37C | 52 | 37.5 | 44.5 | 78 | 70 | 55.1 | 18 | 5 |
| OS6/OS7C3 | 56 | 45 | 53 | 92 | 80 | 65.8 | 27 | 5 |
| OS9 | 71 | 61 | 64 | 113 | 100 | 81.3 | 26 | 6 |


| Coupler sochet connected (A1)/ disconnected (Ao) in an inlet |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | A1 | AD |
| OS10S24C | 166 | 182 |
| DS3.DS37C | 174 | 190 |
| DS6/DS7C3 | 197 | 221 |
| DS9 | 246 | 275 |
| OS20057C9 | 310 | 341 |

 DS3DDS37C DS9 DS9
DS20S7C9 $310 \quad 341$


Coupler socket connected (Ai)/ disconnected (AO) in a $30^{\circ}$ wall mounting appliance inlet

B8: $180^{\circ}$ OPENING LID


|  | A1 | A0 | B | B1 | BO | $B_{6}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| OS1/OS24C | 211 | 225 | 184 | 161 | 169 | 199 |
| DS3/DS37C | 232 | 246 | 215 | 184 | 192 | 215 |
| OS6/DS7C3 POLY | 283 | 304 | 248 | 220 | 232 | 254 |
| DS6OS7C3 METAL | 268 | 289 | 248 | 193 | 205 |  |
| OS9 | 355 | 380 | 311 | 243 | 258 |  |
| DS20S7C9 $\left(60^{\circ}\right)$ | 383 | 399 | 427 | 433 | 460 |  |

DS205S7C9 $\left(60^{\circ}\right) \quad 383 \quad 399 \quad 427 \quad 433 \quad 460$

Coupler sochet
connected (A1) disconnected (AO) in a $70^{\circ}$ wall mounting appliance inlet


|  | A | B | Ca | D | E | E1 | E2 | H2 | Od |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| OS1/DS24C | 182 | 157 | 127 | 127 |  | 116 | 96 | 39 | 6.5 |
| DS3OS $37 C$ | 208 | 201 | 170 | 170 | 158 | 159 | 139 | 39 | 6.5 |
| OSGODS7C3 POLY | 212 | 212 | 770 | 170 | 158 | 158 | 159 | 39 | 6.5 |



Coupler sockel connected (A1)/ disconnected (AO) in a $30^{\circ}$ inclined appliance inlet

BB : $160^{\circ}$ OPENING LID


|  | A1 | AD | 8 | B1 | BD | BB |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| OS1DS24C | 192 | 206 | 184 | 170 | 178 | 199 |
| OS3DS37C | 203 | 217 | 215 | 178 | 186 | 215 |
| OS6DS7C3 | 229 | 250 | 248 | 212 | 224 | 254 |
| OS9 | 302 | 327 | 31 | 242 | 257 |  |
| OS2OS7C9 (60 $)$ | 292 | 308 | 427 | 347 | 374 |  |

 $\begin{array}{llllllllll}\text { OSGOST7C3 } & 134 & 212 & 170 & 170 & 159 & 4.2\end{array}$

Coupler socket connected (A1)/ disconnected (Ao)
in a $70^{\circ}$ inclined appliance inlet

DS1/0S24C
DS3/DS37C
$\begin{array}{llllll}\text { A1 } & \text { AO } & \text { B } & \text { 日1 } & 80 & B 8\end{array}$

$\begin{array}{llllllllll}\text { OSGOS7C3 } & 167 & 163 & 282 & 338 & 362 & 210\end{array}$



PNsze PNfic


## $\mathbf{P N I S C}$

Amulticontact


Malifentiess xatume
－（sockgt－outlat）IP
54 or 66／6 54 or $68 / 87$

0809
500 V
－IK（poly／metal）．
－Umax AG

## （S） <br> Socket－outlet（female）

|  | Poly version |  |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Polarity $U / I^{*} \quad$ Part $\#$ | U／I＊$\quad$ Parsion $\#$ |  |


| O | Uf | Part | U | Part |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 䦗 | 4ET | W | 5 |  |
| Tim | \％ | 4 \％ 4 |  | S4 |
| 車 | \％ | W | － | 析 |
| 云 | 标 | －+H | Wax |  |
| 陚 | ¢ |  | \＃－ |  |
| W | \％ |  | W考： | W\％ |
| 迷 | 析云 |  | \＃－ |  |
| 青表電 | W |  | ＋ | H2\％ |
| Et | $\frac{\square}{4 x}$ | - | the | \％ 5 |
|  | Hza |  | ＋ | 杜等相 |
|  |  |  | औ等 |  |
| 青 | 青清 | W | E迷 | Fixay |
| $0$ | $\mathrm{EE}$ | 去 ${ }^{\text {ata }}$ | \％ | 3－1者 |
| b牙 | ... |  | $\frac{1}{4}$ |  |

＊Maximum voitage（V）／Reted current（A）
（I）Inlet（male）


|  | Poly version |  | Metal version |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Polarity | U／I＊ | Part \＃ | Uf | Part \＃ |
|  |  | 6 | \＃ |  |
| － | \％ |  | 本 | W |
| 家 | 3事 | － | 林 |  |
|  | 迷 |  | 者 | \＃－ |
| － | H－ |  | 者： | － |
| － | U－ | －＋ | － |  |
| 華 | ］－7 | U W | 1－4 |  |
| ＋ | Wat | U | \％ |  |
| ＋ | \％－5 | ，4 |  |  |
| ） |  |  |  |  |
| U－7 | 良楮 | U\＃，迷 | W | \＃＋ |
| － | 杜 |  | ＋ 4 | Way |
| － |  | － am | \％ |  |
| － |  |  | － | 枹 + － |
| \＃－ | Wulat | －+SE | シ习a |  |
| ＊Maxim |  |  |  |  |

Version with self－closing lid（IP55）：
Choose from the part numbers above and change letter M for a T．

| Socket－outtet options |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Reversed interioi and contects | Sockil \＃＋ 001 |
| Sof－ratuming ld＊ | Sockgt＋＋R |
| $180^{\circ}$－apantag lid | Sockst +10 |
| 180 ${ }^{\circ}$－opening and seff－retuming［d＊ | Sockat it +18 |
| Padlocking（Dadiock 4 mim（）wthout shaft＊Socket \＃＋843 |  |
| Lackng by tutiguta screw＊ | Socket \＃＋ 22 |



Inlet options
Reversed intinip and contacts Inlot +137

Inlet accessories
（197．cap
01 NA 128

If you want to equip a socket with two or more options： call us at +33 （0） 145116000
－Wring（min－max）flexible
$1 / 1.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ $1.5 / 2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$
－Keying postions

Plugs and socket－outlets C to 12 contacts／ 5 or 10 A


| For ise in htyhhy aggrasstive envirionneants and／or intorstive uses （seiveral thousiand cyctis），ctranper the batter Af for an L Dhe rated curserit will be 2 Amps． |
| :---: |



## Installation accessories

(B) Box

| Box | Wall box <br> poly $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box straight metal | Wall box straight poly | Wall box <br> poly $70^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + metal sleeve $45^{\circ}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Entry |  |  |  |  |  |
| M20 | 01 NA 053 | 09 NA 055 | 01 NA 055 | 51 AA 058 | 09 NA 653 |
| M25 |  |  |  | 51 AA 058 | 09 NA 653.418 |
| M32 |  |  |  | 51 AA 05B | 09 NA 653419. |

The boxes are supplied without any cable gland. The $70^{\circ}$ boxes are not drilled (drilled at extra cost)

| Sleeve | Inclined poly $30^{\circ}$ | Inclined metal 30 | Inclined <br> poly $70^{\circ}$ | Inclined metal $45^{\circ}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | 09 NA 027 | $514 A 757$ | 0924027 |



Handle for flat or steel amoured cables on request (see zoom below).


## Our solutions for flat or steel armoured cables,

You need a hände dèsigned for flat or steel armoured cables?
Call us at 0145116000 .

(S) Socket-outlet (female)


| Polarity | U/I * | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 13 P . | 50/5 | Poly | 6104130 |
| 14P. | 50/5 | Poly | 6104140 |
| 15P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104150 |
| 16 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104160 |
| 17P | 50/5 | Pơly | 6104170 |
| 18P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104180 |
| 19P | 50/5: | Poly | 6104150 |
| 20 P | 50/5 | Poly: | 6104200 |
| 21 P | 50/5 | Poly | 61.04210 |
| 22 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104220 |
| 23P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104230 |
| 24 P | 50/5 | Poly | 61.04240 |
| $13 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104131 |
| $14 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104141 |
| $15 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Póly | 6104151 |
| $16 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104161 |
| 17P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6104.171 |
| $18 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 4.15/5 | Poly | 6104181 |
| 19P+E | 4.15/5 | Poly, | 610419 |
| $20 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104201 |
| $21 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104211 |
| $22 P+E$ | $415 / 5$ | Poly | 6104221 |
| $23 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly. | 6104231 |

*Maximum vottage (M) Rated current (A)

| Device forself-giecting coupiler socket | Socket ${ }^{\text {\# }}+3544^{\prime}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Device for selfelel eitting plug | Socket ${ }^{\text {H }}+352$ |
| Self-reminitig lid | Socket \# + |
| 180 $0^{\circ}$-opanitig lid | Stackat \# + 10 |
|  | Sockìt \# + 18 |
| Pagiocking ghatif for 1 padiock 3 mmg | Socket \# + 840 |
| Padlockling shaft up to 3.padlock 3 mm 0 | Sockel $\#+844$ |
| Stap bithoi | Socket $\ddagger+453$ |
| Socket-outlet accessories |  |
| Closing mechanism (finger draw plate) | 613 3 346 |

## (I) Inlet (male)



| Polarity | U/I * | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 13 P . | 50/5 | Poly | 6108130 |
| 14P? | 50/5 | Poly | 6108140 |
| 15 P | 50/5 | Poly. | $6108: 150$ |
| 16P. | 50/5 | Poly | 6108160 |
| 17 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108170 |
| 18P. | 50/5 | Poly | 6108180. |
| 19P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108190 |
| 20 P | 50/5 | Poly | 61:08:200 |
| 21P. | 50/5 | Poly | 6108210 |
| 22 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108220 |
| 23 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108230 |
| 24 P . | 50/5 | Poly | 6108240 |
| $13 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108131. |
| 14P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6108141 |
| $15 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108151 |
| 16P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6108161 |
| $17 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | $6108171^{\circ}$ |
| 18P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6108181 |
| 19P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6108191 |
| 20P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 61.08201 |
| 21P+E | 415/5 | Poly. | 6108211 |
| $22^{2}+{ }^{+}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108221 |
| $23 P+$ E | $\therefore 415 / 5$ | Poly | 6108231 |

- Maximum votage (M) Rated current (A)

Inlet accessories

| P67 cap | $613 A^{128}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Self-ciosing Id | 311 A 226 |
| Closing mechanilm (finjer draw plate) | 613 A 346 |
| Egacting mechanism (btark fin) | 613 3 338 |
| Tenailon cord | 3114336 |

Hy you want to equip a socket-outtet with two or more options: call us at +33 (0) 145116000.

## Installation accessories

| Box | Wall box <br> poly $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box <br> poly $70^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + poly sleeve $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + metal sleeve $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + straight metal sleeve |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Entry |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| M20 | $613 A 053$ | 51 BA 058 | 6934059 | $613 A 653$ | $693 A 653$ | 6934095 |
| M25 | 613 083 | 51 BA 058 |  | 613 A 653418 | 6934653418 | 6934095418 |
| M32. |  | 51 BA 058 |  | 613 A 653419 | $693 A 653419$ | 693 A 095419 |
| M40 |  |  |  | 61 3A 653,420: | 693 A 653420 | 6934095420 |

The boxes are supplied without any cable gland. The $70^{\circ}$ boxes are not drilled (drilled at extra cost).
(51)
Sleeve

| eve | Inclined poly $30^{\circ}$ | Inclined poly $70^{\circ}$ | Straight metal | Inclined metal $30^{\circ}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 613 027 | 51 BA 757. | 693 A.127 | 693 O 027. |



These wall boxes are designed for:

- easy wiring, recommended for large conductor cross-sections (up to $5 \times 35 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ )
- entries and exits either at top, bottom or sides
- stock reduction, as the same wall box is common to several products.
The sleeves are angled ( $70^{\circ}$ ) to reduce the socket-outlet protrusion and impact risk (fork lifts ...).

See full range of baxes on page 86
zopm

## Self-ejection

Both DSN sockets and plugs can be modified for self-ejection purposes eg for use on vehicles, movable véssels, trailers etc.


See page 168 for guldance notes or contact us with your application for assistance.


IP67 Inlet cap


Sell-closing lid for inlet


Ejecting mechanism (shark fin)

Tension cord


- (socköt-outlet) IP
- (socket-outlet + inlett. IP
- IK (poly)
- Umax AC

66/67
66/67
08
415 V

- Wring (min - max) flexible
-Wining (min - max) stranded
- Keylng positions
$1 / 1.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$
$1.5 / 2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$
3
(5) Socket-outlet (female)


| Polarity | U/1* | Material | Part\# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 25 P | 50/5 | Poly, | 6104250 |
| 26P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104260 |
| 27P | $50 / 5$ | Poly. | 6104270 |
| 28P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104280 |
| 29 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104290 |
| 30 P | $50 / 5$ | Poly | 6104300 |
| 31 P | $50 / 5$ | Poly | 6104310 |
| 32 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104320 |
| 33 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104330 |
| 34 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104340 |
| 35 P ; | 50/5 | Poly | 6104350 |
| 36 P | $50 / 5$ | Poly | 6104360 |
| 37P | 50/5 | Poly | 6104370 |
| 25P+E: | 4.15/5 | Poly | 6104251 |
| $26 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104261 |
| $27 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104271 |
| $28 P+E$ | 415/5 | Poly | 61.04281 |
| 29P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6104291 |
| 30P+E | 415/5 | Poly: | 6104301 |
| $31 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poiy . | 6104311 |
| $32 P+E$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104321 |
| $33 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104331 |
| $34 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104341 |
| $35 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104351 |
| $36 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6104361 |

* Maximum vottage ( $M$ / Rated current ( $A$ )

(I) Inlet (male)


| Polarity | U/1* | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 25 P . | 50/5 | Poly | 6108250 |
| 26 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108280 |
| 27P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108270 |
| 28 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108280 |
| 29P: | 50/5. | Poly | 6108290 |
| 30 P . | 50/5 | Poly | 6108300 |
| 31 P | 50/5. | Poly. | 61.08310 |
| 32 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108320 |
| 33 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108330 |
| 34 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108340 |
| 35 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108350 |
| 36 P | 50/5 | Poly | 61.08380 |
| 37 P | 50/5 | Poly | 6108370 |
| 25P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6108251 |
| 26P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6108261 |
| 27P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 610827 |
| $28 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108281 |
| $29 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108291 |
| $30 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108301 |
| $31 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108311 |
| $32 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108321 |
| $33 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108331 |
| $34 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108341 |
| $35 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 415/5 | Poly | 6108351 |
| 36P+E | 415/5 | Poly | 6108361 |

*Maximum voltage (V)/Rated current (A)

## Inlet accessories

| P67 cap | 61 6A 126 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Seff-closing ld | $313 A 226$ |
| Elocting mechanism (shark fin)' | 61 QA 338 |
| Tension cord | 3114336 |

If you want to equip a socket-outlet with two or more options: call us at +33 (0) 145116000

Full range of boxes page 86
Dimensions page 28
Technical Manual page. 150

## Installation accessories

| (B) Box | Wall box <br> poly $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box <br> poly $70^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + poly sleeve $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + metal sleeve $30^{\circ}$ | Wall box metal + straight metal sleeve | Wall box metal + metal sleeve $70^{\circ}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Entry |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| M20 |  | 51 CA 0.58 |  | 6164653417 | 6968653417 | 696 A 095417 | 873 A 053417 |
| M25 | 6164053 | 51 CA 058 | 6964053 | 6168653 | 6964653 | 6964095 | 873 A 053 |
| M3? |  | 51 CA 058 |  | 6164653419 | 6964653419 | 69 6A.095 419 | 873 A 053419 |
| M40 |  | 51 CA D58 |  | $616 A^{\prime} 653$ 420 | 6964653420 | 69.6A 095420 | 87 3A 053420 |

The boxes are supplied without any cable gland. The $70^{\circ}$ boxes are not drilled (drilled at extra cost).


## 209M <br> Pèrfect cable fit and <br> broad tightening range

A special anchoring system provides a perfect cable fit and a broad tightening range (multi-layer bush to choose best cable fit).


## PNe



Heversed interlor and contacts （male socket－outter）


Reversed interlor and contacts （lemale inlet）with IP54 cap


Padlocklng
neth－Padlock nol supplied） or lackling by triangular screw（right）


## 

```
- (sockgt-outlgt) IP
-(socket-outlot + in!et) IP
－IK（poly／metal）
－Umax AC
```

54 or 66／67 54 or 66／67 08109 500 V
－Wiring（min－max）flexible
－Wiring（min－max）stranded
－Keying positions
$1.5 / 4 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ $2.5 / 6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$

## （S）Socket－outlet（female）



|  | Poly version |  | Metal version |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Polarity | U／I＊ | Part \＃ | U／I＊ | Part \＃ |
| \＃ | 㫜 | \＃ | 2F | 2 L 4 |
| \％ |  | \＃ | U1 |  |
| 7 | U－7 | \＃ | U175 |  |
| \％ 4 | U | \＃1－1 | H｜L | 3＋a发 |
| ＋2 | 校 | \＃ | 14： | 3－4 |
| W－ | \＃－1 | \＃${ }^{\text {Pa }}$ | Hyer |  |

－Maximum votage（ $M$／Rated curtent（ $A$ ）
Verslon with self－closing lid（IP55）：
Choose hom the part numbers above and change letter $P$ for an $H$ ．


## （I）Inlet（mate）


poly and metal versions


|  | Poly version |  | Metal version |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Polarity | U／I＊ | Part \＃ | U／I＊ | Part \＃ |
|  |  |  |  |  |
| 缶 |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |

＊Maximum wotage（V）／Rated current（A）
Inlet options
Reversed interior and contacts $\quad$＿illot +137
Inlet accessories
P67

Hyou want to equip a socket with two or more options： call us at $+33(0)$ † 45116000 ．

## Installation accessories

(3) Box



Our solutions for flat or steel armoured cables
You nieed a handle designied for flat or steel armoured cables?
Call us at 0145116000 .


## Didec



Tension cord

## Plugs and socket-outlets 6 to 9 contacts / 30 A

## 

| - (socket-outtet) IP |  |
| :--- | ---: |
| - (socket-outlet + inlet) IP |  |
| - IK (Metal) | 55 |
| - Umax AC | 09 |

- Wiring (min - max) fiexible
- Wiring (min - max) stranded
$1.5 / 6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ $2.5 / 6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$
- Keying positions

2

## (S) Socket-outlet (female)



| Polarity | $\mathrm{U} / \mathrm{I}^{*}$ | Material | Part \# |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 6 FP | $50 / 30$ | Metal | 1914080 |
| 7 P | $50 / 30$ | Metal | 1914070 |
| 8 P | $50 / 30$ | Metal | 1914080 |
| 9 P | $50 / 30$ | Metal | 1914090 |
| $5 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 30$ | Metal | 1914051 |
| $6 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 30$ | Metal | 1914061 |
| $7 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 30$ | Metal | 1914071 |
| $8 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 30$ | Motal | 1914081 |

- Maximum voltage ( $V$ / Rated current ( $A$ )

| Socket-outet options | Socket + 312 |
| :---: | :---: |
| With 4 amiliary contacts ( 5 A ) | Socket $\#+264$ |
| Device for seli-epecting coupler sucket | Sockel $\#+365$ |
| Device for seff-alacting plug | Socket ${ }^{\frac{7}{7}}+\mathrm{R}$ |
| Self-rauminy lid | Socket $\ddagger+$ + |
| $180^{\circ} 0$ pening lid | Sockat +10 |
| 1800-qpenilig and salf-rutuming lid | Sacket \# + 18 |
| Padlocking ghaft up to 3 padlocing 8 mm D | Socket \# + 844 |
| Stpp bution | Socket \# + 453 |
| Rubber cover for meidil lath | Sockely + 834 |

(I) Intet (male)


| Polarity | U/I * | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 P | 50/30 | 'Metal | 1918090 |
| 7 P | 50/30 | 'Motal | 1918070 |
| 8 P | 50/30. | Metal | 1918080 |
| 9 P | $50 / 30$ | Metal | 1918090 |
| $5 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480/30 | Metal | 1918051 |
| $6 P+E$ | 480/30 | Metal | 1918081 |
| $7 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 30$ - | Metal | 1918071 |
| $8 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480/30 | Metal | 1918081 |

- Maximum voltage (M) / Rated current (A)

| With 2 auxilajy contacts (5A) | Frat \# + 312 |
| :---: | :---: |
| With 4 auxiliany contacts ( 5 A ) | lubet +264 |
| Device for seff-ejecting coupler sucket | Wrigt +204 |
| Device for seffejeting plug | \|nleit $\#+204$ |

Inlet accessories

| P54 cap |
| :--- |
| Eiecting mechanlsm (shark fin) |
| Tension cord |

If you want to equip a socket-oullet or an iniet with two or more options: call us at +33 (0) 145116000.

## Installation accessories



The boxes are supplied without any cable gland..


## 289 m <br>  <br> Handle with bullt-In finger draw plate

This stralght handie is recommended for in-line connections.


## ZO9M

## Perfect cable fit and broad tightening range

A special anchoring system provides a perfect cable fit and a broad tightening range (multi-layer bush to choose best. cable fit).


# DNzOC <br> Multicontact 



## (S) Socket-outlet (female)



- (sockat-outlit) IP
- (socket-outlet + inlat) IP 480 V
- IK (Meta)
- Umax AC
$1.5 / 6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$
$2.5 / 6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$


| Polarity | U/I * | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 10P | 50/25 | Metal | 1964100 |
| 11P | 50/25 | Metal | 1964110 |
| 12 P | 50/25 | Metal | 1964120 |
| 13P | 50/25 | - Metal | 1964:130 |
| 14P | 50/25 | Mêtal | 1964140 |
| 15P | 50/25. | Metal | 1964150 |
| 16 P | 50/25 | Motal | 1964160 |
| 17 P | 50/25 | Metal | 1964170 |
| 18 P | 50/25 | Metal | 1964180 |
| 19 P | 50/25 | Metal | 1964180 |
| 20P | 50/25 | Mètal | 1964200 |
| 9P+E | 480/25 | Metal | 1964091 |
| $10 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 25$ | Metal | 1964101 |
| $11 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480/25 | Metal | 1964111 |
| $12 P+E$ | 480/25 | Metal ${ }^{-1}$ | 1964121 |
| $13 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480/25 | Metal | 1964131 |
| $14 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480/25 | Metal | 1964141 |
| 15P+E | $480 / 25$ | Metal | 1964151 |
| $16 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 25$ | Metal | 1964161 |
| $17 \widehat{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480/25 | Metal | 1964171 |
| $18 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 25$ | Metal | 1964181 |
| 19P+E | 480/25 | Metal | 1964181 |

* Maximum voltage (V) / Rated current (A)

| Davica for self-ojecting couplar sockat | Sockst\# +365 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Device for self-ejecting plug | Socket\#+ R |
| Self-ruturning ild | Sucket \# + R |
| $180^{\circ}$ opentrg Id | Socket \# + 10 |
| 1800-opening and selt-returning lid | Socket\# +18 |
| Pailocking shat up to 3 padlocks 8 mon 0 | Sockist \# + 844 |
| Stpp button | Sockot\# + 453 |
| Rubber cover for metad lath | Socket \# + 834 |

Socket-outlet accessories
Cliogng mechanism (draw lever) $\qquad$

| Polarity | U/I * | Material | Part \# |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 10P | 50/25 | Mctal | 1968100 |
| 11P | 50/25 | Matal | 1968110 |
| 12 P | 50/25 | Matal | 1968120 |
| 13P | 50/25 | Astal | 1968.130 |
| 14P | 50/25 | Metal | 1968140 |
| 15P | 50/25 | Metal | 1968150 |
| 16P | 50/25 | Motal | 1968160 |
| 17P | 50/25 | Matal | 1968170 |
| 18P. | 50/25 | Motal. | 1968180 |
| 19P | 50/25 | Metal | 1968190 |
| 20P | 50/25 | Metal | 1968200 |
| $9 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 25$ | Metal | 1968091 |
| $10 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480125 | Metal | 1968101 |
| 11P+E | 480/25 | Metal | 1968111 |
| 12P+E | 480/25. | Metal | 1968121 |
| $13 P+E$ | $480 / 25$ | Metal | 1968131 |
| $14 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 25$ | Metal | 1968141 |
| 15P+E | 480/25 | Metal | 1968151 |
| $16 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480/25 | Metal | 1968161 |
| 17P+E | 480/25 | Metal | 1968171 |
| $18 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | $480 / 25^{\circ}$ | Metal | 1968181 |
| $19 \mathrm{P}+\mathrm{E}$ | 480/25 | Metal | 1968181 |

- Maximum voltage $M$ / Rated current ( $A$ )


## Inlet options

| Device for selfempeting couplar sackat | Filat f + 204 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Device for self-ejerting plug: | Trete $\ddagger+204$ |


| P54 cap | 1964126 |
| :---: | :---: |
| Closing mechanlsm (dryw bese) | 1964886 |
| Escting mechanism (plug relesse cam) | 1964397 |
| Tension cord | 311 A 336 |

H you want to equip a socket-outtet with two or more options: call us at +33 (0) 145116000 .

## Installation accessories



Handle for flat or steel armoured cables on request (see 'zoom' below).


## Our solutions for flät or steel armoured cables

You need a hiandle designed for flat or' steel armoured cables?
Call us at $0145 \mathbf{1 1 6 0} \mathbf{0 0}$.


## SURGE DIVERTER \& SURGE REDUCTION FILTER

1. TDS1100 SURGE DIVERTER TECHNICAL DETAILS
2. DAR ALARM RELAY TECHNICAL DETAILS
3. TDF SURGE REDUCTION FILTER TECHNICAL DETAILS

## Gilicembinitio

## TDS Surge Diverter - TDS1100 Series



CRITSC TD 4 .

- CRITEC TD Technology with thermal disconnect protection
$\because$ Compact design fits into Dini distribution panel boards and motor: control centers
$\checkmark 35$ mm DiN rail mount-DIN 43880 profile matches common circuit breakers
Indication fiagand voltage free contacts provide remote status monitoring
- Separate plug and base design facilitates replacement of a failed surge module
- $100 \mathrm{kA} 8 / 20$ maximum surge rating provides protection suitablefor sub-distribution panels and a long operational life
- Avaiable invarious operating voltages to suit most common power distribution systems:

Surges and voltage transients are a major cause of expensive eletronic equipment failure and business disruption. Damage may result in the loss of capial outlays, such as computers and communications equipment, as well as consequential loss of revenue and profits due to unscheduled system down-time.
The TDSi100 series of surge suppressors provide economical and reliable protection from voltage transients on power distribution systems. They are conveniently packaged for easy installation on 35 mm DIN rail within main distribution panelboards.

CRTEC * TD technology helps ensure reliable and continued operation during sustained and abnormal over-voltage events. Internal thermal disconnect devices help ensure safe or at end-of-life. A visual indicator flag provides user-feedback in the event of such operation. As standard, the TDS 1100 provides a set of voltage-free contacts for remote signaling that maintenance is due.
The convenient plug-in module and separate base design facilitates replacement of a failed surge module without needing to undo installation wiring.

| Model | TDS11002SR150 | TDS11002SR240 | TDS110025R277 | TDS11002SR560 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nominal Voltage $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{n}}$ | 120-150V- | 220-240V~ | 240-277V- | 480-560V - |
| Max. Cont. Operating Voltage $U_{\text {s }}$ | 170V- | 275V- | 320 V - | 610 V - |
| Stand off Voltage | 240 V - | 440 V - | 480 V - | 700V- |
| Frequency | 0-100Hz |  |  |  |
| Short Circuit Current Rating Isc | 25 kAIC |  |  |  |
| Required Back-up Fuse | 125AgL, if supply > 100A |  |  |  |
| Technology Used | TD with thermal disconnect |  |  |  |
| Protection |  |  |  |  |
| Maximum Discharge Current Imax | 100kA $8 / 20 \mu 5$ |  |  |  |
| Nominal Discharge Current In | 50kA 8/20us | 40kA 8/20 ${ }^{\text {s }}$ | 40kA 8/20 $/ \mathrm{s}$ | 40kA 8/20 ${ }^{\text {s }}$ |
| Protection Modes | Single mode (L-G, L-N or N-G) |  |  |  |
| Voltage Protection Level Up © 3kA | < 400V | $<700 \mathrm{~V}$ | $<800 \mathrm{~V}$ | < 1.6 kV |
| Voltage Protection Level Up © 20kA | $<650$ | $<1000$ | < 1.11 V | $<2 \mathrm{kV}$ |
| Alarms and Indicators |  |  |  |  |
| Status Indication | Mechanical flag / remote contacts ( A model only) Change-over, 250V-10.5A, max $1.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ( H 14 AWG ) terminals |  |  |  |
| Physical Data |  |  |  |  |
| Dimensions | 2 modules wide, $90 \mathrm{~mm} \times 68 \mathrm{~mm} \times 35 \mathrm{~mm}$ |  |  |  |
| Weight | 0.24 kg approx. |  |  |  |
| Endosure | DIN 43880 , UL94V-0 thermoplastic, IP 20 (NEMA-1) |  |  |  |
| Connection | $\begin{aligned} & \leq 35 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \text { (H2AWG) solid } \\ & 525 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \text { (\#4AWG) stranded } \end{aligned}$ |  |  |  |
| Mounting | 35 mm iop hat DiN rail |  |  |  |
| Temperature | $-40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 10 $+80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ( $-40^{\circ} \mathrm{F}$ to $\left.+176^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |  |  |  |
| Humidity | 0 to 90\% |  |  |  |
| Test Standards |  |  |  |  |
| Approvals | CE, IEC ${ }^{\text {T }}$ 61643-1, UL** 1449 Pending |  |  |  |
| Surge Rated to Meel | IEC 61643-1 Class I and II ANSLAEEE C62.41-1991 Cat A, Cal B, Cat C |  |  |  |

Due to a policy of continual produci development, specifications are subject io change without notice.

## DIN Decoupling Inductor/ DINLINE Alarm Relay \& Surge Counter



- Use for decoupling of spark gaps and MOVs - allows correct coordination of different SPD technologies
- $35 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ tunnel terminals - accepts large cable size
- 63A model features top and bottom terminals flexible installation
- The DINLINE Alarm Relay (DAR) is used with TDF products where alarm contacts are required for remote signaling
- The TDS-SC Surge Counter provides a non-resettable record of the number of surges diverted

Decoupling inductors are installed between spark gap and MOV protection devices to ensure correct coordination. As the decoupling inductors are installed in series with the load, two units are available, a compact unit for circuits up to 35A and a larger unit for 63 A circuits.

The DAR (DINLINE Alarm Relay) can be connected to TDF units to provide potential free change-over alarm contacts. The TDS SC (Surge Counter) unit is designed to provide visual indication of the number of surges registered. It uses a current transformer through which the ground conductor connecting to one, or all, of the surge protection modules is fed. Current diverted by the operation of the surge module, which exceeds a 300A trip threshold, will be registered on the counter.


| Model | DDI 35 | DDI 63 | DAR275V | TDS SC |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Item Number for Europe | 700465 | 700475 | 700900 | 701250 |
| Nominal Voltage $U_{n}$ | - | - | 20-110V-3, 100-240V | - |
| System Compatibility(1) | - | - | TN-C, TN-S, TN-C-S \& TT |  |
| Max. Cont. Operating Voltage $U_{c}$ | 500V~200V--- |  | 275 V |  |
| Stand-off Voltage |  |  | 275 V | - |
| Operating Current © U $\mathrm{U}_{\text {n }}$ |  |  | 20 mA |  |
| Frequency | 0 to 60 Hz |  |  |  |
| Max. Line Current ${ }_{\text {, }}$ | 35 A © $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | 63 A © $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | - | - |
| Temperature Increase | $45^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ @ max line current ( 1.$)$ |  | - | - |
| Inductance | $7.5 \mu \mathrm{H}$ | 15 H | - | - |
| Resistance | $4.5 \mathrm{~m} \Omega$ | $1.7 \mathrm{~m} \Omega$ | - | - |
| Technology |  |  | CT - trip threshold 300A $8 / 20 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ |  |
| Status |  |  | Red/Green LEDs Change-over contact ${ }^{(1)}$ | Maximum count 9999 Non-resettable |
| Dimensions | $2 \mathrm{M} .90 \mathrm{~mm} \times 68 \mathrm{~mm} \times 36 \mathrm{~mm}$ $\left(3.5^{\prime \prime} \times 2.6^{\prime \prime} \times 1.4^{\prime \prime}\right)$ approx. | $4 \mathrm{M} .90 \mathrm{~mm} \times 68 \mathrm{~mm} \times 72 \mathrm{~mm}$ ( $3.5^{\prime \prime} \times 2.6^{\prime \prime} \times 2.8^{\prime \prime}$ ) approx. | 2 M . <br> $90 \mathrm{~mm} \times 68 \mathrm{~mm} \times 36 \mathrm{~mm}$ $\left(3.5^{\prime \prime} \times 2.6^{\prime \prime} \times 1.4^{\prime \prime}\right)(e$ |  |
| Weight | 0.45 kg ( 1 lb ) approx. | $1 \mathrm{~kg}(2.2 \mathrm{lb})$ approx. | $0.2 \mathrm{~kg}(0.44 \mathrm{lb})$ |  |
| Enclosure | DIN 43 880, UL94V-0 thermoplastic, IP 20 (NEMA-1) |  |  |  |
| Connection | $\leq 35 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (\#2AWG) solid $\leq 25 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (\#4AWG) stranded |  | $1 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ to $6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (\#18AWG to \#10) |  |
| Mounting | 35 mm top hat DIN rail |  |  |  |
| Back-up Overcurrent Protection | 35A | 63A | $-$ | - |
| Temperature | $-40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-40^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right.$ to $\left.+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |  | $-35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-31^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right.$ to $\left.+131^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |  |
| Humidity | 0\% to 90\% |  |  |  |
| Warranty Approvals | $\begin{aligned} & 5 \text { years } \\ & C E \end{aligned}$ |  | CSA22.2 <br> C-Tick, AS 3260, CE | - |

(1) Form C = Change-over contact (Form C dry contact), 400V~/BA $1 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ to $6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (\#18AWG to \#10AWG) connecting wire

## Transient Discriminating Filter



- In-line series protection
- High efficiency low pass sine wave filtering - ideal for the protection of switched mode power supplies
- Three modes of protection: L-N, L-PE \& N-PE
- 35 mm DIN rail mount - simple installation
- Transient Discriminating (TD) Technology provides increased service life
- LED status indication and opto-isolated output for remote status monitoring

The TDF series has been specifically designed for process control ipplications to protect the switched mode power supply units on devices such as PLC controllers, SCADA systems and motor controllers. Units are UL Recognized and available for 3A, 10A and 20A loads and suitable for $110-120 \mathrm{~V}$ addc and $220-240 \mathrm{Vac}$ circuits.
The TDF is a series connected, single phase surge filter providing an aggregate surge capacity of $50 \mathrm{kA}(8 / 20 \mu \mathrm{~s})$ across L-N, L-PE, and N-PE. The low pass filter provides up to 65 dB of attenuation to voltage transients. Not only does this reduce the residual letthrough voltage, but it also helps further reduce the steep voltage rate-of-rise providing superior protection for sensitive electronic equipment.

| Model | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TDF3A } \\ & 120 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TDF3A } \\ & 240 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TDF10A } \\ & 120 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TDF10A } \\ & 240 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TDF20A } \\ & 120 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { TDF20A } \\ & 240 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Item Number for Europe | 700001 | 700002 | 700003 | 700004 | 700005 | 700006 |
| Nominal Voltage $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{n}}$ | 120 V | 240 V | 120 V | 240 V | 120 V | 240 V |
| Distribution System | 1Ph 2W+G, TN-S \& TN-C-S |  |  |  |  |  |
| Max. Cont. Operating Voltage $U_{c}$ | 170 V | 340 V | 170 V | 340 V | 170 V | 340 V |
| Stand-off Voltage | 240 V | 400 V | 240 V | 400 V | 240 V | 400 V |
| Frequency | 0 to 60 Hz | 50/60Hz | 0 10 60Hz | 0 to 60 Hz | 0 to 60 Hz | $50 / 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ |
| Max. Line Current $\mathrm{I}_{1}$ | 3A |  | 10A |  | 20A |  |
| Operating Current @ Un | 135 mA | 250 mA . | 240 mA | 480 mA | 240 mA | 480 mA |
| Max. Discharge Current $\mathrm{I}_{\max }$ | 20kA 8/20 $\mu \mathrm{S}$ L-N 20kA $8 / 20 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ L-PE 10kA $8 / 20 \mu \mathrm{~s} \mathrm{~N}$-PE |  |  |  |  |  |
| Protection Modes | All modes protected |  |  |  |  |  |
| Technology | TD Technology in-line series low pass sine wave filter |  |  |  |  |  |
| Voitage Protection Level $\mathrm{U}_{\mathrm{p}}$ (40) 500A, $8 / 20 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ (UL SVR) <br> (6) Cat B3, 3kA 8/20 H | $\begin{aligned} & 500 \mathrm{~V} \\ & <250 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\left\{\begin{array}{l} 700 \mathrm{~V} \\ <600 \mathrm{~V} \end{array}\right.$ | $\begin{aligned} & 500 \mathrm{~V} \\ & <250 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 700 \mathrm{~V} \\ & <600 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 500 \mathrm{~V} \\ & <250 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 700 \mathrm{~V} \\ & <600 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ |
| Filtering © 100 kHz | -62dB |  | -65dB |  | -53dB |  |
| Status | Green LED. On=Ok. Isolated opto-coupler output ${ }^{(1)}$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Dimensions | $4 \mathrm{M} .90 \mathrm{~mm} \times 68 \mathrm{~mm} \times 72 \mathrm{~mm}$ <br> $\left(3.5^{\prime \prime} \times 2.6^{\prime \prime} \times 2.8^{\prime \prime}\right)$ <br> $8 \mathrm{M} .90 \mathrm{~mm} \times 68 \mathrm{~mm} \times 144 \mathrm{~mm}$ <br> $\left(3.5^{\prime \prime} \times 2.6^{\prime \prime} \times 5.6^{\prime \prime}\right)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Weight | $0.35 \mathrm{~kg}\langle 0.77 \mathrm{lb}\rangle$ $0.75 \mathrm{~kg}(0.77 \mathrm{lb})$ $0.8 \mathrm{~kg}(1.7 \mathrm{lb})$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Enclosure | DIN 43 880, UL94V-0 thermoplastic, IP 20 (NEMA-1) |  |  |  |  |  |
| Connection | $1 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ to $6 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ (\#18AWG to \#10) |  |  |  |  |  |
| Mounting | 35 mm top hat DIN rail |  |  |  |  |  |
| Back-up Overcurrent Protection | 3A |  |  |  | 20A |  |
| Temperature | $-35^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\left(-31^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $\left.+131^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\right)$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Humidity | 0\% to 90\% |  |  |  |  |  |
| Warranty | 5 years |  |  |  |  |  |
| Approvals | UL 1449, UL 1283, CSA 22.2, C-Tick, CE (NOM 3A, 120V) |  |  |  |  |  |
| Surge Rated to Meet | ANSİAEEE C62.41.2 Cat A, Cat B, Cat C |  |  |  |  |  |

[^10]
## THERMAL OVERLOAD

## 1. CT7 SERIES THERMAL OVERLOAD TECHNICAL DETAILS

Refer cätalogue SACS
Thermal overload relays to IEC 947 and AS 3947


Cat. No. CT 7-24


Cat. No. CT 7-45


Cat. No. CT 7 -75


Cat. No. CT 7-100

CT 7 thermal overload


Cat. No. CT 7-24-P-A
O Tripping class 10 A

- Single phasing sensitivity to IEC 947

O Separate N/O and N/C contacts
O Reset Auto/Man and test facility
O Easy access to control terminals

- Trip indicator

| Standard | Approx $k W$ range | Current |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| motor $k W$ | @ $400 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ | range $A$ |


| motor kW | @ 400/415 V | range $A$ | Suit CA 7 | Cat. No. |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| - | - | 0.1...0.16 | CA 7-9... 37 | CT 7-24-0.16 |  |
| - | - | 0.16...0.24 | CA 7-9... 37 | CT 7-24-0.24 |  |
| - | - | 0.24... 0.4 | CA 7-9... 37 | CT 7-24-0.4 |  |
| - | 0.1...0.17 | 0.4... 0.6 | CA 7-9.. 37 | CT 7-24-0.6 |  |
| - | 0.17..0.34 | 0.6...1.0 | CA 7-9... 37 | CT 7-24-1 |  |
| - | 0.34... 0.6 | 1.0...1.6 | CA 7-9... 37 | CT 7-24-1.6 |  |
| 1.0 | 0.6.. 1.0 | 1.6...2.4 | CA 7-9... 37 | CT 7-24-2.4 |  |
| 1.5 | 1.0..1.8 | 2.4...4 | CA 7-9.. 37 | CT 7-24-4 |  |
| 2.2 | 1.8...2.7 | 4... 6 | CA 7-9... 37 | CT 7-24-6 |  |
| 4 | 2.7..5.0 | 6... 10 | CA 7-9... 37 | CT 7-24-10 |  |
| 5.5/7.5 | 5.0.. 8.0 | 10... 16 | CA 7-12... 37 | CT 7-24-16 |  |
| 11 | 8.0... 12.5 | 16... 24 | CA 7-23... 37 | CT 7-24-24 |  |
| 11/15 | 9... 16 | 18... 30 | CA 7-30... 43 | CT 7-45-30 ${ }^{\text {) }}$ |  |
| 18.5/22 | 16... 24 | 30... 45 | CA 7-37... 43 | CT 7-45-45 ${ }^{\text { }}$ |  |
| 11/15 | 9... 16 | 18... 30 | CA 7-60... 85 | СТ-7.75-30 |  |
| 18.5/22 | 16... 24 | 30... 45 | CA 7-60... 85 | CT 7-75-45 |  |
| 30 | 24... 33 | 45... 60 | CA 7-60... 85 | CT 7-75-60 |  |
| 37 | 33... 41 | 60... 75 | CA 7-72... 85 | CT 7-75-75 |  |
| 45 | 40... 45 | 70... 90 | Separate mount | CT 7-100-90 |  |

Notes: ${ }^{2}$ ) CT 7-45 cannot be separately mounted, use CT $7-75$ with equivalent current rating.


Refer Catalogue C-CO
MCCB or fuse DOL starting 50/65 kA @ 400/415 V to AS 3947.4.1

## TemBreak Moulded Case Circuit Breaker or fuse

Terasaki

| Motor size kW | Approx. amps |  | NHP HRC fuse to BS88 | Sprecher + Schuh contactor type | Sprecher + Schuh thermal $0 / L$ relay type | Setting range amps |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | XM30PB/1.4 | NTIA-6 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | XM30PB/2 | NTIA-6 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | ХМ30РВ $/ 2.6$ | NTIA-10 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1.6-2.4 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | XM30PB/4.0 | NTIA-10 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | ХM30РB/5 | NTIA-10 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | XM30PB/8 | NTIA-16 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 4-6 |
| 3.0 | 6.5 | XM30PB/10 | NTIA-16 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 4.0 | 8.2 | XM30PB/12 | NTIA-25 | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 5.5 | 11 | XH125NJ/20 | NTIA-32 | CA 7-12 | CT 7-24 | 10-16 |
| 7.5 | 14 | XH125NJ/20 | NTIS-40 | CA 7-16 | CT 7-24 | 10-16 |
| 11 | 21 | XH125NJ/32 | NTIS-50 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 16-24 |
| 15 | 28 | XH125NJ/50 | NTIS-63 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-45 | 18-30 |
| 18.5 | 34 | XH125NJ/50 | NTCP-80 | CA 7-37 | CT 7-45 | 30-45 |
| 22 | 40 | XH125NJ/63 | NTCP-80 | CA 7-43 | CT 7-45 | 30-45 |
| 30 | 55 | XH125NJ/100 | NTCP-100 | CA 7-60 | CT 7-75 | 45-60 |
| 37 | 66 | XH125NJ/100 | NTF-160 | CA 7-72 | CT 7-75 | 60-75 |
| 45 | 80 | XH125NJ/125 ) | NTF-160 | CA 6-85 | CT 7-100 | 70-90 |
| 55 | 100 | XH125NJ/125 ) | NTF-200 | CA 6-105-EI | CT 6-110 | 85-110 |
| 75 | 130 | XH250NJ/250 | NTKF-250 | CA 6-140-EI | CT 6-150 | 105-150 |
| 90 | 155 | XH250NJ/250 ${ }^{\text {) }}$ | NTKF-250 | CA 6-170-EI | CT 6-200 | 140-200 |
| 110 | 200 | XH250NJ/250 ${ }^{\text {') }}$ | NTKF-315 | CA 6-210-E1 | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 132 | 225 | XH400NE/400 | NTMF-355 | CA 6-210-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 150 | 250 | XH400NE/400 | NTMF-355 | CA 6-250-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 160 | 270 | XH400NE/400 | NTMF-400 | CA 6-300-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 185 | 310 | XH400NE/400 | NTTF-450 | CA 6-300-EI | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 200 | 361 | XH400NE/400 | NTTM-500 | CA 6-420-EI/CA 5-450 | CEF 1-41/42 | 160-400 |
| 250 | 425 | XH630NE/630 | NTTM-630 | CA 6-420-EI/CA 5-450 | CEF 1-52 | 160-630 |
| 315 | 530 | XH630NE/630 | NTLM-710 | CA 5-550 | CEF 1-52 | 160-630 |

Notes: Fuses 65 kA . XH 125 NJ circuit breaker combinations limited to 50 kA , others 65 kA . Overloads may be changed to different types eg. thermal style to electronic. Some combinations also gives Type ' 2 ' performance $\left.{ }^{1}\right)$ Use 'magnetic only' breaker - Refer NHP.
240/415 V rating suitable for use on 230/400 V in accordance with AS 60038: 2000



Din-T circuit breakers with rotary isolator. DOL starting.
50 kA @ 400/415 V to AS 3947.4.1

| Motor <br> size <br> kW | Approx. amps @ $400 / 415$ V | Sprecher + Schuh isolator | Terasaki circuit breaker | Sprecher + Schuh current limiter | Sprecher + Schuh contactor | Sprecher + <br> Schuh <br> thermal <br> O/L relay | Thermal overload range |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0.37 | 1.1 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/4 | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 0.6-1.6 |
| 0.55 | 1.5 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/4 | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1-1.6 |
| 0.75 | 1.8 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/4 | - | CA 7-9 | CT 7-24 | 1.6-2.4 |
| 1.1 | 2.6 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 6$ | - | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 1.5 | 3.4 | LA 7-80 | Din-T $10 / 6$ | - | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 2.4-4 |
| 2.2 | 4.8 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/10 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 4-6 |
| 3 | 6.5 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/16 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 4 | 8.2 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/16 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 6-10 |
| 5.5 | 11 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/20 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-23 | CT 7-24 | 10-16 |
| 7.5 | 14 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/32 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-45 | 10-16 |
| 11 | 21 | LA 7-80 | Din-T 10/40 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-30 | CT 7-24 | 16-24 |
| 15 | 28 | LA 7-100 | Din-T 10/63 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-37 | CT 7-45 | 18-30 |
| 18.5 | 34 | LA 7-100 | Din-T 10 / 63 | KTL 3-65 | CA 7-37 | CT 7-45 | 30-45 |

Note: $\quad 240 / 415 \mathrm{~V}$ rating suitable for use on $230 / 400 \mathrm{~V}$ in accordance with AS 60038: 2000



Contactor, timer and overload selection chart for star delta starters

| SDS kW | Line contactor | Delta contactor | Star contactor | Timer | Overload |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7.5 | CA 7-9-10 | CA 7-9-01 | CA 7-9-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-12-10 |
| 11 | CA 7-12-10 | CA 7-12-01 | CA 7-9-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| 15 | CA 7-16-10 | CA 7-16-01 | CA 7-9-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| 18.5 | CA 7-23-10 | CA 7-23-01 | CA 7-12-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| 22 | CA 7-23-10 | CA 7-23-01 | CA 7-16-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M32-32-10 |
| 30-37 | CA 7-37-00 | CA 7-37-00 | CA 7-23-01 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M45-45-10 |
| 45 | CA 7-60-11 | CA 7-60-11 | CA 7-30-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 55 | CA 7-60-11 | CA 7-60-11 | CA 7-37-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 75 | CA 7-85-00 | CA 7-85-00 | CA 7-43-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEP 7-M85-85-10 |
| 90 | CA 6-85-11 | CA 6-85-11 | CA 7-60-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-90 |
| 110 | CA 6-105-11 | CA 6-105-11 | CA 7-72-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-110 |
| 132 | CA 6-140El-11 | CA 6-140El-11 | CA 7-85-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CT 6-150 |
| 150 | CA 6-170EI-11 | CA 6-170El-11 | CA 6-85-00 | RZ7 FSY2D | CTA 6-200 |
| 185 | CA 6-210El-11 | CA 6-210El-11 | CA 6-105-11 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |
| 220 | CA 6-210-El-11 | CA 6-210-EI-11 | CA 6-140-EI-11 | RZ7 FSY2D | CEF 1-41 |



Separate mounting with bracket


Separate mounting


| Type | $\mathbf{a}$ | $\mathbf{b}$ | $\mathbf{b 1}$ | $\mathbf{c}$ | $\mathbf{c 1}$ | $\mathbf{c 2}$ | $\mathbf{c 3}$ | od | d1 | d2 | e1 | e2 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CT 7-24 | 45 | 85 | 44 | 95 | 70.5 | 5 | 51 | 4.5 | $60 \ldots 74$ | $\left.35^{\prime}\right)$ | 16 | 3 |
| CT 7-75 | 60 | 90 | 44 | 117 | 112 | 15 | 51 | 5.4 | 74 | $\left.50^{\prime}\right)$ | 16 | 0 |
| CT 7-90 | 100 | 120 | - | 135 | - | 5 | 51 | 6.2 | 74 | $\left.80^{\prime}\right)$ | 16 | 7 |

Notes:
) Standard DIN rail to EN 50 022-35.
${ }^{2}$ ) With reset rod, maintain 9 mm maximum operating radius from centre of reset button.
c3 Reset magnet.
c4 Auxiliary Contact block.


Tripping characteristics
These tripping characteristics comply with IEC 947 and are the mean values of the bands at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ambient temperature starting from the cold state. Tripping time as a function of operating current. When the motor reaches operating temperature, the tripping time of the motor protection relay falls to approximately $1 / 4$ of the set value (hot state).


CT 7-24..., СT 7-45..., СT 7-75...


CT 7-100-90


Single phase
1 pole switching


Single phase 2 pole switching


Three phase
3 pole switching

## TIMER

1. IDEC DIGITAL TIMER TECHNICAL DETAILS
2. ELECTRONIC TIMING RELAY TECHNICAL DETAILS

## GT3D - Digital Timers

Key features of the GT3D series include:

- Precise time setting using digital thumbwheel switches
- Elapsed or time remaining LCD display
- 6 time ranges, 16 timing functions
- Time delays up to 99.9 hours


UL Recognized File No. E55996

Cert. No. BL9801133323911 (IVD) Cert. №. E9971113332388 (EMC)


Specifications


## Part Number List



Part Numbers: GT3D-8


1. For wiring schematics and timing diagrams GT3D, see pages 815 to 822
2. For more details about time ranges. see instructions on page 823.
3. $A(11$-pin) and $B(11$-pin) differ in the way inputs are wired
4. For socket and accessory part numbers, see page 838 .
5. For timing diagrams oveview, see page 794 .

## Tirming Diagrams/Schematics

GT3D-2 Timing Diagrams
Delayed SPDT + Instantaneous SPDT


GT3D-3 Timing Diagrams
Delayed DPDT

|  |
| :---: |

Mode Selection



Interval 1
Time Remaining
1-B

Cycle 3
(ON irst)
Time Remaining
1 -D


## GT3D-4 Timing Diagrams

These timers require a start input. A gate and reset input are optional. Inputs are controlled by external pushbuttons. Reset occurs when the power is removed or when the reset input is supplied. The gate signal can be used to interrupt (freeze) timer functions. Timer functions resume when the gate input is removed. 8 style timers are not equipped for gate input.

## Delayed DPDT



Interval 1
Time Remaining



Terminal Blocks

Timers

GT3D-4 Timing Diagrams


GT3D Series
Timers

GT3D-4 Timing Diagrams


## GT3D-4 Timing Diagrams

## One-Shot ON-Delay

Time Remaining
$3-D$

| Time Elapsed |
| :---: |
| 3 |



Signal ON/OFF-Delay 3
Time Remaining

Time Elapsed
$3-F$


GT3D Series
Timers

GT3D-8 Timing Diagrams
Delayed DPDT
Switches \& Pilot Liglits

Display Lights
Operation
Mode Selection


A
$\mathrm{Ta}=$ Shorter than set time
$\mathrm{Tb}=$ Shorter than single-shot output time
$\mathrm{T}=\mathrm{T}^{+}+\mathrm{T}^{\prime}$
TO $=$ Single-shot output time (selected from A, B, C, D, E or F)

Instructions: Setting GT3D-2, GT3D-3 Timers

 Changing the (3) Time Range Selector setting changes the units of time measurement (seconds, minutes, hours) as well as the decimal point location.

Instructions: Setting GT3D-4 Timers

| Step 1 |  | Desired | ode/Selection |  | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Select the desired time display and operation modes. | Time Display Mods | (1) Indicator Mode Selector | Operation Mode | (2) Operation Mode Selector | 1. Use a flat screwdriver to set the selectors. Since selectors do not tum all the way around, both clockwise and counterclockwise rotation is necessary. <br> 2. The $\Phi$ Indicator Mode Selector determines whether the Digital Time Display shows the time elapsed or time remaining. The (2) Operation Mode Selector determines the desired operation mode. Decide which display and mode is desired; then use these two selectors(1) to set the operation mode. <br> 3. When using the indicator mode setting "1," the Operation Mode Selector has two blank modes which are not intended for use. When using mode setting "1," always have the operation mode selector set to A. B. C. or D. |
|  | Time elapsed | 1 | ON-delay 1 Interval 1 Cycle 1 D: Cycle 3 | $\begin{aligned} & A \\ & B \\ & C \\ & D \end{aligned}$ |  |
|  | Time remaining. | 1 |  |  |  |
|  | Time elapsed | 2 | ON -delay 2 <br> Cycle 2 <br> Signal ON/OFF-delay 2 <br> Signal OFF-delay 1 <br> Interval 2 <br> One-shot cycle | $\begin{gathered} \text { A } \\ \text { B } \\ \text { C } \\ 0 \\ \text { E } \\ \text { F } \end{gathered}$ |  |
|  | Time remaining | 21 |  |  |  |
|  | Time elapsed | 3 | Signal ON/OFF-delay 2 <br> Signal OFF-delay 2 <br> One-shot 1 <br> One-shot ON-delay <br> One-shot 2 <br> Signal ON/OFF-delay 3 | $\begin{aligned} & A \\ & B \\ & C \\ & D \\ & D \\ & E \\ & F \end{aligned}$ |  |
|  | Time remaining | 3 |  |  |  |
| Step 2 | Desired Operation |  | Sulaction |  | Remarks |
| Select a time range that contains the desired period of time. | Basà Time Ranges |  | (1) Time Range Selector. |  | 1. The (3) Time Range Selector controls both the decimal paint indicator ( $9.99,99.9,999$ ) and the time increment indicators $S$ (seconds), M (minutes), and H (hours): |
|  |  |  | Decimal Point Indicator | Time Increment Indicator |  |
|  | 0.01 seconds to 9.99 seconds |  | 9.99 | S | 2. Chose which base time range contains the targeted timer setting. Then use the (1) Time'Range Selector to set the decimal point indicator and time increment indicator to its corresponding pair of settings. |
|  | 0.1 seconds to 99.9 seconds |  | 99.9 |  |  |
|  | 1 second to 999 seconds |  | 999 |  |  |
|  | 0.1 minutes to 99.9 minutes |  | 99.9 | M | 3. Since these configurations offer a complete range of settings from 0.01 seconds to 99.9 hours, the setting of 9.99 for minutes and the 9.99 and 999 settings for hours are not listed and should not be used. |
|  | 1 minute to 999 minutes |  | 999. |  |  |
|  | 0.1 hours to 99.9 hours |  | 99.9 | H |  |
| Stiej 3 | Desired Operation |  | Selection |  | Remarks |
| Set the precise period of time desired by using the (4) Time Setting Digital Switch. |  |  |  |  | Use the (4) Time Setting Digital Switch to set the desired period of time. It is important to remember that the setting of the (3) Time Range Selector determines the units of time measurement as well as the implied decimal point location. |

It is important to remember that the (1) Time Aange Selector not only selects the time range but also influences the interpretation of the Digital Time Display.
Changing the (3) Time Range Selector setting changes the units of time measurement (seconds, minutes, hours) as well as the decimal point location.

Instructions: Setting GT3D-8 Timers


| Step 1 | Desired Mode of Operation |  |  | ction | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Select the time display and operation modes. | Operation RAode | Time Display Moder | © Indicator | Mode Solactor | 1. Use a flat screwdriver to set the selectors. Since selectors do not tum all the way around, both clockwise and counterclockwise rotation is necessary. <br> 2. The GT3D-8 © Indicator Mode Selector selects both whether the Digital Time Display displays the time elapsed or time remaining and also the mode of operation. Decide which display and mode is desired. Then use this selector to set the operation mode. |
|  | ON-Delay One-Shot | Time elapsed |  |  |  |
|  |  | Time remaining |  | 1 |  |
|  | Cycle One-Shot | Time elapsed |  | 2 |  |
|  |  | Time remaining |  | 2 |  |
|  | ON-Delay One-Shot 2 | Time elapsed |  | 3 |  |
|  |  | Time remaining, |  | 3. 1 |  |
| Step 2 | Desired Mode of Operation |  | Solection |  | Rémärks |
| Select the single shot output time. | $\therefore \quad$Desired Single-Shot <br> Output Time |  | Q Single-Shot Oưtiput Time Selector |  | On the GT3D-8 timers. the desired single-shot output time can be selected from the A, B, C, D, E, and F modes using the (2) One-Shot Output Time Selector. |
|  | 0.1 seconds |  | A |  |  |
|  | 0.5 seconds |  | B |  |  |
|  | 1 second |  | C |  |  |
|  | 5 seconds |  | D |  |  |
|  | 10 seconds |  | E |  |  |
|  | 50 seconds |  | $F$ |  |  |
| Step 3 | Dosired Operation |  | Selection |  | Remarks |
| Select a time range. that contains the desired period of time. | Base Time Renges |  | (3) Tima Range Selector |  | 1. The (1) Time Range Selector controls both the decimal point indicator ( $9.99,99.9,999$ ) and the time increment indicators $S$ (seconds). M (minutes), and H (hours). <br> 2. Chose which base time renge contains the targeted timer setting. Then use the (3) Time Range Selector to set the decimal point indicator and time increment indicator to its corresponding pair of settings. 3. Since these configurations offer a complete range of settings from 0.01 seconds to 99.9 hours, the setting of 9.99 for minutes and the 9.99 and 999 settings for hours are not listed and should not be used. |
|  |  |  | Decimal Point Indicator. | Time Increment Indicator |  |
|  | 0.01 seconds to 9.99 seconds |  | 9.99 | S |  |
|  | 0.1 seconds to 99.9 seconds |  | 99.9 |  |  |
|  | 1 second to 999 seconds |  | 999 |  |  |
|  | 0.1 minutes to 99.9 minutes |  | 99.9 | - M |  |
|  | 1 minute to 999 minutes |  | 999 |  |  |
|  | 0.1 hours to 99.9 hours |  | 99.9 | H |  |
| Step 4 | Desired Operation |  | Selection |  | Remarks. |
| Set the precise period of time desired by using the (11) Time Setting Digital Switch. |  |  |  |  | Use the (4) Time Setting Oigital Switch to set the desired period of time. It is important to remember that the setting of the © Time Range Selector determines the units of time measurement as well as the implied decimal point location. |

It is important to remember that the © Time Range Selector not only selects the time range but also influences the interpretation of the Digital Time Display.
Changing the (3) Time Range Selector setting changes the units of time measurement (seconds, minutes, hours) as well as the decimal point location.


Panel Mounting Accessories
Panel Mount Sockets and Hold-Down Springs

| Panel Mount Socket |  |  | Applicable HD Springs |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Style. | Appearance | Use with Timers | Part No . | Appearance | Part No . |
| 8-Pin Solder Terminal |  | GT3A- (8-pin) <br> GT3D-(0-pin) <br> GT3W- (8-pin) <br> GT3F- (8-pin) <br> GT3S | SR2P-51 |  |  |
| 11-Pin Solder Temminal |  | GT3A-(11-pin) GT3D-(11-pin) GT3W-(11-pin) GT3F-(11-pin) | SR3P-51 |  |  |

For information on installing the hold-down springs, see page 838.

Flush Panel Mount Adapter and Sockets that use an Adapter

| Accessory | Dascripition | Appearance | Usp with Timars | Par No . |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Panel Mount Adapter | Adaptor for fush panel mounting GT3 timers |  | All GT3 timers | RTT-G01 |
| Sockets for use with Panel Mount Adapter | Q-pin screw terminal | (Shown: SR6P-M08G for Wiring Socket Adapter) | All 8 -pin timers | SF6P-M036 |
|  | 11-pin screw teminal |  | All 11 -pin timers | S868-M116 |
|  | 8-pin solder temminal. |  | All \&-pin timers | SR6P-SOB |
|  | 11-pin solder terminal |  | All 1-pin timers | SR6P-S11 |

## Instructions: Wiring Inputs for GT3 Series



Input signal lines must be made as short as possible and installed away from power cables and power lines. Use shielded wires or a separate conduit for input wiring.

## Inputs Instructions, continued

For contact input, use gold-plated contacts to make sure that the residual voltage is less than 1 V when the contacts are closed.


For transistor input, use transistors with the following specifications; VCE $=40 \mathrm{~V}$. VCES $=1 \mathrm{~V}$ or less, $I C=50 \mathrm{~mA}$ or more, and $I C B 0=50 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ or less. The resistance should be less than $1 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ when the transistor is on. When the output transistor switches on, a signal is input to the timer.


Inputs: GT3A-1, -2, -3
Transistor output equipment such as proximity switches and photoelectric switches can input signals if they are voltage/current output type. with power voltage ranges from 18 to 30 V and have 1 V . When the signal voltage switches from H to L . a signal is input to the timer


Inputs: GT3A-4, -5, -6

| Start Inpurt | The start input initiates a time-delay operation and controls <br> output status. | No-voltage contact inputs and NPN open collector tonsis- <br> tor inputs are applicable. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Reset Inpurt | When the reset input is activated, the time is reset, and <br> contacts return to original state. | 24V DC, 1 ImA maximum |
| Gate Input | The time-delay operation is suspended while the gate input <br> is on (pause). | Input response time: 50msec maximum |

## Dimensions



NOTE: GT3W series are UL Listed when used in combination
with following IDEC's sockets:
With following IDEC's sockets:
GT3W-A11, A33: SR2P-06* pin type socket.
The socke (*-May be followed by A.B.C or U)
The socket to be used with these timers are rated
-Conductor Temperature Rating $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ min
-Use 14AWG max. ( $2 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ max.) Copper conductors only
-Terminal Torque 1.0 to $1.3 \mathrm{~N}-\mathrm{m}$

Analog GT3 Timer, 8-Pin with SR2P-06


Digital GT3 Timer, 8-Pin with SR2P-06


Analog GT3 Timer, 11-Pin with SR3P-05


Analog GT3 Timer, 11-Pin with SR3P-06


Digital GT3 Timer, 11-Pin with SR3P-06


Digital GT3 Timer, 11-Pin with SR3P-05


## Panel Mount Adapter

Analog GT3 Timer, 8-Pin and 11-Pin with SR6P-S08 or SR6P-S11

Digital GT3 Timer, 8-Pin and 11-Pin with SR6P-S08 or SR6P-S11


## Mounting Hole Layout



Tolerance: +0.5 to 0 N : No. of timers mounted

Analog and Digital GT3 Timer, 8-Pin with SR6P-M08G


Analog and Digital GT3 Timer, 11-Pin with SR6P-M11G


## General Instructions for All Timer Series

## Load Current

With inductive, capacitive, and incandescent lamp loads, inrush current more than 10 times the rated current may cause welded contacts and other undesired effects. The inrush current and steady-state current must be taken into consideration when specifying a timer.

## Contact Protection

Switching an inductive load generates a counter-electromotive force (back EMF) in the coil. The back EMF will cause arcing, which may shorten the contact life and cause imperfect contact. Application of a protection circuit is recommended to safeguard the contacts.

## Temperature and Humidity

Use the timer within the operating temperature and operating humidity ranges and prevent freezing or condensation. After the timer has been stored below its operating temperature, leave the timer at room temperature for a sufficient period of time to allow it to return to operating temperatures before use.

## Environment

Avoid contact between the timer and sulfurous or ammonia gases, organic solvents (alcohol, benzine, thinner, etc.), strong alkaline substances, or strong acids. Do not use the timer in an environment where such substances are prevalent. Do not allow water to run or splash on the timer.

## Vibration and Shock

Excessive vibration or shocks can cause the output contacts to bounce, the timer should be used only within the operating extremes for vibration and shock resistance. In applications with significant vibration or shock, use of hold down springs or clips is recommended to secure a timer to its socket.

## Time Setting

The time range is calibrated at its maximum time scale; so it is desirable to use the timer at a setting as close to its maximum time scale as possible. For a more accurate time delay, adjust the controf knob by measuring the operating time with a watch before application.

## Input Contacts

Use mechanical contact switch or relay to supply power to the timer. When driving the timer with a solid-state output device (such as a two-wire proximity switch, photoelectric switch, or solid-state relayl, malfunction may be caused by leakage current from the solid-state device. Since AC types comprise a capacitive load, the SSR dielectric strength should be two or more times the power voltage when switching the timer power using an SSR.

Generally, it is desirable to use mechanical contacts whenever possible to apply power to a timer or its signal inputs. When using solid state devices, be cautious of inrushes and back-EMF that may exceed the ratings on such devices. Some timers are specially designed so that signal inputs switch at a lower voltage than is used to power the timer (models designated as " $B$ " type).

## Timing Accuracy Formulas

Timing accuracies are calculated from the following formulas:

| Repeat Error | $= \pm \frac{1 \times \text { Maximum Measured Value }- \text { Minimum Measured Value } \times 100 \%}{2 \text { Maximum Scale Value }}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Voltage Error | $= \pm \frac{\mathrm{TV}-\operatorname{Tr} \times 100 \%}{\mathrm{Tr}}$ |

Tv: Average of measured values at voltage $V$
Ir: Average of measured values at the rated voltage
Temperature Error

$$
= \pm \frac{\mathrm{Tt}-\mathrm{T} 20 \times 100 \%}{\mathrm{~T} 20}
$$

It: Average of measured values at ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
T20: Average of measured values at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$

$$
\text { Setting Error } \quad= \pm \frac{\text { Average of Measured Values - Set Value } \times 100 \%}{\text { Maximum Scale Value }}
$$

sprecher+
schuh
Technical Information

Technical Data


Dimensions


Panel Mount Adaptor (26.506:221-01)

- Dimensions are in millimeters
- Oimensions not intended for manufacturing purposes


Halmac Services (Qld) Pty. Ldd. AC.N. 098852923
ABN 40741712113

## TEST SHEET

## 1. PUMP STATION SP055 TEST SHEET

# Mallmac Services (Qld) Pty Ltd <br> ACN 098852923 ABN 40741712113 ECL $53064^{\circ}$ 

30 Palmer Place, Murarrie Qld 4172
All hours. Telephone (07) 32499500
Email: info@halmac.net.au

## CERTIFICATE OF:

(Please mark relevant check-box)

TESTING AND COMPLIANCE ( Electrical
Issued in accordance with 5159 of the Electrical Safety Regutelion 2002
$\triangle$ TESTING AND SAFETY
Issued in accordance with 515 of the Electrical Salety Regufation 2002
installations Electrical equipment

* Work performed for:

*Address $\frac{\text { LEVEL 2, T.C.BEIRNE CENTRE, } 315 \text { BRUNSWICK STREET }}{\text { Street }}$
$\frac{\text { FORTITUDE VALLEY }}{\text { Suburblown }} \frac{4006}{\text { Postrode }}$
* Electrical installation / equipment tested (detailed list of all work done):

REPLACEMENT OF SEWERAGE PUMP STATION SP055
AS PER QUU DRAWINGS 486/5/7-0109-000 TO 027

* Date of test $12 / 08 / 2010$ * Electrical contractor licence number 53064

Name on contractor licence Halmac Services Qld Pty Ltd
Electrical contractor phone number 0732499500
For electrical installations, this certifies that the electrical installation, to the extent it is affected by the electrical work, has been tested to ensure that it is electrically safe and is in accordance with the requirements of the wiring rules and any other standard applying under the Electrical Safety Regulation 2002 to the electrical installation.
For electrical equipment, this certifies that the electrical equipment, to the extent it is affected by the electrical work, is electrically safe.


## DESIGN \& INSPECTION ROUTE SCHEDULE



IS THIS SWITCHBOARD IDENTICAL, OR SIMILAR, TO A PREVIOUS DESIGN? YES (DELETE AS APPLICABLE) IF "NO" COMPLETE SWITCHBOARD DESIGN REVIEW. IF "YES" PROVIDE PREVIOUS DRAWING NO. REFERENCE ....min........................... $S$ (tick applicable section below: yes / no / N/A (Not Applicable)


Inspected by:
 a ................ of fhocinlufic......... date: $14 / 07 / 110$. of

DATE:
$\qquad$ of $\qquad$ DATE: $\qquad$

TEST RESULTS


6 Halmac Services (Qld) Pty Ltd

## RCD TEST RECORD

| CUSTOMER: | QUV | PROJECT NAME: | SPOS5 | PROJECT OFFICER: JCS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| JOB NO: | $4-1230$ | SWITCHBOARD NAME: | い | DRAWING NO: 010 Ca - 00 iA |

TEST EQUIPMENT USED
TEST DEVICE: WATTMASTER DRCD1900 DIGITAL RCD TESTER SERIAL No: 91096273 Y PLANT No: HALMAC \#5096 CALIBRATION TEST DATE: 12 AUGUST 2008 TEST NO: STD 5503 CALIBRATION DUE DATE: 10 FEBRUARY 2009

TEST RESULTS

| RCD | $\begin{aligned} & \text { CURRENT } \\ & \text { (mA) } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | TIME (ms) @ X 1/2 |  | TIME (ms) @ X 1 |  | PASS or | COMMENTS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| No |  | 0-180 | 180-360 | 0-180 | 180-360 | FAIL (P/F) |  |
| 区11 | 30 | OL | OL | 42 | 5 | P |  |
| Q, 12 | 30 | 1 | \% | 29 | 19 | $P$ |  |
| Q, 13 | 30 | 1 | 11 | 28 | 19 | $\checkmark$ |  |
| Q14 | 30 | $1!$ | 1 | 28 | 19 | $\checkmark$ |  |
| Q15 | 3 | 11 | 1 | 29 | 19 | $\checkmark$ |  |
| 816 | 30 | 11 | 1 | 32 | 23 | $\checkmark$ |  |
| Q 19 | 30 | 1 | 11 | 28 | 18 | $\checkmark$ |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |




CA17a - Factory Inspection Tests
Hajor Projects \& Commercial Services SQUV SP Reliability Improve - Stage2
$\square$

## A. Electrical Instaliation Test Records

AS/NZS 3000:2007 requires that prior to place an electrical installation or any part thereof in service following its construction, alteration, addition or repair, it shall be inspected and tested to verify that the installation is safe to energize and that it will operate correctly in accordance with the requirements of AS3000:2007.

This section is aimed to ensure that the switchboard manufacturer has carried out and documented all applicable AS3000:2007 tests considered as mandatory, prior to execution of the Factory Acceptance Test.
AS/NZS 3017 Electrical Installations - Verification Guidelines provides inspection, test methods and test acceptance parameters to verify AS3000:2007 safety requirements, however these methods are provided for guidance and other alternative methods are acceptable, AS3017:2007 may be applied through legislative requirements made in each State and Territory of Australia and in New Zealand.

| liem | Activity Descripfion | Results |  |  | Signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| No. |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| A. 1 | Records for the verification of the continuity and resistance of the earthing system shall include: <br> a) Main earthing conductor <br> b) Protective earthing conductors <br> c) Earth bonding conductors. |  |  |  |  | For acceptance criteria and test methods refer to: <br> AS3000:2007 Section 8.3.5 <br> AS3017:2007 Section 3.1 |


| Doc Id: | CA-17a |
| :--- | :--- |
| Printed: | $9 / 1 / 2010$ |
| Note: | Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy. |

Untan
UrbanUtilities

| liem No. | Actlvity Description | Results |  |  | Signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| A. 2 | Records for the verification of insulation Resistance shall include: <br> a) Insulation resistance test of complete installation <br> b) Insulation resistance test of consumers mains <br> c) Insulation resistance test of single circuits |  |  |  |  | For acceptance criteria and test methods refer to: <br> AS3000:2007 Section 8.3.6 <br> AS3017:2007 Section 3.2 |
| A. 3 | Records for the verification of Polarity Tests records shall include: <br> a) Consumer mains <br> b) Submains incorporating an earthing conductor <br> C) Submains not incorporating a protective earthing conductor <br> d) Subcircuit polarity connections test lincluding single pole switches) <br> e) Phase sequence tests |  |  |  |  | For acceptance criteria and test methods refer to: <br> AS3000:2007 Section 8.3.7 <br> AS3017:2007 Sections 3.3 and 3.5 |

UrbanUtilities

| lifem No. | Acfivity Description | Results |  |  | Signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| A. 4 | Records for the verification of Correct Circuit connection tests records shall include: <br> a) Interconnection between conductors of different circuits <br> b) Socket-Outlet Sub-Circuits <br> c) Ligthing Points <br> d) Equipment Sub-circuits |  |  |  |  | For acceptance criteria and test methods refer to: <br> AS3000:2007 Section 8.3.8 <br> AS3017:2007 Section 3.4 |
| A. 5 | Records for the verification of earth fault-loop for impedance shall include: <br> a) Circuits not protected by an RCD |  |  |  |  | For acceptance criteria and test methods refer to: <br> AS3000:2007 Section 8.3.9 <br> AS3017:2007 Section 3.6 |
| A. 6 | Records for the verification of operation of RCDs shall include: <br> a) Circuits protected by an RCD |  |  |  |  | For acceptance criteria and test methods refer to: <br> AS3000:2007 Section 8.3.10 <br> AS3017:2007 Section 3.7 |

Contractor's iester Signature
Queensland Urban Utilities Electrical Inspector
Doc 1d: CA-i7a
Printed: $9 / 07 / 2010$
Nose: $\quad$ Printed copies of this document should be verifed for currency against the pubished electronic copy.

Note: Printed copies of this document should the verified for currency against the published electronic copy

## 8. Testing Area, Documentation and iest Set Up Arrangements

This section is aimed to ensure that all documentation and test set up arrangements have been provided to allow execution and readiness to carry out the FAT.


| Doc Id: | CA-17a |  |  | 15 | Queensland Urban Uulities Confidı |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Printed: | 9/07/2010 |  | Ov | Alfonso Chavez | Page 4 |
| N | Printed copies of this document should be verified for curri | gainst the published electronic copy. |  |  |  |

## C. Visual Inspections - Sheet hetal / Arechanical Construction Works

The following visual inspections shall take place previous to energising the switchboard circuits. All power supplies shall be disconnected, including the main power supply, generator power supplies and battery power supplies.

| liem No. | Acfivity Descripfion | Resulis |  |  | signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| C. 1 | Switchboard dimensions correct as per contract drawings | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 2 | Panel layout as per drawings | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 3 | All equipment is to be removable from switchboord via front access. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| c. 4 | Power distribution chassis not to be installed too close to the left of the door aperture | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 5 | Check operation and orientation of doors and door handles | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 6 | Switchboard mounting feet as per drawing | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| c. 7 | Material finish as per specification | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 8 | IP Rating as per specifications. Fitting of sun shields shall maintain IP56 rating. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 9 | All Dolts fitted / tight | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 10 | All sheet metal edging to be de-burred. special attention given to hande/lock access heat shield cuts. | j |  |  |  |  |


| Doc Id: | CA-17a | Rev: 15 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Printed: | $9 / 07 / 2010$ | Owner. Alfonso Chavez |
| Note: | Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy. |  |

CA17a - Factory Inspection Tests

Anajor Projects \& Commercial Bervices
SQUV SP Reliability Improve - Stage2

| Hem No. | Activity Description | Results |  |  | Signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| C. 11 | Door. hinges and locks are properly fitted to allow closing without forcing the door or being loose. | $J$ |  |  |  |  |
| c. 12 | Lock barrels are mounted neatly. Ooor penetration and holes shall be suited to the particular lock barrel type. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 13 | Lock borrel types are provided as required and operate correctly | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 14 | Energex Padlock Supplied | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 15 | All doors sealing shall be properly fitted and firmly secured to the switchboard. Glue shall be provided if necessary. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 16 | Verify that proximity switch metal plates are fixed to doors as indicated in the drawings. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 17 | Ensure to pre-drill holes in plates that are difficult to access after the construction or installotion of the switchboard on site. <br> Particular attention shall be given to internal barrier plates and access plate on distribution board. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 18 | Cut outs from one cubicle to another please shall be large enough to accommodate all cables. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 19 | Sealing between plinth and switchboard. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 20 | Sealing of disconnect zone. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |


| Doc Id: | CA-17a |  |  | 15 | Queensland Urban Utititias Confid |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Printed: | 9/07/2010 |  | 0 | Alfonso Chavez | Page 6 |
| N | Printed copies of this document should be verified for curs | gainst the published electronic copy. |  |  |  |

UrbanUtilities

| Hem No. | Acfivity Descripfion | Resulis |  |  | Signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Ace | Rel | $N / A$ |  |  |
| C. 21 | Verify that portable generator cable access plate allows the generator plug pass into the switchboard and reach the generator connection outlet. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| c. 22 | Inspection plates are properly labelled and not used as gland piates. inspection plates are only provided to ease occess to field wiring. | $J$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 23 | Verify that all glond entries are sealed - No split gland plates | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 24 | All spare holes to be plugged with conduit plugs. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 25 | Enclosure free of debris | 7 |  |  |  |  |
| C. 26 | Lap top support tray provided including 1/4 turn wing knob on laptop support shelf. Knobs fypes that cannot be operated by hand are not acceptable. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 27 | Drawings \& log book holder provided | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 28 | Aerial support is adjustable | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 29 | A minimum clearance of 55 mm shall be provided around the Redlion HMI to other components mounted in common controls door. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 30 | Cneck that selector switches are correctly engroved | $J$ |  |  |  |  |

Doc Id: CA-17a
Printed: $9 / 0 / 72010$
Note: $\quad$ Printed coples of this document should be verifled for currency against the published efectronic copy.

Rev. 15
Owner. Alfonso Chavez
Queensland Urban Utilites Confidential
Page 7 of 17

| $\begin{aligned} & \text { liem } \\ & \text { No. } \end{aligned}$ | Activity Description | Results |  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Signed } \\ & \text { QuU } \end{aligned}$ | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| c. 31 | Check that Indicators are fitted with correct coloured bezels | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 32 | Veify that all external labels are fitted to the switchboard. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 33 | Labelling is correct and complete wording, size, fixing, material, level. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 34 | All internal and extemal labels are to have bevelled edges. sharp edges are not allowed. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| C. 35 | Verify that 240 VAC warning sign is fitted to the switchboard. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |

## Contracior's Tester Signature

Queensland Urban Utilities Electrical Inspector


Date $1.4 .(07.10$
Date ...17/06/10.
A. ourfinsiano

UrbanUtilities
D. Visual Inspections-Neutral and Earthing

A visual inspection shall be made when work on an electrical installation has been completed in order to verify that the work complies with the requirements of AS/NZS 3000

The visual inspection shall be carried out before, or in association with testing, and as far as possible it should be made before the electrical installation is placed in service.

| Item No. | Acfivity Description | Resulis |  |  | Signed QuU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| D. 1 | $N / L$ \& $E / L$ have adequate bolts for main Neutral \& Earth | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| D. 2 | Earth bar / earth connections fitted \& OK | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| D. 3 | All neutral connections are accessible |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0.4 | MEN connections provided | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| D. 5 | Neutral \& earth connections are not in CT section | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| D. 6 | Surge diverter earthed to adjacent stud. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| 0.7 | Confirm a Direct connection from main earth bar to switchboard chassis | $J$ |  |  |  |  |

## Contracior's Yester Signature

Queensland Urban Utilities Elecfrical Inspecior

Printed: 9/07/2010
Note: Printed copies of this document should be verfied for currency against the published electronic copy.

Rev: 15
Owner: Alfonso Chavez

Quernsland Urban Utilities Confidential Page 9 of 17

## Urbañutilities

## 

As a minimum a visual inspection shall be made when work on an electrical installation has been completed in order to verify that the work complies with the requirements of AS/NZS 3000. This visual inspection section includes AS/NZS 3000 checks as well as several checks to verify that the electrical installation meets the specific design and quality requirements and scope of work.

The visual inspection shall be carried out before, or in association with testing, and as far as possible it should be made before the electrical installation is placed in service.

| Item No. | Activity Descripfion | Results |  |  | Signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| E. 1 | Busbars appropriately shielded | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 2 | Verify that main switches/circuil breakers and fuses are supplied to the specification (equipment schedule) | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 3 | Main switches lockable/ defeatable as per spec. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 4 | Check operation of Main Supply and Generator supply mechanical and/or key interlocks as applicable. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 5 | Verify that metering fuses \& CT's are fed off from main switch line side | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 6 | Verify that cable lugs are provided into CRITEC 20 kA surge filler circuit breaker (in mosi coses Q17) | $\delta$ |  |  |  |  |
| $\underline{1} .7$ | Equipment fed from line side shall be appropriately labelled. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |

UrbanUtilities
CA17a - Factory Inspection Tests
Major Projects \& Commercial Services
SQUV SP Reliability Improve - Stage2

| Itern No. | Acfivity Description | Resulls |  |  | Signed QUU | Commenis |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |  |
| E. 8 | Include 2nd label for Surge Diverter and Surge Diverter fuses "FED FROM LINE SIDE OF MAIN SWITCH" as applicable (Items 37/38 on switchboard label schedule). |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 9 | All Circuit Breakers shall be set as indicated in the electrical schematic drawings. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 10 | All circuit breakers shall be wired line side at the top / load side at the bottom | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| E.17 | Verify that cables current carrying capacity is as indicated in the electrical schematic drawings. | $J$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 12 | Colour coding of wiring as per specification. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 13 | Wiring in PVC ducting shall be kept tidy. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 14 | Check cable access dimensions |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 15 | Check cable access \& routes for field cabling. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 16 | Check phasing of circuits are as per drawing. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 17 | Electrical components fitted are as specified in the equipment schedule | $V$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 18 | Verify that quantity and location of GPOs are provided as required in the drawings. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 19 | Confirm all Idec relays are LED type and wired the correct polarity | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Doc ld: <br> Printed: <br> Note: | CA-17a |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | CA-17a |  |  |  |  | Rev: 15 | Queensland Urban Utillies Confidential |
|  | 9/07/2010Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency |  |  |  |  | Owner. Alfonso Chavez | Page 11 of 17 |
|  |  | again | he | hed | anic co |  |  |


| lfem No. | Activity Descripfion | Results |  |  | Signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Re」 | N/A |  |  |
| E. 20 | Verify that digital timer is mounted on its own specific base (IDEC base) as specified in the equipment list (Item 99-EMGDT) | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 21 | Check that generator plug has protective cover fitted | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 22 | Verify that power disconnection outlets and plugs are supplied with the switchboard as required | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 23 | Verify that terminals \& busbar connections are tight | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 24 | Verity that terminals are identified as per arawings and spares are provided | $\sim$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 25 | All terminals shall be correct part number. shrouded to 1 P 20 and labelled. | . |  |  |  | ONLY 240V TEEMINAL |
| E. 26 | All cable cores ferruled \& numbered. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 27 | 24VDC power supply shall be mounted to prevent obstruction to the field instrument terminals. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 28 | multicore cables shall be used for RTU harnesses to provide neat wiring installation. Use of individual wires for each $1 / O$ is not acceplable. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  | DONE AS PEF PVEVLOUS BONTA |
| E. 29 | Verify that adequate access to RTU and communication plug is provided |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 30 | Modbus communication cables (RS 485) shall be 120 ohm impedance twisted pair's. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |


| Doc Id: | CA-17a |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Printed: | $9 / 07 / 2010$ |
| 1 | Printed copies of this document should be verified for cun |


| Hem No. | Activity Description | Results |  |  | Signed QUU | Comments |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Acc | Rel | N/A |  |  |
| E. 31 | Aerial surge arrestor shall be mounted with a small section of DIN rail the earthed as directly as possible | $15$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 32 | When externally installing soft starter CT's for bypass circuit, verify proper size to match the SS and wiring polarity. (if SS is MSF-017 the corresponding CT shall be CTS-017) | $1$ |  |  |  |  |
| E. 33 | When externally installing sofi starter CT's for bypass circuit, please ensure proper Bypass operation parameter [340] shall be enabled. |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 34 | Motor Starter CT ratios are as specified and mounted to correct polarity |  |  |  |  |  |
| E. 35 | Soft starter CT leads to be cut to size / kept short. |  |  |  |  |  |

Contractor's lester Signature
Queensland Urban Utilities Electrical Inspector


Note: Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy.

UrbanUtilities
CA17a - Factory Inspection Yests
Major Projects \& Commercial Sarvices
SQUV SP Reliability Improve - Stage2

## F. Live Power and Operational Tesis

The fallowing tests shall be made with all switchboard electrical circuits energized in order to check that the switchboard meets all operational requirements.

| Ifem No. | Activity Description | Results |  |  | Slgned QUU | Comments |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | ACC | Rel | N/A |  |  |  |  |
| F. 1 | Verity that all circuit breakers isolate their stated circuits | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $f .2$ | Verify that all electrical components energize when power circults are energized | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| F. 3 | Switchboard lights operate |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8.4 | Confirm that E-Stops actually stop its corresponding drive. | j |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| F. 5 | Thermal overloads or soft starter protection appropriately set | $J$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7.6 | Set up all of the soft starter parameters |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| F. 7 | Verify that all Soft starter operation and all display parameters are displaying correctly. Confirm current CTs are the correct polarity | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| F. 8 | A copy of Soft Starter and/or VSD parameter configuration to match site equipment shall be provided to the switchboard manufacturer by the commissioning manager. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7.9 | Record output of 24 VOC power supply when connected to 240 VAC main. | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  | $8 \vee 1$ |  |  |
| Doc Id: <br> Printed: | CA-17a |  |  |  |  |  | 15 | Queensland Urban Utilities Conf |
|  | 9/07/2010 |  |  |  |  | c | Alfonso Chavez | Page 1. |
|  | Printed coples of this document should be verified for cur | against the published electronic copy. |  |  |  |  |  |  |

A. aufinsinno

UrbanUtilities

Aialor Projects \& Commercial Services
SQUV SP Reliability Improve - Stage 2


## Contractor's Yester Signature


th
Date
$\ldots 4|0\rangle \mid 10$

Queensland Urban Utilities Electrical Inspector
......John Clayton $\qquad$ Date ...17/06/10.
G. Non-Conformances and Unauthorised RAodifleations

| G. 1 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| G. 2 |  |
| G. 3 |  |
| G. 4 |  |
| G.5 |  |
| G.6 |  |
| G. 7 |  |
| G.8 |  |
| G. 9 |  |
| $G .10$ |  |

## Contracior's Tester Signature

Date

Queensland Urban Utilitles Électricai Inspector
......John Clayton.
Date ...17/06/10.

解ajor Projects \& Commercial Services
SQUV SP Reliability improve - Stage2

This section is to be completed only at the conclusion of the FAT:

| Final FAT Results | YES | NO |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Pre-FAT Completed | $\nearrow$ |  |  |
| Minor NCRS Generated |  |  |  |
| Major NCRs Generated |  |  |  |
| Pre-FAT Accepted |  |  |  |

## Notes:

1. FAT results to be recorded above by Contractor.
2. FAT results to be approved by Queensland Uroan Utiiities Electrical inspector.
3. Pre-fat results to be approved by Queensland Urban Utilities Electrical inspector at Pre-FAT (if present) or at the start of the FAT.
4. NCRs are to be generated by the Queensiand Urban Utilities Electrical Inspector for all NCRs not resolved by the end of the test.

## Contractor's Yester Signature



Queensland Urban Uillities Electrical Inspector
......John Clayton.
Date ...17/06/10.

Docla: CA. 17 a
Printed: 9/07/2010
Note: Printed copies of this document ahould be verified for currency against the published electronic copy

Queensland Urban Utilities Confidential Page 17 of 17

## SP055 Stanley Rd St. FAT Inspection Report

Conducted by John Clayton Commissioning Manager,
Date 13/07/2010
1 No direct main earth to chassis connection as per sheet 22 reat elevation
2/ Cat door handle shaft and remove burrs.
3/ Rewire pump No. 1 and Pump No. 2 nodbus cables as per sheet 8 .
4/ Label Inspections plates
5 Shroud and abbel 240 VAC terminals,
6/Improve generator bus shroud to prevent access from the bottom of the shroud
7 Cable access to a light fitting is single insulation 240 VAC
8/ Modbus needs to be tested on the Softstarters
$9 /$ Complete all internal and externallabelling,
10 /review all test sheets / documentation and confirm that they have been doneconectly, 11 Install end plates on loose terminals, 12 Replace 2 parRS 485 1 20 ohm with single twisted pair as per cable previously supplied and as per cable schedule, 13/Replace non linked terminals with linked terminals;
14/ Relocate filter supply and surge arrestor neutrals as per the schematic, Install cathodic protection unit.
15/ Shield CT cubicle BUS, place heat shnnk over exposed bus.
16/ Install CTS prior to the install date as previously advised,
$17 /$ fit sealable plugs to spare predilled switchboard access holes.


SP060 Moora Pk. FAT Inspection Report
1/ No direct main earth to chassis connection as per sheet 22 rear elevation
2/Cut door handle shaft and remove burrs.
3/ Rewire pump No. 1 and Pump No. 2 modbus cables as per sheet 8 ,
4/ Label Inspections plates
5/ Fit generator outlet plug,
6/Improve generator bus shroud to prevent access from the bottom of the shroud
7/Cable access to a light fitting is single insulation 240VAC


## SSM089

## FIXED SPEED SEWAGE PUMP STATION

## SWITCHBOARD CHANGEOVER COMMISSIONING PLAN

| Site D and Name | SP055 STANLEY RD |
| :--- | :--- |
| Commissioning Date | $20 / 0 / 08 / 10$ |

In Attendance

| Name | Role During Commissioning | Company |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| John-etayten STKVE HiCMI | Commissioning Manager | BWD Projects |
| Dave Jackson | Project Manager | Halmac Services |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |


| Doc ld: | 006142 | Active Date: | 2 November 2007 |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | ---: |
| Printed: | $10 / 08 / 2010$ | Owner: Alex Withoft | Brisbane Water Confidential |
| Note: | Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy. | Version 1.00 |  |

$\therefore$ SP, Reliability, Improvement, Project, SSM089-Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station Commissioning Plan Commissioning Plan

## 1 INTRODUCTION

This document is the standard testing procedure for a switchboard change over at a sewage pumping station. The procedure ensures that for a two pump sewage pump station, at least one pump will be operational at all times. The basic cut-over procedure is as follows:

1. Install temporary pumping system (pump controller and generator).
2. Disconnect sewage Pump \#2 from existing switchboard and connect to temporary pumping system.

PUMP \#1 IS NOW RUNNING THE STATION FROM EXISTING SWITCHBOARD
3. Fully commission Pump \#2 on the temporary pumping system.

## PUMP \#2 IS NOW RUNNING THE STATION FROM TEMPORARY PUMPING SYSTEM

4. Disconnect Pump \#1, consumer mains, on site generator and all field instrumentation from the existing switchboard.
5. Install new switchboard and connect to consumer mains.
6. Connect Pump \#l to the new switchboard and test in "emergency pumping" mode (via the "Emergency Start" switch).

## PUMP \#2 IS STILL RUNNING THE STATION FROM THE TEMPORARY PUMPING SYSTEM AND PUMP \#1 CAN BE RUN UNDER "EMERGENCY PUMPING" MODE FROM NEW SWITCHBOARD.

7. Connect all field instrumentation.
8. Fully commission Pump \#1 on the new switchboard to operate in "Local" and "Remote" modes.

## PUMP \#1 IS NOW RUNNING THE STATION FROM NEW SWITCHBOARD

9. Connect Pump \#2 to the new switchboard and fully commission on the new switchboard to operate in all modes.
10. Complete the Site Acceptance Test (SAT) including all pump, RTU and SCADA testing.

NOTE: This testing procedure will only be acceptable on sites that do NOT need two pumps to run during the cut over procedure.
(Confirm the current running conditions of the existing switchboard before commencing).
For sites that require two pumps to run simultaneously under dry weather conditions during the proposed cut over period, a site-specific cut over procedure must be developed to incorporate adequate flow control measures (ie tankers or temporary pumps).

| Doc ld: | 006142 | Active Date: | 2 November 2007 | Brisbane Water Confidential |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Printed: | 10/08/2010 | Owne | Alex Witthof |  |
| Note: | Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy. |  |  |  |

: SP, Reliability, Improvement, Project, SSM089-Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station Commissioning Plan Commissioning Plan

## 2 Pre - Change Over Works Checklist

The following checklist is to be completed and signed by the electrical contractor.

### 2.1 SWITCHBOARD FACTORY ACCEPTANCE TEST

| Contractor Task | Completed |
| :--- | :---: |
| FAT has been completed as per BW FAT Document and all defects that were <br> identified have been rectified. | $1010 \mathrm{~g} / \% \mathrm{o}$ |

### 2.2 CONCRETE SLAB EXTENSION

| Contractor Task | Result |
| :--- | :--- |
| Confirm the concrete slab extension is complete including all necessary conduits. | OK ® ${ }^{\prime}$ NA $\square$ |

### 2.3 SUPPLY AUTHORITY

| Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :---: | :---: |
| The relevant supply authority has been organised to install the metering into the New Switchboard. <br> NO BLB NUMBEA is SLEA - <br> CONSNLTED DAVE WILLIANS WE DOTHAGREÉn TO MOEENO レITH TOO AS DIRECT WIREO METERS IN PCACF. DANE <br>  | Company $\qquad$ <br> Booked for <br> 1 <br> @ $\qquad$ (time) <br> Ref \# $\qquad$ |

### 2.4 NEW RADIO ANTENNA MAST LOCATION

| Contractor Task | Result |
| :--- | :--- |
| Check the location of the antenna mast and ensure that the new position will not <br> be directly below electrical transmission lines. | Location OK U <br> Antenna dir. |

### 2.5 DISCHARGE MAINS PRESSURE TRANSDUCER

| Contractor Task |  | Completed |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Install delivery pressure transducer on the discharge rising main. Transducer is calibrated to the specified range (as per spec). Calibration sheet to be supplied with AS BUILT drawings. OkPA to | kPA | Installed OK <br> Range $0(\mathrm{~m})$ to $\qquad$ (m) |

### 2.6 TEMPORARY GENERATOR SIZE



SP, Reliability, Improvement, Project, SSM089-Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station Commissioning Plan Commissioning Plan

## 3 Change Over Works

The following sequence of works that must be carried out in order. One pump must be operational at all times. After each phase has been completed, the commissioning manager will record the results and instruct the commissioning team to commence work on the next phase.

### 3.1 STEP 1 - INSTALL TEMPORARY PUMPING SYSTEM

### 3.1.1 Register with Control Room

| Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :--- |
| Call the Brisbane Water Control Room Operator (CRO) and inform him that you are <br> on site. Record the CRO's Name and Officer Code and record the time of the call. | Name: TON: YON |
| Advise CRO that you are performing a switchboard changeover and that you will |  |
| initially be taking one pump off line. Give the operator a contact name and number |  |
| and ask that he contact you if any level alarm is activated on site. | CRO: CRO1 |

### 3.1.2 Existing Switchboard Parameters



### 3.1.3 Prepare and Install Temporary Pump Controller and Generator



| Doc Id: | 006142 | Active Date: 2 November 2007 | Brisbane Water Confidential |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Printed: | $10 / 08 / 2010$ | Owner. Alex Witthof |  |
| Note: | Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy. |  |  |

### 3.2 STEP 2 - CONNECT PUMIP \#2 TO TEMPORARY PUMPING SYSTEM



### 3.3 STEP 3 - DISCONNECT EXISTING SWITCHBOARD AND REMOVE

### 3.3.1 Contact Control Room

### 3.3.2 Disconnect Pump \#1 and Remove Existing Switchboard



Electrical Contactor's Supervisor


BW Commissioning Manager
BW Commissioning Manager
STEVE H/CHIN $/ 2 / 08 / 10$
Name:.. Johnelaytos........ Date:z2@7H0 Signature:


| Doc Id: | 006142 | Active Date: | 2 November 2007 |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Printed: | $10 / 08 / 2010$ | Owner. Alex Withoft | Brisbane Water Confidential |

Note: Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy.

### 3.4 STEP \& - INSTALL NEW SWITCHBOARD

### 3.4.1 Install new switchboard (For Sites with Option F Only)

| Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :---: | :---: |
| Install and connect the required (new or existing) mains and earth as per the contract. Install mains cable within the switchboard in steelflex conduit | New <br> Existing |
| Record the cable insulation resistance of the 3 phases | A $\qquad$ Megohm <br> B $\qquad$ Megohm. <br> C) 100 Megohm |
| Record earth resistance | 0.05 ohms |
| Point to point phase continuity | R to $\mathrm{L1}$ OKD <br> W to $\mathrm{L2}$ OKD/ <br> B to $\mathrm{L3}$ OKD |

### 3.4.2 Install Supply Authority Metering

| Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :---: |
| Install the direct connected kWhr Meter or Energex to connect CT metered metering <br> as per 2.3 | OK CTO |

### 3.4.3 Energise New Switchboard

| Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :--- |
| Retrieve mains 3-phase pole fuses from lock out box as per BW Isolation and Lock |  |
| Out procedure. | OK |
| Ensure new switchboard niain incomer is turned "Off". | OK |
| Install the 3-phase pole fuses. <br> Check MEN connection. | OK |
| Turn on mains switch | AB 4.27 |
| Check 3 phase voltages | BC 4.31 |



SP, Reliability, Improvement, Project, SSM089-Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station Commissioning Plan Commissioning Plan

### 3.5 STEP 5 -CONNECT PUMP \#1 TO NEW SWITCHBOARD

| Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :--- |
| At the beginning of this procedure, Pump \#2 is operating under the control of <br> the temporary switchboard running from the Generator. |  |
| Isolate submersible Pump \#1 and Pump \#2 at the new switchboard, as per BW <br> Isolation and Lock Out procedure. | Via the MERACHAL plug in sockets provided on the switchboard reconnect the |
| power and control cables for Pump \#1 only (the pump that is not connected to the |  |
| generator set) If VFD connection is direct connect. |  |

### 3.6 STEP 6 - CONNECT FIELD INSTRUMENTATION TO NEW SWITCHBOARD

### 3.6.1 Field Devices



NOT COMNETEO

Electrical Contactor's Supervisor
Name: Dave Jackson Date: 22107/60
Signature:



Signature:

Doc Id: 00614

Printed: 10/08/2010
Note: Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy.

### 3.6.2 Install Generator Mains (For Sites with Permanent Generators)



### 3.6.3 Radio Antenna Installation

| BW Programmer Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :---: |
| Install new mast with Antenna, orientate antenna to the position determined in <br> section 3.1.2 connect coaxial cable plugs. | OK |

### 3.6.4 Telemetry and SCADA Communications Checks

| BW Programmer Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :--- |
| Brisbane Water programmer must complete the following procedures |  |
| From the SSM086 Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station (S.A.T.) |  |
| Section 1: Setup and Pre-Commissioning Checks | OKJ |

### 3.7 STEP 7-COMMMISSIONING PUMP \#1

| BW Programmer \& Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :--- |
| Before doing the next step ensure that the well level is between 'Start' and <br> 'Stop' level and Pump \#2 is not running. <br> Isolate Pump \#2 to prevent it from running during the next test. |  |
| At this stage the Brisbane Water Programmer must complete the following <br> procedures <br> From the SSM086 Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station (S.A.T.) <br> Section2: On Site Commissioning Procedure (Pump \#1 Only) |  |
| Once Pump \#1 has been commissioned, leave the new switchboard in control <br> of the site operating under "Remote" control. | OKiv |



### 3.8 STEP 8-CONNECT PUMIP \#2 AND COMMISSION

### 3.8.1 Connect Pump \#2 to New Switchboard

| Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :---: | :---: |
| At the beginning of this procedure, Pump \#1 is operating under the control of the new switchboard running from the supply authority. |  |
| Shut down the generator and disconnect Pump \#2 from the temporary switchboard | OK $\square$ |
| Ensure Pump \#2 circuit breaker at the new switchboard is still isolated and locked out as per BW Isolation and Lock Out procedure. | OK $+\sim$ |
| Via the MERACHAL plug in sockets provided on the switchboard, connect the power and control cables for Pump \#2. |  |
| De-isolate this now connected submersible pump. Check the rotation of this submersible pump by bumping the pump On / Off via the local "Emergency Start" switch. | OKV |
| Check the 3-phase motor current and compare with original results. | $\text { A } 5(\mathrm{Amps}$ |
| PUMP \#2 Can now be run in an emergency under the control of the new switchboard. |  |

### 3.8.2 Commissioning of Pump \#2

| BW Programmer \& Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :---: |
| Before beginning the next step ensure that the well level is between "Start and <br> Stop" level and Pump \#1 is not running. (Station under the control of the new <br> board) <br> Isolate Pump \#1 to prevent it from running during the next test. | OK |
| Brisbane Water Programmer must complete the following procedures <br> From the SSM086 Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station (S.A.T.) <br> Section2: On Site Commissioning Procedure - Sump \#2 Only) | OK 区 |
| Once Pump \#2 has been commissioned, de-isolate Pump \#1 and leave that <br> new switchboard in control of the site operating under remote control with <br> both pumps able to run | OK |

Electrical Contactor's Supervisor


### 3.9 STEP 9 - COMPLETE TESTING

### 3.9.1 Site Acceptance Testing (S.A.T) - Remaining Tests

| BW Programmer \& Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :---: |
| Once pump 2 has been commissioned <br> Complete any remaining procedures in Section 2 <br> from the SSMO86 Standard fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station (S.A.T.) |  |
| Check operation of SIR for 20 sec. with probe to prove probe operation and <br> operation of 2 pumps |  |
| Check operation LR3 with probe to prove RTU and probe |  |
| Seal conduits with denso and grout under switchboard. | OK |
| Check Energex Phase Fail Input. | OK |
| Confirm automatic control of pumps. | OK |
| Check Parameter 203 of Soft Starter is a positive value | OK |
| Confirm correct operation of all door locks | OK |
| Confirm Operation \& Maintenance Manual ieft on site. | OK |

### 3.9.2 SCADA Testing

| BW Programmer \& Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :--- |
| The Brisbane Water Programmer must complete the following procedures with the |  |
| assistance from the Commissioning Engineer and SCADA Commissioning Engineer |  |
| in the Control Room. |  |
| From the SSM086 Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station (S.A.T.) | OK [r |
| Section 3: SCADA Commissioning Procedure |  |

### 3.9.3 Preliminary Work Completion by Electrical Contractors

| Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :---: |
| Leave the site clean and tidy and hazard free. | OK |
| Confirm with BW that the job is complete and their staff can leave. |  |
| Confirm with BW that BW staff will lock up the site on completion of the switchboard <br> change over work. | OK |
| Note: If there is a problem with finishing the work due to unforeseen circumstance <br> refer to the Risk Analysis attached. | OK |

### 3.9.4 Register Control Room

| BW Programmer \& Contractor Task | Outcome |
| :--- | :--- |
| Commissioning Engineer to call the Control Room Operator (CRO) and inform him <br> that the site works is complete and that the site is now fully in "Remote" control and <br> that all alarms are to be acted on as per the alarm instructions. <br> C.R.O. to confirm that the site is healthy and that there are no alarms active. <br> Record the C.R.O.'s name and Officer Code and record the time of the call. | Name. TOWY \%osc |

BW Commissioning Manager
STEVE HICKIN $12 / 08 / 10$

Signature:


| Doc Id: | 006142 | Acrive Date: | 09/Aug/2007 | Brisbane Water Confidential |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Printed: | 10/08/2010 | Owncr | Alcx Witthoft |  |
| Note: | Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy. |  |  |  |

## 4 Post Change Over Checklist

### 4.1 DELIVERABLES FROM RTU PROGRAMMER

| BW Programmer | Date Completed |
| :--- | :---: |
| Within 7 days of the change over the following must be completed and signed off by <br> the BW Programmer <br> Complete Section 4: Post Commissioning <br> from the SSM086 Standard Fixed Speed Sewage Pumping Station (S.A.T.) |  |
| The BW Programmer will ensure that the Control Room Acceptance (CRA) form is <br> signed by the Manager of the Control Room Officers. The form is to be handed to <br> the Contracts Manager (CM). | , , , |

### 4.2 DELIVERABLES FROMI ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR

| Contractor Task | Date Completed |
| :--- | :---: |
| All documentation required under the contract is to be provided with the time <br> specified (AS BUILT's, Electrical Certificates etc). | $/, 1$ |

### 4.3 DELIVERABLES FROMI COMMISSIONING MANAGER

| Commissioning Manager | Date Completed |
| :--- | :---: |
| All documentation is handed to the Project Manager to that the new switchboard <br> asset can be capitalised and handed over to the customer. |  |
| Factory Acceptance Test Sheet - Completed \& signed off. | OK ■ |
| Electrical Inspection Sheet - Completed \& signed off. | OK $\square$ |
| Site Acceptance Test Sheet - Completed \& signed off. | OK |
| Commissioning Plan - Completed \& signed off. | OK |
| Control Room Acceptance Form - Completer \& signed off |  |
| As built Drawings have been updated, drafted and taken to site along with the Site <br> Specific Functional Specification, | OK |

### 4.4 SUGGESTIONS FOR IMPROVEMENT



$$
\text { Et H FMX2, - NKEDS RANGING FRONO - } 10 \text { TO 0-4 } 4 \pi
$$

BW Commissioning Manager

STEVE HCCVIN
Name:.....
Date

Signature:

Doc Id: $006142 \quad$ Active Date: 09/Aug/2007
Printed: $10 / 08 / 2010 \quad$ Owner: Alex Witthoft

Note: Printed copies of this document should be verified for currency against the published electronic copy.


[^0]:    

[^1]:    Notes: - Thermal or electronic overload relays may be used.

[^2]:    Notes: - Thermal or electronic overload relays may be used.

    - XM30PB combinations can be replaced with H125GJ/20 and CA7-30 it required.

    Combinations based on the thermal overbad relay tripping before the circuit
    breaker at overioad currents up to the motor locked rotor current.

[^3]:    Notes: - Thermal or electronic overload relays may be used.

[^4]:    wevecom ${ }^{9}$ confidential ©
    This docament is the sole and exclastue aroperty of Wavicom. Mot to be distolbuted or thatged withour prior written agreement Wh_met_Fastil_080_091

[^5]:    1) Recommended for drinking water applications.
[^6]:    1) Not for use in hazardous areas.
[^7]:    Notes) 1. Only the metallic-looking (silver) panel mounting type is available.
    2. Standard products are UL-recognized as well as CSA-certified. There is no need to add " $U$ " at the end of the part number. Just specify the standard part number when ordering.

[^8]:    $1 \quad$ * SLIP $\circledR^{\text {™ }}$ KISS $®^{\text {™ }}$

[^9]:    * 2-pole motor

[^10]:    (1) Opto-coupler output can be connected to DAR275V to provide Form C dry contacts, Page 35

